

This work was partially supported by NSF grant DMS-03-06497, NSF/NIGMS grant DMS-02-1037 and Erskine Fellowship at Department of

<https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/4.0/>.

International License. To view a copy of this license, visit

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-ShareAlike 4.0

©2007-2019 Razeeh Samudiin. ©2008-2019 Dominic Lee. ©2010-2019

Version Date: January 7, 2020

• Department of Mathematics, Cornell University, Ithaca, New York, USA

† School of Mathematics and Statistics, University of Canterbury, Christchurch, New Zealand

\* Department of Mathematics, Uppsala University, Uppsala, Sweden

\*Laboratory for Mathematical Statistical Experiments, Uppsala Centre, and

Razeeh Samudiin\*, Dominic Lee† and Michael Nussbaum†,

## Probability Theory I & Inference Theory I



according to instructions delivered at course start.  
Written examination at the end of the course combined with written assignments during the course

## ASSESSMENT

Practical examples of design of probability models.  
Written examinations. Moment generating function. The central limit theorem. The law of large numbers. Probability distributions. Independent and conditioned distributions. Expectation and variance. Combinationics. The probability concept. Calculation of probabilities. Stochastic variable. Prob-

## CONTENT

- account for probabilistic models within different application fields.
- apply the law of large numbers and the central limit theorem;
- handle conditioned probabilities, distributions and expectations as well as moment generating and characteristic functions;
- account for the most common probability distributions and how to do simulations with them;
- account for the concepts of stochastic variable and expectation and be able to calculate probabilities, expectations and variance for given distributions;
- carry out probability calculations by means of combinatorial principles and be able to use methods for independent events;
- carry out probability theory calculations by means of combinatorial principles and be able to use methods for independent events;
- account for the axiomatic basis of the probability theory;

On completion of the course, the student should be able to

## LEARNING OUTCOMES

See <https://www.uu.se/en/admissions/master/sehma/kursplan/?repid=38971&type=1>.

## Official Course Syllabus

|                                   |   |   |   |                                      |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|---|--------------------------------------|
| Course Code: IM5034               | Report Code: 10504  | Course Title: Probability Theory I, 5.0 e | Course Syllabus: Friday, 04th of October 2019 | Course Coordinator: Razeech Sainudin |
| Course Name: null hypotheses, 266 | Workload: 12 = $\lceil \frac{33}{100} 37,5 \rceil$ hours / week | Uppsala University<br>33%, DAG, NMU       | 2019-09-02 - 2019-11-03                       | type I error, 266                    |
| Success / failure rule, 274       | Weeks: 36 - 44  | Report Code: 10504                        | 33%, DAG, NMU                                 | success / failure rule, 274          |
| Law of Large Numbers, 268         | Semester: Autumn 2019   | Course Code: IM5034                       | Course Name: null hypotheses, 266             | Law of Large Numbers, 268            |
| critical region, 266              |   |   |   |                                      |

## IM5034 Syllabus

## Index

## Time Table – Prob. Theor. I

(KEY,VALUE): (EX, Exercise), (RD, Read), (RW, Review), (UD, Understand), (PM, Program)

Table 1: Time Table for Virtual Student of Probability Theory I

| Lec. | Lab. | Week  | Topics   | Comprehension $\mapsto$ Action $\times$ Content |
|------|------|---|--|---|
| 01   | 36   | Preliminaries: Set Theory, Numbers, Functions ...                             | RW Sec. 1.1,1.3,1.4  |   |
|      |      | Elementary Combinatorics & Number Theory<br>[optional] Introduction to MATLAB | EX 1.2; RW Table. 1.1<br>RD 1.6; UD 6,7; EX 1.5; RD 1.9<br>PM 5,9,10,11,21 |   |
|      |      | Probability   | RD 2.1,2.2; EXs 2.3  |   |
|      |      | Probability and Conditional Probability                                       | RD 2.2,2.4; UD 31  |   |
| 04   | 37   | Conditional Probability & Bayes Theorem                                       | RD 2.4.1; UD 32,33,34; RD 2.4.2  |   |
| 05   |      | Conditional Probability & Independence  | RD 2.4.2; UD 35,36,37; EXs 2.5   |   |
| 06   |      | Random variables  | RD 3.1; EX 3.1; UD 1,41i, EX 3.2   |   |
|      |      | Discrete Random variables and IID Bernoulli Trials                            | RD 3.1, 3.2.1, 3.2.3   |   |
|      |      | Common Discrete Random variables  | RD 3.2.3; UD 45; UD 4 ;EX 3.3;   |   |
| 07   | 38   | Common Discrete Random variables  | UD 46, 5, 47, 48, 6, 49, 50, 51  |   |
| 08   |      | Common Discrete Random variables  | EX 3.4 & EXs 3.3;  |   |
|      |      | Continuous RVs  | RD 3.4; UD 52, 53, 54, RD 3.4.1  |   |
|      |      | Common Continuous RVs   | RD 3.4.2; UD 55, 56; EX 3.17, 3.18   |   |
| 09   |      | Common Continuous RVs   | EX 57, 58; UD 59; EXs 3.5  |   |
|      |      | Transformations of RVs – Discrete   | RD 3.6; UD 60, 61; RW 3.6.1  |   |
| 10   | 39   | Transformations of RVs – Discrete   | RD 3.6.2; UD 62, 63, 64  |   |
| 11   |      | Transformations of RVs – Continuous (1-to-1 & monotone)                       | RD 3.6.3; UD 65, 66, 67, 68  |   |
|      |      | Transformations of RVs – Continuous (Direct method)                           | RD 3.6.3; UD 69, 70; EXs 3.7   |   |
|      |      | Expectations  | RD 3.8, 3.8.1; UD 71, 72, 74, 75, 76; EX 3.29; UD 77, 78, 79, 80; EXs 3.9  |   |
| 12   | 40   | Multivariate Random Variables   | RD 3.10; UD 83, 84, 85, 86,<br>UD 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92                   |   |
| 13   |      | Common $\mathbb{R}^m$ -valued RVs   | RD 3.10.2, 3.10.3; UD 95, 96   |   |
| 14   |      | Characteristic Functions  | RD 3.10.4; UD 97, 98;<br>EX 3.36, 3.37, EXs 3.11                           |   |
| 15   | 41   | Statistics & Random Number Generation   | RD 3.14, 4.2, 4.3  |   |
| 16   |      | Statistics  | EXs 3.15   |   |
| 17   |      | Simulation – Inversion & Rejection Samplers                                   | EXs 4.4  |   |
| 18   | 42   | Convergence of RVs & Limit Laws   | RD 5.1, UD 157, 158, 159, 160  |   |
| 19   |      | Basic Inequalities & Law of Large Numbers                                     | UD 161, 163, 164; EX 5.1   |   |
| 20   |      | Law of Large Numbers & Central Limit Theorem via CFs                          | UD 165, 166, 167, 168; EXs 5.4   |   |
|      |      | Model exam with live-scribed solutions  |  |   |

By using the permutation test, we tested whether the absolute difference between the two sample means were significantly different from each other.

Step 1: Observe value:  $T = X(\text{left}) - X(\text{right})$

Step 2: Combine [ L1 L2 ..... L115 R1.....R139 ] '254 Data'

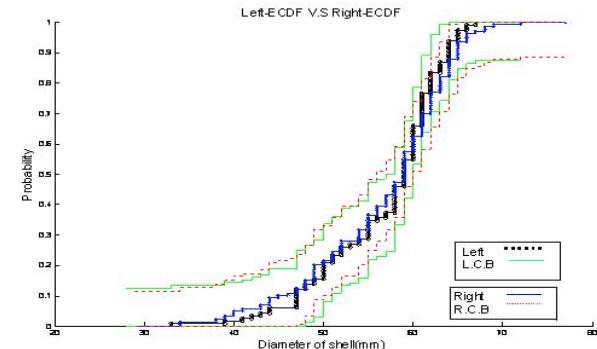
Step 3: Rearrange (MATLAB function: 'randperm'):

$$\begin{array}{c} [\text{R110}, \text{L45}, \text{L78}, \text{R2} \dots | \dots \dots \text{L20}] \quad '254 \text{ Data}' \\ \downarrow \quad \quad \quad \downarrow \\ |\text{Mean}(1\text{-}115) \quad -- \quad \text{Mean}(116\text{-}254)| = D_i(\text{recorded}) \\ (i = 1, 2, 3 \dots 10000) \end{array}$$

Step 4: Repeat Step 3 10000 times

Step 5: Find out how often ' $D_i$ ' is greater than ' $T$ ', then divided this value by **10,000**. This is our **P-value**.

### 9.5.3 Results



#### Hypothesis testing

$\text{abs}(\text{'mean for north'} - \text{'mean for south'}) : |56.8173 - 56.6462| = 0.1711$  (observed value)  $H_0$ : No difference can be observed between north and south  $H_a$ : A difference can be observed Alpha = 0.05

In the test, we found 8470 numbers were greater than 0.1711, so P-value = 8470 / 10000 = 0.847

#### Conclusion

Since p-value is large, we do not reject the null hypothesis, as we do not have enough evidence to say that there is a difference in the distribution of *Dosinia anus* diameters between the north and south sides of the pier in New Brighton Pier.

#### Author contributions

Shen Chun and Yaozong Guo did all the work together.

IIS035 Syllabus

On completion of the course, the student should be able to

- See [https://www.uu.se/en/admissions/master/se\\_ma/kursplan/?kp\\_id=38972&type=1](https://www.uu.se/en/admissions/master/se_ma/kursplan/?kp_id=38972&type=1).
- LEARNING OUTCOMES
- On completion of the course, the student should be able to
- account for basic inference theoretical concepts and definitions;
- statisticians;
- illustrate and interpret important concepts in concrete situations;
- design experiments and confidence intervals inclusive of in connection with linear regression;
- translate problems from relevant application fields into a form appropriate for statistical treatment, choose appropriate model and solution method;
- translate problems from relevant application fields into a form appropriate for statistical interpretation and evaluate received results;
- use statistical software;

Critical review of how statistics are presented and interpreted. General about statistical studies. Correlation and regression. Basic theory of point and interval estimates and hypothesis test. Correlation and regression methods. Statistical software.

## CONTENT

Official Course Syllabus

|   |                       |   |               |                                       |
|---|-----------------------|---|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| Course Code: IM5035                               | Semester: Autumn 2019 | Report Code: 10522                                  | 33%, DAG, NML | Uppsala University                    |
| Course Title: Intermediate Theory I, 5.0 c        | Weeks: 45 - 03        | Work: 12 = $\frac{33}{100} \cdot 37.5$ hours / week | Work          | 2019-11-04 - 2020-01-19               |
| Course Syllabus: Thursdays, 07th of November 2019 | Hours / week:         | Hours / week  |               | Courses Coordinator: Razeezeh Samudin |
| Intermediate Theory I, 5.0 c                      |                       |   |               |                                       |

We collected some shells from New Brighton Pier that are commonly called *Dosinia anus* (Graeve Venus Shell). This species is a member of the class Bivalvia. Bivalvia lack a radula, and feed by filtering out fine particles of organic matter either from seawater (suspension feeders) or from surface mud (deposit feeders). In each case, food enters the mantle cavity in a current of water produced by cilia on the gills. Gills have a large surface area in relation to the size of the animal, and secrete copious amounts of slime-like mucus that not only traps the food particles but also acts as a lubricant for the passage of food to the mouth. In addition to having this feeding role, gills are responsible for the exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide between the body and the water.

### 9.5.1 Introduction and Objective

Guo Yaozong and Shen Chun

### 9.5 Diameter of *Dosinia* Shells

424

Written examination at the end of the course combined with written assignments during the course according to instructions delivered at course start.

In order to test the null hypothesis that the small diameters of our species are identically distributed on both sides of the pieir, we applied the non-parametric permutation test.

Statistical Methodology

After washing, drying and classifying the shells, we found that 254 of them were *Dosinia anus*, 115 collected from north of the pier and 139 from the southern. Then we used mechanical pencils to sketch the outline of each shell onto graph paper and measured the diameter of each in units of millimetres. The way we measured them was from top to bottom (as shown below). After that, we entered the data into a computer, and estimated the empirical CDF as well as confidence bands.

We collected shells along the New Brighton beach to the left (north) and right (south) of the pier. We walked and picked up all the shells we could see, except broken ones. In about two and a half hours, we collected about two buckets of shells from each side of the pier (i.e. two from the left and two from the right).

### 9.5.2 Materials and Methods

Our objective was to test whether the diameters of *Dosinia anna* shells on the north side of New Brighton Pier are identically distributed to those found on the south side of the pier.

Unlike Venus shells from other parts of the world, this species has a flat disc-like shell. Found just below the low-tide mark along Bigelow beach, it burrows just below the sand surface and feeds using two short, separate siphons. (*Life in The Estuary*, Malcolm B. Jones & Ialy D. Marsden,

## Time Table – Inf. Theor. I

(KEY,VALUE): (EX, Exercise), (RD, Read), (RW, Review), (UD, Understand), (PM, Program)

Table 2: Time Table for Inference Theory I

| Lec. | Lab. | Week | Topics  | Section/Labworks/Simulations  |
|------|------|------|---|---|
| 01   |      | 45   | Overview of Inference & Decisions                           | RD 7.1–7.4  |
| 02   |      |      | Review of LLN, CLT & Inference for proportions              |   |
| 03   |      |      | Inference for proportions and Estimators                    |   |
| 04   |      |      | Set up MATLAB scripts directory                             | RD 7.5, 7.5.2 7.5.3; EX 7.1, 7.2, 7.3<br>download & unzip <code>scripts.zip</code> <sup>↓</sup> |
|      |      |      | Introduction to MATLAB                                      | PM 5,9,10,11,21   |
|      |      |      | Test your familiarity with MATLAB                           | PM 192, Try Labworks in Prob. Theor. I  |
|      |      |      |   |   |
| 05   |      | 46   | Inference for proportions and Success/Failure Rule          | RD 7.5, 7.5.3; EX 7.5; PM 193   |
| 06   |      |      | Confidence Intervals for proportions                        | RD 7.5, 7.5.3, 7.5.4; EX 7.6  |
| 07   |      |      | Model Student Project (5 bonus points – optional)           | RD 9 and brainstorm   |
|      |      |      | Exact and asymptotic confidence intervals                   | RD 7.5.4  |
| 08   |      | 47   | Inference for proportions contd. with Exercises             | RD 7.5, 7.5.4;<br>RD 7.5.4; EX 7.4, 7.7   |
| 09   |      |      |   | RD 7.5.4; EX 7.10, 7.11, 7.12, 7.13   |
| 10   |      |      |   |   |
| 11   |      | 48   | Estimation with the Likelihood Principle                    | RD 7.8.1, 7.8.2; UD 211 215;  |
| 12   |      |      | Method of Moment Estimator                                  | PM 215; UD 215; EX 7.14, 7.15; UD 7.8.3   |
| 13   |      | 49   | Hypothesis Testing: size, level, power, Wald Test & p-value | UD 7.7.1, 7.7.2, 7.7.4  |
| 14   |      |      | Permutation Test & Chi-square                               | UD 7.7.5, 7.7.6   |
| 15   |      |      |   |   |
| 16   |      | 50   | DF Estimation & Plug-in Estimation                          | UD 7.13,7.13.1, 7.14  |
| 17   |      |      | Bootstrap   | UD 7.15.1, 7.15.2; LWS: 227, 228, 231, 232, 234   |
| 18   |      |      | Linear Regression   | UD 7.16   |
| 19   | 01   |      | Fisher Information & Delta Method                           | UD 7.10,7.11,7.12; EX 218,220, 221,224,225  |
| 20   | 01   |      | Review  |   |

↓download and unzip `scripts.zip` into your computer with MATLAB :

`scripts.zip` is at <https://github.com/lamastex/computational-statistical-experiments/tree/master/matlab/csebook>

| Anti-clockwise Route |               | Clockwise Route    |               |
|----------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Bus Arrival Times:   | Mins waiting: | Bus Arrival Times: | Mins waiting: |
| 9 : 17               | 6             | 9 : 13             | 6             |
| 9 : 23               | 6             | 9 : 26             | 13            |
| 9 : 34               | 11            | 9 : 27             | 1             |
| 9 : 42               | 8             | 9 : 40             | 13            |
| 9 : 52               | 10            | 9 : 50             | 10            |
| 10 : 07              | 15            | 10 : 01            | 11            |
| 9 : 52               | 0             | 9 : 56             | 4             |
| 10 : 00              | 8             | 10 : 03            | 7             |
| 10 : 07              | 7             | 10 : 12            | 9             |
| 10 : 18              | 11            | 10 : 24            | 12            |
| 10 : 28              | 10            | 10 : 32            | 8             |
| 10 : 37              | 9             | 10 : 48            | 16            |
| 10 : 49              | 12            | 11 : 03            | 15            |
| 11 : 02              | 13            | 11 : 17            | 14            |
| 11 : 10              | 8             | 11 : 22            | 5             |
| 11 : 20              | 10            | 11 : 32            | 10            |
| 11 : 31              | 11            | 11 : 44            | 12            |
| 11 : 39              | 8             | 11 : 53            | 9             |
| 11 : 46              | 7             | 12 : 01            | 8             |
| 11 : 57              | 11            |                    |               |
| 12 : 00              | 5             | 11 : 55            | 0             |
| 12 : 09              | 9             | 12 : 00            | 5             |
| 12 : 20              | 11            | 12 : 13            | 13            |
| 12 : 34              | 14            | 12 : 26            | 13            |
| 12 : 47              | 13            | 12 : 32            | 6             |
| 12 : 52              | 5             | 12 : 40            | 8             |
| 13 : 00              | 8             | 12 : 44            | 4             |
| 13 : 09              | 9             | 12 : 57            | 13            |
| 13 : 21              | 12            | 13 : 12            | 15            |
| 13 : 31              | 10            | 13 : 19            | 7             |
| 13 : 44              | 13            | 13 : 30            | 11            |
| 13 : 50              | 6             | 13 : 36            | 6             |
| 14 : 01              | 11            | 13 : 59            | 23            |
| 14 : 14              | 13            | 14 : 04            | 1             |

# Contents

| Anti-clockwise Route | Clockwise Route | Bus Arrival Times: Mins waiting:                         |
|----------------------|-----------------|--|
| 15 : 07              | 8               | 14 : 59 0  |
| 15 : 10              | 3               | 14 : 59 0  |
| 15 : 17              | 7               | 15 : 10 11   |
| 15 : 35              | 18              | 15 : 11 1  |
| 15 : 53              | 3               | 15 : 20 9  |
| 15 : 56              | 18              | 15 : 25 5  |
| 16 : 03              | 7               | 15 : 39 14   |
| 16 : 12              | 9               | 15 : 55 16   |
| 16 : 21              | 25              | 16 : 07 10   |
| 16 : 46              | 0               | 16 : 28 21   |
| 16 : 46              | 25              | 16 : 43 14   |
| 17 : 11              | 0               | 16 : 45 2  |
| 17 : 17              | 6               | 16 : 45 10   |
| 18                   | 17              | 1.1 Elementary Set Theory .....                          |
| 18                   | 25              | 1.2 Exercises .....                                      |
| 18                   | 10              | 1.3 Natural Numbers, Integers and Rational Numbers ..... |
| 18                   | 0               | 1.4 Real Numbers .....                                   |
| 18                   | 10              | 1.5 Introduction to MATLAB .....                         |
| 18                   | 14              | 1.6 Elementary Combinations .....                        |
| 18                   | 14              | 1.7 Array, Sequence, Limit, .....                        |
| 18                   | 14              | 1.8 Elementary Real Analysis .....                       |
| 18                   | 14              | 1.8.1 Limits of Real Numbers - A Review .....            |
| 18                   | 15              | 1.9 Elementary Number Theory .....                       |
| 18                   | 11              | 15 : 11  |
| 18                   | 03              | 8 : 03 0   |
| 45                   | 4               | 8 : 03 10  |
| 45                   | 11              | 8 : 13 13  |
| 45                   | 32              | 8 : 15 2   |
| 45                   | 32              | 8 : 28 13  |
| 45                   | 32              | 8 : 30 2   |
| 45                   | 0               | 8 : 32 22  |
| 45                   | 0               | 9 : 00 10  |
| 45                   | 3               | 9 : 03 8   |
| 45                   | 11              | 8 : 08 11  |
| 45                   | 11              | 8 : 11 15  |
| 45                   | 15              | 8 : 15 2   |
| 45                   | 15              | 8 : 28 13  |
| 45                   | 15              | 8 : 30 2   |
| 45                   | 21              | 8 : 32 22  |
| 45                   | 21              | 9 : 03 5   |
| 45                   | 44              | 9 : 11 8   |
| 54                   | 54              | 2.3 Exercises in Probability .....                       |
| 54                   | 54              | 2.4 Conditional Probability .....                        |
| 54                   | 54              | 2.4.1 Bayes' Theorem .....                               |
| 54                   | 54              | 2.4.2 Independence and Dependence .....                  |
| 56                   | 56              | 2.5 Exercises in Conditional Probability .....           |
| 60                   | 62              | 62   |

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>3 Random Variables</b>  | <b>65</b> |
| 3.1 Basic Definitions . . . . .                                    | 67        |
| 3.2 Discrete Random Variables . . . . .                            | 70        |
| 3.2.1 An Elementary Family of Bernoulli Random Variables . . . . . | 74        |
| 3.2.2 Independent Bernoulli Trials . . . . .                       | 75        |
| 3.2.3 Some Common Discrete Random Variables . . . . .              | 76        |
| 3.3 Exercises in Discrete Random Variables . . . . .               | 85        |
| 3.4 Continuous Random Variables . . . . .                          | 87        |
| 3.4.1 An Elementary Continuous Random Variable . . . . .           | 90        |
| 3.4.2 Some Common Continuous Random Variables . . . . .            | 91        |
| 3.5 Exercises in Continuous Random Variables . . . . .             | 97        |
| 3.6 Transformations of random variables . . . . .                  | 97        |
| 3.6.1 A Review of Inverse Images . . . . .                         | 98        |
| 3.6.2 Transformations of discrete random variables . . . . .       | 100       |
| 3.6.3 Transformations of continuous random variables . . . . .     | 101       |
| 3.7 Exercises in Transformations of Random Variables . . . . .     | 108       |
| 3.8 Expectations . . . . .   | 108       |
| 3.8.1 Expectations of functions of random variables . . . . .      | 109       |
| 3.8.2 Properties of expectations . . . . .                         | 112       |
| 3.8.3 Expectation of Common Random Variables . . . . .             | 113       |
| 3.9 Exercises in Expectations of Random Variables . . . . .        | 118       |
| 3.10 Multivariate Random Variables . . . . .                       | 119       |
| 3.10.1 $\mathbb{R}^2$ -valued Random Variables . . . . .           | 120       |
| 3.10.2 Conditional Random Variables . . . . .                      | 130       |
| 3.10.3 $\mathbb{R}^m$ -valued Random Variables . . . . .           | 132       |
| 3.10.4 Some Common $\mathbb{R}^m$ -valued RVs . . . . .            | 136       |
| 3.10.5 Dependent Random Variables . . . . .                        | 141       |
| 3.11 Exercises in Multivariate Random Variables . . . . .          | 142       |
| 3.12 Characteristic Functions . . . . .                            | 145       |
| 3.12.1 Obtaining Moments from Characteristic Function . . . . .    | 145       |
| 3.12.2 Moment Generating Function . . . . .                        | 150       |
| 3.13 Exercises in Characteristic Functions . . . . .               | 150       |
| 3.14 Statistics . . . . .  | 151       |
| 3.14.1 Data and Statistics . . . . .                               | 151       |
| 3.14.2 Univariate Data . . . . .                                   | 158       |
| 3.14.3 Bivariate Data . . . . .                                    | 160       |
| 3.14.4 Trivariate Data . . . . .                                   | 161       |
| 3.14.5 Multivariate Data . . . . .                                 | 162       |
| 3.14.6 Loading and Exploring Real-world Data . . . . .             | 163       |
| 3.14.7 Geological Data . . . . .                                   | 163       |
| 3.14.8 Meteorological Data . . . . .                               | 166       |
| 3.14.9 Textual Data . . . . .                                      | 170       |
| 3.14.10 Machine Sensor Data . . . . .                              | 171       |
| 3.15 Exercises in Statistics . . . . .                             | 172       |

```

for z=1:132 %Loop to generate 1000 waiting times based on claimed lambda
  u2=rand;%Generate a random number
  realisationsClaimed(z)=-(1/lambdaClaimed)*log(u2);
  %Create realisation of x, random number u and lambda claimed
end
meanClaimed(x)=mean(realisationsClaimed);
%Find mean of each array of realisations
end
meanOfClaim=mean(meanClaimed)%Overall mean of realisations created
meanClaimed=sort(meanClaimed);%Sort array
lowerBound=meanClaimed(25)
%Create a 95% confidence interval for the mean found
upperBound=meanClaimed(975)

```

The above code was written 15/10/07 by J Fenemore and makes use of the following function:

```

function x = deMoivreEqui(u,k);
%
% return samples from deMoivre(1/k,1/k,...,1/k) RV X
%
% File Dates : Created 08/06/07 Modified 08/06/07
% Author(s) : Raaz
%
% Call Syntax: x = deMoivreEqui(u,k);
%               deMoivreEqui(u,k);
%
% Input      : u = array of uniform random numbers e.g. rand
%               k = number of equi-probable outcomes of X
% Output     : x = samples from X
%
x = ceil(k * u); % ceil(y) is the smallest integer larger than y
% floor is useful when the outcomes are {0,1,...,k-1}
% x = floor(k * u);
%%%%%

```

#### IV. Raw data

|      |   |     |
|------|---|-----|
| 1.1  | Physical Random Number Generators                                   | 173 |
| 1.2  | Pseudo-Random Number Generators                                     | 173 |
| 1.3  | Linerar Congruential Generators                                     | 174 |
| 1.4  | Generalized Feedback Shift Register and the "Mersenne Twister" PRNG | 177 |
| 1.5  | Simulation of non-Uniform(0,1) Random Variables                     | 179 |
| 1.6  | Inversion Sampler for Continuous Random Variables                   | 179 |
| 1.7  | Inversion Sampler for Discrete Random Variables                     | 187 |
| 1.8  | von Neumann Rejection Sampler (RS)                                  | 196 |
| 1.9  | Exercises in Simulation   | 201 |
| 2    | Limit Laws of Statistics  | 202 |
| 2.1  | Convergence of Random Variables                                     | 202 |
| 2.2  | Law of Large Numbers  | 208 |
| 2.3  | Central Limit Theorem   | 211 |
| 2.4  | Application: Point Estimation of $E(X_1)$                           | 213 |
| 2.5  | Application: Tolerating Errors in our estimate of $E(X_1)$          | 214 |
| 2.6  | Exercises in Limit Laws of Statistics                               | 216 |
| 2.7  | Set Estimation of $E(X_1)$  | 217 |
| 3    | Finite Markov Chains  | 218 |
| 3.1  | Stochastic Processes  | 218 |
| 3.2  | Introduction  | 219 |
| 3.3  | Irreducibility and Aperiodicity                                     | 227 |
| 3.4  | Stationarity  | 229 |
| 3.5  | Reversibility   | 231 |
| 3.6  | Standard normal distribution function table                         | 235 |
| 3.7  | Inference for Statistical Experiments                               | 241 |
| 3.8  | Some Common Experiments   | 241 |
| 3.9  | Typical Decision Problems with Experiments                          | 243 |
| 3.10 | Decision Problems for Actions                                       | 244 |
| 3.11 | Statistics for Bernoulli Trials (Inference for Proportions)         | 245 |
| 3.12 | Testing biaseness of a coin   | 245 |
| 3.13 | Review of underlying probability concepts                           | 246 |
| 4    | Summary of Probability Theory I                                     | 236 |
| 4.1  | Inroduction   | 241 |
| 4.2  | Some Inference  | 241 |
| 4.3  | Tyical Decision Problems  | 243 |
| 4.4  | Decision Problems for Actions                                       | 244 |
| 4.5  | Statistics for Bernoulli Trials (Inference for Proportions)         | 245 |
| 4.6  | Testing biaseness of a coin   | 245 |
| 4.7  | Review of underlying probability concepts                           | 246 |
| 5    | Inference for Statistical Experiments                               | 241 |
| 5.1  | Some Common Experiments   | 241 |
| 5.2  | Typical Decision Problems   | 243 |
| 5.3  | Decision Problems for Actions                                       | 244 |
| 5.4  | Statistics for Bernoulli Trials (Inference for Proportions)         | 245 |
| 5.5  | Testing biaseness of a coin   | 245 |
| 5.6  | Review of underlying probability concepts                           | 246 |
| 6    | Summary of Probability Theory II                                    | 236 |
| 6.1  | Some Inference  | 236 |
| 6.2  | Typical Decision Problems   | 236 |
| 6.3  | Decision Problems for Actions                                       | 236 |
| 6.4  | Statistics for Bernoulli Trials (Inference for Proportions)         | 236 |
| 6.5  | Testing biaseness of a coin   | 236 |
| 6.6  | Review of underlying probability concepts                           | 236 |
| 7    | Inference for Statistical Experiments                               | 241 |
| 7.1  | Introduction  | 241 |
| 7.2  | Some Common Experiments   | 241 |
| 7.3  | Typical Decision Problems   | 243 |
| 7.4  | Decision Problems for Actions                                       | 244 |
| 7.5  | Statistics for Bernoulli Trials (Inference for Proportions)         | 245 |
| 7.6  | Testing biaseness of a coin   | 245 |
| 7.7  | Review of underlying probability concepts                           | 246 |

```

sampledLtimes=[lantitimes lockLtimes],%add all times into 1 array
x=Linspace(0,1000),%create array
lambda=0.1;%Set claimed lambda
f=1-exp(-lambda*x),%Create cdf realizations based on claimed lambda
[X1,Y1]=ECDF(f);%call to class ECDF function, save output values in arrays x1
%and y1
hold on;%Hold plots for superimposition
plot(x,f)
title('CDF and CDF'),%Title of plot
xlabel('Time'),%X-axis label
ylabel('Probability'),%Y-axis label
%Lower band plot
series(x1,lambda*(1-Epsn),zeros(1,Length(y1))),%Upper band plot
series(x1,max(y1-Epsn,0),zeros(1,Length(y1))),%Lower band plot
series(x1,lambda*(1+Epsn),zeros(1,Length(y1))),%Upper band plot
axis([0,30,0,1])%Axis limits
hold off
Alpha=0.05;%Set alpha to 5%
SampleSize=132;
Epsn=sqrt((1/(2*SampleSize))*log(2/Alpha));%Epsilon-n for the confidence band

```

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 7.5.3 The success / failure rule . . . . .                               | 253 |
| 7.5.4 Confidence intervals for a proportion . . . . .                    | 264 |
| 7.6 Fundamentals of Estimation . . . . .                                 | 279 |
| 7.6.1 Introduction . . . . .   | 279 |
| 7.6.2 Point Estimation . . . . .   | 279 |
| 7.6.3 Some Properties of Point Estimators . . . . .                      | 280 |
| 7.6.4 Confidence Set Estimation . . . . .                                | 283 |
| 7.7 Fundamentals of Hypothesis Testing . . . . .                         | 287 |
| 7.7.1 Introduction . . . . .   | 287 |
| 7.7.2 The Wald Test . . . . .  | 288 |
| 7.7.3 A Composite Hypothesis Test . . . . .                              | 290 |
| 7.7.4 p-values . . . . .   | 292 |
| 7.7.5 Permutation Test for the equality of any two DFs . . . . .         | 293 |
| 7.7.6 Pearson's Chi-Square Test for Multinomial Trials . . . . .         | 296 |
| 7.8 Parameter Estimation and Likelihood . . . . .                        | 301 |
| 7.8.1 Point and Set Estimation – A General Likelihood Approach . . . . . | 301 |
| 7.8.2 Likelihood . . . . .   | 301 |
| 7.8.3 Moment Estimator (MME) . . . . .                                   | 312 |
| 7.9 Practical Excursion in One-dimensional Optimisation . . . . .        | 313 |
| 7.10 More Properties of the Maximum Likelihood Estimator . . . . .       | 317 |
| 7.11 Fisher Information . . . . .  | 317 |
| 7.12 Delta Method . . . . .  | 324 |
| 7.13 Non-parametric DF Estimation . . . . .                              | 328 |
| 7.13.1 Estimating DF . . . . .   | 329 |
| 7.14 Plug-in Estimators of Statistical Functionals . . . . .             | 333 |
| 7.15 Bootstrap . . . . .   | 336 |
| 7.15.1 Non-parametric Bootstrap for Confidence Sets . . . . .            | 336 |
| 7.15.2 Parametric Bootstrap for Confidence Sets . . . . .                | 339 |
| 7.16 Linear Regression . . . . .   | 342 |
| 7.16.1 Introduction . . . . .  | 342 |
| 7.16.2 Simple Linear Regression . . . . .                                | 342 |
| 7.16.3 Least Squares and Maximum Likelihood . . . . .                    | 343 |
| 7.16.4 Properties of the Least Squares Estimator (LSE) . . . . .         | 344 |

## Answers to Selected Exercises

346

## 8 Appendix

|                    |     |
|--------------------|-----|
| 8.1 Code . . . . . | 384 |
| 8.2 Data . . . . . | 391 |

## 9.4.5 Conclusion

The calculated value of  $\lambda$  is 0.1105. When this value is used to estimate the mean waiting time, and including the observed waiting times, we can conclude that Metro delivers a service better than claimed. From this  $\lambda$ , we see a mean waiting time of 9.04 minutes - 58 seconds less than the 10 minutes wait claimed.

Furthermore, the mean waiting time estimate calculated and its 95% confidence interval (not including the average waiting times observed) cause us to not accept the null hypothesis,  $H_0$  of  $\mu = 10$  minutes at the 95% confidence level.

From all of this, we can confirm that Metro is quite right in claiming an arrival of an Orbiter bus every ten minutes at any stop. In fact, it appears that they do better than this by a whole minute. However, it is all very well to claim this on paper but it is crucial to note that waiting times of 28 minutes do happen, rarely. This illustrates a very important difference between practical and statistical significance. In this case, it has no major effects, as the observed waiting time is less than claimed.

## Author Contributions

*Josh's Contributions:* The original concept; data recordings for Wednesday, Thursday and Friday (5hrs); data organisation; analysis; methodology and implementation and the preliminary report, final report and presentation notes. *Yirang's Contributions:* Monday's and Tuesday's data recordings (4hrs).

## Appendices

## I

```
x=linspace(0,50,1000);%Array of x points to evaluate
lambda1=0.1105%Estimated lambda
f1=lambda1*exp(-lambda1.*x);%Calculated probabilities
plot(x,f1,'color',[0 0.6 0]);%Plot coloured red
hold
lambda2=0.1%Claimed lambda
f2=lambda2*exp(-lambda2.*x);%Calculated probabilities
plot(x,f2,'color',[0.6 0 0]);%Plot coloured green
xlabel('Waiting time,x mins')%Graph titles
ylabel('probability of waiting x mins')
title('PDF of exponential distribution')
```

## II

```
antiTimes=[8 3 7 18 18 3 7 9 9 25 0 0 25 6 ...
10 0 10 8 16 9 1 5 16 6 4 1 3 21 0 28 3 8 ...
6 6 11 8 10 15 0 8 7 11 10 9 12 13 8 10 11 8 ...
7 11 5 9 11 14 13 5 8 9 12 10 13 6 11 13];
clockTimes=[0 0 11 1 9 5 14 16 2 10 21 1 14 2 10 ...
24 6 1 14 14 0 14 4 11 15 0 10 2 13 2 22 ...
10 5 6 13 1 13 10 11 4 7 9 12 8 16 15 14 5 ...
10 12 9 8 0 5 13 13 6 8 4 13 15 7 11 6 23 1];
%The raw data-the waiting times for each direction
```

|       |   |     |
|-------|---|-----|
| 9.1   | Testing the Approximation of $\pi$ by Buffon's Needle Test      | 393 |
| 9.1.1 | Introduction & Motivation                                       | 393 |
| 9.1.2 | Motivation & Methods  | 394 |
| 9.1.3 | Results   | 399 |
| 9.1.4 | Conclusion  | 399 |
| 9.2   | Estimating the Binomial probability for a Galton's Quincunx     | 402 |
| 9.2.1 | Motivation & Introduction                                       | 402 |
| 9.2.2 | Motivation & Methods  | 403 |
| 9.2.3 | Statistical Methodology   | 404 |
| 9.2.4 | Results & Conclusion  | 405 |
| 9.3   | Investigation of a Statistical Simulation from the 19th Century | 406 |
| 9.3.1 | Introduction and Motivation                                     | 406 |
| 9.3.2 | Statistical Methodology   | 407 |
| 9.3.3 | Results   | 409 |
| 9.3.4 | Conclusion  | 411 |
| 9.4   | Testing the average waiting time for the Orbiter Bus Service    | 414 |
| 9.4.1 | Motivation  | 414 |
| 9.4.2 | Method  | 415 |
| 9.4.3 | Results   | 416 |
| 9.4.4 | Discussion  | 416 |
| 9.4.5 | Conclusion  | 419 |
| 9.5   | Diameter of <i>Dosinia</i> Shells                               | 424 |
| 9.5.1 | Introduction and Objective                                      | 424 |
| 9.5.2 | Motivations and Methods   | 424 |
| 9.5.3 | Results   | 425 |

Figure 9.10: This plot is the Empirical CDF plot (black), with a 95% confidence interval (red) and the actual CDF based on claimed  $\lambda = 0.1$  (blue). The Matlab code for this graph is given in Appendix II. This graph shows the accuracy of the empirical distribution and hence the accuracy of the data we collected. There are some inconsistencies caused by the randomness of inter-arrival times but our empirical CDF is generally good as the actual CDF lies mostly within the interval of the data. With more data points, our accuracy would greatly improve.

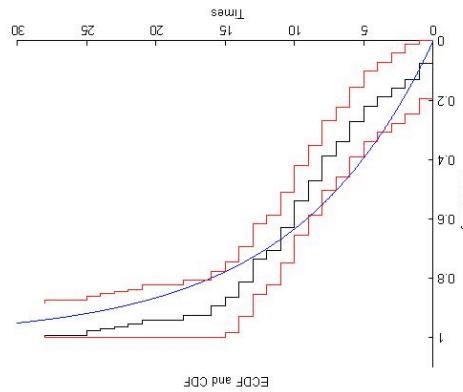
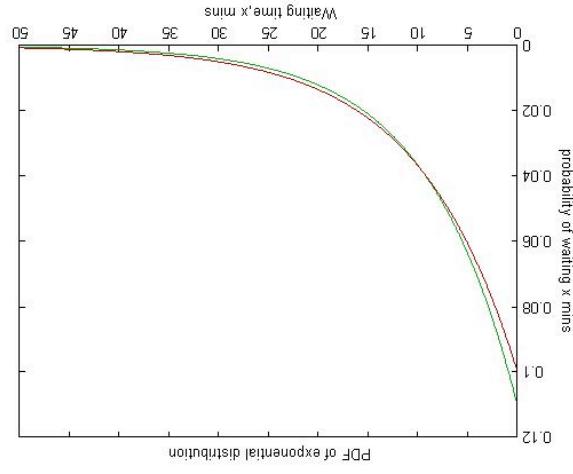


Figure 9.9: This graph shows the probability distribution function for the exponential function with the green line indicating a  $\lambda$  value of 0.1, the claimed  $\lambda$ . The red line indicates the value of  $\lambda$  estimated, 0.1105. From this graph, you can see the probability of getting a short waiting time is high - approximately 0.06, while the probability of a long waiting time is much lower - approximately 0.01. The Matlab code for this graph is shown in Appendix I.



## List of Tables

|     |  |     |
|-----|--|-----|
| 1   | Time Table for Virtual Student of Probability Theory I . . . . .   | 4   |
| 2   | Time Table for Inference Theory I . . . . .  | 6   |
| 1.1 | Symbol Table: Sets and Numbers . . . . .   | 28  |
| 3.1 | The 8 $\omega$ 's in the sample space $\Omega$ of the experiment $\mathcal{E}_\theta^3$ are given in the first row above.<br>The RV $Y$ is the number of 'Heads' in the 3 tosses and the RV $Z$ is the number of 'Tails' in the 3 tosses. Finally, the RVs $Y'$ and $Z'$ are the indicator functions of the event that 'all three tosses were Heads' and the event that 'all three tosses were Tails', respectively. . . . . | 131 |
| 6.1 | Symbol Table: Probability and Statistics . . . . .   | 238 |
| 6.2 | Random Variables with PDF and PMF (using indicator function), Mean and Variance  | 239 |
| 6.3 | Symbol Table: Sets and Numbers . . . . .   | 239 |
| 6.4 | Symbol Table: Probability and Statistics . . . . .   | 240 |
| 7.1 | Outcomes of an hypothesis test. . . . .  | 288 |
| 7.2 | Some terminology in hypothesis testing. . . . .  | 288 |
| 7.3 | Evidence scale against the null hypothesis in terms of the range of p-value. . . . .   | 292 |

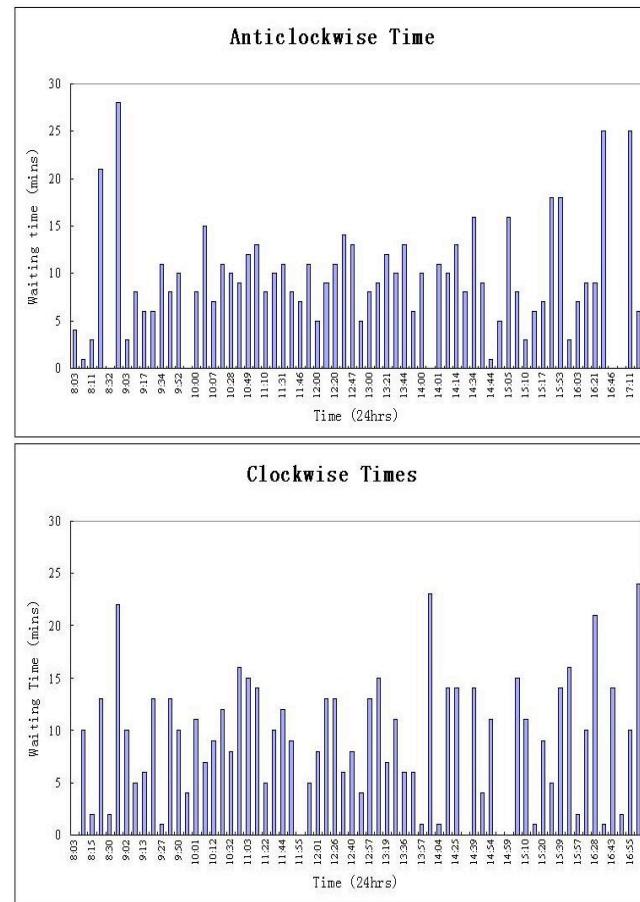


Figure 9.8: From the graphs above, we can see that often, a short wait is followed by a long wait, in both directions. Also, the anticlockwise times are generally much closer to 10 minutes waiting time. It is also seen that around rush hour times (8:30, 15:00, 16:45), a pattern emerged where several buses in quick succession were followed by a long wait for the next bus to arrive. This could be because of the time taken for more passengers than usual to aboard and depart, and areas where traffic volume is greater at these times.

## List of Figures

- 1.1 Union and intersection of sets shown by Venn diagrams . . . . . 19
- 1.2 These Venn diagram illustrate De Morgan's Laws. . . . . 20
- 1.3 A function  $f$  ("father of") from  $\mathbb{X}$  (a set of children) to  $\mathbb{Y}$  (their fathers) and its inverse ("children of"). . . . . . 23
- 1.4 A pictorial depiction of addition and its inverse. The domain is plotted in orthogonal axes. . . . . . 24
- 1.5 A depiction of the real line segment  $[-10, 10]$ . . . . . . 26
- 1.6 Point plot and stem plot of the finite sequence  $\{b_1, b_{10}\}$  declared as an array. . . . . . 38
- 2.1 A binary tree whose leaves are all possible outcomes. . . . . . 47
- 2.2 First ball number in 1114 NZ Lotto draws from 1987 to 2008. . . . . . 50
- 2.3 Refrence to the Venn diagram will help you understand this idea behind the proof of the total probability theorem. . . . . . 58
- 3.1 The indicator function of event  $A \in \mathcal{F}$  is a RV  $\mathbb{I}_A$  with  $\text{DF } F$  . . . . . 69
- 3.2 A RV  $X$  from a sample space  $\Omega$  with 8 elements to  $\mathbb{R}$  and its  $\text{DF } F$  . . . . . 69
- 3.3  $f(x)$  and  $F(x)$  of the fair coin toss random variable  $X$ , a discrete uniform RV on  $\{0, 1\}$ . . . . . . 72
- 3.4  $f(x)$  and  $F(x)$  of the fair die toss random variable  $X$ , a discrete uniform RV on  $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ . . . . . . 73
- 3.5  $f(x)$  and  $F(x)$  of sumised astragal toss random variable  $X$ , a discrete (non-uniform) RV on  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ . . . . . . 74
- 3.6  $\text{PMF } f(x; \theta)$  and  $\text{DF } f(x; \theta)$  with  $\theta = 0.33$ . You should see how PMF and DF change as  $\theta$  goes from 0 to 1 . . . . . . 75
- 3.7  $\text{PMF of } X \sim \text{Geometric}(\theta = 0.5)$  and the relative frequency histogram based on 100 and 1000 samples from  $X$  obtained according to Simulation 144 and Labwork 145 you will see in the sequel. . . . . . 78
- 3.8 PDF of  $X \sim \text{Binomial}(n = 10, \theta = 0.5)$  and the relative frequency histogram based on 100,000 samples from  $X$  obtained according to Simulation 148. . . . . . 80
- 3.9 Figures from Sir Francis Galton, F.R.S., *Natural Inheritance*, Macmillan, 1889. . . . . . 81
- 3.10  $f(x)$  and  $F(x)$  of the Uniform(0, 1) random variable  $X$ . . . . . . 90

The raw data is given in Appendix IV.

The average waiting time for the anticlockwise direction = 9.19 mins.

The average waiting time for the clockwise direction = 8.95 mins.

The total average = 9.07 mins.

The minimum waiting time = 0 mins.

The maximum waiting time = 28 mins.

There are 66 waiting time samples for each direction.

Notes for the data:

- Some buses waited at the stop for random amounts of time in order to space the buses apart (this was never for long: 1 or 2 minutes). This was not taken into account when recording arrival times.
- School rush traffic (heavier volumes) was present from 3 p.m. to 3.30 p.m. approx.
- Evening commuter rush was present from 4.30 p.m. onwards.
- Morning commuter rush was from 8 a.m. to 9.30 p.m. approx.
- Observations on the data: The anticlockwise direction tends to be much more consistent, having a closer average to ten minutes and more observed times close to ten minutes.

During less busy hours, buses arrive much more regularly.

The results of the code in (Appendix III) are as follows.

Using the calculated sample  $\lambda = 0.1105$ . The calculated 95% confidence interval for this value is  $[0.1078, 0.1129]$ .

The claimed lambda is  $\lambda = 0.1$ . As the calculated sample is within this interval and the claimed  $\lambda$  is below, we can see that the bus arrival is slightly less than claimed (using  $H = 1/\lambda$ ).

Using the claimed  $\lambda$ , the randomly obtained mean value for waiting time is  $H = 0.9842$ . The calculated 95% confidence interval for the mean waiting time is  $[0.2882, 10.6237]$ .

When
 When the calculated sample  $\lambda = 0.1105$ . The calculated 95% confidence interval for this value is  $[0.1078, 0.1129]$ . |

The claimed lambda is  $\lambda = 0.1$ . As the calculated sample is within this interval and the claimed  $\lambda$  is below, we can see that the bus arrival is slightly less than claimed (using  $H = 1/\lambda$ ).

Using the claimed  $\lambda$ , the randomly obtained mean value for waiting time is  $H = 0.9842$ . The calculated 95% confidence interval for the mean waiting time is  $[0.2882, 10.6237]$ .

When the calculated sample  $\lambda = 0.1105$  was used to produce the mean waiting time and its 95% confidence interval, the following was produced:

None of these values is within the interval prevoiusly stated.

I found from the samples that the anticlockwise, clockwise and total mean waiting times are  $H = 9.19$ , 8.95 and 9.07, respectively. Note the mean waiting time is within the interval the interval prevoiusly stated.

It is important that the short waiting times is high - the probability of waiting 15 minutes or more is 0.128 which, in reality, is quite high also. Practically, this means it every 10 times you wait for an Otritter to arrive, it will take 15 minutes or more to come. This value may be acceptable by Metro and indeed is good, considering so many unknown factors in traffic, but it would surely frustrate passengers being 5 minutes behind time.

## 9.4.4 Discussion

During less busy hours, buses arrive much more regularly.

The results of the code in (Appendix III) are as follows.

Observations on the data: The anticlockwise direction tends to be much more consistent, having a closer average to ten minutes and more observed times close to ten minutes.

• Observations on the data: The anticlockwise direction tends to be much more consistent, having a closer average to ten minutes and more observed times close to ten minutes.

• Morning commuter rush was from 8 a.m. to 9.30 p.m. approx.

• Evening commuter rush was present from 4.30 p.m. onwards.

• School rush traffic (heavier volumes) was present from 3 p.m. to 3.30 p.m. approx.

• Arrival times.

• Some buses waited at the stop for random amounts of time in order to space the buses apart (this was never for long: 1 or 2 minutes). This was not taken into account when recording arrival times.

• School rush traffic (heavier volumes) was present from 3 p.m. to 3.30 p.m. approx.

• Evening commuter rush was present from 4.30 p.m. onwards.

• Morning commuter rush was from 8 a.m. to 9.30 p.m. approx.

• Observations on the data: The anticlockwise direction tends to be much more consistent, having a closer average to ten minutes and more observed times close to ten minutes.

• Observations on the data: The anticlockwise direction tends to be much more consistent, having a closer average to ten minutes and more observed times close to ten minutes.

• Observations on the data: The anticlockwise direction tends to be much more consistent, having a closer average to ten minutes and more observed times close to ten minutes.

• Observations on the data: The anticlockwise direction tends to be much more consistent, having a closer average to ten minutes and more observed times close to ten minutes.

• Observations on the data: The anticlockwise direction tends to be much more consistent, having a closer average to ten minutes and more observed times close to ten minutes.

• Observations on the data: The anticlockwise direction tends to be much more consistent, having a closer average to ten minutes and more observed times close to ten minutes.

• Observations on the data: The anticlockwise direction tends to be much more consistent, having a closer average to ten minutes and more observed times close to ten minutes.

• Observations on the data: The anticlockwise direction tends to be much more consistent, having a closer average to ten minutes and more observed times close to ten minutes.

• Observations on the data: The anticlockwise direction tends to be much more consistent, having a closer average to ten minutes and more observed times close to ten minutes.

• Observations on the data: The anticlockwise direction tends to be much more consistent, having a closer average to ten minutes and more observed times close to ten minutes.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 3.11 A convenient but mathematically imprecise Matlab plot from a polyline interpolation for the PDF and DF or CDF of the Uniform(0, 1) continuous RV $X$ . . . . .   | 91  |
| 3.12 $f(x; \lambda)$ and $F(x; \lambda)$ of an exponential random variable where $\lambda = 1$ (dotted) and $\lambda = 2$ (dashed). . . . .   | 92  |
| 3.13 Density and distribution functions of Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RVs, for $\lambda = 1, 10, 10^{-1}$ , in four different axes scales. . . . .  | 93  |
| 3.14 $f(x)$ and $F(x)$ of the Uniform( $\theta_1, \theta_2$ ) random variable $X$ . . . . .   | 94  |
| 3.15 PDF and DF of a Normal( $\mu, \sigma^2$ ) RV for different values of $\mu$ and $\sigma^2$ . . . . .  | 105 |
| 3.16 Mean ( $E_\theta(X)$ ), variance ( $V_\theta(X)$ ) and the rate of change of variance ( $\frac{d}{d\theta} V_\theta(X)$ ) of a Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV $X$ as a function of the parameter $\theta$ . . . . .  | 113 |
| 3.17 Mean and variance of a Geometric( $\theta$ ) RV $X$ as a function of the parameter $\theta$ . . . . .  | 115 |
| 3.18 PDF of $X \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda = 10)$ and the relative frequency histogram based on 1000 samples from $X$ according to Simulation 149. . . . .  | 116 |
| 3.19 Diagrams done on the board! . . . . .  | 130 |
| 3.20 Visual Cognitive Tool GUI: Quincunx & Septcunx. . . . .  | 138 |
| 3.21 Quincunx on the Cartesian plane. Simulations of Binomial( $n = 10, \theta = 0.5$ ) RV as the x-coordinate of the ordered pair resulting from the culmination of sample trajectories formed by the accumulating sum of $n = 10$ IID Bernoulli( $\theta = 0.5$ ) random vectors over $\{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$ with probabilities $\{\theta, 1 - \theta\}$ , respectively. The blue lines and black asterisks perpendicular to and above the diagonal line, i.e. the line connecting $(0, 10)$ and $(10, 0)$ , are the density histogram of the samples and the PMF of our Binomial( $n = 10, \theta = 0.5$ ) RV, respectively. . . . . | 139 |
| 3.22 JPDF, Marginal PDFs and Frequency Histogram of Bivariate Standard Normal R $\vec{V}$ . .   | 141 |
| 3.23 JPDF, Marginal PDFs and Frequency Histogram of a Bivariate Normal R $\vec{V}$ for lengths of girths of cylindrical shafts in a manufacturing process (in cm). . . . .  | 142 |
| 3.24 Sample Space, Random Variable, Realisation, Data, and Data Space. . . . .  | 152 |
| 3.25 Data Spaces $\mathbb{X} = \{0, 1\}^2$ and $\mathbb{X} = \{0, 1\}^3$ for two and three Bernoulli trials, respectively. .  | 152 |
| 3.26 Plot of the DF of Uniform(0, 1), five IID samples from it, and the ECDF $\hat{F}_5$ for these five data points $x = (x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5) = (0.5164, 0.5707, 0.0285, 0.1715, 0.6853)$ that jumps by $1/5 = 0.20$ at each of the five samples. . . . .  | 157 |
| 3.27 Frequency, Relative Frequency and Density Histograms . . . . .   | 159 |
| 3.28 Frequency, Relative Frequency and Density Histograms . . . . .   | 160 |
| 3.29 2D Scatter Plot . . . . .  | 161 |
| 3.30 3D Scatter Plot . . . . .  | 162 |
| 3.31 Plot Matrix of uniformly generated data in $[0, 1]^5$ . . . . .  | 162 |
| 3.32 Matrix of Scatter Plots of the latitude, longitude, magnitude and depth of the 22-02-2011 earth quakes in Christchurch, New Zealand. . . . .   | 165 |
| 3.33 Google Earth Visualisation of the earth quakes . . . . .   | 167 |
| 3.34 Daily rainfalls in Christchurch since March 27 2010 . . . . .  | 168 |
| 3.35 Daily temperatures in Christchurch for one year since March 27 2010 . . . . .  | 169 |
| 3.36 Wordle of JOE 2010 . . . . .   | 170 |
| 3.37 Double Pendulum . . . . .  | 171 |

#### 9.4.2 Method

The experiment we carried out is relatively simple. We sat at the bus stop outside the UCSA building on Ilam road and recorded the arrival times of each Orbiter bus and then calculated the waiting times between each bus. This was done for both clockwise and anticlockwise directions. The waiting time for the first bus in both directions was taken from the time of our arrival to the stop. After that, the waiting time was calculated as the times between bus arrivals.

A range of times were recorded, which covered an entire working day - 8 a.m. to 5 p.m.. These times were recorded on different days to assess not only the time of day but also different days, so we could see how these differences affect the times. The different times give a fairer assessment of the waiting times. It was assumed that for each day of the week, the waiting times for specific times of the day are relatively the same. A sample taken any day at a specific time would represent all days in the week at that time. The experiment was conducted in this manner because of availability and time restrictions.

While we realise that taking more samples would increase accuracy and reliability while also giving a better description of actual events, we felt it impractical to sit at the stop and record times for an entire day for each day of the week.

#### Statistical Methodology

For the experiment, we modelled the distribution of the inter-arrival times or waiting times of the Orbiter bus service using the exponential distribution. The probability distribution function is as shown below. The distribution is continuous.

$$f(x; \lambda) = \lambda * \exp(-\lambda * x)$$

Where:  $x$  is the waiting time, and  $\lambda$  is the rate parameter or  $1/\text{mean}(x)$ .

The mean of this distribution is  $1/\lambda$  and has variance  $1/\lambda^2$ .

The exponential distribution was chosen because of its important memory-less property. Each new waiting time for the next bus is completely independent of the past waiting times. Each bus's arrival is assumed to be independent of the last.

For this experiment, I will be testing whether the average waiting time is ten minutes. More formally:

$$H_0(\text{null hypothesis}): \mu = 10 \text{ minutes}$$

$$H_A(\text{Alternative hypothesis}): \mu \neq 10 \text{ minutes}$$

To test this hypothesis, we used non-parametric bootstrap methods to estimate  $\lambda$  and obtain a 95% confidence interval for this value. These values will be formed by sampling the data observed with replacement, at equal probabilities, 132 times, of which an average will be taken. The whole process was then repeated 1000 times. An overall average calculated  $\lambda$  will be then transformed into an average waiting time using the formula:

$$\mu = 1/\lambda$$

where  $\mu$  is the average.

This will then be compared and contrasted against the average waiting time found by generating 132 realisations of waiting times then calculating the average of these, then repeating this process 1000 times. This is a parametric bootstrap based technique. For this,  $\lambda = 1/10$  (where  $\mu = 10$  minutes and using the formula above.) An overall average will be found along with a 95% confidence

## Abstract

#### 9.4.1 Motivation



J Fenimore and Y Wang

#### 9.4 Testing the average waiting time for the Orbiter Bus Service

CHAPTER 9. STUDENT PROJECTS

CHAPTER 9. STUDENT PROJECTS

LIST OF FIGURES

- 7.1 Geometry of the  $\Theta$ 's for de Moivre[ $k$ ] Experiments with  $k \in \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ . . . . . 242
- 7.2 Density and Confidence Interval of the Asymptotically Normal Point Estimator . . . . . 285
- 7.3 Plot of power function  $\beta(\lambda)$  for different values of the critical value  $c$  and the size  $\alpha$  as function of the critical values. . . . . 290
- 7.4 The smallest  $\alpha$  at which a size  $\alpha$  test rejects the null hypothesis  $H_0$  is the p-value. . . . . 292
- 7.5 Data Spaces  $\mathbb{X}_1 = \{0, 1\}$ ,  $\mathbb{X}_2 = \{0, 1\}^2$  and  $\mathbb{X}_3 = \{0, 1\}^3$  for one, two and three IID Bernoulli trials, respectively and the corresponding likelihood functions. . . . . 303
- 7.6 Plot of  $\log(L(\lambda))$  as a function of the parameter  $\lambda$  and the MLE  $\hat{\lambda}_{132}$  of 0.1102 for Fenemore-Wang Orbiter Waiting Times Experiment from STAT 218 S2 2007. The density or PDF and the DF at the MLE of 0.1102 are compared with a histogram and the empirical DF. . . . . 307
- 7.7 Comparing the Exponential( $\hat{\lambda}_{6128} = 28.6694$ ) PDF and DF with a histogram and empirical DF of the times (in units of days) between earth quakes in NZ. The epicenters of 6128 earth quakes are shown in left panel. . . . . 308
- 7.8 Plots of the log likelihood  $\ell_n(\theta) = \log(L(1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0; \theta))$  as a function of the parameter  $\theta$  over the parameter space  $\Theta = [0, 1]$  and the MLE  $\hat{\theta}_{10}$  of 0.4 for the coin-tossing experiment shown in standard scale (left panel) and log scale for  $x$ -axis (right panel). . . . . 311
- 7.9 100 realizations of 95% confidence intervals based on samples of size  $n = 10, 100$  and 1000 simulated from IID Bernoulli( $\theta^* = 0.5$ ) RVs. The MLE  $\hat{\theta}_n$  (cyan dot) and the log-likelihood function (magenta curve) for each of the 100 replications of the experiment for each sample size  $n$  are depicted. The approximate normal-based 95% confidence intervals with blue boundaries are based on the exact  $\text{se}_n = \sqrt{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)/n} = \sqrt{1/4}$ , while those with red boundaries are based on the estimated  $\widehat{\text{se}}_n = \sqrt{\hat{\theta}_n(1 - \hat{\theta}_n)/n} = \sqrt{\frac{\bar{x}_n(1 - \bar{x}_n)}{n}}$ . The fraction of times the true parameter  $\theta^* = 0.5$  was contained by the exact and approximate confidence interval (known as *empirical coverage*) over the 100 replications of the simulation experiment for each of the three sample sizes are given by the numbers after `Cvrg.=` and `~`, above each sub-plot, respectively. . . . . 311
- 7.10 The ML fitted Rayleigh( $\hat{\alpha}_{10} = 2$ ) PDF and a histogram of the ocean wave heights. . . . . 315
- 7.11 Plot of  $\log(L(\lambda))$  as a function of the parameter  $\lambda$ , the MLE  $\hat{\lambda}_{132} = 0.1102$  and 95% confidence interval  $C_n = [0.0914, 0.1290]$  for Fenemore-Wang Orbiter Waiting Times Experiment from STAT 218 S2 2007. The PDF and the DF at (1) the MLE 0.1102 (black), (2) lower 95% confidence bound 0.0914 (red) and (3) upper 95% confidence bound 0.1290 (blue) are compared with a histogram and the empirical DF. . . . . 323
- 7.12 Plots of ten distinct ECDFs  $\hat{F}_n^{(1)}$  based on 10 sets of  $n$  IID samples from Uniform(0, 1) RV  $X$ , as  $n$  increases from 10 to 100 to 1000. The DF  $F(x) = x$  over  $[0, 1]$  is shown in red. The script of Labwork 241 was used to generate this plot. . . . . 329
- 7.13 The empirical DFs  $\hat{F}_n^{(1)}$  from sample size  $n = 10, 100, 1000$  (black), is the point estimate of the fixed and known DF  $F(x) = x, x \in [0, 1]$  of Uniform(0, 1) RV (red). The 95% confidence band for each  $\hat{F}_n$  are depicted by green lines. . . . . 331
- 7.14 The empirical DF  $\hat{F}_{6128}$  for the inter earth quake times and the 95% confidence bands for the non-parametric experiment. . . . . 331
- 7.15 The empirical DF  $\hat{F}_{132}$  for the Orbiter waiting times and the 95% confidence bands for the non-parametric experiment. . . . . 332

## Appendix B

| Table 1 | Table 2 | Table 3 |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 0.03    | 2.29    | ++++    |
| 0.11    | 2.51    | +--     |
| 0.19    | 2.77    | -++     |
| 0.27    | 3.25    | ++-     |
| 0.35    | 3.49    | ++      |
| 0.43    | 4.00    | ++      |
|         | 4.55    | --      |
| *       | 2.43    | +++     |
| *       | 2.47    | ++-     |
| *       | 2.72    | ++      |
| *       | 3.15    | --      |

|      |     |        |             |
|------|-----|--------|-------------|
| 0.03 | 45  | 40.375 | 0.139705882 |
| 0.04 | 46  | 40.375 | 0.140071207 |
| 0.05 | 47  | 40.375 | 0.140071303 |
| 0.06 | 48  | 40.375 | 0.140071405 |
| 0.07 | 49  | 40.375 | 0.140071507 |
| 0.08 | 50  | 40.375 | 0.140071609 |
| 0.09 | 51  | 40.375 | 0.140071711 |
| 0.10 | 52  | 40.375 | 0.140071813 |
| 0.11 | 53  | 40.375 | 0.140071915 |
| 0.12 | 54  | 40.375 | 0.140072017 |
| 0.13 | 55  | 40.375 | 0.140072119 |
| 0.14 | 56  | 40.375 | 0.140072221 |
| 0.15 | 57  | 40.375 | 0.140072323 |
| 0.16 | 58  | 40.375 | 0.140072425 |
| 0.17 | 59  | 40.375 | 0.140072527 |
| 0.18 | 60  | 40.375 | 0.140072629 |
| 0.19 | 61  | 40.375 | 0.140072731 |
| 0.20 | 62  | 40.375 | 0.140072833 |
| 0.21 | 63  | 40.375 | 0.140072935 |
| 0.22 | 64  | 40.375 | 0.140073037 |
| 0.23 | 65  | 40.375 | 0.140073139 |
| 0.24 | 66  | 40.375 | 0.140073241 |
| 0.25 | 67  | 40.375 | 0.140073343 |
| 0.26 | 68  | 40.375 | 0.140073445 |
| 0.27 | 69  | 40.375 | 0.140073547 |
| 0.28 | 70  | 40.375 | 0.140073649 |
| 0.29 | 71  | 40.375 | 0.140073751 |
| 0.30 | 72  | 40.375 | 0.140073853 |
| 0.31 | 73  | 40.375 | 0.140073955 |
| 0.32 | 74  | 40.375 | 0.140074057 |
| 0.33 | 75  | 40.375 | 0.140074159 |
| 0.34 | 76  | 40.375 | 0.140074261 |
| 0.35 | 77  | 40.375 | 0.140074363 |
| 0.36 | 78  | 40.375 | 0.140074465 |
| 0.37 | 79  | 40.375 | 0.140074567 |
| 0.38 | 80  | 40.375 | 0.140074669 |
| 0.39 | 81  | 40.375 | 0.140074771 |
| 0.40 | 82  | 40.375 | 0.140074873 |
| 0.41 | 83  | 40.375 | 0.140074975 |
| 0.42 | 84  | 40.375 | 0.140075077 |
| 0.43 | 85  | 40.375 | 0.140075179 |
| 0.44 | 86  | 40.375 | 0.140075281 |
| 0.45 | 87  | 40.375 | 0.140075383 |
| 0.46 | 88  | 40.375 | 0.140075485 |
| 0.47 | 89  | 40.375 | 0.140075587 |
| 0.48 | 90  | 40.375 | 0.140075689 |
| 0.49 | 91  | 40.375 | 0.140075791 |
| 0.50 | 92  | 40.375 | 0.140075893 |
| 0.51 | 93  | 40.375 | 0.140075995 |
| 0.52 | 94  | 40.375 | 0.140076097 |
| 0.53 | 95  | 40.375 | 0.140076199 |
| 0.54 | 96  | 40.375 | 0.140076301 |
| 0.55 | 97  | 40.375 | 0.140076403 |
| 0.56 | 98  | 40.375 | 0.140076505 |
| 0.57 | 99  | 40.375 | 0.140076607 |
| 0.58 | 100 | 40.375 | 0.140076709 |
| 0.59 | 101 | 40.375 | 0.140076811 |
| 0.60 | 102 | 40.375 | 0.140076913 |
| 0.61 | 103 | 40.375 | 0.140077015 |
| 0.62 | 104 | 40.375 | 0.140077117 |
| 0.63 | 105 | 40.375 | 0.140077219 |
| 0.64 | 106 | 40.375 | 0.140077321 |
| 0.65 | 107 | 40.375 | 0.140077423 |
| 0.66 | 108 | 40.375 | 0.140077525 |
| 0.67 | 109 | 40.375 | 0.140077627 |
| 0.68 | 110 | 40.375 | 0.140077729 |
| 0.69 | 111 | 40.375 | 0.140077831 |
| 0.70 | 112 | 40.375 | 0.140077933 |
| 0.71 | 113 | 40.375 | 0.140078035 |
| 0.72 | 114 | 40.375 | 0.140078137 |
| 0.73 | 115 | 40.375 | 0.140078239 |
| 0.74 | 116 | 40.375 | 0.140078341 |
| 0.75 | 117 | 40.375 | 0.140078443 |
| 0.76 | 118 | 40.375 | 0.140078545 |
| 0.77 | 119 | 40.375 | 0.140078647 |
| 0.78 | 120 | 40.375 | 0.140078749 |
| 0.79 | 121 | 40.375 | 0.140078851 |
| 0.80 | 122 | 40.375 | 0.140078953 |
| 0.81 | 123 | 40.375 | 0.140079055 |
| 0.82 | 124 | 40.375 | 0.140079157 |
| 0.83 | 125 | 40.375 | 0.140079259 |
| 0.84 | 126 | 40.375 | 0.140079361 |
| 0.85 | 127 | 40.375 | 0.140079463 |
| 0.86 | 128 | 40.375 | 0.140079565 |
| 0.87 | 129 | 40.375 | 0.140079667 |
| 0.88 | 130 | 40.375 | 0.140079769 |
| 0.89 | 131 | 40.375 | 0.140079871 |
| 0.90 | 132 | 40.375 | 0.140079973 |
| 0.91 | 133 | 40.375 | 0.140080075 |
| 0.92 | 134 | 40.375 | 0.140080177 |
| 0.93 | 135 | 40.375 | 0.140080279 |
| 0.94 | 136 | 40.375 | 0.140080381 |
| 0.95 | 137 | 40.375 | 0.140080483 |
| 0.96 | 138 | 40.375 | 0.140080585 |
| 0.97 | 139 | 40.375 | 0.140080687 |
| 0.98 | 140 | 40.375 | 0.140080789 |
| 0.99 | 141 | 40.375 | 0.140080891 |
| 1.00 | 142 | 40.375 | 0.140080993 |
| 1.01 | 143 | 40.375 | 0.140081095 |
| 1.02 | 144 | 40.375 | 0.140081197 |
| 1.03 | 145 | 40.375 | 0.140081299 |
| 1.04 | 146 | 40.375 | 0.140081391 |
| 1.05 | 147 | 40.375 | 0.140081493 |
| 1.06 | 148 | 40.375 | 0.140081595 |
| 1.07 | 149 | 40.375 | 0.140081697 |
| 1.08 | 150 | 40.375 | 0.140081799 |
| 1.09 | 151 | 40.375 | 0.140081891 |
| 1.10 | 152 | 40.375 | 0.140081993 |
| 1.11 | 153 | 40.375 | 0.140082095 |
| 1.12 | 154 | 40.375 | 0.140082197 |
| 1.13 | 155 | 40.375 | 0.140082299 |
| 1.14 | 156 | 40.375 | 0.140082391 |
| 1.15 | 157 | 40.375 | 0.140082493 |
| 1.16 | 158 | 40.375 | 0.140082595 |
| 1.17 | 159 | 40.375 | 0.140082697 |
| 1.18 | 160 | 40.375 | 0.140082799 |
| 1.19 | 161 | 40.375 | 0.140082891 |
| 1.20 | 162 | 40.375 | 0.140082993 |
| 1.21 | 163 | 40.375 | 0.140083095 |
| 1.22 | 164 | 40.375 | 0.140083197 |
| 1.23 | 165 | 40.375 | 0.140083299 |
| 1.24 | 166 | 40.375 | 0.140083391 |
| 1.25 | 167 | 40.375 | 0.140083493 |
| 1.26 | 168 | 40.375 | 0.140083595 |
| 1.27 | 169 | 40.375 | 0.140083697 |
| 1.28 | 170 | 40.375 | 0.140083799 |
| 1.29 | 171 | 40.375 | 0.140083891 |
| 1.30 | 172 | 40.375 | 0.140083993 |
| 1.31 | 173 | 40.375 | 0.140084095 |
| 1.32 | 174 | 40.375 | 0.140084197 |
| 1.33 | 175 | 40.375 | 0.140084299 |
| 1.34 | 176 | 40.375 | 0.140084391 |
| 1.35 | 177 | 40.375 | 0.140084493 |
| 1.36 | 178 | 40.375 | 0.140084595 |
| 1.37 | 179 | 40.375 | 0.140084697 |
| 1.38 | 180 | 40.375 | 0.140084799 |
| 1.39 | 181 | 40.375 | 0.140084891 |
| 1.40 | 182 | 40.375 | 0.140084993 |
| 1.41 | 183 | 40.375 | 0.140085095 |
| 1.42 | 184 | 40.375 | 0.140085197 |
| 1.43 | 185 | 40.375 | 0.140085299 |
| 1.44 | 186 | 40.375 | 0.140085391 |
| 1.45 | 187 | 40.375 | 0.140085493 |
| 1.46 | 188 | 40.375 | 0.140085595 |
| 1.47 | 189 | 40.375 | 0.140085697 |
| 1.48 | 190 | 40.375 | 0.140085799 |
| 1.49 | 191 | 40.375 | 0.140085891 |
| 1.50 | 192 | 40.375 | 0.140085993 |
| 1.51 | 193 | 40.375 | 0.140086095 |
| 1.52 | 194 | 40.375 | 0.140086197 |
| 1.53 | 195 | 40.375 | 0.140086299 |
| 1.54 | 196 | 40.375 | 0.140086391 |
| 1.55 | 197 | 40.375 | 0.140086493 |
| 1.56 | 198 | 40.375 | 0.140086595 |
| 1.57 | 199 | 40.375 | 0.140086697 |
| 1.58 | 200 | 40.375 | 0.140086799 |
| 1.59 | 201 | 40.375 | 0.140086891 |
| 1.60 | 202 | 40.375 | 0.140086993 |
| 1.61 | 203 | 40.375 | 0.140087095 |
| 1.62 | 204 | 40.375 | 0.140087197 |
| 1.63 | 205 | 40.375 | 0.140087299 |
| 1.64 | 206 | 40.375 | 0.140087391 |
| 1.65 | 207 | 40.375 | 0.140087493 |
| 1.66 | 208 | 40.375 | 0.140087595 |
| 1.67 | 209 | 40.375 | 0.140087697 |
| 1.68 | 210 | 40.375 | 0.140087799 |
| 1.69 | 211 | 40.375 | 0.140087891 |
| 1.70 | 212 | 40.375 | 0.140087993 |
| 1.71 | 213 | 40.375 | 0.140088095 |
| 1.72 | 214 | 40.375 | 0.140088197 |
| 1.73 | 215 | 40.375 | 0.140088299 |
| 1.74 | 216 | 40.375 | 0.140088391 |
| 1.75 | 217 | 40.375 | 0.140088493 |
| 1.76 | 218 | 40.375 | 0.140088595 |
| 1.77 | 219 | 40.375 | 0.140088697 |
| 1.78 | 220 | 40.375 | 0.140088799 |
| 1.79 | 221 | 40.375 | 0.140088891 |
| 1.80 | 222 | 40.375 | 0.140088993 |
| 1.81 | 223 | 40.375 | 0.140089095 |
| 1.82 | 224 | 40.375 | 0.140089197 |
| 1.83 | 225 | 40.375 | 0.140089299 |
| 1.84 | 226 | 40.375 | 0.140089391 |
| 1.85 | 227 | 40.375 | 0.140089493 |
| 1.86 | 228 | 40.375 | 0.140089595 |
| 1.87 | 229 | 40.375 | 0.140089697 |
| 1.88 | 230 | 40.375 | 0.140089799 |
| 1.89 | 231 | 40.375 | 0.140089891 |
| 1.90 | 232 | 40.375 | 0.140089993 |
| 1.91 | 233 | 40.375 | 0.140090095 |
| 1.92 | 234 | 40.375 | 0.140090197 |
| 1.93 | 235 | 40.375 | 0.140090299 |
| 1.94 | 236 | 40.375 | 0.140090391 |
| 1.95 | 237 | 40.375 | 0.140090493 |
| 1.96 | 238 | 40.375 | 0.140090595 |
| 1.97 | 239 | 40.375 | 0.140090697 |
| 1.98 | 240 | 40.375 | 0.140090799 |
| 1.99 | 241 | 40.375 | 0.140090891 |
| 2.00 | 242 | 40.375 | 0.140090993 |
| 2.01 | 243 | 40.375 | 0.140091095 |
| 2.02 | 244 | 40.375 | 0.140091197 |
| 2.03 | 245 | 40.375 | 0.140091299 |
| 2.04 | 246 | 40.375 | 0.140091391 |
| 2.05 | 247 | 40.375 | 0.140091493 |
| 2.06 | 248 | 40.375 | 0.140091595 |
| 2.07 | 249 | 40.375 | 0.140091697 |
| 2.08 | 250 | 40.375 | 0.140091799 |
| 2.09 | 251 | 40.375 | 0.140091891 |
| 2.10 | 252 | 40.375 | 0.140091993 |
| 2.11 | 253 | 40.375 | 0.140092095 |
| 2.12 | 254 | 40.375 | 0.140092197 |
| 2.13 | 255 | 40.375 | 0.140092299 |
| 2.14 | 256 | 40.375 | 0.140092391 |
| 2.15 | 257 | 40.375 | 0.140092493 |
| 2.16 | 258 | 40.375 | 0.140092595 |
| 2.17 | 259 | 40.375 | 0.140092697 |
| 2.18 | 260 | 40.375 | 0.140092799 |
| 2.19 | 261 | 40.375 | 0.140092891 |
| 2.20 | 262 | 40.375 | 0.140092993 |
| 2.21 | 263 | 40.375 | 0.140093095 |
| 2.22 | 264 | 40.375 | 0.140093197 |
| 2.23 | 265 | 40.375 | 0.140093299 |
| 2.24 | 266 | 40.375 | 0.140093391 |
| 2.25 | 267 | 40.375 | 0.140093493 |
| 2.26 | 268 | 40.375 | 0.140093595 |
| 2.27 | 269 | 40.375 | 0.140093697 |
| 2.28 | 270 | 40.375 | 0.140093799 |
| 2.29 | 271 | 40.375 | 0.140093891 |
| 2.30 | 272 | 40.375 | 0.140093993 |
| 2.31 | 273 | 40.375 | 0           |

# Chapter 1

## Preliminaries

### 1.1 Elementary Set Theory

A **set** is a collection of distinct objects. We write a set by enclosing its elements with curly braces. For example, we denote a set of the two objects  $\circ$  and  $\bullet$  by:

$$\{\circ, \bullet\}.$$

Sometimes, we give names to sets. For instance, we might call the first example set  $A$  and write:

$$A = \{\circ, \bullet\}.$$

We do not care about the order of elements within a set, i.e.  $A = \{\circ, \bullet\} = \{\bullet, \circ\}$ . We do not allow a set to contain multiple copies of any of its elements unless the copies are distinguishable, say by labels. So,  $B = \{\circ, \bullet, \bullet\}$  is not a set unless the two copies of  $\bullet$  in  $B$  are labelled or marked to make them distinct, e.g.  $B = \{\circ, \bullet_1, \bullet_2\}$ . Names for sets that arise in a mathematical discourse are given upper-case letters ( $A, B, C, D, \dots$ ). Special symbols are reserved for commonly encountered sets.

Here is the set  $\text{E}\otimes G$  of twenty two Greek lower-case alphabets that we may encounter later:

$$\text{E}\otimes G = \{ \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \epsilon, \zeta, \eta, \theta, \kappa, \lambda, \mu, \nu, \xi, \pi, \rho, \sigma, \tau, \upsilon, \phi, \chi, \psi, \omega \}.$$

They are respectively named alpha, beta, gamma, delta, epsilon, zeta, eta, theta, kappa, lambda, mu, nu, xi, pi, rho, sigma, tau, upsilon, phi, chi, psi and omega. **LHS** and **RHS** are abbreviations for objects on the Left and Right Hand Sides, respectively, of some binary relation. By the notation:

$$\text{LHS} := \text{RHS},$$

we mean that **LHS is equal, by definition, to RHS**.

The set which does not contain any element (the collection of nothing) is called the **empty set**:

$$\emptyset := \{ \}.$$

We say an element  $b$  **belongs to** a set  $B$ , or simply that  $b$  belongs to  $B$  or that  $b$  is an element of  $B$ , if  $b$  is one of the elements that make up the set  $B$ , and write:

$$b \in B.$$

### 9.3.4 Conclusion

We cannot reject  $H_0$  at  $\alpha = 0.05$  because the observed test statistic is outside the rejection region. In relation to our statistical question, this means that there is insufficient evidence to suggest that our sample is not from GDN.

### Potential Modification

Since the standard normal distribution is more common in all areas, we wanted to convert Galton's Dice into a new set which can be used for simulating the standard normal distribution.

In his experiment, Galton took the mid-point of each probability interval, and then found the corresponding  $x$ -values. Instead of applying a tedious calculation to find the  $x$ -values, we took a  $z$ -value table, and found the corresponding  $z$ -values to the upper bound of those intervals. This enables the creation of two new dice<sup>2</sup>:

|          |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|----------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Dice (1) | 0.05 | 0.10 | 0.15 | 0.21 | 0.27 | 0.32 |
|          | 0.37 | 0.43 | 0.49 | 0.55 | 0.61 | 0.67 |
|          | 0.74 | 0.81 | 0.89 | 0.97 | 1.05 | 1.15 |
|          | 1.26 | 1.38 | 1.53 | *    | *    | *    |
| Dice (2) | 1.56 | 1.58 | 1.60 | 1.62 | 1.65 | 1.68 |
|          | 1.70 | 1.73 | 1.76 | 1.79 | 1.83 | 1.86 |
|          | 1.90 | 1.94 | 1.99 | 2.04 | 2.09 | 2.15 |
|          | 2.23 | 2.31 | 2.42 | 2.56 | 2.80 | 4.00 |

Through **Matlab**, we were able to map the data gathered during our original experiment into the values shown in previous table, corresponding to the standard Normal, and develop the following plot:

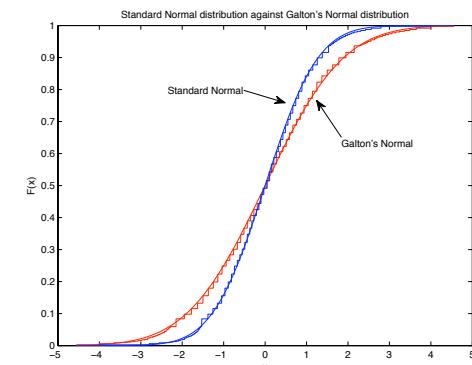


Figure 9.7: Plot showing the Standard Normal Distribution against Galton's Normal Distribution.

<sup>2</sup>Tables showing the new values for dice 1 & 2. The third dice can remain the same as Galton's.

$$(A \cup B)^c = A^c \cap B^c \text{ and } (A \cap B)^c = A^c \cup B^c$$

By drawing Venn diagrams, let us check **De Morgan's Laws**:

We say two sets  $C$  and  $D$  are **disjoint** if they have no elements in common, i.e.  $C \cap D = \emptyset$ .

$$B^c := U \setminus B$$

the set of all elements of  $U$  that don't belong to  $B$ , i.e.:

When a universal set, e.g.  $U$  is well-defined, the **complement** of a given set  $B$  denoted by  $B^c$  is

$$C \setminus D := \{x : x \in C \text{ and } x \notin D\}$$

The set-difference or **difference** of two sets  $C$  and  $D$ , written as  $C \setminus D$ , is the set of elements in  $C$  that do not belong to  $D$ . Formally:

Figure 1.1: Union and intersection of sets shown by Venn diagrams

Venn diagrams are visual aids for set operations as in the diagrams below.

$$C \cup D := \{x : x \in C \text{ or } x \in D\}$$

belong to both  $C$  and  $D$ . Formally:

Similarly, the **intersection** of two sets  $C$  and  $D$ , written as  $C \cap D$ , is the set of elements that belongs to  $C$  and  $D$ :

When a colon ( $:$ ) appears inside a set, it stands for such that. Thus, the above expression is read as " $C$  union  $D$ " is equal by definition to the set of all elements  $x$ , such that  $x$  belongs to  $C$  or  $D$ .

$$C \cup D := \{x : x \in C \text{ or } x \in D\}$$

We can formally express our definition of set union as:

The **union** of two sets  $C$  and  $D$ , written as  $C \cup D$ , is the set of elements that belongs to  $C$  or  $D$ .

and write:

$$C = D \iff C \subseteq D, D \subseteq C$$

We say that two sets  $C$  and  $D$  are **equal** (as sets) and write  $C = D$  if and only if  $(\iff)$  every element of  $C$  is also an element of  $D$ , and every element of  $D$  is also an element of  $C$ . This definition of set equality is notationally summarised as follows:

We say that two sets  $C$  and  $D$  are **disjoint** if they have no elements in common, i.e.  $C \cap D = \emptyset$ . By this definition, any set is a subset of itself.

$$C \subseteq D$$

We say that a set  $C$  is a **subset** of another set  $D$  and write:

For our example set  $A = \{o, e\}$ ,  $* \notin A$  but  $* \in A$ .

$$b \notin B$$

When  $b$  does not belong to  $B$ , we write:

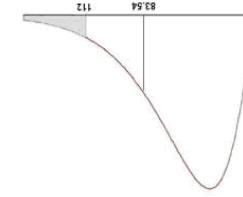
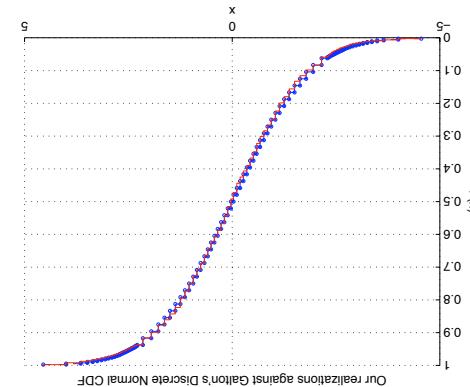


Figure 9.6: Plot showing the empirical CDF of our results against GDN. Our values take on a similar appearance and are very close to GDN. The main deviations occur mostly in the tails.



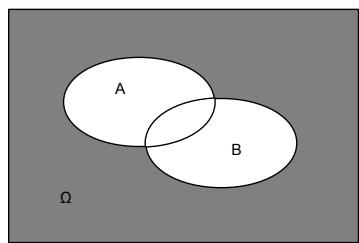
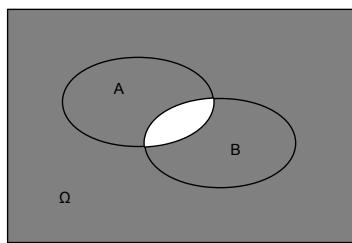
(a)  $(A \cup B)^c = A^c \cap B^c$ (b)  $(A \cap B)^c = A^c \cup B^c$ 

Figure 1.2: These Venn diagram illustrate De Morgan's Laws.

**Classwork 1 (Fruits and colours)** Consider a set of fruits  $F = \{\text{orange, banana, apple}\}$  and a set of colours  $C = \{\text{red, green, blue, orange}\}$ . Then,

1.  $F \cap C =$
2.  $F \cup C =$
3.  $F \setminus C =$
4.  $C \setminus F =$

**Classwork 2 (Subsets of a universal set)** Suppose we are given a universal set  $U$ , and three of its subsets,  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$ . Also suppose that  $A \subset B \subset C$ . Find the circumstances, if any, under which each of the following statements is true (T) and justify your answer:

- |                           |                                |                           |                        |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| (1) $C \subset B$         | T when $B = C$                 | (2) $A \subset C$         | T by assumption        |
| (3) $C \subset \emptyset$ | T when $A = B = C = \emptyset$ | (4) $\emptyset \subset A$ | T always               |
| (5) $C \subset U$         | T by assumption                | (6) $U \subset A$         | T when $A = B = C = U$ |

## 1.2 Exercises

**Ex. 1.1** — Let  $\Omega$  be the universal set of students, lecturers and tutors involved in a course. Now consider the following subsets:

- The set of 50 students,  $S = \{S_1, S_2, S_3, \dots, S_{50}\}$ .
- The set of 3 lecturers,  $L = \{L_1, L_2, L_3\}$ .
- The set of 4 tutors,  $T = \{T_1, T_2, T_3, L_3\}$ .

Note that one of the lecturers also tutors in the course. Find the following sets:

- |                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| (a) $T \cap L$        | (f) $S \cap L$   |
| (b) $T \cap S$        | (g) $S^c \cap L$ |
| (c) $T \cup L$        | (h) $T^c$        |
| (d) $T \cup L \cup S$ | (i) $T^c \cap L$ |
| (e) $S^c$             | (j) $T^c \cap T$ |

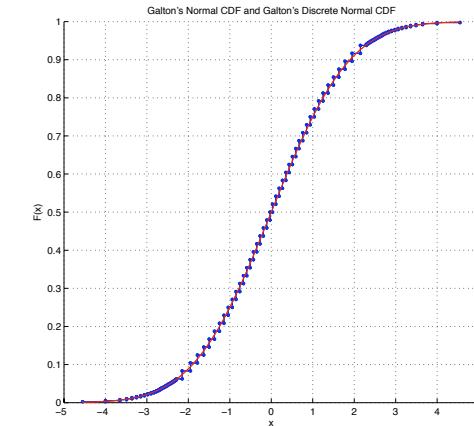


Figure 9.5: Plot showing both the GN and GDN CDFs. They are very similar.

### 9.3.3 Results

Once the experiment was complete and the results collated, they were run through a methodological tester to ensure all values were correct. Testing the data involved running all our sampled values through a Matlab function which checked each number against Galton's 45 possible values. Any values that did not match were outputted as ones and the erroneous data were removed before a graph was plotted to measure how well our experiment sampled from GDN.

#### Chi Squared Test

A Chi Squared test was then performed on the data and the results<sup>1</sup> are summarised below.

|                 | Data Values | Observed Count | Expected Count | $(O - E)^2/E$ |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
|                 | -4.55       | 5              | 5.046875       | 0.000435372   |
|                 | -4          | 7              | 5.046875       | 0.755853328   |
|                 | -3.65       | 5              | 5.046875       | 0.000435372   |
|                 | 3.49        | 6              | 5.046875       | 0.180001935   |
|                 | ...         | ...            | ...            | ...           |
|                 | 3.65        | 8              | 5.046875       | 1.72798951    |
|                 | 4           | 11             | 5.046875       | 7.022107198   |
|                 | 4.55        | 5              | 5.046875       | 0.000435372   |
| Total           |             | 1938           | 1938           |               |
| Chi Test Result |             |                |                | 83.54798762   |

$$T = \sum_{i=1}^{90} \frac{(Observever - Expected)^2}{Expected} = 83.548$$

<sup>1</sup>For the full table, please see Appendix A.

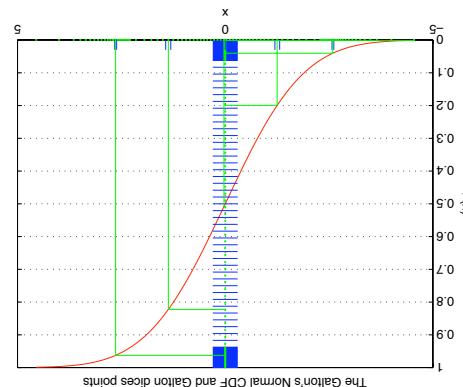
$a = 0.05$ : $\text{Critical Value} = 11.2$ .

For this, as the distribution is now discrete, we can apply the Chi Squared Test to evaluate our null hypothesis. The test used had the following parameters: Degrees of Freedom:  $90 - 1 = 89$  (GN).

The values drawn from throwing Galton's dice come from a discrete distribution, not the continuous Galton Normal. In doing this, we are also able to define our null hypothesis formally:  $H_0 : x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n IID \sim GDN$  Galton's Discrete Normal (GDN) is an approximation to Galton Normal. This is necessary as the values drawn from throwing Galton's dice correspond to the Normal. This is necessary as actual figures and the differences can be attributed to an imprecise value for the standard deviation. We believe the midpoint assumption was correct, as the mapped values are very close to Galton's. Thus, we applied numerical methods to solve for  $x$  (Newton's method).

However, a closed form expression for the inverse CDF does not exist for a Normal distribution. The easiest way to do this would have been to evaluate the inverse CDF function at the midpoints.

Figure 9.4: Plot showing the midpoints mapping back to specific values on the x axis.



We divided the interval  $[0.5, 1]$  equally into 24, with the last 3 intervals further divided into 24 subintervals. In total, this gave us  $21 + 24$  intervals to allocate along the y-axis. The midpoint of each interval was taken in order to compute its corresponding  $x$  value under the inverse CDF map. The following processes to confirm this.

Secondly, we must determine how Galton calculated the values<sup>2</sup> to use on his dice. It was our assumption that he used the midpoints of a set of intervals that partition  $[0, 1]$  and we undertook the following steps to confirm this.

$$\therefore GN \sim N(0, 1.4826)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(x) &= \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{1} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2}} \\ \frac{d}{dx} \phi(x) dx &= \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{1} \exp(-\frac{x^2}{2}) dx \\ \frac{1}{1} &= \int_0^1 \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{1} \exp(-\frac{x^2}{2}) dx \end{aligned}$$

following equation to determine the variance:

Galton's sample is taken from a half-normal distribution with a "probable error" (median error) of one. This implies that the probability between zero and one is a quarter, allowing us to solve the

$$A \times B := \{(a, b) : a \in A \text{ and } b \in B\}$$

A product set is the **Cartesian product** ( $\times$ ) of two or more possibly distinct sets:

$$\mathbb{Z}_+ := \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\} = \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}.$$

The set of non-negative integers is:

$$0 := \#\emptyset = \#\{\}$$

The number zero may be defined as the size of an empty set:

For our example sets,  $A = \{\circ, \bullet\}$  and the set of Greek alphabets  $\mathbb{EFG}$ ,  $\#A = 2$  and  $\#\mathbb{EFG} = 22$ .

$\vdots$

$$\begin{aligned} 2 &:= \#\{\star, \bullet\} = \#\{\circ, \bullet\} = \#\{\circ, \omega\} = \#\{\circ\} = \#\{\circ, \circ, \bullet, \bullet, \dots\} \\ 1 &:= \#\{\star\} = \#\{\bullet\} = \#\{\circ\} = \dots, \end{aligned}$$

$$N := \{1, 2, 3, 4, \dots\}, \text{ may be defined using } \# \text{ as follows:}$$

In fact, the Hindu-Arab numerals we have inherited are based on this intuition of the size of a collection. The elements of the set of **natural numbers**:

$$\#B := \text{Number of elements in the set } B.$$

We denote the number of elements in a set named  $B$  by:

### 1.3 Natural Numbers, Integers and Rational Numbers

| SET SUMMARY                  |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$   | a set containing the elements, $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n$ .  |
| $a \in A$                    | $a$ is an element of the set $A$ .   |
| $A \subseteq B$              | the set $A$ is a subset of $B$ .   |
| $A \cup B$                   | "union", meaning the set of all elements which are in $A$ or $B$ , or both.                                |
| $A \cap B$                   | "intersection", meaning the set of all elements in both $A$ and $B$ .                                      |
| $\{\} \text{ or } \emptyset$ | empty set.   |
| $\emptyset$                  | universal set.   |
| $A^c$                        | the complement of $A$ , meaning the set of all elements in $Q$ , the universal set, which are not in $A$ . |

Ex. 1.4 — Using a Venn diagram, illustrate the idea that  $A \subseteq B$  if and only if  $A \cup B = B$ .

Ex. 1.3 — Using Venn diagram, sketch and check the rule:

$$A \cup (B \cup C) = (A \cup B) \cup (A \cup C)$$

Ex. 1.2 — Using Venn diagram, sketch and check the rule:

$$A \cup (B \cup C) = (A \cup B) \cup (A \cup C)$$

Galton's sample is taken from a half-normal distribution with a "probable error" (median error) of one. This implies that the probability between zero and one is a quarter, allowing us to solve the

For example, if  $A = \{\circ, \bullet\}$  and  $B = \{\star\}$ , then  $A \times B = \{(\circ, \star), (\bullet, \star)\}$ . Elements of  $A \times B$  are called **ordered pairs**.

The binary arithmetic operation of **addition** (+) between a pair of non-negative integers  $c, d \in \mathbb{Z}_+$  can be defined via sizes of disjoint sets. Suppose,  $c = \#C$ ,  $d = \#D$  and  $C \cap D = \emptyset$ , then:

$$c + d = \#C + \#D := \#(C \cup D).$$

For example, if  $A = \{\circ, \bullet\}$  and  $B = \{\star\}$ , then  $A \cap B = \emptyset$  and  $\#A + \#B = \#(A \cup B) \iff 2 + 1 = 3$ .

The binary arithmetic operation of **multiplication** ( $\cdot$ ) between a pair of non-negative integers  $c, d \in \mathbb{Z}_+$  can be defined via sizes of product sets. Suppose,  $c = \#C$ ,  $d = \#D$ , then:

$$c \cdot d = \#C \cdot \#D := \#(C \times D).$$

For example, if  $A = \{\circ, \bullet\}$  and  $B = \{\star\}$ , then  $\#A \cdot \#B = \#(A \times B) \iff 2 \cdot 1 = 2$ .

More generally, a product set of  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_m$  is:

$$A_1 \times A_2 \times \cdots \times A_m := \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m) : a_1 \in A_1, a_2 \in A_2, \dots, a_m \in A_m\}$$

Elements of an  $m$ -product set are called **ordered  $m$ -tuples**. When we take the product of the same set we abbreviate as follows:

$$A^m := \underbrace{A \times A \times \cdots \times A}_{m \text{ times}} := \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m) : a_1 \in A, a_2 \in A, \dots, a_m \in A\}$$

**Classwork 3 (Cartesian product of sets)** 1. Let  $A = \{\circ, \bullet\}$ . What are the elements of  $A^2$ ? 2. Suppose  $\#A = 2$  and  $\#B = 3$ . What is  $\#(A \times B)$ ? 3. Suppose  $\#A_1 = s_1, \#A_2 = s_2, \dots, \#A_m = s_m$ . What is  $\#(A_1 \times A_2 \times \cdots \times A_m)$ ?

Now, let's recall the definition of a function. A **function** is a “mapping” that associates each element in some set  $\mathbb{X}$  (the domain) to exactly one element in some set  $\mathbb{Y}$  (the range). Two different elements in  $\mathbb{X}$  can be mapped to or associated with the same element in  $\mathbb{Y}$ , and not every element in  $\mathbb{Y}$  needs to be mapped. Suppose  $x \in \mathbb{X}$ . Then we say  $f(x) = y \in \mathbb{Y}$  is the **image** of  $x$ . To emphasise that  $f$  is a **function** from  $\mathbb{X} \ni x$  to  $\mathbb{Y} \ni y$ , we write:

$$f(x) = y : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{Y}.$$

And for some  $y \in \mathbb{Y}$ , we call the set:

$$f^{[-1]}(y) := \{x \in \mathbb{X} : f(x) = y\} \subset \mathbb{X},$$

the **pre-image** or **inverse image** of  $y$ , and

$$f^{[-1]} := f^{[-1]}(y \in \mathbb{Y}) = X \subset \mathbb{X},$$

## Motivation

The motivation behind this project is to reconstruct Galton's dice using the methods outlined in his 1890 *Nature* article “Dice for Statistical Experiments” and then harness the power of modern computers to determine how effective this technique was for simulating random numbers from the following distribution.

Galton outlines that the samples were taken from a normal distribution with mean zero and median error one. We shall call this distribution Galton's Normal distribution or GN. However, for the experiment to work, we must use a discrete approximation of the normal distribution, which we will define as Galton's Discrete Normal or GDN. Both will be formally explained in the Methodology section.

To determine the success of this experiment, we formulate the following question as a statistical hypothesis test: “Are our sampled values taken independently and identically from an appropriate discrete distribution which approximates Galton's normal distribution?”

## Materials and Methods

### Experiment Process

In order to recreate Galton's Dice Experiment, we have chosen to replicate the design he explains in his *Nature* article.

### Creating the Dice

We chose to use rimu as it was readily available and inexpensive, unlike the mahogany that Galton had access to. As per his specifications, the wood was cut into six cubes of 1.25 inches (3.2 cm) wide, high and deep, before being covered in a paper template that was designed to fit tightly around the wood. The paper was adhered using general PVA glue.

The only change to Galton's original specification was that we chose to write the values to two decimal places on the faces, as opposed to one decimal place. This was to ensure a higher level of precision when plotting the results.

### Collecting the Data

The experiment was carried out by shaking all of the first three dice (dice 1) at once and rolling them across the flat surface of a table top. We interpreted Galton's terminology of the values that “front the eye” to be the results that one can see by looking directly down on top of the dice. The three dice were then lined up into a row and the values called out and entered onto a Notepad document. We used the following formula to calculate the optimal number of trials needed for our investigation:  $f(x)_{min} * \text{sample size} \approx 5$ , where  $f(x)_{min}$  is the smallest probability for the discrete distribution.

The same rolling process was then performed for dice 2 (two dice at once) and 3 (only one die) with the single exception that we did not need to roll these dice as many times as dice 1.

### 9.3.2 Statistical Methodology

Firstly, we will define Galton's Normal distribution. As derived from an article published in *Statistical Science*<sup>1</sup>, Galton's Normal Distribution has a mean of zero but the variance is not one. Instead,

<sup>1</sup>Stochastic Simulation in the Nineteenth Century. *Statistical Science* (1991) Vol 6, No 1, pg 94.

the references section for the website).

For further details on Galton's experiment, please refer to his article "Dice for Statistical Experiments"; *Nature* (1890) No. 1070, Vol. 42 (This article is available free for download. Please refer to

The dice he created made use of every edge of each face which allowed for 24 equal possibilities as opposed to the six of a normal die.

This experiment came about from Galton's need, as a statistician, to draw a series of values at random to suit various statistical purposes. Dice and marked balls were too tedious to be superior to any other randomisation device. Cards were chosen as they were too simple size was large.

## Statistical Dice

ideologies in the fields of meteorology, psychology and genetics.

In addition to his statistical research, Galton also pioneered new concepts and and correlation. Galton's studies of heredity lead him to introduce the statistical concepts of regression variation. Galton devoted much of his life to exploring and researching aspects of human character by it and thus drew up the arithmetic operation of addition as a function. The domain for addition is the Cartesian product of  $\mathbb{Z}$ :

What is its range?

$$\mathbb{Z}^2 = \mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} = \{(a, b) : a \in \mathbb{Z}, b \in \mathbb{Z}\}$$

Cartesian product of  $\mathbb{Z}$ :

Try to set up the arithmetic operation of addition as a function. The domain for addition is the

**Classwork 4 (Addition over integers)** Consider the set of integers  $\mathbb{Z} = \{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ .

Finally, we say that  $a$  is greater than  $b$  and write  $a > b$  if  $a - b$  is positive. Similarly,  $a$  is greater than  $b$  and write  $a < b$  if  $b - a$  is positive. We say an integer  $a$  is **less than or equal to** an integer  $b$  and write  $a \leq b$  if  $a < b$  or  $a = b$ . Finally, we say that  $a$  is greater than  $b$  and write  $a \geq b$  if  $a > b$  or  $a = b$ . In terms of this we define the notion of order. Every integer is either positive, negative, or zero. The reader is assumed to be familiar with such arithmetic operations with pairs of integers. The reader is assumed to be familiar with such arithmetic operations with pairs of integers. Some examples of functions you may have encountered are **addition** (+), **subtraction** (-), **multiplication** (·) and **division** (/) of ordered pairs such as **addition** (+), **subtraction** (-), **multiplication** (·) and **division** (/) of ordered pairs are dropped. The integers with a minus or negative sign (-) before them are called negative integers and those with a plus or positive sign (+) before them are called positive integers.

$$\mathbb{Z} = \{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, +1, +2, +3, \dots\}.$$

we can motivate the set of integers:

as the **inverse** of  $f$ .

We motivated the non-negative integers  $\mathbb{Z}^+$  via the size of a set. With the notion of two directions (+ and -) and the magnitude of the current position from the origin zero (0) of a dynamic entity,

we can motivate the set of integers:



methodologies employed in this project.

This project is designed to investigate Sir Francis Galton's statistical dice experiment. We constructed Galton's dice according to his prescription and tested the null hypothesis that the outcome comes from these dice do indeed follow a discrete approximation to the normal distribution with median error one. The inverse distribution function sample and Chi Squared test are the statistical

## Abstract

Brett Versteegh and Zhu Shao

## try

### 9.3 Investigation of a Statistical Simulation from the 19th Cen-

("children of").

**Figure 1.3:** A function  $f$  ("father of") from  $X$  (a set of children) to  $Y$  (their fathers) and its inverse

Figure 1.4: A pictorial depiction of addition and its inverse. The domain is plotted in orthogonal Cartesian coordinates.

Addition and multiplication are defined for rational numbers by:

$$\frac{p}{q} + \frac{p'}{q'} = \frac{p \cdot q' + p' \cdot q}{q \cdot q'} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{p}{q} \cdot \frac{p'}{q'} = \frac{p \cdot p'}{q \cdot q'}.$$

The rational numbers form a **field** under the operations of addition and multiplication defined above in terms of addition and multiplication over integers. This means that the following properties are satisfied:

1. Addition and multiplication are each **commutative**

$$a + b = b + a, \quad a \cdot b = b \cdot a,$$

and associative

$$a + (b + c) = (a + b) + c, \quad a \cdot (b \cdot c) = (a \cdot b) \cdot c.$$

2. Multiplication **distributes** over addition

$$a \cdot (b + c) = (a \cdot b) + (a \cdot c).$$

3. 0 is the **additive identity** and 1 is the multiplicative identity

$$0 + a = a \quad \text{and} \quad 1 \cdot a = a.$$

4. Every rational number  $a$  has a negative,  $a + (-a) = 0$  and every non-zero rational number  $a$  has a reciprocal,  $a \cdot 1/a = 1$ .

The field axioms imply the usual laws of arithmetic and allow subtraction and division to be defined in terms of addition and multiplication as follows:

$$\frac{p}{q} - \frac{p'}{q'} := \frac{p}{q} + \frac{-p'}{q'} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{p}{q} / \frac{p'}{q'} := \frac{p}{q} \cdot \frac{q'}{p'}, \quad \text{provided } p' \neq 0.$$

We will see later that the theory of finite fields is necessary for the study of pseudo-random number generators (PRNGs) and PRNGs are the heart-beat of randomness and statistics with computers.

$$\frac{d}{dp} \ln L(p) = \frac{\Sigma x_i}{p} - \frac{nN - \Sigma x_i}{1-p}$$

We can now set  $\frac{d}{dp} \ln L(p) = 0$  to find the maximum:

$$0 = \frac{\Sigma x_i}{p} - \frac{nN - \Sigma x_i}{1-p}$$

$$p = \frac{1}{nN} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i$$

Which is equivalent to:

$$p = \frac{1}{N} E(X)$$

#### 9.2.4 Results & Conclusion

##### Maximum Likelihood Estimation

The MLE of the parameter  $p$  of the quincunx is 0.4995, with a 95% normal based confidence interval of [0.4639,0.5351] calculated as derived above.

##### Conclusion

Maximum Likelihood Estimation from the 100 samples from the model of the quincunx has estimated the parameter for the binomial distribution to be in the range [0.4639,0.5351]. This would seem to verify that, in fact, even though the quincunx is a non-linear physical device that, overall, it is remarkably fair with  $p=0.5$  within the 95% normal based confidence interval.

The estimated cumulative distribution function also suggests that the distribution will converge binomially. Thus, we can conclude as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , it will converge on the standard normal distribution as a consequence of the central limit theorem.

and the sequence  $0.d_1d_2d_3 \dots$  does not terminate with infinitely many consecutive 9s. By the above decimal representation, the following arbitrarily accurate enclosure of the real number  $x$  by rational numbers is implied:

$$x = n + 0.d_1d_2d_3 \dots, \text{ where, each } d_i \in \{0, 1, \dots, 9\}, n \in \mathbb{Z},$$

Unlike rational numbers which are expressible in their reduced forms by  $p/q$ , it is fairly tricky to define or express real numbers. It is possible to define real numbers formally and constructively via equivalence classes of Cauchy sequences of rational numbers. For this all we need are notions of (1) infinity, (2) sequence of rational numbers and (3) distance between any two rational numbers in an infinite sequence of them. These are topics usually covered in an introductory course in real analysis and are necessary for a firm foundation in computational statistics. Instead of a formal construction of real numbers, we give a more concrete one via decimal expansions. From this, it follows that a construction of real numbers can be thought of as a random walk in one dimension. The parameters map to this model as  $p$  being the probability of taking a step right and  $(1-p)$  the probability of taking a step left, and  $n$  being the total number of steps taken. From this, it follows that a probability of given number of  $n$  steps,  $x$  which are to the right of  $n$  to the same point, you have to multiply the probability of those  $n$  steps that you to the right of  $n$  to the same point, you have to combine those steps. The number of ways of ordering the  $x$  right steps in a set of  $n$  steps is given by  $\binom{n}{x}$ . Therefore, the probability of ending up at a particular endpoint is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} L(p) &= \prod_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{x_i}{N} \right)^{d_{x_i}} \left( 1 - \frac{p}{N-d_{x_i}} \right)^{1-d_{x_i}} \\ &= (d-1) \prod_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{x_i}{N} \right)^{d_{x_i}} (1-p)^{N-x_i} \\ &= (d)(d-1) \prod_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{x_i}{N} \right)^{d_{x_i}} (1-p)^{N-x_i} \end{aligned}$$

### Deriving the maximum likelihood estimator

In order to estimate the parameter  $p$  for our physical model, we will use a maximum likelihood estimator (MLE) since it is often regarded as asymptotically optimal. However, for the binomial distribution, the MLE is equivalent to the Method of Moments.

### Parametric Estimation

A note about the endpoint: I have used the convention that the leftmost bucket is 0. The end point numbers also tell you how many right steps you have in the quincunx.

The binomial distribution can be thought of as a random walk in one dimension. The parameters map to this model as  $p$  being the probability of taking a step right and  $(1-p)$  the probability of taking a step left, and  $n$  being the total number of steps taken. From this, it follows that a probability of given number of  $n$  steps,  $x$  which are to the right of  $n$  to the same point, you have to multiply the probability of those  $n$  steps that you to the right of  $n$  to the same point, you have to combine those steps. The number of ways of ordering the  $x$  right steps in a set of  $n$  steps is given by  $\binom{n}{x}$ . Therefore, the probability of ending up at a particular endpoint is as follows:

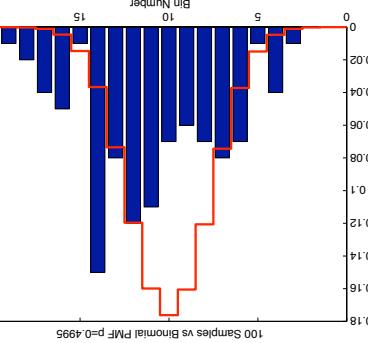


Figure 1.5. Think of the real number system as the continuum of points that make up a line, as shown in Figure 1.5.

$$\begin{aligned} 3.14159265358979 &= \underline{\overline{14}} < \underline{\overline{14}} = 3.14159265358979 + \frac{1}{10^{14}} \\ &\vdots \\ &3 + \frac{1}{10} + \frac{1}{100} + \frac{1}{1000} + \frac{1}{10000} + \frac{1}{100000} + \frac{1}{1000000} + \frac{1}{10000000} \\ &3 + \frac{1}{10} + \frac{1}{100} = \underline{\overline{2}} < \underline{\overline{2}} = 3 + \frac{1}{10} + \frac{1}{100} \\ &3 + \frac{1}{10} = \underline{\overline{1}} < \underline{\overline{1}} = 3 + \frac{1}{10} \end{aligned}$$

We can think of  $\pi$  as being enclosed by the following pairs of rational numbers:

$$\pi = 2.7182818284594 \dots \text{ Euler's constant}$$

$\pi = 3.14159265358979 \dots$  the ratio of the circumference to diameter of a circle

$$\sqrt{2} = 1.41421356237309 \dots \text{ the side length of a square with area of 2 units}$$

Some examples of real numbers that are not rational (**irrational numbers**) are:

for every  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . Thus, rational arithmetic ( $+, -, \cdot, /$ ) can be extended with arbitrary precision to any ordered pair of real numbers  $x$  and  $y$  by operations on their rational enclosures  $\underline{\overline{x}}$  and  $\underline{\overline{y}}$ .

$$n + \frac{1}{d_1} + \frac{1}{d_2} + \dots + \frac{1}{d_k} = \underline{\overline{x}} > x > \underline{\overline{x}} = n + \frac{1}{d_1} + \frac{1}{d_2} + \dots + \frac{1}{d_k} + \frac{1}{10^k}$$

The binomial distribution can be thought of as a random walk in one dimension. The parameters map to this model as  $p$  being the probability of taking a step right and  $(1-p)$  the probability of taking a step left, and  $n$  being the total number of steps taken. From this, it follows that a probability of given number of  $n$  steps,  $x$  which are to the right of  $n$  to the same point, you have to multiply the probability of those  $n$  steps that you to the right of  $n$  to the same point, you have to combine those steps. The number of ways of ordering the  $x$  right steps in a set of  $n$  steps is given by  $\binom{n}{x}$ . Therefore, the probability of ending up at a particular endpoint is as follows:

### Deriving the binomial distribution

### 9.2.3 Statistical Methodology

Figure 1.5: A depiction of the real line segment  $[-10, 10]$ .

The **half-open interval**  $(y, z]$  or  $[y, z)$  and the **open interval**  $(y, z)$  are defined analogously:

$$\begin{aligned}(y, z] &:= \{x : y < x \leq z\}, \\ [y, z) &:= \{x : y \leq x < z\}, \\ (y, z) &:= \{x : y < x < z\}.\end{aligned}$$

We also allow  $y$  to be **minus infinity** (denoted  $-\infty$ ) or  $z$  to be **infinity** (denoted  $\infty$ ) at an open endpoint of an interval, meaning that there is no lower or upper bound. With this allowance we get the set of **real numbers**  $\mathbb{R} := (-\infty, \infty)$ , the **non-negative real numbers**  $\mathbb{R}_+ := [0, \infty)$  and the **positive real numbers**  $\mathbb{R}_{>0}(0, \infty)$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbb{R} &:= (-\infty, \infty) = \{x : -\infty < x < \infty\}, \\ \mathbb{R}_+ &:= [0, \infty) = \{x : 0 \leq x < \infty\}, \\ \mathbb{R}_{>0} &:= (0, \infty) = \{x : 0 < x < \infty\}.\end{aligned}$$

For a positive real number  $b \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$  and an integer  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ , the  $n$ -th **power** or **exponent** of  $b$  is:

$$b^0 = 1, \quad b^n = b^{n-1} \cdot b \quad \text{if } n > 0, \quad b^n = b^{n+1}/b \quad \text{if } n < 0.$$

The following **laws of exponents** hold by mathematical induction when  $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ :

$$b^{m+n} = b^m \cdot b^n, \quad (b^m)^n = b^{m \cdot n}.$$

If  $y \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ , the unique positive real number  $z \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$  such that  $z^m = y$  is called the  $m$ -th **root of  $y$**  and denoted by  $\sqrt[m]{y}$ , i.e.,

$$z^m = y \implies z = \sqrt[m]{y}.$$

For a rational number  $r = p/q \in \mathbb{Q}$ , we define the  $r$ -th power of  $b \in \mathbb{R}$  as follows:

$$b^r = b^{p/q} := \sqrt[q]{b^p}$$

The laws of exponents hold for this definition and different expressions for the same rational number  $r = ap/aq$  yield the same power, i.e.,  $b^{p/q} = b^{ap/aq}$ . Recall that a real number  $x = n + 0.d_1d_2d_3\dots \in \mathbb{R}$  can be arbitrarily precisely enclosed by the rational numbers  $\underline{x}_k := n + \frac{d_1}{10} + \frac{d_2}{100} + \dots + \frac{d_k}{10^k}$  and  $\bar{x}_k := n + \frac{d_1}{10} + \frac{d_2}{100} + \dots + \frac{d_k}{10^k} + \frac{1}{10^k}$  by increasing  $k$ . Suppose first that  $b > 1$ . Then, using rational powers, we can enclose  $b^x$ ,

$$b^{n+\frac{d_1}{10}+\frac{d_2}{100}+\dots+\frac{d_k}{10^k}} = b^x \leq b^x < b^{\bar{x}_k} := b^{n+\frac{d_1}{10}+\frac{d_2}{100}+\dots+\frac{d_k}{10^k}+\frac{1}{10^k}},$$

within an interval of width  $b^{n+\frac{d_1}{10}+\frac{d_2}{100}+\dots+\frac{d_k}{10^k}} \left( b^{\frac{1}{10^k}} - 1 \right) < b^{n+1}(b-1)/10^k$ . By taking a large enough  $k$  we can evaluate  $b^x$  to any accuracy. Finally, when  $b < 1$  we define  $b^x := (1/b)^{-x}$  and when  $b = 0$ ,  $b^x := 1$ .

To this end, we aim to create a quincunx ideally parameterised by  $p = 0.5$  with  $n = 20$ . To verify this, we will use maximum likelihood estimation to test the null hypothesis that  $p = 0.5$ .

## 9.2.2 Materials and Methods

### Construction of physical model

The physical model that we created consisted of nails arranged in a pattern on a sheet of wood that we hoped would achieve as close to the ideal probability of  $p=0.5$ .

### Materials

- Plywood Sheet (1200 x 600 x 20mm)
- Perspex Sheets (1200 x 600 x 2mm and 550 x 800 x 2mm)
- Timber Strips (1200 x 25mm and 600 x 25mm)
- Nails (30 x 2mm)
- Chrome Balls (20mm)

### Construction Details

1. Mark 20 horizontal lines with 25mm spacings with the board in a portrait orientation.
2. Mark vertical lines at 25mm spacings from the centre of the board.
3. Place a nail at the top centre marking
4. Continue to place nails on the marked grid such that one marked grid point always separates the nails both vertically and horizontally.
5. Create the bins by attaching perspex strips directly below the nails of the last row.
6. Fit the edges to the main sheet.
7. The perspex sheet can now be attached to the edges of the quincunx.

A desirable feature of the quincunx is a release mechanism at the top to release the balls used to simulate a random variable and a release at the bottom to retrieve the balls after the experiment.

### Sample Collection

To collect samples from the quincunx the balls are dropped into the device as identically as possible with sufficient time between each drop to ensure that the balls do not interfere with each other so as to keep the samples as identical as possible. The balls are collected in a series of bins numbered from 0 to 21, 0 representing the leftmost bin that the sample can be in and 21 being the rightmost bin. Since we assume that each sample is identical and independent, we record the cumulative number of balls in each bin after dropping 100 balls. The data is shown in the blue bars in the next figure.



| Symbol  | Meaning   |
|---|---|
| $A = \{\star, \circ, \bullet\}$                                 | $A$ is a set containing the elements $\star$ , $\circ$ and $\bullet$                                      |
| $\circ \in A$   | $\circ$ belongs to $A$ or $\circ$ is an element of $A$  |
| $A \ni \circ$   | $\circ$ belongs to $A$ or $\circ$ is an element of $A$  |
| $\circ \notin A$  | $\circ$ does not belong to $A$  |
| $\#A$   | Size of the set $A$ , for e.g. $\#\{\star, \circ, \bullet, \odot\} = 4$                                   |
| $\mathbb{N}$  | The set of natural numbers $\{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$   |
| $\mathbb{Z}$  | The set of integers $\{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$  |
| $\mathbb{Z}_+$  | The set of non-negative integers $\{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$  |
| $\emptyset$   | Empty set or the collection of nothing or $\{\}$  |
| $A \subset B$   | $A$ is a subset of $B$ or $A$ is contained by $B$ , e.g. $A = \{\circ\}, B = \{\bullet\}$                 |
| $A \supset B$   | $A$ is a superset of $B$ or $A$ contains $B$ e.g. $A = \{\circ, \star, \bullet\}, B = \{\circ, \bullet\}$ |
| $A = B$   | $A$ equals $B$ , i.e. $A \subset B$ and $B \subset A$   |
| $Q \implies R$  | Statement $Q$ implies statement $R$ or If $Q$ then $R$  |
| $Q \iff R$  | $Q \implies R$ and $R \implies Q$   |
| $\{x : x \text{ satisfies property } R\}$                       | The set of all $x$ such that $x$ satisfies property $R$   |
| $A \cup B$  | $A$ union $B$ , i.e. $\{x : x \in A \text{ or } x \in B\}$  |
| $A \cap B$  | $A$ intersection $B$ , i.e. $\{x : x \in A \text{ and } x \in B\}$  |
| $A \setminus B$   | $A$ minus $B$ , i.e. $\{x : x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B\}$  |
| $A := B$  | $A$ is equal to $B$ by definition   |
| $A :=: B$   | $B$ is equal to $A$ by definition   |
| $A^c$   | $A$ complement, i.e. $\{x : x \in U, \text{ the universal set, but } x \notin A\}$                        |
| $A_1 \times A_2 \times \dots \times A_m$                        | The $m$ -product set $\{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m) : a_1 \in A_1, a_2 \in A_2, \dots, a_m \in A_m\}$          |
| $A^m$   | The $m$ -product set $\{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m) : a_1 \in A, a_2 \in A, \dots, a_m \in A\}$                |
| $f := f(x) = y : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$             | A function $f$ from domain $\mathbb{X}$ to range $\mathbb{Y}$   |
| $f^{[-1]}(y)$   | Inverse image of $y$  |
| $f^{[-1]} := f^{[-1]}(y \in \mathbb{Y}) = X \subset \mathbb{X}$ | Inverse of $f$  |
| $a < b$ or $a \leq b$   | $a$ is less than $b$ or $a$ is less than or equal to $b$  |
| $a > b$ or $a \geq b$   | $a$ is greater than $b$ or $a$ is greater than or equal to $b$  |
| $\mathbb{Q}$  | Rational numbers  |
| $(x, y)$  | the open interval $(x, y)$ , i.e. $\{r : x < r < y\}$   |
| $[x, y]$  | the closed interval $[x, y]$ , i.e. $\{r : x \leq r \leq y\}$   |
| $(x, y]$  | the half-open interval $(x, y]$ , i.e. $\{r : x < r \leq y\}$   |
| $[x, y)$  | the half-open interval $[x, y)$ , i.e. $\{r : x \leq r < y\}$   |
| $\mathbb{R} := (-\infty, \infty)$                               | Real numbers, i.e. $\{r : -\infty < r < \infty\}$   |
| $\mathbb{R}_+ := [0, \infty)$                                   | Real numbers, i.e. $\{r : 0 \leq r < \infty\}$  |
| $\mathbb{R}_{>0} := (0, \infty)$                                | Real numbers, i.e. $\{r : 0 < r < \infty\}$   |

```

1 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 ...
1 1 1 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 0 1 ...
1 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 1 1 ...
0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 0 1 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 ...
0 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 ...

MLE_theta_star=mean(datalines)% find the maximum likelihood estimator, the sample mean
x=37/42% x=length/distance
piapprox=(2*x)/(1/MLE_theta_star)% estimate of pi
StdErr=sqrt((MLE_theta_star*(1-MLE_theta_star))/200)% standard error
CI=[piapprox-(1.96*StdErr*(2*x))/(MLE_theta_star)^2],piapprox+(1.96*StdErr*(2*x)/(MLE_theta_star)^2)% 95% Confidence ...
Interval for our approximate of pi

long% this is the data for the experiment where the needle is longer in length than the distance between the lines
datalines=[0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 1 1 ...
0 0 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 ...
1 1 1 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 1 ...
1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 1 ...
1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 ...
0 1 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 ...

MLE_theta_star=mean(datalines)% find the maximum likelihood estimator, the sample mean
x=37/35% x=length/distance
piapprox=(2*(1/MLE_theta_star)*(x-sqrt((x^2)-1)+asec(x)))% estimate of pi
StdErr=sqrt((MLE_theta_star*(1-MLE_theta_star))/200)% standard error
CI=[piapprox-(1.96*StdErr*2/(MLE_theta_star)^2)*(x-sqrt((x^2)-1)+asec(x)),piapprox+(1.96*StdErr*2/(MLE_theta_star)^2)* ...
(x-sqrt((x^2)-1)+asec(x)))]% 95% Confidence Interval for our approximate of pi

```

Table 1.1: Symbol Table: Sets and Numbers



```
>> type blah.txt % this allows you to see the contents of blah.txt
3+56
ans =      59
diary off
>> diary blah.txt % reopen the existing diary file blah.txt
>> 45-54
ans =      -9
>> diary off % turn off the current diary file blah.txt again
>> type blah.txt % see its contents
3+56
ans =      59
diary off
45-54
ans =      -9
diary off
```

4. Let's learn to store values in variables of our choice. Type the following at the command prompt :

```
>> VariableCalledX = 12
```

Upon hitting enter you should see that the number 12 has been assigned to the variable named **VariableCalledX** :

```
VariableCalledX =      12
```

5. MATLAB stores default value for some variables, such as pi ( $\pi$ ), i and j (complex numbers).

```
>> pi
ans =      3.1416
>> i
ans =      0 + 1.0000i
>> j
ans =      0 + 1.0000i
```

All predefined symbols (variables, constants, function names, operators, etc) in MATLAB are written in lower-case. Therefore, it is a good practice to name the variable you define using upper and mixed case letters in order to prevent an unintended overwrite of some predefined MATLAB symbol.

6. We could have stored the sum of 13 and 24 in the variable X, by entering:

```
>> X = 13 + 24
X =      37
```

7. Similarly, you can store the outcome of multiplication (via operation \* ), subtraction (via operation -), division (via / ) and exponentiation (via ^ ) of any two numbers of your choice in a variable name of your choice. Evaluate the following expressions in MATLAB :

$$\begin{aligned} p &= 45.89 * 1.00009 & d &= 89.0/23.3454 \\ m &= 5376.0 - 6.00 & p &= 2^{0.5} \end{aligned}$$

8. You may compose the elementary operations to obtain rational expressions by using parenthesis to specify the order of the operations. To obtain  $\sqrt{2}$ , you can type the following into MATLAB 's command window.

$$se(\hat{\Psi}_n) = |g'(\phi)|se(\hat{\Phi}_n)$$

$$se(\hat{\Psi}_n) = \left| \frac{d}{d\phi} g(\phi) \right| se(\hat{\Phi}_n)$$

$$se(\hat{\Psi}_n) = \left| \frac{d}{d\phi} \frac{2}{\phi} (y - \sqrt{y^2 - 1} + \sec^{-1} y) \right| se(\hat{\Phi}_n)$$

$$se(\hat{\Psi}_n) = \left| -2\phi^{-2} \right| (y - \sqrt{y^2 - 1} + \sec^{-1} y) se(\hat{\Phi}_n)$$

$$se(\hat{\Psi}_n) = (2\phi^{-2}) (y - \sqrt{y^2 - 1} + \sec^{-1} y) se(\hat{\Phi}_n)$$

where the estimated standard error is:

$$se(\hat{\Psi}_n) = (2\hat{\phi}_{200}^{-2}) (y - \sqrt{y^2 - 1} + \sec^{-1} y) se(\hat{\Phi}_n) \quad \text{and} \quad se(\hat{\Phi}_n) = \frac{\hat{\phi}_{200}(1-\hat{\phi}_{200})}{200}$$

Now we can calculate the 95% confidence interval for  $\psi^* \approx \pi$ :

$$\hat{\psi}_{200} \pm 1.96 se(\hat{\psi}_{200})$$

### 9.1.3 Results

For the needle same in length as the distance between the lines, we got an approximation for  $\pi$  of 3.0769. The 95% Confidence Interval (2.7640, 3.3898), contains  $\pi$ .

For the needle shorter in length than the distance between the lines, we got an approximation for  $\pi$  of 2.9122. The 95% Confidence Interval (2.5861, 3.2384), contains  $\pi$ .

For the needle longer in length than the distance between the lines, we got an approximation for  $\pi$  of 2.8042. However, the 95% Confidence Interval (2.5769, 3.0316), does not contain  $\pi$ .

### 9.1.4 Conclusion

For the first two cases the 95% Confidence intervals both contain  $\pi$  so we cannot reject the null hypothesis that the outcomes from tossing a needle are directly related to  $\pi$ . For the final case the 95% Confidence interval does not contain  $\pi$  so we reject the null hypothesis and conclude that for this case the outcomes from tossing a needle are not directly related to  $\pi$ . The first two outcomes agree with Buffon's Needle while the third one may in fact be false, because our samples were quite small in hindsight.

### Potential Modification

There are several ways we could improve this experiment. Firstly we could increase sample size and see if we can get better approximations of  $\pi$ . Secondly we could investigate the chance of a needle landing on a line on a square tiled floor, this is the Buffon-Laplace Needle. We could also extend the idea to not only cover needles and lines but also shapes and more complicated arrangements of tiles or lines.

9. When you try to divide by 0, MATLAB returns `Inf` for infinity.

```
>> ans = Inf
```

MATLAB first takes the last power of 2 and then divides it by 2 using its default predece-

**bedmas** can be handy. When in doubt, use parentheses to force the intended order of operations.

10. We can clear the value we have assigned to a particular variable and reuse it. We demonstrate

Enter `X` after `clear`ing it gives the above self-explanatory error message preceded by ??.

11. We can suppress the output on the screen by ending the command with a semi-colon. Take

a look at the simple command that sets `X` to `sin(3.145678)` with and without the ; at the

12. If you do not understand a MATLAB function or command then type `help` or `doc` followed by the function or command. For example:

```
>> x = sin(3.145678);
x = -0.0041
>> x = sin(3.145678)
end;
```

Now for the needle longer in length than the distance between the lines, where  $\phi^* = \frac{\phi}{\phi_{200}}(y) - \sqrt{y^2 - 1} + \sec^{-1}y$

From this we can calculate the standard error of  $\hat{\phi}_{200}$ , the estimator of  $\phi^*$ , and subsequently its confidence interval:

```
>> doc sin
Referenced page in Help browser
Array/sin
Detailed methods:
See also asin, sind,
SIN(X) is the sine of the elements of X.
SIN Sine of argument in radians.
>> help sin
<< doc sin
```

Now we can calculate the 95% confidence interval for  $\phi^*$ :

$$\hat{\phi}_{200} = g(\phi_{200}) = \frac{\phi_{200}}{2}(y - \sqrt{y^2 - 1} + \sec^{-1}y)$$

$$\phi^* = g(\phi^*) = \frac{\phi^*}{2}(y - \sqrt{y^2 - 1} + \sec^{-1}y)$$

Therefore by the Delta Method:  $\approx \frac{\phi}{\phi_{200}}(y) - \sqrt{y^2 - 1} + \sec^{-1}y$ ,  $\phi_{200}$  is the sample mean of this set of data.

Now we can calculate the 95% confidence interval for  $\phi^* \approx \hat{\phi}$ :

$$se(\phi^*) = (2\hat{\phi}_{200}) * se(\hat{\Phi}^u) \quad \text{and} \quad se(\Phi^u) = \frac{200}{\phi_{200} * (1 - \phi_{200})}$$

where the estimated standard error is

$$se(\hat{\Phi}^u) = (2\hat{\phi}_{200}) * se(\Phi^u)$$

$$se(\hat{\Phi}^u) = | -2\hat{\phi}_{200} | * se(\Phi^u)$$

$$se(\hat{\Phi}^u) = \left| \frac{d\phi}{d\hat{\phi}} \right| * se(\Phi^u)$$

$$se(\hat{\Phi}^u) = \left| \frac{d\phi}{d\hat{\phi}} g(\phi) \right| * se(\Phi^u)$$

$$se(\hat{\Phi}^u) = | g(\phi) | * se(\Phi^u)$$

confidence intervals as follows:

From this we can calculate the standard error of the estimator of  $\phi^*$ , namely,  $\hat{\Phi}^u$ , and subsequently

$$\hat{\Phi}_{200} = g(\phi_{200}) = \frac{\phi_{200}}{2\hat{\phi}}$$

$$\phi^* = g(\phi^*) = \frac{\phi^*}{2\hat{\phi}}$$

The omission of parentheses about  $1/2$  means something else and you get the following output:

```
>> 2^(1/2)
ans = 1.4142
>> 2^(1/2)
ans = 1.4142
```

Therefore by the Delta Method:  $\approx \frac{\phi}{\phi_{200}}$ ,  $\phi_{200}$  is the sample mean of this set of data.

$$\hat{\phi}_{200} \pm 1.96 se(\hat{\phi}_{200})$$

Now we can calculate the 95% confidence interval for  $\phi^* \approx \hat{\phi}$ :

13. Set the variable `x` to equal 17.13 and evaluate  $\cos(x)$ ,  $\log(x)$ ,  $\exp(x)$ ,  $\arccos(x)$ ,  $\text{abs}(x)$ ,  $\text{sign}(x)$  using the MATLAB commands `cos`, `log`, `exp`, `acos`, `abs`, `sign`, respectively. Read the help files to understand what each function does.
14. When we work with real numbers (floating-point numbers) or really large numbers, we might want the output to be displayed in concise notation. This can be controlled in MATLAB using the `format` command with the `short` or `long` options with/without `e` for scientific notation. `format compact` is used for getting compacted output and `format` returns the default format. For example:

```
>> format compact
>> Y=15;
>> Y = Y + acos(-1)
Y = 18.1416
>> format short
>> Y
Y = 18.1416
>> format short e
>> Y
Y = 1.8142e+001
>> format long
>> Y
Y = 18.141592653589793
>> format long e
>> Y
Y = 1.814159265358979e+001
>> format
>> Y
Y = 18.1416
```

15. Finally, to quit from MATLAB just type `quit` or `exit` at the prompt.

```
>> quit
```

16. An **M-file** is a special text file with a `.m` extension that contains a set of code or instructions in MATLAB . In this course we will be using two types of M-files: **script** and **function** files. A script file is simply a list of commands that we want executed and saves us from retyping code modules we are pleased with. A function file allows us to write specific tasks as functions with input and output. These functions can be called from other script files, function files or command window. We will see such examples shortly.

By now, you are expected to be familiar with arithmetic operations, simple function evaluations, format control, starting and stopping a diary file and launching and quitting MATLAB .

## 1.6 Elementary Combinatorics

Combinatorics is the branch of mathematics that specialises in counting. We will give a more intuitive treatment with examples and then formally define the most primitive ideas called permutations and combinations. We also use several commonly encountered notations.

The most basic counting rule we use enables us to determine the number of distinct elements in a set that is constructed from taking two or more steps, where each step uses elements of another set. This is a lot easier than it sounds. Let's understand this through the analogy of performing several tasks.

### Statistical Methodology

For this experiment we looked at the three different distances apart of the lines. For each of the three circumstances we used the same hypotheses.

H0(null hypothesis):  $\phi^* = \frac{2}{\pi}$ , the outcomes of tossing a needle are directly related to  $\pi$   
H1(alternative hypothesis):  $\phi^* \neq \frac{2}{\pi}$ , the outcomes of tossing a needle are not directly related to  $\pi$   
For the general case:

$$(\Theta, X) \stackrel{IID}{\sim} \text{Uniform}\left([\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}] \times [0, 1]\right)$$

as shown in figure 1.3. We know that for our simplest situation, where the length of the needle is the same as the distance between the lines:

$$\phi^* = \Pr((\Theta, X) \in \text{Shaded Region of figure 9.3}) = \frac{2}{\pi}$$

$$N_1, N_2, \dots, N_{200} \stackrel{IID}{\sim} \text{Bernoulli}(\phi^*)$$

This is the probability of a needle landing on a line. The trials for each of the three different distances apart of the lines are 200 independent and identically distributed Bernoulli trials.

Our maximum likelihood estimator of  $\phi^*$  is:

$$\hat{\phi}_{200} = \frac{n_1+n_2+\dots+n_{200}}{200}$$

This is the sample mean. But what we really want is a function of  $\phi^*$ , namely,  $\Psi(\Phi) := 2/\Phi$ . We now need the Delta Method. The Delta Method gives us the needed correction to transform an estimate and its confidence interval. By the Delta Method:

$$\pi \approx \psi^* = g(\phi^*) = \frac{2}{\phi^*}$$

and the maximum likelihood estimate of  $\psi^*$  is:

$$\hat{\psi}_{200} = g(\hat{\phi}_{200}) = \frac{2}{\hat{\phi}_{200}}$$

Next we can calculate the standard error of our estimator of  $\psi^*$ , namely,  $\hat{\Psi}_n = g(\hat{\Phi}_n)$ , and subsequently confidence intervals:

$$se(\hat{\Psi}_n) = |g'(\phi)|se(\hat{\Phi}_n)$$

$$se(\hat{\Psi}_n) = \left| \frac{d}{d\phi} g(\phi) \right| se(\hat{\Phi}_n)$$

$$se(\hat{\Psi}_n) = \left| \frac{d}{d\phi} (2\phi^{-1}) \right| se(\hat{\Phi}_n)$$

$$se(\hat{\Psi}_n) = |-2\phi^{-2}| se(\hat{\Phi}_n)$$

$$se(\hat{\Psi}_n) = (2\phi^{-2}) se(\hat{\Phi}_n)$$

where the estimated standard error is:

$$se(\hat{\psi}_{200}) = (2\phi_{200}^{-2}) se(\hat{\phi}_{200}) = (2\phi_{200}^{-2}) \frac{\hat{\phi}_{200}(1-\hat{\phi}_{200})}{200}$$

1. Repetition is allowed, as in choosing the letters (unrestricted choice) in the PIN of Example 6. More generally, when you have  $n$  objects to choose from, you have  $n$  choices each time, so when choosing  $r$  of them, the number of permutations are  $n^r$ .

**Permutations:** There are basically two types of permutations:

- A selection of objects in which the order is *not* important is called a **combination**.
  - A selection of objects in which the order is important is called a **permutation**.

So in mathematics, we use more precise language:

I do care about order. A different order gives a different PIN.

“The combination of my PIN is math99”

then I don't care (usually) about what order they are in, but in the statement

I have 17 probability texts on my bottom shelf”

When does order matter? In English we use the word "combination" loosely. If I say

$$26 \times 25 \times 24 \times 23 \times 9 \times 10 = 32,292,000.$$

**Example** , suppose we now put restrictions on the letters and digits we use. For example, we might say that the first digit cannot be zero, and letters cannot be repeated. This time the the total number of possible PINs is:

$$26 \times 26 \times 26 \times 10 \times 10 = 26^4 \times 10^2 = 45,697,600.$$

So in total, the total number of possible PINs is:

|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| First letter: 26 possibilities  | Fourth letter: 26 possibilities | Second letter: 26 possibilities | Third letter: 26 possibilities |
| Fourth letter: 26 possibilities | First letter: 10 possibilities  | Second digit: 10 possibilities  | Third digit: 10 possibilities  |

**Example 6** Suppose that a Personal Identification Number (PIN) is a six-digit word in which the first four entries are letters (lowercase) and the last two entries are digits. How many PINs are there? There are six selections to be made:

$$n_1 \times n_2 \times n_3 \times \dots$$

ASKS LOGELIEF IS

**The multiplicative-creation principle:** If a task can be performed in  $n_1$  ways, a second task in  $n_2$  ways, a third task in  $n_3$  ways, etc., then the total number of distinct ways of performing all three tasks is  $n_1 \times n_2 \times n_3$ .

For the case where the needle is longer in length than the distance between the hourboards we get a more complex outcome. We again need to account for the exact length difference between the hourboards and the floorboards. Therefore, the chance of a longer needle landing on a line is:

$$\Pr(\text{needle crosses line}) = \frac{\pi}{2y}$$

$$\Pr(\text{needle crosses line}) = \frac{d}{2\ell}$$

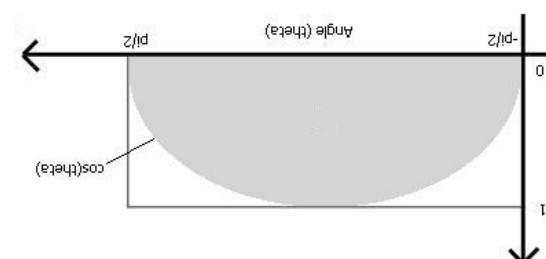
$$P(\text{needle crosses line}) = \frac{2l}{\pi} \int_{-\frac{\pi}{2}}^0 \cos \theta \, d\theta$$

$$\Pr(\text{needle crosses line}) = \int_{-\frac{\pi}{2}}^0 \left( \frac{d}{l |\cos \theta|} \right)^2 d\theta$$

For the case where the needle is shorter in length than the distance between the floorboards we need to modify the above slightly. We need to account for the exact length difference between the needle and the floorboards. This is added to the above explanation by multiplying  $2/\pi$  by  $y/d$ , which is the ratio of length of needle and distance between the lines, ie.  $y = l/d$ . Therefore the chance of a shorter needle landing on a line is  $2/y\pi$ .

The shaded area in figure 9.3, represents when the needle crosses a line. This happens when  $x < \cos(\theta)$ . The total outcome space is  $\pi$  and the area under  $\cos(\theta)$  from  $-\pi/2$  to  $\pi/2$  is 2 (intergrating  $\cos(\theta)$  from  $-\pi/2$  to  $\pi/2$ ). Therefore, the chance of a needle falling on a line is  $2/\pi$ .

Figure 9.3: Outcome Space of Button's Needle Experiment for General Case



side of the magnetic field. So we now only have two general situations to look at. One of these situations is shown in the above picture, where  $\theta$  is less than  $\pi/2$  radians. The other situation is where  $\theta$  is larger than  $\pi/2$  radians. In this case we will consider the angle  $\theta$  to be the angle below  $x$  and we will think of this angle as negative. Therefore, the support of  $x$  is from 0 to 1 and the support of  $\theta$  is  $-\pi/2$  to  $\pi/2$ . This is shown in figure 9.3.

2. No repetition is allowed, as in the restricted PIN Example 7. Here you have to reduce the number of choices. If we had a 26 letter PIN then the total permutations would be

$$26 \times 25 \times 24 \times 23 \times \dots \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 26!$$

but since we want four letters only here, we have

$$\frac{26!}{22!} = 26 \times 25 \times 24 \times 23$$

choices.

The number of distinct **permutations** of  $n$  objects taking  $r$  at a time is given by

$${}^n P_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$$

**Combinations:** There are also two types of combinations:

1. Repetition is allowed such as the coins in your pocket, say, (10c, 50c, 50c, \$1, \$2, \$2).
2. No repetition is allowed as in the lottery numbers (2, 9, 11, 26, 29, 31). The numbers are drawn one at a time, and if you have the lucky numbers (no matter what order) you win!

The number of distinct **combinations** of  $n$  objects taking  $r$  at a time is given by

$${}^n C_r = \binom{n}{r} = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}$$

**Example 8** Let us imagine being in the lower Manhattan in New York city with its perpendicular grid of streets and avenues. If you start at a given intersection and are asked to only proceed in a north-easterly direction then how many ways are there to reach another intersection by walking exactly two blocks or exactly three blocks?

Solution:

Let us answer this question of combinations by drawing Fig. 1.6. Let us denote the number of easterly turns you take by  $r$  and the total number of blocks you are allowed to walk either easterly or northerly by  $n$ . From Fig. 1.6(a) it is clear that the number of ways to reach each of the three intersections labeled by  $r$  is given by  $\binom{n}{r}$ , with  $n = 2$  and  $r \in \{0, 1, 2\}$ . Similarly, from Fig. 1.6(b) it is clear that the number of ways to reach each of the four intersections labeled by  $r$  is given by  $\binom{n}{r}$ , with  $n = 3$  and  $r \in \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$ .

**Exercise 1.5 (Choosing Volunteers)** Suppose we need three students to be the class representatives in this course. Assume that everyone wants to be selected to keep it simple. In how many ways can we choose these three people from the class of 50 students?

Now, we give more formal definitions and notations that will help us make precise arguments faster when we study sampling schemes in Inference Theory.

Imagine a floor on which there are an infinite number of parallel lines (floorboards) spaced two units apart. You toss a needle that is also two units in length onto the floor. We want to find the probability that the needle crosses a line in the floorboards.  $l$ =the length of the needle and  $d$ =the distance between the lines.

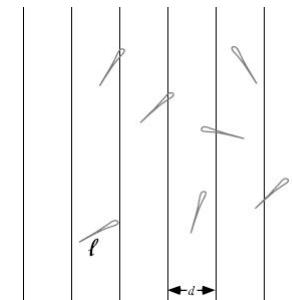


Figure 9.1: Example of Needle Tosses

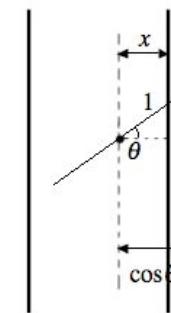


Figure 9.2: Explaining the outcomes of the needle toss

Take one board to examine. Let  $x$  be the shortest distance from the mid point of the needle to the nearest line. Let  $\theta$  be the angle between  $x$  and the needle. Imagine that there is a vertical line down from the end of the needle closest to the line.  $\cos(\theta)$  gives the distance from the midpoint of the line to this imaginary line.

As you can imagine, the needle can fall in an infinite amount of ways and positions relative to the parallel lines. Therefore,  $\theta$  also has an infinite amount of possibilities. We will limit these possibilities in two ways. Firstly only consider the line that is closest to the midpoint of the needle. Secondly we will divide the board into two by drawing an imaginary line down the board halfway between two lines and only consider needle positions on the right side of our halfway line. We will consider the needles whose middle falls to the left of this imaginary line to be a rotation of the right



**Definition 2 (Combinations)** The combinations of  $n$  objects taken  $k$  at a time are the possible choices of  $k$  different elements from a collection of  $n$  objects, disregarding order. They are called the  $k$ -combinations of the collection. The combinations of the three objects  $\{a, b, c\}$  taken two at a time, called the 2-combinations of  $\{a, b, c\}$ , are

$$ab, \quad ac, \quad bc,$$

and the combinations of the five objects  $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$  taken three at a time, called the 3-combinations of  $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$  are

$$123, \quad 124, \quad 125, \quad 134, \quad 135, \quad 145, \quad 234, \quad 235, \quad 245, \quad 345.$$

The total number of  $k$ -combination of  $n$  objects, called a **binomial coefficient**, denoted  $\binom{n}{k}$  and read “ $n$  choose  $k$ ,” can be obtained from  $p_{n,k} = n(n-1)(n-2)\dots(n-k+1)$  and  $k! := p_{k,k}$ . Recall that  $p_{n,k}$  is the number of ways to choose the first  $k$  objects from the set of  $n$  objects and arrange them in a row with regard to order. Since we want to disregard order and each  $k$ -combination appears exactly  $p_{k,k}$  or  $k!$  times among the  $p_{n,k}$  many permutations, we perform a division:

$$\binom{n}{k} := \frac{p_{n,k}}{p_{k,k}} = \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)\dots(n-k+1)}{k(k-1)(k-2)\dots2\ 1}.$$

Binomial coefficients are often called “Pascal’s Triangle” and attributed to Blaise Pascal’s *Traité du Triangle Arithmétique* from 1653, but they have many “fathers”. There are earlier treatises of the binomial coefficients including Szu-yüan Yü-chien (“The Precious Mirror of the Four Elements”) by the Chinese mathematician Chu Shih-Chieh in 1303, and in an ancient Hindu classic, *Piṅgala’s Chandadḥśāstra*, due to Halāyudha (10-th century AD).

## 1.7 Array, Sequence, Limit, ...

In this section we will study a basic data structure in MATLAB called an **array** of numbers. Arrays are finite sequences and they can be processed easily in MATLAB . The notion of infinite sequences lead to **limits**, one of the most fundamental concepts in mathematics.

For any natural number  $n$ , we write

$$\langle x_{1:n} \rangle := x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n$$

to represent the **finite sequence** of real numbers  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n$ . For two integers  $m$  and  $n$  such that  $m \leq n$ , we write

$$\langle x_{m:n} \rangle := x_m, x_{m+1}, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n$$

to represent the **finite sequence** of real numbers  $x_m, x_{m+1}, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n$ . In mathematical analysis, finite sequences and their countably infinite counterparts play a fundamental role in limiting processes. Given an integer  $m$ , we denote an **infinite sequence** or simply a sequence as:

$$\langle x_{m:\infty} \rangle := x_m, x_{m+1}, x_{m+2}, x_{m+3}, \dots$$

Given index set  $\mathcal{I}$  which may be finite or infinite in size, a sequence can either be seen as a set of ordered pairs:

$$\{(i, x_i) : i \in \mathcal{I}\},$$

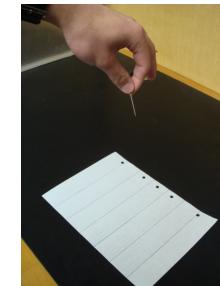
# Chapter 9

## Student Projects

Here are five examples of student projects. Students are strongly encouraged to work in teams of two or three. The projects are meant to encourage team-work. A student who wants to work on his or her own can do so. The following five student projects are model projects work the 5 bonus points. The project is completely optional and it is supposed to be an opportunity for learning certain important skills in mathematical and statistical communication.

### 9.1 Testing the Approximation of $\pi$ by Buffon’s Needle Test

Amanda Hughes  
and Sung-Lim Suh



#### Abstract

This project is designed to investigate Buffon’s Needle experiment. We replicated the concept of Buffon’s Needle and tested the null hypothesis that the outcomes from tossing a needle are directly related to  $\pi$ . The Delta Method and non-parametric methods have been employed in this project.

#### 9.1.1 Introduction & Motivation

The report will firstly cover the background and motivation of this project. Next we will explain the geometric background to why this experiment approximates  $\pi$  and we will look at the statistical methodologies used. Following this we will discuss our results and conclusion. Finally we will discuss potential modifications.

quences as MATLAB arrays. Try out the commands and read the comments for clarification.

**Labwork 9 (Sequences as arrays)** Let us learn to represent, visualize and operate finite sequences, vectors and matrices in a computer by an elementary data structure called an array.

In linear algebra and calculus, it is natural to think of vectors and matrices as points (ordered m-tuples) and ordered collection of points in Cartesian co-ordinates. We assume that the reader has heard of operations with matrices and vectors such as matrix multiplication, determinants, transposes, etc. Such concepts will be introduced as they are needed in the sequel.

$$X = \begin{bmatrix} x_{1,1} & x_{2,1} & \cdots & x_{m-1,1} & x_{m,1} \\ x_{1,2} & x_{2,2} & \cdots & x_{m-1,2} & x_{m,2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ x_{1,n} & x_{2,n} & \cdots & x_{m-1,n} & x_{m,n} \end{bmatrix}$$

The superscripting by  $'$  is the transpose operation and simply means that the rows and columns are exchanged. Thus the transpose of the matrix  $X$  is:

$$\text{and a column vector } y = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ \vdots \\ y_{m-1} \\ y_m \end{bmatrix} = [y_1 \ y_2 \ \cdots \ y_m]' = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m)'.$$

$$\text{A row vector } x = [x_1 \ x_2 \ \cdots \ x_n] = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$$

Matrices with only one row or only one column are called **vectors**. An  $1 \times n$  matrix is called a **row vector** since there is only one row and an  $m \times 1$  matrix is called a **column vector** since there is only one column. We use bold-face lowercase letters to denote row and column vectors.

$$X = \begin{bmatrix} x_{1,1} & x_{1,2} & \cdots & x_{1,n-1} & x_{1,n} \\ x_{2,1} & x_{2,2} & \cdots & x_{2,n-1} & x_{2,n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ x_{m-1,1} & x_{m-1,2} & \cdots & x_{m-1,n-1} & x_{m-1,n} \\ x_{m,n} \end{bmatrix}$$

A rectangular arrangement of  $m \cdot n$  real numbers in  $m$  rows and  $n$  columns is called a **matrix**. The  $m \times n$  represents the **size** of the matrix. We use bold upper-case letters to denote matrices, for e.g.:

$$(x_{j:k}) = x_j, x_{j+1}, \dots, x_{k-1}, x_k \quad \text{where, } m \leq j \leq k < \infty.$$

The finite sequence  $(x_{m:n})$  has  $\mathcal{I} = \{m, m+1, m+2, \dots, n\}$  as its index set. A **sub-sequence**  $(x_{j:k})$  of sequence  $(x_{m:\infty})$  has  $\mathcal{I} = \{m, m+1, m+2, \dots, n\}$  as its index set while an infinite sequence  $(x_{m:\infty})$  is:

$$x(i) = x_i : \mathcal{I} \leftarrow \{x_i : i \in \mathcal{I}\},$$

or as a function that maps the index set to the set of real numbers:

```
% draw the confidence bands
Alpha=0.05; % set alpha
% compute epsilon_n for first dataset of size 56485
Epsn1 = sqrt((1/(2*56485))*log(2*Alpha));
% compute epsilon_n for second dataset of size 53966
Epsn2 = sqrt((1/(2*53966))*log(2*Alpha));
% draw Log Times of Matrices & States Dept. Server at Div. of Canterbury, NZ,
tlabel1=(EDDF_F-(t));
xlabel1=(time t in seconds);
ylabel1=(EDDF_F-(t));
% set plot labels and title
hold on;
% draw empirical cdf for first dataset
statx(x1,y1-Epsn1,zeros(1,Length(y1))),g,% lower 1-alpha confidence band
statx(x1,max(y1+Epsn1,zeros(1,Length(y1))),g,% upper 1-alpha confidence band
statx(x2,y2-Epsn2,zeros(1,Length(y2))),g,% lower 1-alpha confidence band
statx(x2,max(y2+Epsn2,zeros(1,Length(y2))),g,% upper 1-alpha confidence band
% draw Log Times of Matrices & States Dept. Server at Div. of Canterbury, NZ,
tlabel2=(EDDF_F-(t));
xlabel2=(time t in seconds);
ylabel2=(EDDF_F-(t));
% set plot labels and title
hold on;
% draw empirical cdf for second dataset
statx(x1,y1-Epsn1,zeros(1,Length(y1))),g,% lower 1-alpha confidence band
statx(x1,max(y1+Epsn1,zeros(1,Length(y1))),g,% upper 1-alpha confidence band
statx(x2,y2-Epsn2,zeros(1,Length(y2))),g,% lower 1-alpha confidence band
statx(x2,max(y2+Epsn2,zeros(1,Length(y2))),g,% upper 1-alpha confidence band
% draw Log Times of Matrices & States Dept. Server at Div. of Canterbury, NZ,
tlabel3=(EDDF_F-(t));
xlabel3=(time t in seconds);
ylabel3=(EDDF_F-(t));
% set plot labels and title
hold on;
% draw empirical cdf for first dataset
statx(x1,y1-Epsn1,zeros(1,Length(y1))),g,% lower 1-alpha confidence band
statx(x1,max(y1+Epsn1,zeros(1,Length(y1))),g,% upper 1-alpha confidence band
statx(x2,y2-Epsn2,zeros(1,Length(y2))),g,% lower 1-alpha confidence band
statx(x2,max(y2+Epsn2,zeros(1,Length(y2))),g,% upper 1-alpha confidence band
% draw Log Times of Matrices & States Dept. Server at Div. of Canterbury, NZ,
tlabel4=(EDDF_F-(t));
xlabel4=(time t in seconds);
ylabel4=(EDDF_F-(t));
% set plot labels and title
hold on;
```

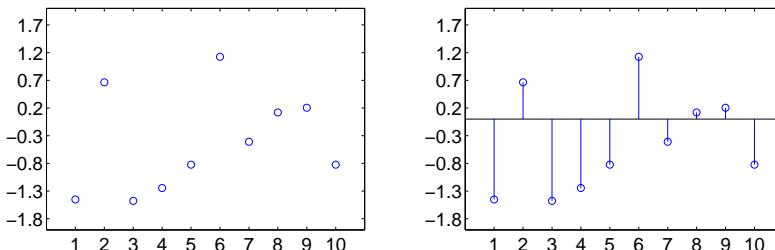
```

>> a = [17] % Declare the sequence of one element 17 in array a
a =
17
>> % Declare the sequence of 10 numbers in array b
>> b=[-1.4508 0.6636 -1.4768 -1.2455 -0.8235 1.1254 -0.4093 0.1199 0.2043 -0.8236]
b =
-1.4508 0.6636 -1.4768 -1.2455 -0.8235 1.1254 -0.4093 0.1199 0.2043 -0.8236
>> c = [1 2 3] % Declare the sequence of 3 consecutive numbers 1,2,3
c =
1 2 3
>> % linspace(x1, x2, n) generates n points linearly spaced between x1 and x2
>> r = linspace(1, 3, 3) % Declare sequence r = c using linspace
r =
1 2 3
>> s1 = 1:10 % declare an array s1 starting at 1, ending by 10, in increments of 1
s =
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
>> s2 = 1:2:10 % declare an array s2 starting at 1, ending by 10, in increments of 2
s =
1 3 5 7 9
>> s2(3) % obtain the third element of the finite sequence s2
ans =
5
>> s2(2:4) % obtain the subsequence from second to fourth elements of the finite sequence s2
ans =
3 5 7

```

We may visualise (as per Figure 1.6) the finite sequences  $\langle b_{1:n} \rangle$  stored in the array  $b$  as the set of ordered pairs  $\{(1, b_1), (2, b_2), \dots, (10, b_{10})\}$  representing the function  $b(i) = b_i : \{1, 2, \dots, n\} \rightarrow \{b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n\}$  via **point plot** and **stem plot** using Matlab's `plot` and `stem` commands, respectively.

Figure 1.6: Point plot and stem plot of the finite sequence  $\langle b_{1:10} \rangle$  declared as an array.



```

>> display(b) % display the array b in memory
b =
-1.4508 0.6636 -1.4768 -1.2455 -0.8235 1.1254 -0.4093 0.1199 0.2043 -0.8236
>> plot(b,'o') % point plot of ordered pairs (1,b(1)), (2,b(2)), ..., (10,b(10))
>> stem(b) % stem plot of ordered pairs (1,b(1)), (2,b(2)), ..., (10,b(10))
>> plot(b,'-o') % point plot of ordered pairs (1,b(1)), (2,b(2)), ..., (10,b(10)) connected by lines

```

**Labwork 10 (Vectors and matrices as arrays)** Let us learn to represent, visualise and operate vectors as MATLAB arrays. Syntactically, a vector is stored in an array exactly in the same way we stored a finite sequence. However, mathematically, we think of a vector as an ordered  $m$ -tuple that can be visualised as a point in Cartesian co-ordinates. Try out the commands and read the comments for clarification.

```

>> a = [1 2] % an 1 X 2 row vector
>> z = [1 2 3] % Declare an 1 X 3 row vector z with three numbers

```

## 8.2 Data

Here we describe some of the data sets we analyze.

**Data 242 (Our Maths & Stats Dept. Web Logs)** We assume access to a Unix terminal (Linux, Mac OS X, Sun Solaris, etc). We show how to get your hands dirty with web logs that track among others, every IP address and its time of login to our department web server over the world-wide-web. The raw text files of web logs may be manipulated but they are typically huge files and need some Unix command-line utilities.

```

rsa64@mathopt03:~> cd October010203WebLogs/
rsa64@mathopt03:~/October010203WebLogs> ls -al
-rw-r--r---+ 1 rsa64 math 7527169 2007-10-04 09:38 access-07_log.2
-rw-r--r---+ 1 rsa64 math 7727745 2007-10-04 09:38 access-07_log.3

```

The files are quite large over 7.5 MB each. So we need to compress it. We use the `gzip` and `gunzip` utility in any Unix environment to compress and decompress these large text files of web logs. After compression the file sizes are more reasonable.

```

rsa64@mathopt03:~/October010203WebLogs> gzip access-07_log.2
rsa64@mathopt03:~/October010203WebLogs> gzip access-07.log.2
rsa64@mathopt03:~/October010203WebLogs> zcat access-07.log.2.gz | grep '200 '
| awk '{ print $4 }' | sed -e 's/\[([0-9]\{2\}\]:\([a-Z]\{3\}\)\]\([0-9]\{4\}\)\([0-9]\{2\}\):\([0-9]\{2\}\):\([0-9]\{2\}\)\)/\3 \1 \4 \5 \6/'
2007 10 02 03 57 48
2007 10 02 03 58 31
.
.
.
2007 10 03 03 56 21
2007 10 03 03 56 52

```

Finally, there are 56485 and 53966 logins for the two 24-hour cycles, starting 01/Oct and 01/Oct, respectively. We can easily get these counts by further piping the previous output into the line counting utility `wc` with the `-l` option. All the Unix command-line tools mentioned earlier can be learned by typing `man` followed by the tool-name, for eg. type `man sed` to learn about the usage of `sed` at a Unix command shell. We further pipe the output of login times for the two 24-hour cycles starting 01/Oct and 02/Oct in format YYYY MM DD HH MM SS to `| sed -e 's/2007 10 // /' > WebLogTimes20071001035730.dat` and ... `> WebLogTimes20071002035730.dat`, respectively to strip away the redundant information on YYYY MM , namely 2007 10 , and only save the relevant information of DD HH MM SS in files named `WebLogTimes20071001035730.dat` and `WebLogTimes20071002035730.dat`, respectively. These two files have the data of interest to us. Note that the size of these two uncompressed final data files in plain text are smaller than the compressed raw web log files we started out from.

```

rsa64@mathopt03:~/October010203WebLogs> ls -al
-rw-r--r---+ 1 rsa64 math 677820 2007-10-05 15:36 WebLogTimes20071001035730.dat
-rw-r--r---+ 1 rsa64 math 647592 2007-10-05 15:36 WebLogTimes20071002035730.dat
-rw-r--r---+ 1 rsa64 math 657913 2007-10-04 09:38 access-07_log.2.gz
-rw-r--r---+ 1 rsa64 math 700320 2007-10-04 09:38 access-07_log.3.gz

```

We can use two dimensional arrays to represent matrices. Some useful built-in commands to generate standard matrices are:

**Labwork 241** (Givenko-Cantelli Lemma for Uniform(0, 1)) The following script was used to generate the Figure 7.12.

```

ans = 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
% ones(m,n) is an m x n matrix of ones. Useful when m or n is large.

>> y = [1 1 1]
% y is a sequence or row vector of 3 1's

>> z = 3
% The column vector (1,2,3), by taking the transpose of x via x'

>> xT = x;
% The column vector (1,2,3), by taking the transpose of x via x'

>> x = 1 2 3
% Declare a 3 x 1 column vector c with three numbers. Semicolons delineate columns

>> x = [1; 2; 3]
% Declare a 3 x 1 column vector c with three numbers. Semicolons delineate columns

>> C = 1
% Generates n points linearly spaced between x1 and x2

>> x = linspace(x1, x2, n)
% Declares an 1 x 3 row vector x = z using linspace

>> x = 1 2 3
% Declares a 3 x 1 column vector c with three numbers. Semicolons delineate columns

```

```

    >>> y = 1 1 1
    end
    % Note Plotting is 1 and the plot range of x-axis is
    % incremented by 0.1 or 0.2 on either side due to last 2 parameters to ECDF
    % plotting 0.1 or 0.2
    if (j==1) = ECDF(u(j),1:SampleSize),0,0,1,0,1;
    else
        x1 y1 = ECDF(u(j),1:SampleSize),2,5,0,2,0,0,2;
        searates(x1,y1,k);
    end
    % y1 is CDF of u(j) and the plot range of x-axis is
    % incremented by 0.1 or 0.2
    % Alphaa=0.05; % Alpha for the confidence band
    % Epbeta= sqrt((1/(2*SampleSize))*log(2/Alpha)); % epsilon for the confidence band
    % hold on;
    % x = 2 3 4
    % >>> x = y + z
    % x is the sum of vectors y and z with same size 1 x 3
    % >>> x = 2 2 2
    % y is updated to 2 * y (each term of x is multiplied by 2)
    % >>> y = y * 2
    % p is the vector obtained by term-by-term product of x and y
    % d is the vector obtained by term-by-term division of x and y
    % d = 0.5000 1.0000 1.5000
    % it has 4 numbers equally-spaced between -10 and 10
    % t= linspace(-10,10,4)
    % >>> t=[linspace(-10,10,4) 3.3333 3.3333 10.0000
    % s = sin(t)
    % s is a vector obtained from the term-wise sin of the vector t
    % >>> s = sin(t);
    % ssq = sin(t)^2
    % ssq is an array obtained from term-wise squaring ( .^ 2 ) of the cos(t) array
    % >>> ssq = 0.2900 0.0363 0.0363 0.2900
    % ssg = sin(t)^2
    % ssg is an array obtained from term-wise squaring ( .^ 2 ) of the sin(t) array
    % >>> ssg = 0.9637 0.9637 0.9637 0.7040
    % csg = cos(t)^2
    % csg is an array obtained from term-wise squaring ( .^ 2 ) of the cos(t) array
    % >>> csg = 0.9637 0.9637 0.9637 0.7040
    % text(0.75,0.05,LabelString);
    % numstr(SampleSize);
    % hold off;
    end

```

```
>> sSq + cSq % we can add the two arrays sSq and cSq to get the array of 1's
ans = 1 1 1 1
>> n = sin(t) .*^2 + cos(t) .^2           % we can directly do term-wise operation sin^2(t) + cos^2(t) of t as well
n = 1 1 1 1
>> t2 = (-10:6.666665:10)      % t2 is similar to t above but with ':' syntax of (start:increment:stop)
t2 = -10.0000 -3.3333 3.3333 10.0000
```

Similarly, operations can be performed with matrices.

```
>> (0+0) .^ (1/2) % term-by-term square root of the matrix obtained by adding 0=ones(4,5) to itself
ans =
1.4142 1.4142 1.4142 1.4142 1.4142
1.4142 1.4142 1.4142 1.4142 1.4142
1.4142 1.4142 1.4142 1.4142 1.4142
1.4142 1.4142 1.4142 1.4142 1.4142
```

We can access specific rows or columns of a matrix as follows:

```
>> % declare a 3 X 3 array A of row vectors
>> A = [0.2760 0.4984 0.7513; 0.6797 0.9597 0.2551; 0.1626 0.5853 0.6991]
A =
0.2760 0.4984 0.7513
0.6797 0.9597 0.2551
0.1626 0.5853 0.6991
>> A(2,:) % access the second row of A
ans =
0.6797 0.9597 0.2551
>> B = A(2:3,:); % store the second and third rows of A in matrix B
B =
0.6797 0.9597 0.2551
0.1626 0.5853 0.6991
>> C = A(:,[1 3]) % store the first and third columns of A in matrix C
C =
0.2760 0.7513
0.6797 0.2551
```

**Labwork 11 (Plotting a function as points of ordered pairs in two arrays)** Next we plot the function  $\sin(x)$  from several ordered pairs  $(x_i, \sin(x_i))$ . Here  $x_i$ 's are from the domain  $[-2\pi, 2\pi]$ . We use the `plot` function in MATLAB. Create an M-file called `MySineWave.m` and copy the following commands in it. By entering `MySineWave` in the command window you should be able to run the script and see the figure in the figure window.

---

SineWave.m

```
x = linspace(-2*pi,2*pi,100);          % x has 100 points equally spaced in [-2*pi, 2*pi]
y = sin(x);                          % y is the term-wise sin of x, ie sin of every number in x is in y, resp.
plot(x,y,'.');                      % plot x versus y as dots should appear in the Figure window
xlabel('x');                         % label x-axis with the single quote enclosed string x
ylabel('sin(x)',FontSize',16);        % label y-axis with the single quote enclosed string
title('Sine Wave in [-2 pi, 2 pi]',FontSize',16); % give a title; click Figure window to see changes
set(gca,'XTick',-8:1:8,FontSize',16) % change the range and size of X-axis ticks
% you can go to the Figure window's File menu to print/save the plot
```

---

The plot was saved as an encapsulated postscript file from the File menu of the Figure window and is displayed below.

```
% Load the data from the comma delimited text file 'NZ20110222earthquakes.csv' with
% the following column IDs
% CUSP_ID,LAT,LONG,NZMGE,NZMGN,ORI_YEAR,ORI_MONTH,ORI_DAY,ORI_HOUR,ORI_MINUTE,ORI_SECOND,MAG,DEPTH
% Using MATLAB's dlmread command we can assign the data as a matrix to EQ;
% note that the option 1,0 to dlmread skips first row of column descriptors
%
% the variable EQall is about to be assigned the data as a matrix
EQall = dlmread('NZ20110222earthquakes.csv', ',', 1, 0);
size(EQall) % report the dimensions or size of the matrix EQall
%ans = 145 14

EQall(any(isnan(EQall),2),:) = []; %Remove any rows containing NaNs from the matrix EQall
% report the size of EQall and see if it is different from before we removed and NaN containing rows
size(EQall)
% output: ans = 145 14
% remove locations outside Chch and assign it to a new variable called EQ
% only keep earthquake hypocenter locations inside Chch
% only keep earthquakes with magnitude >3
EQ = EQall(~43.75<EQall(:,2) & EQall(:,3)<-43.45 & 172.45<EQall(:,3) ...
& EQall(:,3)<172.9 & EQall(:,12)>3, :);
% now report the size of the earthquakes in Christchurch in variable EQ
size(EQ)
% output: ans = 124 14

% assign the four variables of interest
LatData=EQ(:,2); LonData=EQ(:,3); MagData=EQ(:,12); DepData=EQ(:,13);

% finally make a plot matrix of these 124 4-tuples as red points
plotmatrix([LatData,LonData,MagData,DepData], 'r.');
```

**Labwork 240 (Consistency of MLE in Bernoulli experiment)** Figure 7.9 was made with the following script file.

---

BernoulliMLEConsistency.m

```
clf;%clear any figures
rand('twister',736343); % initialize the Uniform(0,1) Sampler
N = 3; % 10^N is the maximum number of samples from RV
J = 100; % number of Replications for each n
u = rand(J,10^N); % generate 10X10^N samples from Uniform(0,1) RV U
p=0.5; % set p for the Bernoulli(p) trials
PS=[0:0.001:1]; % sample some values for p on [0,1] to plot likelihood
for i=1:N
    if(i==1) Pmin=0.; Pmax=1.0; Ymin=-70; Ymax=-10; Y=linspace(Ymin,Ymax,J); end
    if(i==2) Pmin=0.; Pmax=1.0; Ymin=-550; Ymax=-75; Y=linspace(Ymin,Ymax,J); end
    if(i==3) Pmin=0.3; Pmax=0.8; Ymin=-900; Ymax=-700; Y=linspace(Ymin,Ymax,J); end
    n=10^i;% n= sample size, ie, number of Bernoulli trials
    subplot(1,N,i)
    if(i==1) axis([Pmin Pmax Ymin -2]); end
    if(i==2) axis([Pmin Pmax Ymin -60]); end
    if(i==3) axis([Pmin Pmax Ymin -685]); end
    EmpCovSEhat=0; % track empirical coverage for SEhat
    EmpCovSE=0; % track empirical coverage for exact SE
    for j=1:J
        % transform the Uniform(0,1) samples to n Bernoulli(p) samples
        x=floor(u(j,1:n)+p);
        s = sum(x); % statistic s is the sum of x_i's
        % display the outcomes and their sum
        %display(x)
        %display(s)
        MLE=s/n; % Analytically MLE is s/n
        se = sqrt((1-p)*p/n); % standard error from known p
        sehat = sqrt((1-MLE)*MLE/n); % estimated standard error from MLE p
        ZalphaBy2 = 1.96; % for 95% CI
        if(abs(MLE-p)<=2*sehat) EmpCovSEhat=EmpCovSEhat+1; end
    end
end
```

---



When we do not particularly care about the specifics of a sequence of real numbers  $\langle x_{1:\infty} \rangle$ , in terms of the exact values it takes for each  $i$ , but we are only interested that it converges to a limit  $a$  we write:

$$x \rightarrow a$$

and say that  $x$  approaches  $a$ . If we are only interested in those sequences that converge to the limit  $a$  from the right or left, we write:

$$x \rightarrow a^+ \quad \text{or} \quad x \rightarrow a^-$$

and say  $x$  approaches  $a$  from the right or left, respectively.

**Definition 4 (Limits of Functions)** We say a function  $f(x) : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  has a **limit**  $L \in \mathbb{R}$  as  $x$  approaches  $a$  and write:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = L ,$$

provided  $f(x)$  is arbitrarily close to  $L$  for all values of  $x$  that are sufficiently close to, but not equal to,  $a$ . We say that  $f$  has a **right limit**  $L_R$  or **left limit**  $L_L$  as  $x$  approaches  $a$  from the left or right, and write:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} f(x) = L_R \quad \text{or} \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} f(x) = L_L ,$$

provided  $f(x)$  is arbitrarily close to  $L_R$  or  $L_L$  for all values of  $x$  that are sufficiently close to, but not equal to,  $a$  from the right of  $a$  or the left of  $a$ , respectively. When the limit is not an element of  $\mathbb{R}$  or when the left and right limits are distinct, we say that the limit does not exist.

**Example 14 (Limit of  $1/x^2$ )** Consider the function  $f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}$ . Then

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{1}{x^2} = 1$$

exists since the limit  $1 \in \mathbb{R}$ , and the right and left limits are the same:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} \frac{1}{x^2} = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^-} \frac{1}{x^2} = 1 .$$

However, the following limit does not exist:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{x^2} = \infty$$

since  $\infty \notin \mathbb{R}$ .

Let us next look at some limits of functions that exist despite the function itself being undefined at the limit point.

**Example 15 (Limit of  $(1+x)^{\frac{1}{x}}$ )** The limit of  $f(x) = (1+x)^{\frac{1}{x}}$  as  $x$  approaches 0 exists and it is

```

subplot(2,4,6) % second plot of a 1 by 2 array of plots
semilogx(x,ExponentialCdf(x,1),'r:','LineWidth',2) % cdf of RV X ~ Exponential(1)
hold on % to superimpose plots
semilogx(x,ExponentialCdf(x,10),'b--','LineWidth',2) % cdf of RV X ~ Exponential(10)
semilogx(x,ExponentialCdf(x,1/10),'m','LineWidth',2) % cdf of RV X ~ Exponential(1/10)
% xlabel('x')
% ylabel('F(x; \lambda)')
% legend('F(x;1)', 'F(x;10)', 'F(x;10^{-1})')
axis square
axis([0,100,0,1])
%title('semilog(x) Scale')
hold off

subplot(2,4,7)
semilogy(x,ExponentialCdf(x,1),'r:','LineWidth',2) % cdf of RV X ~ Exponential(1)
hold on % to superimpose plots
semilogy(x,ExponentialCdf(x,10),'b--','LineWidth',2) % cdf of RV X ~ Exponential(10)
semilogy(x,ExponentialCdf(x,1/10),'m','LineWidth',2) % cdf of RV X ~ Exponential(1/10)
% xlabel('x');
% ylabel('F(x; \lambda)');
% legend('F(x;1)', 'F(x;10)', 'F(x;10^{-1})')
axis square
axis([0,10,0,1])
%title('semilog(y) Scale')
hold off

x=[ 0:0.001:1 [ 1.001:1:100000]; % points from the subset of the support of X
subplot(2,4,8)
loglog(x,ExponentialCdf(x,1),'r:','LineWidth',2) % cdf of RV X ~ Exponential(1)
hold on % to superimpose plots
loglog(x,ExponentialCdf(x,10),'b--','LineWidth',2) % cdf of RV X ~ Exponential(10)
loglog(x,ExponentialCdf(x,1/10),'m','LineWidth',2) % cdf of RV X ~ Exponential(1/10)
% xlabel('x')
% ylabel('F(x; \lambda)')
% legend('F(x;1)', 'F(x;10)', 'F(x;10^{-1})')
axis square
axis([0,100000,0,1])
%title('loglog Scale')
hold off

```

**Labwork 237 (Plotting the empirical DF)** A MATLAB function to plot the empirical DF (3.82) of  $n$  user-specified samples efficiently for massive number of samples. Read the following M-file for the algorithm:

---

```

function [x1 y1] = ECDF(x, PlotFlag, LxD, HxD)
% return the x1 and y1 values of empirical CDF
% based on samples in array x of RV X
% plot empirical CDF if PlotFlag is >= 1
%
% Call Syntax: [x1 y1] = ECDF(x, PlotFlag, LxD,HxD);
% Input      : x = samples from a RV X (a vector),
%               PlotFlag is a number controlling plot (Y/N, marker-size)
%               LxD is a number by which the x-axis plot range is extended to the left
%               HxD is a number by which the x-axis plot range is extended to the right
% Output     : [x1 y1] & empirical CDF Plot IF PlotFlag >= 1
%
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
R=length(x);          % assume x is a vector and R = Number of samples in x
x1=zeros(1,R+2);
y1=zeros(1,R+2);      % initialize y to null vectors
for i=1:1:R           % loop to append to x and y axis values of plot

```

the Euler's constant  $e$ :

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} (1 + x)^{1/x}$$

$= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} (x + 1)^{1/(x + 1)}$  Indeterminate form of type  $1/\infty$ .

$= \exp \left( \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \log((x + 1)^{1/(x + 1)}) \right)$  Transformed using  $\exp(\lim \log(x + 1)^{1/(x + 1)})$

$= \exp \left( \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{d \log(x + 1)/dx}{x + 1} \right)$  Applying L'Hospital's rule

$= \exp \left( \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{\ln(1/(x + 1))}{x} \right)$  Limit of a quotient is the quotient of the limits

$= \exp \left( \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{x - 1}{\ln(x + 1)} \right)$  The limit of  $x + 1$  as  $x$  approaches 0 is 1

$= \exp \left( \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{1}{\ln(x + 1) + 1} \right)$   $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} (x + 1) = e$  is undefined and does not exist.

Notice that the above limit exists despite the fact that  $f(0) = (1 + 0)^{1/0}$  itself is undefined and does not exist.

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} (1 + x)^{1/x} \approx 2.71828.$$

$= \exp(1) = e \approx 2.71828.$

$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} (x - 1)^{1/(x - 1)}$  Indeterminate form of type  $0/0$ .

$= \exp \left( \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{d \ln(x - 1)/dx}{x - 1} \right)$  Applying L'Hospital's rule

$= \exp \left( \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{1/(x - 1)}{x} \right)$  Indeterminate form of type  $0/0$ .

$= \exp \left( \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{x - 1}{\ln(x - 1)} \right)$  The limit of  $x - 1$  as  $x$  approaches 0 is 1

$= \exp \left( \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{1}{\ln(x - 1) + 1} \right)$   $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} (x - 1) = e$  is undefined and does not exist.

Next we look at some examples of limits at infinity.

despite the fact that  $f(1) = \frac{1}{1-1} = \frac{1}{0}$  itself is undefined and does not exist.

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^-} (x - 1)^{x-1} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^-} (x - 1)^{\frac{1}{x-1}} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^-} x^{1/(x-1)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^-} x^0 = 1$$

$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} (x - 1)^{x-1} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} (x - 1)^{\frac{1}{x-1}} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} x^{1/(x-1)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} x^{-\infty} = e^{-\infty} = 0$

**Example 17 (Limit of  $(1 - \frac{u}{x})^u$ )** The limit of  $f(u) = (1 - \frac{u}{x})^u$  as  $u$  approaches  $\infty$  exists and it is  $e^{-\infty}$ :

**Example 18 (Limit of  $(1 - \frac{u}{x})^{-u}$ )** The limit of  $f(u) = (1 - \frac{u}{x})^{-u}$ , for some  $a < 0$ , as  $u$  approaches  $\infty$  exists and it is  $1$ :

$$\lim_{u \rightarrow \infty} f(u) = \lim_{u \rightarrow \infty} (1 - \frac{u}{x})^{-u} = \lim_{u \rightarrow \infty} \left( 1 - \frac{u}{x} \right)^{-u} = 1.$$

**Definition 5 (Continuity of a function)** We say  $f$  is continuous at  $a \in D$ , provided:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} f(x) = f(a) \quad \text{or} \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} f(x) = f(a).$$

domain  $D \subset \mathbb{R}$  is right continuous or left continuous at a point  $a \in D$ , provided:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} f(x) = f(a) \quad \text{or} \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} f(x) = f(a).$$

Finally,  $f$  is said to be continuous if  $f$  is continuous at every  $a \in D$ .

**Example 19 (Discontinuity of  $f(x) = (1+x)^{\frac{1}{x}}$  at 0)** Let us reconsider the function  $f(x) = (1+x)^{\frac{1}{x}} : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . Clearly,  $f(x)$  is continuous at 1, since:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1} (1+x)^{\frac{1}{x}} = 2 = f(1) = (1+1)^{\frac{1}{1}},$$

but it is not continuous at 0, since:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} (1+x)^{\frac{1}{x}} = e \approx 2.71828 \neq f(0) = (1+0)^{\frac{1}{0}}.$$

Thus,  $f(x)$  is not a continuous function over  $\mathbb{R}$ .

## 1.9 Elementary Number Theory

We introduce basic notions that we need from elementary number theory here. These notions include integer functions and modular arithmetic as they will be needed later on.

For any real number  $x$ :

- $\lfloor x \rfloor := \max\{y : y \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ and } y \leq x\}$ , i.e., the greatest integer less than or equal to  $x$  (the **floor** of  $x$ ),
- $\lceil x \rceil := \min\{y : y \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ and } y \geq x\}$ , i.e., the least integer greater than or equal to  $x$  (the **ceiling** of  $x$ ).

**Example 20 (Floors and ceilings)**

$$\lfloor 1 \rfloor = 1, \quad \lceil 1 \rceil = 1, \quad \lfloor 17.8 \rfloor = 17, \quad \lceil -17.8 \rceil = -18, \quad \lceil \sqrt{2} \rceil = 2, \quad \lfloor \pi \rfloor = 3, \quad \lceil \frac{1}{10^{100}} \rceil = 1.$$

**Labwork 21 (Floors and ceilings in MATLAB )** We can use MATLAB functions `floor` and `ceil` to compute  $\lfloor x \rfloor$  and  $\lceil x \rceil$ , respectively. Also, the argument  $x$  to these functions can be an array.

```
>> sqrt(2) % the square root of 2 is
ans = 1.4142
>> ceil(sqrt(2)) % ceiling of square root of 2
ans = 2
>> floor(-17.8) % floor of -17.8
ans = -18
>> ceil([1 sqrt(2) pi -17.8 1/(10^100)]) %the ceiling of each element of an array
ans = 1 2 4 -17 1
>> floor([1 sqrt(2) pi -17.8 1/(10^100)]) % the floor of each element of an array
ans = 1 1 3 -18 0
```

**Classwork 22 (Relations between floors and ceilings)** Convince yourself of the following formulae. Use examples, plots and/or formal arguments.

$$\begin{aligned} \lceil x \rceil = \lfloor x \rfloor &\iff x \in \mathbb{Z} \\ \lceil x \rceil = \lfloor x \rfloor + 1 &\iff x \notin \mathbb{Z} \\ \lfloor -x \rfloor &= -\lceil x \rceil \\ x - 1 < \lfloor x \rfloor \leq x &\leq \lceil x \rceil < x + 1 \end{aligned}$$

Let us define modular arithmetic next. Suppose  $x$  and  $y$  are any real numbers, i.e.  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ , we define the binary operation called “ $x \bmod y$ ” as:

$$x \bmod y := \begin{cases} x - y\lfloor x/y \rfloor & \text{if } y \neq 0 \\ x & \text{if } y = 0 \end{cases}$$

```
% x=[-6:0.0001:6]; % points from the subset [-5,5] of the support of X
subplot(1,2,1) % first plot of a 1 by 2 array of plots
plot(x,NormalPdf(x,0,1),'r') % pdf of RV Z ~ Normal(0,1)
hold % to superimpose plots
plot(x,NormalPdf(x,0,1/10),'b') % pdf of RV X ~ Normal(0,1/10)
plot(x,NormalPdf(x,0,1/100),'m') % pdf of RV X ~ Normal(0,1/100)
plot(x,NormalPdf(x,-3,1),'r--') % pdf of RV Z ~ Normal(-3,1)
plot(x,NormalPdf(x,-3,1/10),'b--') % pdf of RV X ~ Normal(-3,1/10)
plot(x,NormalPdf(x,-3,1/100),'m--') % pdf of RV X ~ Normal(-3,1/100)
xlabel('x')
ylabel('f(x; \mu, \sigma^2)')
legend('f(x;0,1)', 'f(x;0,10^{-1})', 'f(x;0,10^{-2})', 'f(x;-3,1)', 'f(x;-3,10^{-1})', 'f(x;-3,10^{-2})')
subplot(1,2,2) % second plot of a 1 by 2 array of plots
plot(x,NormalCdf(x,0,1),'r') % DF of RV Z ~ Normal(0,1)
hold % to superimpose plots
plot(x,NormalCdf(x,0,1/10),'b') % DF of RV X ~ Normal(0,1/10)
plot(x,NormalCdf(x,0,1/100),'m') % DF of RV X ~ Normal(0,1/100)
plot(x,NormalCdf(x,-3,1),'r--') % DF of RV Z ~ Normal(-3,1)
plot(x,NormalCdf(x,-3,1/10),'b--') % DF of RV X ~ Normal(-3,1/10)
plot(x,NormalCdf(x,-3,1/100),'m--') % DF of RV X ~ Normal(-3,1/100)
xlabel('x')
ylabel('F(x; \mu, \sigma^2)')
legend('F(x;0,1)', 'F(x;0,10^{-1})', 'F(x;0,10^{-2})', 'F(x;-3,1)', 'F(x;-3,10^{-1})', 'F(x;-3,10^{-2})')
```

**Labwork 236 (PDF and DF of an Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RV  $X$ )** Here are the functions to evaluate the PDF and DF of an Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RV  $X$  at a given  $x$  (point or a vector).

---

ExponentialPdf.m

```
function fx = ExponentialPdf(x,Lambda)
% Returns the Pdf of Exponential(Lambda) RV at x,
% where Lambda = rate parameter
%
% Usage: fx = ExponentialPdf(x,Lambda)
if Lambda <= 0
    error('Rate parameter Lambda must be > 0')
    return
end
```

```
fx = Lambda * exp(-Lambda * x);
```

---



---

ExponentialCdf.m

```
function Fx = ExponentialCdf(x,Lambda)
% Returns the Cdf of Exponential(Lambda) RV at x,
% where Lambda = rate parameter
%
% Usage: Fx = ExponentialCdf(x,Lambda)
if Lambda <= 0
    error('Rate parameter Lambda must be > 0')
    return
end
```

```
Fx = 1.0 - exp(-Lambda * x);
```

---

Plots of the PDF and DF of several Exponentially distributed RVs at four axes scales that are depicted in Figure 3.13 were generated using the following script file:

---

PlotPdfCdfExponential.m

```
% PlotPdfCdfExponential.m script file
% Plot of some pdf's and cdf's of the Exponential(Lambda) RV X
%
x=[0:0.0001:100]; % points from the subset [0,100] of the support of X
```



**Example 24** Consider a generic die-tossing experiment by a human experimenter. Here  $\Omega = \{\omega_1, \omega_2, \omega_3, \dots, \omega_6\}$ , but the experiment might correspond to rolling a die whose faces are:

1. sprayed with six different scents (nose!), or
2. studded with six distinctly flavoured candies (tongue!), or
3. contoured with six distinct bumps and pits (touch!), or
4. acoustically discernible at six different frequencies (ears!), or
5. painted with six different colours (eyes!), or
6. marked with six different numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 (eyes!), or , ...

These six experiments are equivalent as far as probability goes.

**Definition 7** A trial is a single performance of an experiment and it results in an outcome.

**Example 25** Some standard examples of a trial are:

- A roll of a die.
- A toss of a coin.
- A release of a chaotic double pendulum.

An experimenter often performs more than one trial. Repeated trials of an experiment forms the basis of science and engineering as the experimenter learns about the phenomenon by repeatedly performing the same mother experiment with possibly different outcomes. This repetition of trials in fact provides the very motivation for the definition of probability.

**Definition 8** An **n-product experiment** is obtained by repeatedly performing  $n$  trials of some experiment. The experiment that is repeated is called the “mother” experiment.

**Example 26 (Toss a coin n times)** Suppose our experiment entails tossing a coin  $n$  times and recording H for Heads and T for Tails. When  $n = 3$ , one possible outcome of this experiment is HHT, ie. a Head followed by another Head and then a Tail. Seven other outcomes are possible.

The sample space for “toss a coin three times” experiment is:

$$\Omega = \{H, T\}^3 = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, HTT, THH, THT, TTH, TTT\},$$

with a particular sample point or outcome  $\omega = HTH$ , and another distinct outcome  $\omega' = HHH$ . An event, say  $A$ , that ‘at least two Heads occur’ is the following subset of  $\Omega$ :

$$A = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, THH\}.$$

Another event, say  $B$ , that ‘no Heads occur’ is:

$$B = \{TTT\}$$

Note that the event  $B$  is also an outcome or sample point. Another interesting event is the empty set  $\emptyset \subset \Omega$ . The event that ‘nothing in the sample space occurs’ is  $\emptyset$ .

4. Step 1: If  $x_i \in (0, \infty)$  for each  $i \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , the log-likelihood is

$$\begin{aligned}\ell(\theta) &= \sum_{i=1}^n \log(f_X(x_i; \theta)) = \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \log\left(\frac{x_i}{\theta^2} e^{-\frac{1}{2}(x_i/\theta)^2}\right) \right) = \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \log\left(\frac{x_i}{\theta^2}\right) + \log\left(e^{-\frac{1}{2}(x_i/\theta)^2}\right) \right) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \log(x_i) - \log(\theta^2) - \frac{1}{2}(x_i/\theta)^2 \right) = \sum_{i=1}^n (\log(x_i)) - \sum_{i=1}^n (2 \log(\theta)) - \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{1}{2} x_i^2 \theta^{-2} \right) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) - 2n \log(\theta) - \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{1}{2} x_i^2 \theta^{-2} \right)\end{aligned}$$

Step 2:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{d\theta}(\ell(\theta)) &= \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n (\log(x_i)) - 2n \log(\theta) - \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{1}{2} x_i^2 \theta^{-2} \right) \right) \\ &= \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n (\log(x_i)) \right) - \frac{d}{d\theta} (2n \log(\theta)) - \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{1}{2} x_i^2 \theta^{-2} \right) \right) \\ &= 0 - 2n \frac{1}{\theta} - \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{1}{2} x_i^2 (-2\theta^{-3}) \right) = -2n\theta^{-1} + \theta^{-3} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2\end{aligned}$$

Step 3:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{d\theta}(\ell(\theta)) = 0 &\iff -2n\theta^{-1} + \theta^{-3} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 = 0 \iff 2n\theta^{-1} = \theta^{-3} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 \\ &\iff 2n\theta^{-1}\theta^3 = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 \iff \theta^2 = \frac{1}{2n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 \iff \theta = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}\end{aligned}$$

Let

$$\hat{\theta}_n = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}.$$

Step 4:

$$\frac{d^2}{d\theta^2} \ell(\theta) = \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( \frac{d}{d\theta}(\ell(\theta)) \right) = \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( -2n\theta^{-1} + \theta^{-3} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 \right) = 2n\theta^{-2} - 3\theta^{-4} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2$$

Step 5: Since  $\theta > 0$ , we have the following condition for the the second derivative to be negative

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d^2}{d\theta^2} \ell(\theta) &= 2n\theta^{-2} - 3\theta^{-4} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 < 0 \quad \text{you can stop here for full credit in exam} \\ &\iff 2n\theta^{-2} < 3\theta^{-4} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 \iff \theta^2 < \frac{3}{2n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2\end{aligned}$$

and therefore when the inequality above is satisfied the MLE is indeed

$$\hat{\theta}_n = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}.$$

$$L = \frac{u}{u} = (n, L \cap H)N$$

denoted by  $HUT$ . The probability that "something happens" is 1. More formally:

**Idea 9 (The long-term relative frequency (LTF) idea)** Suppose we are interested in the fairness of a coin, i.e., if Landing Heads has the same "probability" as Landing Tails. We can toss it  $n$  times and call  $N(H, n)$  the fraction of times we observed Heads out of  $n$  tosses. Suppose that after conducting the tossing experiment 1000 times, we rarely observed Heads, e.g., 9 out of the 1000 tosses, then  $N(H, 1000) = 9/1000 = 0.009$ . Suppose we continued the number of tosses to  $\infty$ , We might think that the coin is fair and has a lower "probability" of 0.1 of Landing Heads. We might think that the coin is unfair and has a higher "probability" of 0.1 of Landing Heads. We might think that it is fair but we have made here are crucial assumptions that we have made here are:

The mathematical model for probability or the probabilistic model is an axiomatic system that may be motivated by the intuitive idea of long-term relative frequency. If the axioms and definitions are intuitively motivated, the probability model simply follows from the real world logic to these axioms and definitions. No attempt to define probability in the real world is made. However, the application of probability models to real-world problems through statistical experiments has a fruitful track record. In fact, you are here for exactly this reason.

## 2.2 Probability

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>A</b><br><b>ω</b><br><b>Ω</b><br><b>Ac</b><br><b>Trial</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- an activity producing distinct outcomes.</li> <li>- set of all outcomes of the experiment.</li> <li>- an individual outcome in <math>\Omega</math>, called a simple event.</li> <li>- a subset of <math>\Omega</math> is an event.</li> <li>- one performance of an experiment resulting in 1 outcome.</li> </ul> |
|---|--|

**Classwork 27** (A three-bit cracking tree of outcomes) Can you think of a graphical way to enumerate the outcomes of the Experiment 26? Draw a diagram of this under the caption of Figure 2.1, using the caption as a hint (in other words, draw your own Figure 2.1).

Figure 2.1: A binary tree whose leaves are all possible outcomes.

This is an intuitively reasonable assumption that simply says that one of the possible outcomes is certain to occur, provided the coin is not so thick that it can land on or even roll along its circumference.

2. **Addition Rule:** Heads and Tails are mutually exclusive events in any given toss of a coin, i.e. they cannot occur simultaneously. The intersection of mutually exclusive events is the empty set and is denoted by  $H \cap T = \emptyset$ . The event  $H \cup T$ , namely that the event that “coin lands Heads **or** coin lands Tails” satisfies:

$$N(H \cup T, n) = N(H, n) + N(T, n).$$

3. The coin-tossing experiment is repeatedly performed in an **independent** manner, i.e. the outcome of any individual coin-toss does not affect that of another. This is an intuitively reasonable assumption since the coin has no memory and the coin is tossed identically each time.

We will use the LTRF idea more generally to motivate a mathematical model of probability called probability model. Suppose  $A$  is an event associated with some experiment  $\mathcal{E}$ , so that  $A$  either does or does not occur when the experiment is performed. We want the probability that event  $A$  occurs in a specific performance of  $\mathcal{E}$ , denoted by  $P(A)$ , to intuitively mean the following: if one were to perform a super-experiment  $\mathcal{E}^\infty$  by independently repeating the experiment  $\mathcal{E}$  and recording  $N(A, n)$ , the fraction of times  $A$  occurs in the first  $n$  performances of  $\mathcal{E}$  within the super-experiment  $\mathcal{E}^\infty$ . Then the LTRF idea suggests:

$$N(A, n) := \frac{\text{Number of times } A \text{ occurs}}{n = \text{Number of performances of } \mathcal{E}} \rightarrow P(A), \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty \quad (2.1)$$

Now, we are finally ready to define probability.

**Definition 10 (Probability)** Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be an experiment with sample space  $\Omega$ . Let  $\mathcal{F}$  denote a suitable collection of events in  $\Omega$  that satisfy the following conditions:

1. It (the collection) contains the sample space:  $[\Omega \in \mathcal{F}]$ .
2. It is closed under complementation:  $A \in \mathcal{F} \implies A^c \in \mathcal{F}$ .
3. It is closed under countable unions:  $A_1, A_2, \dots \in \mathcal{F} \implies \bigcup_i A_i := A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \in \mathcal{F}$ .

Formally, this collection of events is called a **sigma field** or a **sigma algebra**. Our experiment  $\mathcal{E}$  has a sample space  $\Omega$  and a collection of events  $\mathcal{F}$  that satisfy the three condition.

Given a double, e.g.  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F})$ , **probability** is just a function  $P$  which assigns each event  $A \in \mathcal{F}$  a number  $P(A)$  in the real interval  $[0, 1]$ , i.e.  $P : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow [0, 1]$ , such that:

1. The ‘Something Happens’ axiom holds, i.e.  $P(\Omega) = 1$ .
2. The ‘Addition Rule’ axiom holds, i.e. for events  $A$  and  $B$ :

$$A \cap B = \emptyset \implies P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B).$$

$\frac{d^2}{d\theta^2} \ell(\theta)$ . Let us find out when  $\frac{d^2}{d\theta^2} \ell(\theta) < 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d^2}{d\theta^2} \ell(\theta) &= n\theta^{-2} + 2\theta^{-3} \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) < 0 \\ \iff 2\theta^{-3} \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) &< 0 - n\theta^{-2} && \text{subtracting } n\theta^{-2} \text{ from both sides preserves the inequality} \\ \iff \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) &< -\frac{n\theta^{-2}}{2\theta^{-3}} && \text{dividing by the positive quantity } 2\theta^{-3} \text{ on both sides preserves the inequality} \\ \iff \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) &< -\frac{n\theta^3}{2\theta^2} \iff \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) &< -\frac{n\theta}{2} \end{aligned}$$

and therefore only when the observed data and the parameter jointly satisfy the condition:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) < -\frac{n\theta}{2}$$

will the MLE be

$$\hat{\theta}_n = -\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i).$$

If the condition is not satisfied then we cannot be sure about the MLE we found by setting the first derivative of the log-likelihood function to 0. This exercise illustrates that just ensuring that the slope or the first derivative of the log-likelihood function is zero at the MLE does not necessarily ensure that the curvature or second derivative of the log-likelihood function will always be negative or concave downward in order to ensure a global maximum at the MLE for every observable data and every possible parameter.

3. Step 1: If  $x_i \in (0, \infty)$  for each  $i \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , i.e. when each data point is greater than 0, the log-likelihood is

$$\begin{aligned} \ell(\theta) &= \sum_{i=1}^n \log(f_X(x_i; \theta)) = \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \log\left(\frac{1}{2\theta^3} x_i^2 e^{-x_i/\theta}\right) \right) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \log\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) + \log\left(\frac{1}{\theta^3}\right) + \log(x_i^2) + \log(e^{-x_i/\theta}) \right) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n (\log(2^{-1}) + \log(\theta^{-3}) + 2\log(x_i) + (-x_i/\theta)) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n (-\log(2) - 3\log(\theta) + 2\log(x_i) - x_i\theta^{-1}) \\ &= -\sum_{i=1}^n \log(2) - \sum_{i=1}^n 3\log(\theta) + \sum_{i=1}^n 2\log(x_i) - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i\theta^{-1} \\ &= -n\log(2) - 3n\log(\theta) + \sum_{i=1}^n 2\log(x_i) - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i\theta^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

It is important to realize that we accept the addition rule as an axiom in our mathematical definition of probability (or our probability model) and we do **not** prove this rule. However, the facets which are stated (with proofs) below, are logical consequences of our definition of probability:

$$\boxed{P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)}.$$

2. For any two events  $A$  and  $B$ , we have the inclusion-exclusion principle:

$$\bullet \text{ If } A = \emptyset \text{ then } A^c = \emptyset \text{ and } P(\emptyset) = 1 - P(\emptyset) = 1 - 1 = 0.$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{Proof: One line proof:} \\ & \text{LHS} = P(A \cup A^c) = P(A) + P(A^c) - P(A \cap A^c) = P(A) + P(A^c) - P(\emptyset) = P(A) + P(A^c) - 0 = P(A) = \text{RHS} \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{1. \text{ For any event } A, P(A^c) = 1 - P(A)}$$

2. Step 1: If  $x_i \in (0, 1)$  for each  $i \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , i.e. when each data point lies inside the open interval  $(0, 1)$ , the log-likelihood is

2. Step 2:  $\prod_{i=1}^n \theta^{x_i} (1-\theta)^{1-x_i}$

CHAPTER 7. INFERENCE FOR STATISTICAL EXPERIMENTS

$$P\left(\bigcup_u A_i\right) \leq \sum_{i=1}^t P(A_i)$$

events  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$  as follows:

5. Once again by the inclusion-exclusion principle, the Boolean inequality generalizes to any  $n$  you are curious.

**Proof:** See the counting argument in <https://en.wikipedia.org/wikis/Inclusion-exclusion-principle>

$$P\left(\bigcup_u A_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^t P(A_i) - \sum_{i < j < k} P(A_i \cup A_j \cup A_k) + \dots + (-1)^{t-1} P(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_t)$$

and generalizes to any  $n$  events  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$  as follows:

$$P(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup A_3) = P(A_1) + P(A_2) + P(A_3) - P(A_1 \cap A_2) - P(A_1 \cap A_3) - P(A_2 \cap A_3) + P(A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3)$$

4. The inclusion-exclusion principle extends similarly to any three events  $A_1, A_2, A_3$  as follows:

$$P(A \cup B) \leq P(A) + P(B)$$

3. From inclusion-exclusion principle we get Boolean's inequality: for any two events  $A, B$

$$P(A \cup B) = P(A \setminus B) + P(B) = P(A) - P(A \cap B) + P(B)$$

Substituting the first equality above into the second, we get:

$$P(A) = P(A \setminus B) + P(A \cup B)$$

the addition rule implies that:

$$\begin{aligned} A \cup B &= (A \setminus B) \cup B \quad \text{and} \quad (A \setminus B) \cup B = \emptyset \\ A &= (A \setminus B) \cup (A \cap B) \quad \text{and} \quad (A \setminus B) \cup (A \cap B) = A \end{aligned}$$

**Proof:** Since:

$$\boxed{P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)}$$

2. For any two events  $A$  and  $B$ , we have the inclusion-exclusion principle:

$$\bullet \text{ If } A = \emptyset \text{ then } A^c = \emptyset \text{ and } P(\emptyset) = 1 - P(\emptyset) = 1 - 1 = 0.$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{Proof: One line proof:} \\ & \text{LHS} = P(A \cup A^c) = P(A) + P(A^c) - P(A \cap A^c) = P(A) + P(A^c) - P(\emptyset) = P(A) + P(A^c) - 0 = P(A) = \text{RHS} \end{aligned}$$

This problem is more interesting because we have some positive and some negative terms in every  $x_i$  only takes values in  $(0, 1)$  we know that  $\log(x_i) < 0$  and therefore  $\sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) < 0$ . And since Step 5: Since  $\theta < 0$  and  $n \geq 1$ , we know that  $n\theta - 2 = n/\theta^2 < 0$ ,  $2\theta - 3 = 2/\theta^3 < 0$ .

$$\frac{d\theta^2}{d\theta}(\theta) = \frac{\theta p}{p} = \left( ((\theta)) \frac{\theta p}{p} \right) \frac{\theta p}{p} = \left( ((\theta)) \frac{\theta p}{p} \right) \frac{\theta p}{p}$$

Step 4:

$$\frac{n}{\theta} \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) = \frac{1}{\theta}$$

Let

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{\theta} \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) &= \theta \iff \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) = \theta u \iff \\ 0 &= \left( (\theta) \log \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) \right) \iff \theta^2 \times 0 = \left( (\theta) \log \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) \right) \times \theta^2 \end{aligned}$$

Multiplying both sides of the above equality by  $\theta^2$  we get

$$0 = \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) \iff 0 = ((\theta)) \frac{\theta p}{p}$$

Step 3:

$$\frac{d\theta}{d\theta}((\theta)) = \frac{\theta p}{p} = \left( ((\theta)) \log \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) - (\theta) \log \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) + (\theta) \log u \right) \frac{\theta p}{p} =$$

Step 2:

$$\begin{aligned} & -n \log(\theta) + \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) - \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) = \\ & \sum_{i=1}^t \log \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) - \sum_{i=1}^t \log \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) + (\theta) \log u = (\theta) \log \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) - (\theta) \log \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) + (\theta) \log u = \\ & (\theta) \log \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) + \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) \log \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) = \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) \log \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) + \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) \log \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) = \\ & \left( \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) \log \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) + \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) \log \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) \right) \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) = \left( \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) \log \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) + \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) \log \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) \right) \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) = \\ & \left( \left( \frac{\theta}{\theta/(1-\theta)} \right) \log \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) + \left( \frac{\theta}{\theta/(1-\theta)} \right) \log \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) \right) \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) = \left( \left( \frac{\theta}{\theta/(1-\theta)} \right) \log \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) + \left( \frac{\theta}{\theta/(1-\theta)} \right) \log \left( \frac{\theta}{1} \right) \right) \sum_{i=1}^t \log(x_i) = f(\theta) \end{aligned}$$

6. For a sequence of mutually disjoint events  $A_1, A_2, A_3, \dots, A_n$ :

$$A_i \cap A_j = \emptyset \text{ for any } i \neq j \implies P(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_n) = P(A_1) + P(A_2) + \dots + P(A_n).$$

**Proof:** If  $A_1, A_2, A_3$  are mutually disjoint events, then  $A_1 \cup A_2$  is disjoint from  $A_3$ . Thus, two applications of the addition rule for disjoint events yields:

$$P(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup A_3) = P((A_1 \cup A_2) \cup A_3) \stackrel{+ \text{ rule}}{=} P(A_1 \cup A_2) + P(A_3) \stackrel{+ \text{ rule}}{=} P(A_1) + P(A_2) + P(A_3)$$

The  $n$ -event case follows by mathematical induction.

We have formally defined the **probability model** specified by the **probability triple**  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$  that can be used to model an **experiment**  $\mathcal{E}$ .

**Example 28 (First Ball out of NZ Lotto)** Let us observe the number on *the first ball that pops out in a New Zealand Lotto trial*. There are forty balls labelled 1 through 40 for this experiment and so the sample space is

$$\Omega = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 39, 40\}.$$

Because the balls are vigorously whirled around inside the Lotto machine, modelled as a well-stirred urn, before the first one pops out, we can model each ball to pop out first with the same probability. So, we assign each outcome  $\omega \in \Omega$  the same probability of  $\frac{1}{40}$ , i.e., our probability model for this experiment is:

$$P(\omega) = \frac{1}{40}, \text{ for each } \omega \in \Omega = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 39, 40\}.$$

Note: We sometimes abuse notation and write  $P(\omega)$  instead of the more accurate but cumbersome  $P(\{\omega\})$  when writing down probabilities of simple events.

Crucially, by  $\omega = 17$  for example, we mean all the detailed dynamics inside the Lotto machine that lead to the event that the ball labelled by the number 17 ends up popping out. So,  $\Omega$  here is indeed a more complicated set although it only leads to 40 possible outcomes.

Figure 2.2 (a) shows the frequency of the first ball number in 1114 NZ Lotto draws. Figure 2.2 (b) shows the relative frequency, i.e., the frequency divided by 1114, the number of draws. Figure 2.2 (b) also shows the equal probabilities under our model.

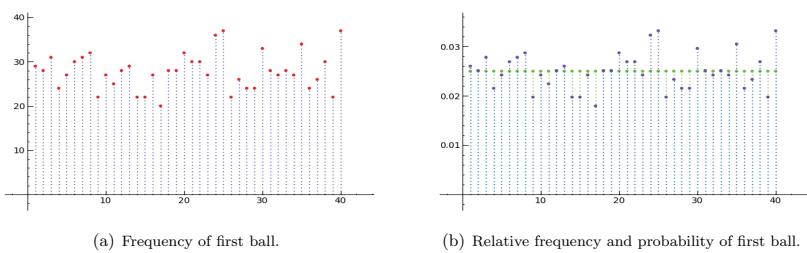


Figure 2.2: First ball number in 1114 NZ Lotto draws from 1987 to 2008.

Next, let us take a detour into how one might interpret it in the real world. The following is an adaptation from Williams D, *Weighing the Odds: A Course in Probability and Statistics*, Cambridge University Press, 2001, which henceforth is abbreviated as WD2001.

Recall the main steps (from Section 7.8.2) to find  $\hat{\theta}_n$ , the maximum likelihood estimate (MLE) of the unknown parameter  $\theta^*$  according to which the data is independently and identically distributed, are as follows:

(Step 1:) find  $\ell(\theta)$ , the log-likelihood as a function of the parameter  $\theta$ , (Step 2:) find  $\frac{d}{d\theta}\ell(\theta)$ , the first derivative of  $\ell(\theta)$  with respect to  $\theta$ , (Step 3:) solve the equation  $\frac{d}{d\theta}\ell(\theta) = 0$  for  $\theta$  and set this solution equal to  $\hat{\theta}_n$ , (Step 4:) find  $\frac{d^2}{d\theta^2}\ell(\theta)$ , the second derivative of  $\ell(\theta)$  with respect to  $\theta$  and finally (Step 5:)  $\hat{\theta}_n$  is the MLE if  $\frac{d^2}{d\theta^2}\ell(\theta) < 0$ .

We are now ready to answer the four questions in this problem.

1.

Step 1: If  $x_i \in (0, 1)$  for each  $i \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , i.e. when each data point lies inside the open interval  $(0, 1)$ , the log-likelihood is

$$\begin{aligned} \ell(\theta) &= \sum_{i=1}^n \log(f_X(x_i; \theta)) = \sum_{i=1}^n (\log(\theta x_i^{\theta-1})) = \sum_{i=1}^n (\log(\theta) + \log(x_i^{\theta-1})) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n (\log(\theta) + (\theta - 1)(\log(x_i))) = \sum_{i=1}^n (\log(\theta) + \theta \log(x_i) - \log(x_i)) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \log(\theta) + \sum_{i=1}^n \theta \log(x_i) - \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) = n \log(\theta) + \theta \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) - \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) \end{aligned}$$

Step 2:

$$\frac{d}{d\theta}(\ell(\theta)) = \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( n \log(\theta) + \theta \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) - \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) \right) = \frac{n}{\theta} + \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) - 0 = \frac{n}{\theta} + \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i)$$

Step 3:

$$\frac{d}{d\theta}(\ell(\theta)) = 0 \iff \frac{n}{\theta} + \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) = 0 \iff \frac{n}{\theta} = -\sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) \iff \theta = -\frac{n}{\sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i)}$$

Let

$$\hat{\theta}_n = -\frac{n}{\sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i)}.$$

Step 4:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d^2}{d\theta^2}\ell(\theta) &= \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( \frac{d}{d\theta}(\ell(\theta)) \right) = \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( \frac{n}{\theta} + \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) \right) = \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( n\theta^{-1} + \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i) \right) \\ &= -n\theta^{-2} + 0 = -\frac{n}{\theta^2} \end{aligned}$$

Step 5: The problem states that  $\theta > 0$ . Since  $\theta^2 > 0$  and  $n \geq 1$ , we have indeed checked that

$$\frac{d^2}{d\theta^2}\ell(\theta) = -\frac{n}{\theta^2} < 0$$

and therefore the MLE is indeed

$$\hat{\theta}_n = \frac{-n}{\sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i)}.$$



| Event $A \in \mathcal{F}'$         | $P : \mathcal{F}' \rightarrow [0, 1]$ | $P(A) \in [0, 1]$ |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
| $\Omega = \{\text{H, T}\} \bullet$ | $\longrightarrow$                     |                   |
| $\emptyset \bullet$                | $\longrightarrow$                     |                   |

Thus,  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{F}'$  are two distinct sigma algebras over our  $\Omega = \{\text{H, T}\}$ . Moreover,  $\mathcal{F}' \subset \mathcal{F}$  and is called a sub sigma algebra. Try to show that  $\{\Omega, \emptyset\}$  is the smallest possible sigma algebra over all possible sigma algebras over any given sample space  $\Omega$  (think of intersecting an arbitrary family of sigma algebras)?

Generally one encounters four types of sigma algebras (you will understand the last two types after taking more advanced courses in mathematics, so it is fine to understand the ideas intuitively for now!) and they are:

- When the sample space  $\Omega = \{\omega_1, \omega_2, \dots, \omega_k\}$  is a finite set with  $k$  outcomes and  $P(\omega_i)$ , the probability for each outcome  $\omega_i \in \Omega$  is known, then one typically takes the sigma-algebra  $\mathcal{F}$  to be the set of all subsets of  $\Omega$  called the **power set** and denoted by  $2^\Omega$ . The probability of each event  $A \in 2^\Omega$  can be obtained by adding the probabilities of the outcomes in  $A$ , i.e.,  $P(A) = \sum_{\omega_i \in A} P(\omega_i)$ . Clearly,  $2^\Omega$  is indeed a sigma-algebra and it contains  $2^{\#\Omega}$  events in it.
- When the sample space  $\Omega = \{\omega_1, \omega_2, \dots\}$  is a countable set then one typically takes the sigma-algebra  $\mathcal{F}$  to be the set of all subsets of  $\Omega$ . Note that this is very similar to the case with finite  $\Omega$  except now  $\mathcal{F} = 2^\Omega$  could have uncountably many events in it.
- If  $\Omega = \mathbb{R}^d$  for finite  $d \in \{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$  then the **Borel sigma-algebra** is the smallest sigma-algebra containing all **half-spaces**, i.e., sets of the form

$$\{x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_d) \in \mathbb{R}^d : x_1 \leq c_1, x_2 \leq c_2, \dots, x_d \leq c_d\}, \quad \text{for any } c = (c_1, c_2, \dots, c_d) \in \mathbb{R}^d,$$

When  $d = 1$  the half-spaces are the half-lines  $\{(-\infty, c] : c \in \mathbb{R}\}$  and when  $d = 2$  the half-spaces are the south-west quadrants  $\{(-\infty, c_1] \times (-\infty, c_2] : (c_1, c_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2\}$ , etc. (Equivalently, the Borel sigma-algebra is the smallest sigma-algebra containing all open sets in  $\mathbb{R}^d$ ).

- Given a finite set  $\mathbb{S} = \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$ , let  $\Omega$  be the sequence space  $\mathbb{S}^\infty := \mathbb{S} \times \mathbb{S} \times \mathbb{S} \times \dots$ , i.e., the set of sequences of infinite length that are made up of elements from  $\mathbb{S}$ . A set of the form

$$A_1 \times A_2 \times \dots \times A_n \times \mathbb{S} \times \mathbb{S} \times \dots, \quad A_k \subset \mathbb{S} \text{ for all } k \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\},$$

is called a **cylinder set**. The set of events in  $\mathbb{S}^\infty$  is the smallest sigma-algebra containing the cylinder sets.

- **A most primitive sigma-algebra for probability theory:** For example if  $\mathbb{S} = \{0, 1\}$ , then  $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^\infty$  is the set of all infinite sequences made of 0's and 1's. To take advantage of arithmetic and analysis,  $\Omega$  can be seen as the binary representation of all real numbers in the unit interval  $[0, 1]$ . We can take advantage of combinatorics and algebra if we further represent the dyadic partition of  $[0, 1]$  by a binary tree (as drawn in lectures). Then, a cylinder set such as  $1 \times 1 \times 0 \times \{0, 1\} \times \{0, 1\} \times \dots$ , an event here, can be interpreted as the finite binary sequence  $(1, 1, 0)$  — corresponding to the third leaf of a finite binary tree with four leaves obtained by splitting the right-most leaf twice. This cylindrical event  $(1, 1, 0)$  contains all real numbers in the interval  $[\frac{3}{4}, \frac{7}{8}] \subset [0, 1] =: \Omega$ .

**Exercise 2.1 (Intuiting a most primitive sigma-algebra – this is optional)** Try to carefully recollect and understand the most primitive sigma-algebra in the last item above as it was explained in lectures.

- When  $(x_1) = (1)$ , there is only one data point so  $n = 1$  and therefore

$$L(\theta) = \prod_{i=1}^1 f_{X_1}(x_1; \theta) = f_{X_1}(x_1 = 1; \theta) = f_{X_1}(1; \theta) = \theta$$

The above step-by-step break down is for understanding only. In the exam, you can just write:

$$L(\theta) = \theta$$

Make a plot of  $L(\theta) = \theta$  as a function of  $\theta$  (with x-axis values taken by  $\theta$  in the unit interval  $[0, 1]$ ).

- When  $(x_1) = (0)$

$$L(\theta) = \prod_{i=1}^1 f_{X_1}(x_1; \theta) = f_{X_1}(x_1 = 0; \theta) = f_{X_1}(0; \theta) = 1 - \theta$$

In the exam, you can just write:

$$L(\theta) = 1 - \theta$$

Make a plot of  $L(\theta) = 1 - \theta$  as a function of  $\theta$ .

- When  $(x_1, x_2) = (0, 0)$ , we have  $n = 2$  data points and therefore

$$\begin{aligned} L(\theta) &= \prod_{i=1}^2 f_{X_1}(x_i; \theta) = f_{X_1}(x_1 = 0; \theta) \times f_{X_1}(x_2 = 0; \theta) \\ &= f_{X_1}(0; \theta) \times f_{X_1}(0; \theta) = (1 - \theta) \times (1 - \theta) = (1 - \theta)^2 \end{aligned}$$

Or just

$$L(\theta) = (1 - \theta) \times (1 - \theta) = (1 - \theta)^2.$$

Make a plot of  $L(\theta) = (1 - \theta)^2$  as a function of  $\theta$ .

- When  $(x_1, x_2) = (1, 1)$ , we have  $n = 2$  data points and therefore

$$\begin{aligned} L(\theta) &= \prod_{i=1}^2 f_{X_1}(x_i; \theta) = f_{X_1}(x_1 = 1; \theta) \times f_{X_1}(x_2 = 1; \theta) \\ &= f_{X_1}(1; \theta) \times f_{X_1}(1; \theta) = \theta \times \theta = \theta^2 \end{aligned}$$

Or just

$$L(\theta) = \theta \times \theta = \theta^2.$$

Make a plot of  $L(\theta) = \theta^2$  as a function of  $\theta$ .

- When  $(x_1, x_2) = (1, 0)$ , we have  $n = 2$  data points and therefore

$$L(\theta) = \theta \times (1 - \theta) = \theta - \theta^2.$$

Make a plot of  $L(\theta) = \theta - \theta^2$  as a function of  $\theta$ . This plot is easy to draw if you overlay the plot for  $\theta$  and  $\theta^2$  (that you just made separately) and then see where  $\theta > \theta^2$  and by how much.

| PROBABILITY SUMMARY  |  |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
|--|--|---|------|---|------|---|-----|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|----|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|
| Axioms:  | $P(A \cap B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cup B)$ [always true]  |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| Rules:   | $P(A^c) = 1 - P(A)$  |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| Ex. 2.2 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies: | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>N</td><td>7.8%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>T</td><td>9.3%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>E</td><td>13%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>R</td><td>7.7%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>S</td><td>7.3%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>H</td><td>3.5%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F</td><td>2.8%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>M</td><td>2.5%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>W</td><td>1.6%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>X</td><td>0.5%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>J</td><td>0.2%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Z</td><td>0.1%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>G</td><td>1.6%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>V</td><td>1.3%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B</td><td>0.9%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>K</td><td>0.3%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>D</td><td>4.4%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C</td><td>3%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>U</td><td>2.7%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P</td><td>2.7%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Y</td><td>1.9%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>L</td><td>3.5%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>O</td><td>7.4%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>I</td><td>7.4%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A</td><td>7.3%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Q</td><td>0.3%</td> </tr> </table> | N | 7.8% | T | 9.3% | E | 13% | R | 7.7% | S | 7.3% | H | 3.5% | F | 2.8% | M | 2.5% | W | 1.6% | X | 0.5% | J | 0.2% | Z | 0.1% | G | 1.6% | V | 1.3% | B | 0.9% | K | 0.3% | D | 4.4% | C | 3% | U | 2.7% | P | 2.7% | Y | 1.9% | L | 3.5% | O | 7.4% | I | 7.4% | A | 7.3% | Q | 0.3% |
| N  | 7.8%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| T  | 9.3%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| E  | 13%  |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| R  | 7.7%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| S  | 7.3%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| H  | 3.5%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| F  | 2.8%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| M  | 2.5%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| W  | 1.6%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| X  | 0.5%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| J  | 0.2%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| Z  | 0.1%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| G  | 1.6%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| V  | 1.3%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| B  | 0.9%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| K  | 0.3%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| D  | 4.4%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| C  | 3%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| U  | 2.7%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| P  | 2.7%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| Y  | 1.9%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| L  | 3.5%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| O  | 7.4%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| I  | 7.4%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| A  | 7.3%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| Q  | 0.3%   |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
| Ex. 2.3 — Find the sample spaces for the following experiments:  | <p>(a) P({Z})</p> <p>(b) P({Picking any letter})</p> <p>(c) P({E, Z})</p> <p>(d) P({Picking a vowel})</p> <p>(e) P({Picking any letter in the word WAZZZZUP})</p> <p>(f) P({Picking any letter in the word WAZZZZUP or a vowel}).</p>  |   |      |   |      |   |     |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |    |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |

Suppose you pick one letter at random from a randomly chosen English book from our central library with  $\Omega = \{A, B, C, \dots, Z\}$  (ignoring upper/lower cases), then what is the probability of these events?

Ex. 2.4 — Suppose we pick one letter in the twenty six letters in the alphabet with the following frequencies:

### 2.3 Exercises in Probability

1. If  $A \subseteq \Omega$  then  $0 \leq P(A) \leq 1$  and  $P(\Omega) = 1$ .
  2. If  $A, B$  are disjoint events, then  $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B)$ .
  3. If  $A_1, A_2, \dots$  are disjoint then  $P(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots) = P(A_1) + P(A_2) + \dots$  [This is true only when  $A$  and  $B$  are disjoint].
- Rules:
- $$P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$$

Ex. 2.4 — Suppose we pick a letter at random from the word WAIMAKARTR.

1. What is the sample space  $\Omega$ ?
2. What probabilities should be assigned to the outcomes?
3. Rolling a die and recording the number on the upturned face until the first 6 appears.

Ex. 2.5 — Find the sample spaces for the following experiments:

1. Tossing 2 coins whose faces are sprayed with black paint denoted by  $B$  and white paint denoted by  $W$ .
2. Drawing 4 screws from a bucket of left-handed and right-handed screws denoted by  $L$  and  $R$ , respectively.
3. Rolling a die and recording the number on the upturned face until the first 6 appears.

Ex. 2.6 — Find the probability of not choosing the letter  $R$ ?

1. What is the probability of not choosing the letter  $R$ ?
2. What is the sample space  $\Omega$ ?
3. Rolling a die and recording the number on the upturned face until the first 6 appears.

Ex. 2.7 — Suppose we pick a letter at random from the word WAIMAKARTR.

1. What is the sample space  $\Omega$ ?
2. What probabilities should be assigned to the outcomes?
3. Rolling a die and recording the number on the upturned face until the first 6 appears.

Ex. 2.8 — Find the sample spaces for the following experiments:

1. Picking any letter in the word WAZZZZUP.
2. Picking any letter in the word WAZZZZUP or a vowel.

Ex. 2.9 — Find the sample spaces for the following experiments:

1. Picking any letter in the word WAZZZZUP.
2. Picking any letter in the word WAZZZZUP or a vowel.

Ex. 2.10 — Hint: Take the first derivative of  $\theta(1-\theta)$  with respect to  $\theta$ , set it

equal to 0 and solve for  $\theta$ . This solution will give the point at which  $\theta(1-\theta)$  has zero slope. Now,

find the second derivative of  $\theta(1-\theta)$  with respect to  $\theta$ , and evaluate it at the solution to see if the

maximum is achieved with a negative second derivative.

Answer (Exercise 7.10) — Hint: Take the first derivative of  $\theta(1-\theta)$  with respect to  $\theta$ , set it

equal to 0 and solve for  $\theta$ . This solution will give the point at which  $\theta(1-\theta)$  has zero slope. Now,

find the second derivative of  $\theta(1-\theta)$  with respect to  $\theta$ , and evaluate it at the solution to see if the

maximum is achieved with a negative second derivative.

Ex. 2.11 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.12 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.13 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.14 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.15 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.16 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.17 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.18 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.19 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.20 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.21 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.22 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.23 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.24 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5% |
| W | 1.6% |
| X | 0.5% |
| J | 0.2% |
| Z | 0.1% |
| G | 1.6% |
| V | 1.3% |
| B | 0.9% |
| K | 0.3% |
| D | 4.4% |
| C | 3%   |
| U | 2.7% |
| P | 2.7% |
| Y | 1.9% |
| L | 3.5% |
| O | 7.4% |
| I | 7.4% |
| A | 7.3% |
| Q | 0.3% |

Ex. 2.25 — In English language text, the twenty six letters in the alphabet occur with the following frequencies:

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| N | 7.8% |
| T | 9.3% |
| E | 13%  |
| R | 7.7% |
| S | 7.3% |
| H | 3.5% |
| F | 2.8% |
| M | 2.5  |

**Ex. 2.5** — There are seventy five balls in total inside the Bingo Machine. Each ball is labelled by one of the following five letters: B, I, N, G, and O. There are fifteen balls labelled by each letter. The letter on the first ball that comes out of a BINGO machine after it has been well-mixed is the outcome of our experiment.

- (a) Write down the sample space of this experiment.
- (b) Find the probabilities of each simple event.
- (c) Show that  $P(\Omega)$  is indeed 1.
- (d) Check that the addition rule for mutually exclusive events holds for the simple events  $\{B\}$  and  $\{I\}$ .
- (e) Consider the following events:  $C = \{B, I, G\}$  and  $D = \{G, I, N\}$ . Using the addition rule for two arbitrary events, find  $P(C \cup D)$ .

## 2.4 Conditional Probability

Conditional probabilities arise when we have partial information about the result of an experiment which restricts the sample space to a range of outcomes. For example, if there has been a lot of recent seismic activity in Christchurch, then the probability that an already damaged building will collapse tomorrow is clearly higher than if there had been no recent seismic activity.

Conditional probabilities are often expressed in English by phrases such as:

“If A happens, what is the probability that B happens?”

or

“What is the probability that A happens if B happens?”

or

“What is the probability that A occurs given that B occurs?”

Next, we define conditional probability and the notion of independence of events. We use the LTRF idea to motivate the definition.

**Idea 11 (LTRF intuition for conditional probability)** Let  $A$  and  $B$  be any two events associated with our experiment  $\mathcal{E}$  with  $P(A) \neq 0$ . The ‘conditional probability that  $B$  occurs given that  $A$  occurs’ denoted by  $P(B|A)$  is again intuitively underpinned by the super-experiment  $\mathcal{E}^\infty$  which is the ‘independent’ repetition of our original experiment  $\mathcal{E}$  ‘infinitely’ often. The LTRF idea is that  $P(B|A)$  is the long-term proportion of those experiments on which  $A$  occurs that  $B$  also occurs.

Recall that  $N(A, n)$  as defined in (2.1) is the fraction of times  $A$  occurs out of  $n$  independent repetitions of our experiment  $\mathcal{E}$  (ie. the experiment  $\mathcal{E}^n$ ). If  $A \cap B$  is the event that ‘ $A$  and  $B$  occur simultaneously’, then we intuitively want

$$P(B|A) \quad “\rightarrow” \quad \frac{N(A \cap B, n)}{N(A, n)} = \frac{N(A \cap B, n)/n}{N(A, n)/n} = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(A)}$$

as our  $\mathcal{E}^n \rightarrow \mathcal{E}^\infty$ . So, we **define** conditional probability as we want.

**Answer (Ex. 5.2)** —

We want  $1 - \alpha = 0.95$ , and from the standard Normal Table we know that the corresponding  $z_{\alpha/2} = 1.96$ . Then we can get the right sample size  $n$  from the CLT implied Equation (61) in the lecture notes, which is,

$$n = \left( \sqrt{(V(X_1)) z_{\alpha/2}} / \epsilon \right)^2 ,$$

as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} n &= \left( \sqrt{(V(X_1)) z_{\alpha/2}} / \epsilon \right)^2 = \left( (\sqrt{1/4} \times 1.96) / (1/10) \right)^2 \\ &= ((1/2) \times 1.96) / (1/10)^2 = (0.98 \times 10)^2 = 9.8^2 = 96.04 \end{aligned}$$

Finally, by rounding 96.04 up to the next largest integer we need  $n = 97$  measurements to meet the specifications of your boss (at least up to the approximation provided by the CLT).

**Answer (Ex. 5.3)** —

By CLT,  $\frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}_n - E(X_1))}{\sqrt{V(X_1)}} \rightsquigarrow Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ . So we need to apply the “standardization” to both sides of the inequality that is defining the event of interest:

$$\{\bar{X}_n < 5.5\} ,$$

in order to find its probability  $P(\bar{X}_n < 5.5)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} P(\bar{X}_n < 5.5) &= P\left(\frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}_n - E(X_1))}{\sqrt{V(X_1)}} < \frac{\sqrt{n}(5.5 - E(X_1))}{\sqrt{V(X_1)}}\right) \\ &\approx P\left(Z < \frac{\sqrt{n}(5.5 - \lambda)}{\sqrt{\lambda}}\right) \quad [\text{since we know/assume that } E(X_1) = V(X_1) = \lambda] \\ &= P\left(Z < \frac{\sqrt{125}(5.5 - 5)}{\sqrt{5}}\right) \quad [\text{Since, } \lambda = 5 \text{ and } n = 125 \text{ in this Example}] \\ &= P(Z \leq 2.5) = \Phi(2.5) = 0.9938 . \end{aligned}$$

(source: Wasserman, *All of Statistics*, Springer, p. 78, 2003)

**Answer (Ex. 5.4)** — HINT: Use the LLN after finding the population mean of  $X_i$ .

**Answer (Ex. 5.5)** — HINT: Use the CLT after finding the population mean and variance of  $X_i$ .

**Answer (Exercise 7.6)** —

(a) The number of questions out of the first five that the student gets correct has a binomial distribution with parameters  $n = 5$  and  $p = 0.2$ . Therefore, the probability that the student gets exactly two of the questions correct is

$$\binom{5}{2} (0.2)^2 (0.8)^{5-2} = \frac{5!}{2! \cdot 3!} (0.2)^2 (0.8)^{5-2} = 0.2048 .$$

(b) Let  $X$  be the number of questions that the student answers correctly on the entire test. Then,  $X$  has a binomial distribution with  $n = 100$  and  $p = 0.2$ . Check the success/ failure condition :

$$np = 100 \cdot 0.2 = 20 > 10, \quad n(1-p) = 80 > 10 .$$

|                              |                   |       |       |
|------------------------------|-------------------|-------|-------|
| Have Disease ( $D$ )         | Test positive (+) | 0.009 | 0.999 |
| Don't have disease ( $D^c$ ) | Test negative (-) | 0.001 | 0.981 |

**Example 31 (Wasserman03, p. 11)** A medical test for a disease  $D$  has outcomes + and - . the probabilities are:

$$P(A \cup B) = P(A)P(B|A) = P(B)P(A|B).$$

If  $A$  and  $B$  are events, and if  $P(A) \neq 0$  and  $P(B) \neq 0$ , then  
Multiplication rule for two likely events:

Solving for  $P(A \cup B)$  with these definitions of conditional probability gives another rule:

$$P(B_1 \cup B_2 | A) = P(B_1 | A) + P(B_2 | A) - P(B_1 \cap B_2 | A).$$

Addition rule for two arbitrary events  $B_1$  and  $B_2$ :

$$\text{Complement rule: } P(B|A) = 1 - P(B^c|A).$$

From the definition of conditional probability we get the following properties or rules:

$$P(B_1 \cup B_2 \cup \dots | A) = P(B_1 | A) + P(B_2 | A) + \dots.$$

Axiom (4): For mutually exclusive events,  $B_1, B_2, \dots$ ,

$$B_1 \cup B_2 = \emptyset \quad \text{implies} \quad P(B_1 \cup B_2 | A) = P(B_1 | A) + P(B_2 | A).$$

Axiom (3): The Addition Rule axiom holds, ie. for events  $B_1, B_2 \in \mathcal{F}$ ,

Axiom (2):  $P(\emptyset | A) = 1$  Meaning, Something Happens given the event  $A$  happens,

Axiom (1): For any event  $B$ ,  $0 \leq P(B | A) \leq 1$ .

that assigns to each  $B \in \mathcal{F}$  a number in the interval  $[0, 1]$ , such that, the axioms of probability are satisfied:

$$P(B | A) : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow [0, 1]$$

Note that  $A$  serves as the new reduced sample space so that conditional probabilities given  $A$  are conditional probability  $P(B | A)$  is a probability as in Definition 10, ie. a function:

implied probabilities. Thus, for a fixed event  $A \in \mathcal{F}$  with  $P(A) > 0$  and any event  $B \in \mathcal{F}$ , the condition  $P(B | A) = 1$  means that  $B$  is a certainty given  $A$ .

$$P(B | A) = \frac{P(B \cap A)}{P(A)} \quad (2.2)$$

conditional probability of  $B$  given  $A$  by,

**Definition 12 (Conditional Probability)** Suppose we are given an experiment  $\mathcal{E}$  with a triple  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ . Let  $A$  and  $B$  be events, ie.  $A, B \in \mathcal{F}$ , such that  $P(A) \neq 0$ . Then, we define the

**Answer (Ex. 4.1)** — This is nothing but the inversion sampler for the standard Cauchy RV  $X$ .

**Answer (Ex. 3.56)** — Apply the formulas for the sample mean,  $\bar{X}_n$ , and sample variance.

$F_Z(z) = F_{-\bar{Z}}(z)$  for every  $z \in \mathbb{R}$ . Note: we are not saying  $Z = -\bar{Z}$  but just that their distributions are the same, i.e.,

make sense because by switching signs of a symmetric (about 0) RV you have not changed its distribution.  $\phi_{-\bar{Z}}(t) = \phi_Z(t)$  and therefore the distributions of  $Z$  and  $-\bar{Z}$  are the same. This should

$$\phi_Y(t) = e^{it \times 0} \times \phi_Z(-1 \times t) = \phi_Z(-t) = e^{-((1-t)/2)} = e^{-t/2} = \phi_Z(t)$$

We can use the facts by noting  $Y = -Z = 0 + (-1) \times Z$ , with  $a = 0$  and  $b = -1$  in  $Y = a + bZ$ .

**Answer (Ex. 3.55)** —

generalizes to the sum of more than two Poisson RVs. So,  $W$  is a Poisson  $(\lambda + \mu)$  RV. Thus the sum of two independent Poisson RVs is also a Poisson RV with parameter given by the sum of the parameters of the two RVs being added. The same idea

$$\phi_W(t) = \phi_{X+Y}(t) = \phi_X(t) \times \phi_Y(t) = e^{\lambda e^{it} - \lambda} \times e^{\mu e^{it} - \mu} = e^{\lambda e^{it} - \lambda + \mu e^{it} - \mu} = e^{(\lambda + \mu) e^{it} - (\lambda + \mu)}$$

**Answer (Ex. 3.54)** —

$$V(X) = E(X^2) - (E(X))^2 = \lambda^2 + \lambda - \lambda^2 = \lambda.$$

Finally,

$$\begin{aligned} E(X^2) &= \frac{1}{1} \frac{d^2}{dt^2} \phi_X(t) = \frac{1}{1} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \phi_X(t) \right] = \frac{1}{1} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \left( \lambda e^{\lambda e^{it} - \lambda + \mu e^{it} - \mu} \right) \right] = \frac{1}{1} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \left( \lambda^2 e^{2\lambda e^{it} - 2\lambda + 2\mu e^{it} - \mu} \right) \right] = \\ &= \frac{1}{1} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \left( \lambda^2 e^{2\lambda e^{it} - 2\lambda + 2\mu e^{it} - \mu} \right) \right] = \frac{1}{1} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \left( \lambda^2 e^{2\lambda e^{it} - 2\lambda + 2\mu e^{it} - \mu} \right) \right] = \frac{1}{1} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \left( \lambda^2 e^{2\lambda e^{it} - 2\lambda + 2\mu e^{it} - \mu} \right) \right] = \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} E(X) &= \frac{1}{1} \frac{d}{dt} \phi_X(t) = \frac{1}{1} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \phi_X(t) \right] = \frac{1}{1} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \left( \lambda e^{\lambda e^{it} - \lambda + \mu e^{it} - \mu} \right) \right] = \frac{1}{1} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \left( \lambda^2 e^{2\lambda e^{it} - 2\lambda + 2\mu e^{it} - \mu} \right) \right] = \\ &= \frac{1}{1} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \left( \lambda^2 e^{2\lambda e^{it} - 2\lambda + 2\mu e^{it} - \mu} \right) \right] = \frac{1}{1} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \left( \lambda^2 e^{2\lambda e^{it} - 2\lambda + 2\mu e^{it} - \mu} \right) \right] = \end{aligned}$$

2. To find  $V(X)$  using  $\phi_X(t)$  we need  $E(X)$  and  $E(X^2)$ .

The second-last equality above is using  $e^a = \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^a}{a!}$  with  $a = \lambda e^t$ .

$$\phi_X(t) = (e^{\lambda e^{it} - \lambda + \mu e^{it} - \mu}) = \frac{e^{\lambda e^{it} - \lambda}}{x} \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \lambda^x e^{ixt} e^{-\lambda} = \frac{e^{\lambda e^{it} - \lambda}}{x} \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \lambda^x e^{-\lambda} = \frac{e^{\lambda e^{it} - \lambda}}{x} \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \lambda^x e^{-\lambda} = \frac{e^{\lambda e^{it} - \lambda}}{x} \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \lambda^x e^{-\lambda} =$$

Using the definition of conditional probability, we can compute the conditional probability that you test positive given that you have the disease:

$$P(+|D) = \frac{P(+ \cap D)}{P(D)} = \frac{0.009}{0.009 + 0.001} = 0.9 ,$$

and the conditional probability that you test negative given that you don't have the disease:

$$P(-|D^c) = \frac{P(- \cap D^c)}{P(D^c)} = \frac{0.891}{0.099 + 0.891} \approx 0.9 .$$

Thus, the test is quite accurate since sick people test positive 90% of the time and healthy people test negative 90% of the time.

Now, suppose you go for a test and test positive. What is the probability that you have the disease?

$$P(D|+) = \frac{P(D \cap +)}{P(+)} = \frac{0.009}{0.009 + 0.099} \approx 0.08$$

Most people who are not used to the definition of conditional probability would intuitively associate a number much bigger than 0.08 for the answer. Interpret conditional probability in terms of the meaning of the numbers that appear in the numerator and denominator of the above calculations.

#### 2.4.1 Bayes' Theorem

Next we look at one of the most elegant applications of the definition of conditional probability along with the addition rule for a partition of  $\Omega$  called *Bayes' Theorem*. We will present a two event case first called *Bayes' Rule* and then present the more general case of the Theorem.

This is useful because many problems involve reversing the order of conditional probabilities. Suppose we want to investigate some phenomenon  $A$  and have an observation  $B$  that is evidence about  $A$ : for example,  $A$  may be breast cancer and  $B$  may be a positive mammogram. Then Bayes' Theorem tells us how we should update our probability of  $A$ , given the new evidence  $B$ .

Or, put more simply, Bayes' Rule is useful when you know  $P(B|A)$  but want  $P(A|B)$ !

##### Proposition 13 (Bayes' Rule)

$$P(A|B) = \frac{P(A)P(B|A)}{P(B)} . \quad (2.3)$$

**Proof:** From the definition of conditional probability and the multiplication rule for two likely events  $A$  and  $B$  we get:

$$P(A|B) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)} = \frac{P(B \cap A)}{P(B)} = \frac{P(B|A)P(A)}{P(B)} = \frac{P(A)P(B|A)}{P(B)} .$$

**Example 32 (Mammogram)** Approximately 1% of women aged 40–50 have breast cancer. A woman with breast cancer has a 90% chance of a positive test from a mammogram, while a woman without breast cancer has a 10% chance of a false positive result from the test. What is the probability that a woman indeed has breast cancer given that she just had a positive test?

2. To find  $V(X)$  using  $V(X) = E(X^2) - (E(X))^2$  we need the first two moments of  $X$ . First, differentiate  $\varphi_X(t)$  w.r.t.  $t$

$$\frac{d}{dt}\varphi_X(t) = \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{1}{3}(1 + e^{it} + e^{i2t})\right) = \frac{1}{3}(0 + ie^{it} + 2ie^{i2t}) = \frac{i}{3}(e^{it} + 2e^{i2t})$$

We get the  $k$ -th moment  $E(X^k)$  by multiplying the  $k$ -th derivative of  $\varphi_X(t)$  evaluated at  $t = 0$  by  $\frac{1}{i^k}$  as follows:

$$E(X) = \frac{1}{i}\left[\frac{d}{dt}\varphi_X(t)\right]_{t=0} = \frac{1}{i}\left[\frac{i}{3}(e^{it} + 2e^{i2t})\right]_{t=0} = \frac{1}{i}\frac{i}{3}(e^0 + 2e^0) = \frac{1}{3}(1 + 2) = 1 .$$

$$\begin{aligned} E(X^2) &= \frac{1}{i^2}\left[\frac{d^2}{dt^2}\varphi_X(t)\right]_{t=0} = \frac{1}{i^2}\left[\frac{d}{dt}\frac{i}{3}(e^{it} + 2e^{i2t})\right]_{t=0} = \frac{1}{i^2}\left[\frac{i}{3}(ie^{it} + 4ie^{i2t})\right]_{t=0} \\ &= \frac{1}{3}(e^0 + 4e^0) = \frac{5}{3} . \end{aligned}$$

Finally,

$$V(X) = E(X^2) - (E(X))^2 = \frac{5}{3} - 1^2 = \frac{5-3}{3} = \frac{2}{3} .$$

##### Answer (Ex. 3.51) —

1.

$$\varphi_X(t) = E(e^{itX}) = \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} e^{itx}\theta(1-\theta)^x = \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \theta(e^{it}(1-\theta))^x = \frac{\theta}{1-e^{it}(1-\theta)} .$$

The last equality is due to  $\sum_{x=0}^{\infty} ar^x = \frac{a}{1-r}$  with  $a = \theta$  and  $r = e^{it}(1-\theta)$ .

2.

$$\begin{aligned} E(X) &= \frac{1}{i}\left[\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\theta}{1-e^{it}(1-\theta)}\right)\right]_{t=0} = \frac{1}{i}\theta\left[\frac{d}{dt}\left((1-e^{it}(1-\theta))^{-1}\right)\right]_{t=0} \\ &= \frac{1}{i}\theta\left[-(1-e^{it}(1-\theta))^{-2}\frac{d}{dt}(1-e^{it}(1-\theta))\right]_{t=0} \\ &= \frac{1}{i}\theta\left[-(1-e^{it}(1-\theta))^{-2}(0-ie^{it}(1-\theta))\right]_{t=0} \\ &= \frac{1}{i}\theta\left(-(1-e^0(1-\theta))^{-2}(-ie^0(1-\theta))\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{i}\theta\left(-(1-1+\theta)^{-2}(-i(1-\theta))\right) \\ &= \frac{1-\theta}{\theta} . \end{aligned}$$

##### Answer (Ex. 3.52) —

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_X(t) &= E(e^{itX}) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{itx}f_X(x; a, b)dx = \int_a^b e^{itx}\frac{1}{b-a}dx = \frac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b e^{itx}dx = \frac{1}{b-a}\left[\frac{e^{itx}}{it}\right]_{x=a}^b \\ &= \frac{1}{(b-a)it}(e^{itb} - e^{ita}) . \end{aligned}$$



Before we see the more general form of Bayes' Rule, let us make a simple observation called the *total probability theorem*.

**Proposition 14 (Total probability theorem)** Suppose  $A_1 \cup A_2 \dots \cup A_k$  is a sequence of events with positive probability that partition the sample space, that is,  $A_1 \cup A_2 \dots \cup A_k = \Omega$  and  $A_i \cap A_j = \emptyset$  for any  $i \neq j$ , then for some arbitrary event  $B$ .

$$P(B) = \sum_{h=1}^k P(B \cap A_h) = \sum_{h=1}^k P(B|A_h)P(A_h) \quad (2.4)$$

**Proof:** The first equality is due to the addition rule for mutually exclusive events,

$$B \cap A_1, B \cap A_2, \dots, B \cap A_k$$

and the second equality is due to the multiplication rule for two likely events.

Reference to the Venn diagram (you should draw below as done in lectures) will help you understand this idea for the four event case.

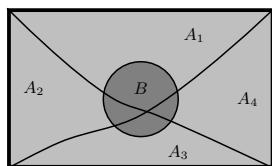


Figure 2.3: Reference to the Venn diagram will help you understand this idea behind the proof of the total probability theorem in Proposition 14 for the four event case.

**Example 33 (Urn with red and black balls)** A well-mixed urn contains five red and ten black balls. We draw two balls from the urn without replacement. What is the probability that the second ball drawn is red?

This is easy to see if we draw a probability tree diagram. The first split in the tree is based on the outcome of the first draw and the second on the outcome of the last draw. The outcome of the first draw dictates the probabilities for the second one since we are sampling without replacement. We multiply the probabilities on the edges to get probabilities of the four endpoints, and then sum the ones that correspond to red in the second draw, that is

$$P(\text{second ball is red}) = 4/42 + 10/42 = 1/3 .$$

1. If  $x \notin [0, \infty)$  or  $y \notin [2, 3]$  then  $f_X(x)f_Y(y) = 0 = f_{X,Y}(x, y)$
2. If  $x \in [0, \infty)$  and  $y \in [2, 3]$  then  $f_X(x)f_Y(y) = e^{-x} \times 1 = e^{-x} = f_{X,Y}(x, y)$ .

Thus,  $X$  and  $Y$  are independent.

**Answer (Ex. 3.46) —**

$$\begin{aligned} & P(X_1 > 1000, X_2 > 1000, X_3 > 1000, X_4 > 1000) \\ &= \int_{1000}^{\infty} \int_{1000}^{\infty} \int_{1000}^{\infty} \int_{1000}^{\infty} 9 \times 10^{-12} e^{-0.001x_1 - 0.002x_2 - 0.0015x_3 - 0.003x_4} dx_1 dx_2 dx_3 dx_4 \\ &= 9 \times 10^{-12} \int_{1000}^{\infty} \int_{1000}^{\infty} \int_{1000}^{\infty} \int_{1000}^{\infty} e^{-0.001x_1} e^{-0.002x_2} e^{-0.0015x_3} e^{-0.003x_4} dx_1 dx_2 dx_3 dx_4 \\ &= 9 \times 10^{-12} \int_{1000}^{\infty} e^{-0.001x_1} \int_{1000}^{\infty} e^{-0.002x_2} \int_{1000}^{\infty} e^{-0.0015x_3} \int_{1000}^{\infty} e^{-0.003x_4} dx_4 dx_3 dx_2 dx_1 \end{aligned}$$

Since

$$\int_{1000}^{\infty} e^{-ax_i} dx_i = \left[ \frac{e^{-ax_i}}{-a} \right]_{1000}^{\infty} = 0 + \frac{e^{-1000 \times a}}{a} ,$$

the above quadruply iterated integral becomes

$$\begin{aligned} & 9 \times 10^{-12} \times \frac{e^{-1000 \times 0.001}}{0.001} \times \frac{e^{-1000 \times 0.002}}{0.002} \times \frac{e^{-1000 \times 0.0015}}{0.0015} \times \frac{e^{-1000 \times 0.003}}{0.003} \\ &= 9 \times 10^{-12} \times \frac{1000}{1} \times \frac{1000}{2} \times \frac{1000}{1.5} \times \frac{1000}{3} \times e^{-1} \times e^{-2} \times e^{-1.5} \times e^{-3} \\ &= 9 \times 10^{-12} \times \frac{1}{9} \times 10^{12} \times e^{-7.5} = e^{-7.5} \approx 0.00055 . \end{aligned}$$

**Answer (Ex. 3.47) —**

Due to independence of  $Y_1$ ,  $Y_2$  and  $Y_3$

$$\begin{aligned} & P(9500 < Y_1 < 10500, 950 < Y_2 < 1050, 75 < Y_3 < 85) \\ &= P(9500 < Y_1 < 10500) P(950 < Y_2 < 1050) P(75 < Y_3 < 85) \end{aligned}$$

After standardizing each Normal RV (subtracting its mean and dividing by its standard deviation) we get

$$\begin{aligned} & P(9500 < Y_1 < 10500) P(950 < Y_2 < 1050) P(75 < Y_3 < 85) \\ &= P\left(\frac{9500 - 10000}{250} < Z < \frac{10500 - 10000}{250}\right) P\left(\frac{950 - 1000}{20} < Z < \frac{1050 - 1000}{20}\right) \\ &\quad P\left(\frac{75 - 80}{4} < Z < \frac{85 - 80}{4}\right) \\ &= P(-2.0 < Z < 2.0) P(-2.5 < Z < 2.5) P(-1.25 < Z < 1.25) \\ &= (\Phi(2.0) - (1 - \Phi(2.0))) \times (\Phi(2.5) - (1 - \Phi(2.5))) \times (\Phi(1.25) - (1 - \Phi(1.25))) \\ &= (2\Phi(2.0) - 1) \times (2\Phi(2.5) - 1) \times (2\Phi(1.25) - 1) \\ &= ((2 \times 0.9772) - 1) \times ((2 \times 0.9938) - 1) \times ((2 \times 0.8944) - 1) \quad \text{using Table for } \Phi(z) \\ &= 0.9544 \times 0.9876 \times 0.7888 = 0.7435 \end{aligned}$$

Finally, writing that  $f_{X,Y}(x,y) = f_X(x)f_Y(y)$  for any  $(x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  is done case by case. Drawing a picture on the plane to work out the cases from the disjoint expressions taken when  $f_{X,Y}(x,y)$  takes non-zero values:

$$f_{X,Y}(x,y) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ e^{-x} & \text{if } x \in [0, \infty) \end{cases}$$

Therefore,

$$f_X(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{X,Y}(x,y) dy = \int_3^{\infty} e^{-x} dy = e^{-x} [y]_3^{\infty} = e^{-x}(3 - 2) = e^{-x}.$$

Now, obtain the marginal PDF of  $X$ . If  $x \in [0, \infty)$  then

$$f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ 1 & \text{if } y \in [2, 3] \end{cases}$$

Therefore,

$$f_Y(y) = \int_{\infty}^{\infty} f_{X,Y}(x,y) dx = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} dx = 0 - (-1) = 1.$$

First obtain marginal PDF of  $Y$ . If  $y \in [2, 3]$  then

**Answer (Ex. 3.45) —**

and you will get the expression for  $F_{X,Y}(x,y)$  given above.

Now work out what  $F_{X,Y}(x,y) = F_X(x)F_Y(y)$  is for  $(x,y)$  in each of the above six partitions of the plane

$(-\infty, 1) \times (-\infty, 0), [1, 2) \times (-\infty, 0), [2, \infty) \times (-\infty, 0), (-\infty, 1) \times [0, \infty), [1, 2) \times [0, \infty), [2, \infty) \times [0, \infty)$ .

You can arrive at the answer by partitioning  $x$ -axis into  $(-\infty, 1), [1, 2)$  and  $[2, \infty)$  where  $F_X(x)$  takes distinct values. Similarly, partition the  $y$ -axis into  $(-\infty, 0)$  and  $[0, \infty)$  where  $F_Y(y)$  takes distinct values. Now  $(x,y)$  can take values in one of these  $3 \times 2 = 6$  partitions of the  $x$ - $y$  plane as follows (make a picture!):

$$F_{X,Y}(x,y) = \begin{cases} 1 - \frac{1}{2}e^{-y} - \frac{1}{2}e^{-2y} & \text{if } x > 2 \text{ and } y \geq 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} (1 - \frac{1}{2}e^{-y} - \frac{1}{2}e^{-2y}) & \text{if } 1 \leq x < 2 \text{ and } y \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x < 1 \text{ or } y < 0 \end{cases}$$

Since  $X$  and  $Y$  are independent,  $F_{X,Y}(x,y) = F_X(x)F_Y(y)$  for all  $(x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ , and we get:

$$\text{Cov}(X,Y) = E(XY) - E(X)E(Y) = 4.5 - 1.8^2 = 1.26.$$

Finally,

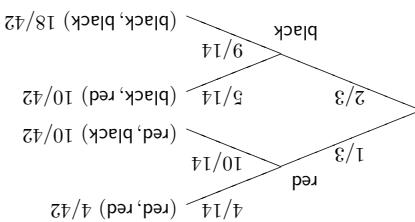
expectations  $E(X) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} x \times f_{X,Y}(x,y) dy$  and  $E(Y) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} y \times f_{X,Y}(x,y) dx$ . Alternatively, you can first find the marginal PMFs  $f_X(x)$  and  $f_Y(y)$  for  $X$  and  $Y$  and then take the sum addition is component-wise  $E(X,Y) = (E(X), E(Y))$  and therefore  $E(X) = E(Y) = 1.8$ .

**Answer (Ex. 3.44) —**

$$= (0,0) + (0,1,0,1) + (0,1,0,2) + (1,2) \times 0,1 + (2,1) \times 0,1 + (2,2) \times 0,1 + (1,2,1,2)$$

$$= (0,0) \times 0,2 + (1,1) \times 0,1 + (1,2) \times 0,1 + (2,1) \times 0,1 + (2,2) \times 0,1 + (3,3) \times 0,4$$

$$E((X,Y)) = \sum_{(x,y) \in S_{X,Y}} (x,y) \times f_{X,Y}(x,y)$$



The operations done to the denominator in the proof above is merely the total probability theorem:

$$\begin{aligned} P(A_h|B) &= \frac{P(A_h \cap B)}{P(B)} = \frac{P(A_h)P(B|A_h)}{P(B)} = \frac{P(A_h)P(B|A_h)}{P(A_h)P(A_h) + P(A_{h'})P(A_{h'})} \\ &= \frac{P(A_h)P(B|A_h)}{P(A_h)} = \frac{P(A_h)P(B|A_h)}{P(A_h)} = \frac{P(A_h)P(B|A_h)}{P(A_h)} = \frac{P(A_h)P(B|A_h)}{P(A_h)} \end{aligned}$$

**Proof.** We apply elementary set theory, the definition of conditional probability  $k + 2$  times and the addition rule once:

$$P(A_h|B) = \frac{\sum_{h=1}^k P(B|A_h)P(A_h)}{P(B|A_h)P(A_h)} \quad (2.5)$$

Let  $B \in \mathcal{F}$  be some event with  $P(B) > 0$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} A_i \cup A_j &= \emptyset, \text{ for any distinct } i, j \in \{1, 2, \dots, k\}, \quad \bigcup_h A_h = \Omega, \quad P(A_h) < 0 \\ \text{Thus, precisely one of the } A_h \text{'s will occur on any performance of our experiment } \mathcal{E}. \end{aligned}$$

**Proposition 15 (Bayes, Theorem, 1763)** Suppose the events  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k \in \mathcal{F}$ , with  $P(A_h) > 0$  for each  $h \in \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$ , partition the sample space  $\Omega$ , i.e. they are mutually exclusive (disjoint) and exhaustive events with positive probability:

**Proposition 15 (Bayes, Theorem, 1763)** Suppose the events  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k \in \mathcal{F}$ , with  $P(A_h) > 0$  for each  $h \in \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$ , partition the sample space  $\Omega$ , i.e. they are mutually exclusive (disjoint) and exhaustive events with positive probability:

$$= (4/14)(1/3) + (5/14)(2/3) = 1/3.$$

$$= P(R_2|R_1)P(R_1) + P(R_2 \cup R_1)$$

Now  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  partition  $\Omega$  so we can write:

a red ball in the last and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{black, red}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{red, red}\}$ ,  $(\text{red, black})$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{red, red}\}$ ,  $(\text{black, red})$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the last and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{black, red}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Alternatively, use the total probability theorem to break the problem down into manageable pieces.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(black, red)}, (\text{black, black})\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(black, black)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(black, black)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let  $R_1 = \{\text{(black, red)}\}$  be the event of a black ball on the first draw.

Let  $R_1 = \{\text{(red, red)}, (\text{red, black}), (\text{black, red}), (\text{black, black})\}$  and  $R_2 = \{\text{(red, red)}\}$  be the events corresponding to a red ball in the first and 2nd draws, respectively, and let <

We call  $P(A_h)$  the **prior probability** of  $A_h$ , i.e., before observing  $B$  or *a priori*, and  $P(A_h|B)$  the **posterior probability** of  $A_h$ , i.e., after observing  $B$  or *a posteriori*.

This theorem is at the heart of solving Bayesian *Decision Problems* which fall into several sub-problems called *inference*, *learning* and *control* problems. Let's see one of the simplest such *learning problems* called *prediction*, more specifically *classification*, where we need to choose between finitely many possible choices based on past information next.

**Example 34 (Wasserman2003 p.12)** Suppose Larry divides his email into three categories:  $A_1$  = "spam",  $A_2$  = "low priority", and  $A_3$  = "high priority". From previous experience, he finds that  $P(A_1) = 0.7$ ,  $P(A_2) = 0.2$  and  $P(A_3) = 0.1$ . Note that  $P(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup A_3) = P(\Omega) = 0.7 + 0.2 + 0.1 = 1$ . Let  $B$  be the event that the email contains the word "free." From previous experience,  $P(B|A_1) = 0.9$ ,  $P(B|A_2) = 0.01$  and  $P(B|A_3) = 0.01$ . Note that  $P(B|A_1) + P(B|A_2) + P(B|A_3) = 0.9 + 0.01 + 0.01 \neq 1$ . Now, suppose Larry receives an email with the word "free." What is the probability that it is "spam," "low priority," and "high priority"?

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned} P(A_1|B) &= \frac{P(B|A_1)P(A_1)}{P(B|A_1)P(A_1)+P(B|A_2)P(A_2)+P(B|A_3)P(A_3)} = \frac{0.9 \times 0.7}{(0.9 \times 0.7)+(0.01 \times 0.2)+(0.01 \times 0.1)} = \frac{0.63}{0.633} \approx 0.995 \\ P(A_2|B) &= \frac{P(B|A_2)P(A_2)}{P(B|A_1)P(A_1)+P(B|A_2)P(A_2)+P(B|A_3)P(A_3)} = \frac{0.01 \times 0.2}{(0.9 \times 0.7)+(0.01 \times 0.2)+(0.01 \times 0.1)} = \frac{0.002}{0.633} \approx 0.003 \\ P(A_3|B) &= \frac{P(B|A_3)P(A_3)}{P(B|A_1)P(A_1)+P(B|A_2)P(A_2)+P(B|A_3)P(A_3)} = \frac{0.01 \times 0.1}{(0.9 \times 0.7)+(0.01 \times 0.2)+(0.01 \times 0.1)} = \frac{0.001}{0.633} \approx 0.002 \end{aligned}$$

Note that  $P(A_1|B) + P(A_2|B) + P(A_3|B) = 0.995 + 0.003 + 0.002 = 1$ .

This is essentially the idea behind *Bayes classifiers*, that are used to solve such *prediction* problems across different problem domains in *statistical machine learning*, where solutions are given from computer programs.

#### 2.4.2 Independence and Dependence

In general,  $P(A|B)$  and  $P(A)$  are different, but sometimes the occurrence of  $B$  makes no difference, and gives no new information about the chances of  $A$  occurring. This is the idea behind independence. Events like "having blue eyes" and "having blond hair" are associated due to common genetic ancestry, but events like "my neighbour wins Lotto" and "I win Lotto" are not due to the Lotto machine being chaotically whirled around before ejection (as modelled by a well-stirred urn).

**Definition 16 (Independence of two events)** Any two events  $A$  and  $B$  are said to be **independent** if and only if

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A)P(B). \quad (2.6)$$

Let us make sense of this definition in terms of our previous definitions. When  $P(A) = 0$  or  $P(B) = 0$ , both sides of the above equality are 0. If  $P(A) \neq 0$ , then rearranging the above equation we get:

$$\frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(A)} = P(B).$$

But, the LHS is  $P(B|A)$  by definition 2.2, and thus for independent events  $A$  and  $B$ , we get:

$$P(B|A) = P(B).$$

This says that information about the occurrence of  $A$  does not affect the occurrence of  $B$ . If  $P(B) \neq 0$ , then an analogous argument:

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A)P(B) \iff P(B \cap A) = P(A)P(B) \iff \frac{P(B \cap A)}{P(B)} = P(A) \iff P(A|B) = P(A),$$

**Answer (Ex. 3.41) —**

First derive the marginal PMF of  $X$  and  $Y$  and then check if the JPMF is the product of the marginal PMFs.

$$f_X(0) = \sum_{y \in \mathcal{S}_{X,Y}} f_{X,Y}(0,y) = f_{X,Y}(0,0) + f_{X,Y}(0,1) = \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$$

and

$$f_X(1) = \sum_{y \in \mathcal{S}_{X,Y}} f_{X,Y}(1,y) = f_{X,Y}(1,0) + f_{X,Y}(1,1) = \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$$

Thus,

$$f_X(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } x = 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } x = 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise .} \end{cases}$$

Similarly,

$$f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} \sum_{x \in \mathcal{S}_{X,Y}} f_{X,Y}(x,0) = f_{X,Y}(0,0) + f_{X,Y}(1,0) = \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } y = 0 \\ \sum_{x \in \mathcal{S}_{X,Y}} f_{X,Y}(x,1) = f_{X,Y}(0,1) + f_{X,Y}(1,1) = \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } y = 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise .} \end{cases}$$

Finally, the product of  $f_X(x)$  and  $f_Y(y)$  is

$$f_X(x) \times f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4} & \text{if } (x,y) = (0,0) \\ \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4} & \text{if } (x,y) = (0,1) \\ \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4} & \text{if } (x,y) = (1,0) \\ \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4} & \text{if } (x,y) = (1,1) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise .} \end{cases}$$

which in turn is equal to the JPMF  $f_{X,Y}(x,y)$  in the question. Therefore we have shown that the component RVs  $X$  and  $Y$  in the R $\vec{V}(X, Y)$  are indeed independent.

**Answer (Ex. 3.42) —**

Let  $X_1, X_2, X_3$  be independent RVs that denote the thickness of the first, second and third layer, respectively. Let  $X$  denote the thickness of the final product. Then

$$X = X_1 + X_2 + X_3$$

By the property that  $V(\sum_{i=1}^n a_i X_i) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i^2 V(X_i)$ , Variance of  $X$  is

$$V(X) = 1^2 V(X_1) + 1^2 V(X_2) + 1^2 V(X_3) = 25 + 40 + 30 = 95 nm^2 .$$

This shows how the variance in each layer is propagated to the variance of the final product.

**Answer (Ex. 3.43) —**

Find  $E(XY)$ ,  $E(X)$  and  $E(Y)$  to get  $\text{Cov}(X, Y) = E(XY) - E(X)E(Y)$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} E(XY) &= \sum_{(x,y) \in \mathcal{S}_{X,Y}} x \times y \times f_{X,Y}(x,y) \\ &= 0 \times 0 \times 0.2 + 1 \times 1 \times 0.1 + 1 \times 2 \times 0.1 + 2 \times 1 \times 0.1 + 2 \times 2 \times 0.1 + 3 \times 3 \times 0.4 = 4.5 \end{aligned}$$

and therefore  $A$  and  $B$  are not independent. The reason for the events  $A$  and  $B$  being dependent is clear because the chance of getting a total of six depends on the outcome of the first die (noticing six).

$$P(A)P(B) = P\{((1,5),(2,4),(3,3),(4,2),(5,1))\}P\{((4,1),(4,2),(4,3),(4,4),(4,5),(4,6)\}$$

out

$$P(A \cup B) = P(\{4, 2\}) = \frac{36}{1}$$

for each  $w \in \mathcal{U}$ . Then

**Example 36** (dependence and independence) Suppose we toss two fair dice. Let  $A$  denote the event that the sum of the dice is six and  $B$  denote the event that the first die equals four. Let  $C$  denote the event that the two dice encode the same number. Suppose we toss two fair dice. Let  $D$  denote the event that the two dice encode the same number. The sample space for this experiment is  $\{(1, 1), (1, 2), \dots, (1, 6), (2, 1), \dots, (2, 6), \dots, (5, 6), (6, 6)\}$  and due to independence  $P(C) = 1/36$ .

c) Suppose you toss a fair coin independently  $m$  times. Then each of the  $2^m$  possible outcomes in the sample space  $\mathcal{U}$  has equal probability of  $\frac{1}{2^m}$  due to independence.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & P(E_1 \cup E_2 \cup E_3) = P(E_1)P(E_2)P(E_3) \\
 & = (P(\{2\}) + P(\{4\}) + P(\{6\}))^3 \\
 & = (P(\{2\} \cap \{4\} \cap \{6\}))^3 \\
 & = \left( \frac{6}{1} + \frac{6}{1} + \frac{6}{1} \right)^3 = \left( \frac{6}{1}, \frac{6}{1}, \frac{6}{1} \right)^3
 \end{aligned}$$

TRIALS IS:

b) Suppose you independently toss a fair die three times. Let  $E$  be the event that the outcome is an even number on the  $i$ -th trial. The probability of getting an even number in all three

(Heads on the first toss  $\cup$  Tails on the second toss) =  $P(H)P(T) = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4}$

“НОУТ-ДИВІСС ОНІ ЙО ЗНОВУДЕРНІ СІ ССОР АШНІ ОНА ЖИЗНЬ НЕВОЛІТЬ ЖІЛОВАНОГО ПОСІДДІНГА. (МІСІЯ)

SI SIPS IS DEPENDENT.

**Example 35** (Some Standard Examples) A sequence of events in a sequence of independent trials is independent.

$$P(A_{i1} \cup A_{i2} \cup \dots \cup A_{ik}) = P(A_{i1}) P(A_{i2}) \dots P(A_{ik})$$

quence of events  $A_1, A_2, \dots$  are independent if whenever  $i_1, i_2, \dots, i_k$  are distinct elements from the set of indices  $N$ , such that  $A_{i_1}, A_{i_2}, \dots, A_{i_k}$  are defined (elements of  $\mathcal{F}$ ), then

probabilistic theory of their joint occurrence  $P(A \cup B)$  is simply the product of their individual probabilities says that information about the occurrence of  $B$  does not affect the occurrence of  $A$ . Therefore, the

CHAPTER 2. PROBABILITY MODEL

Note: If  $y < 0$  then  $f'_y(y) = 0$  since  $F'_y(y) = 0$  in this case.

$$\begin{aligned} & (\underline{\mathcal{R}}^\wedge - \eta I) X f + (\underline{\mathcal{R}}^\wedge + \eta I) X f \frac{\underline{\mathcal{R}}^\wedge \bar{c}}{1} = \\ & (\underline{\mathcal{R}}^\wedge - \eta I) X f \left( \frac{\bar{c}}{1} - \underline{\mathcal{R}}^\wedge \frac{\bar{c}}{1} \right) - (\underline{\mathcal{R}}^\wedge + \eta I) X f \frac{\bar{c}}{1} - \underline{\mathcal{R}}^\wedge \frac{\bar{c}}{1} = \\ & (\underline{\mathcal{R}}^\wedge - \eta I) X f - (\underline{\mathcal{R}}^\wedge + \eta I) X f \frac{\underline{\mathcal{R}}^\wedge p}{p} = (\underline{\mathcal{R}}^\wedge)^\lambda f \end{aligned}$$

Differentiating this expression gives

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\underline{f} \wedge + \pi) X_d &= (\underline{f} \wedge + \pi) X_d = \\
 (\underline{f} \wedge + \pi) \geq X &\geq \underline{f} \wedge - \pi) d = \\
 (\underline{f} \wedge \geq \pi - X &\geq \underline{f} \wedge -) d = \\
 (\underline{f} \geq \pi - X) d &= \\
 (\underline{f} \geq X) d &= (\underline{f}) X_d
 \end{aligned}$$

**Answer (Ex. 3.40)** — Note that  $Y = (X - \mu)^2$  is not one-to-one so it is better to use the direct method by differentiating the distribution function of  $Y$ ,  $F_Y(y)$ , to obtain  $f_Y(y)$ .

$$\text{cov}(X, Y) = E(XE(Y)) - E(X)E(Y) = \frac{20}{100} - \left( \frac{20}{100} \times \frac{25}{100} \right) = \frac{20}{100} - \frac{500}{10000} = \frac{20}{100} - \frac{5}{100} = \frac{15}{100}$$

10

$$\begin{aligned}
& \frac{5}{9} \times \frac{\frac{5}{7}}{\frac{4}{7}} = \frac{25}{28} = \frac{5}{4} + \frac{24}{3} = \frac{5}{9} = \\
& \left( 0 - 0 - \frac{9}{1} + \frac{8}{1} \right) \frac{5}{9} = \int_1^{0=\hbar} \left[ \frac{9}{\zeta^6} + \frac{8}{\zeta^6} \right] \frac{5}{9} = \hbar p \left( 0 - 0 - \frac{\zeta}{\zeta^6} + \frac{\frac{1}{\zeta}}{\zeta^6} \right) \int_1^0 \frac{5}{9} = \\
& \hbar p \int_1^{0=x} \left[ \frac{\zeta}{\zeta^6 \zeta^x} + \hbar \frac{\frac{1}{\zeta}}{\zeta^6 x} \right] \int_1^0 \frac{5}{9} = \hbar p x p_{\zeta} \hbar x + \hbar \varepsilon x \int_1^0 \int_1^0 \frac{5}{9} = \hbar p x p (\hbar + \zeta x) \hbar x \int_1^0 \int_1^0 \frac{5}{9} = \\
& \hbar p x p (\hbar \cdot x) \lambda' x' \hbar x \int_1^0 \int_1^0 \frac{5}{9} = (\lambda x) \hbar
\end{aligned}$$

• 6

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\xi}{\varepsilon} &= \frac{9}{\varepsilon} \times \frac{\xi}{9} = \left(0 - 0 - + \frac{\xi}{1} + \frac{9}{1}\right) \frac{\xi}{9} = \int_1^{0=\bar{\kappa}} \left[ \frac{\xi}{\varepsilon^{\bar{\kappa}}} + \frac{9}{\varepsilon^{\bar{\kappa}}} \right] \frac{\xi}{9} d\xi = \bar{\kappa} p \left(0 - 0 - \varepsilon^{\bar{\kappa}} + \frac{\xi}{\bar{\kappa}}\right) \int_1^0 \frac{\xi}{9} d\xi = \\ &\quad \bar{\kappa} p \int_1^{0=x} \left[ x \varepsilon^{\bar{\kappa}} + \frac{\xi}{\bar{\kappa} \varepsilon^x} \right] \int_1^0 \frac{\xi}{9} d\xi d\varepsilon = \bar{\kappa} p x p \left(\varepsilon^{\bar{\kappa}} + \bar{\kappa} x\right) \int_1^0 \int_1^0 \frac{\xi}{9} d\xi d\varepsilon = \bar{\kappa} p x p \left(\bar{\kappa} + \varepsilon^{\bar{\kappa}} x\right) \frac{\xi}{9} \int_1^0 \int_1^0 d\xi d\varepsilon = \\ &\quad \bar{\kappa} p x p (\bar{\kappa} \cdot x)^{\bar{\kappa}} X^{\bar{\kappa}} f^{\bar{\kappa}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d\xi d\varepsilon = (\lambda) \mathcal{E} \end{aligned}$$

8

Now, let  $C$  be the event that the sum of the two dice equals seven. Then

$$P(C \cap B) = P(\{(4, 3)\}) = \frac{1}{36},$$

while

$$\begin{aligned} P(C \cap B) &= P(\{(1, 6), (2, 5), (3, 4), (4, 3), (5, 2), (6, 1)\}) P(\{(4, 1), (4, 2), (4, 3), (4, 4), (4, 5), (4, 6)\}) \\ &= \frac{6}{36} \times \frac{6}{36} = \frac{1}{36}, \end{aligned}$$

and therefore  $C$  and  $B$  are independent events. Once again this is clear because the chance of getting a total of seven does not depend any more on the outcome of the first die (it is allowed to be any one of the six possible outcomes).

**Example 37 (Pairwise independent events that are not jointly independent)** Let a ball be drawn from an well-stirred urn containing four balls labelled 1,2,3,4. Consider the events  $A = \{1, 2\}$ ,  $B = \{1, 3\}$  and  $C = \{1, 4\}$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} P(A \cap B) &= P(A) P(B) = \frac{2}{4} \times \frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{4}, \\ P(A \cap C) &= P(A) P(C) = \frac{2}{4} \times \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{4}, \\ P(B \cap C) &= P(B) P(C) = \frac{2}{4} \times \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{4}, \end{aligned}$$

but,

$$\frac{1}{4} = P(\{1\}) = P(A \cap B \cap C) \neq P(A) P(B) P(C) = \frac{2}{4} \times \frac{2}{4} \times \frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{8}.$$

Therefore, inspite of being pairwise independent, the events  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$  are not jointly independent.

#### CONDITIONAL PROBABILITY SUMMARY

$P(A|B)$  means the probability that  $A$  occurs given that  $B$  has occurred.

$$\begin{aligned} P(A|B) &= \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)} = \frac{P(A) P(B|A)}{P(B)} \quad \text{if } P(B) \neq 0 \\ P(B|A) &= \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(A)} = \frac{P(B) P(A|B)}{P(A)} \quad \text{if } P(A) \neq 0 \end{aligned}$$

Conditional probabilities obey the axioms and rules of probability.

## 2.5 Exercises in Conditional Probability

**Ex. 2.6** — What gives the greater probability of hitting some target at least once:

- 1.hitting in a shot with probability  $\frac{1}{2}$  and firing 1 shot, or
- 2.hitting in a shot with probability  $\frac{1}{3}$  and firing 2 shots?

First guess. Then calculate.

Finally, the marginal PDF of the RV  $X$  in the first component of the R $\vec{V}(X, Y)$  is

$$f_X(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{6}{5} \left( x^2 + \frac{1}{2} \right) & \text{if } 0 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

3. Similarly, the marginal PDF  $f_Y(y)$  for any  $y \in (0, 1)$  by integrating over  $x$  is

$$f_Y(y) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{X,Y}(x, y) dx = \int_0^1 \frac{6}{5} (x^2 + y) dx = \frac{6}{5} [x^3/3 + yx]_{x=0}^1 = \frac{6}{5} (y + 1/3).$$

Finally, the marginal PDF of the RV  $Y$  in the second component of the R $\vec{V}(X, Y)$  is

$$f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{6}{5} \left( y + \frac{1}{3} \right) & \text{if } 0 < y < 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

4. The product of marginal PDFs of  $X$  and  $Y$  does not equal the joint PDF of  $(X, Y)$  for values of  $(x, y) \in (0, 1)^2$

$$f_X(x)f_Y(y) = \frac{6}{5} \frac{6}{5} \left( y + \frac{1}{3} \right) \left( x^2 + \frac{1}{2} \right) = \frac{6}{25} (6x^2y + 2x^2 + 3y + 1) \neq \frac{6}{5} (x^2 + y) = f_{X,Y}(x, y)$$

Therefore  $X$  and  $Y$  are not independent random variables (they are dependent!).

5. The joint distribution function  $F_{X,Y}(x, y)$  for any  $(x, y) \in (0, 1)^2$  is

$$\begin{aligned} F_{X,Y}(x, y) &= \int_{-\infty}^y \int_{-\infty}^x f_{X,Y}(u, v) du dv = \int_0^y \int_0^x \frac{6}{5} (u^2 + v) du dv = \frac{6}{5} \int_0^y \left[ \frac{u^3}{3} + vu \right]_{u=0}^x dv \\ &= \frac{6}{5} \int_0^y \left( \frac{x^3}{3} + vx - 0 \right) dv = \frac{6}{5} \left[ \frac{x^3v}{3} + \frac{v^2x}{2} \right]_{v=0}^y = \frac{6}{5} \left( \frac{x^3y}{3} + \frac{y^2x}{2} - 0 \right) \\ &= \frac{6}{5} \left( \frac{x^3y}{3} + \frac{y^2x}{2} - 0 \right) \end{aligned}$$

6.

$$\begin{aligned} P(X > 0.5, Y < 0.6) &= \int_{-\infty}^{0.6} \int_{0.5}^{\infty} f_{X,Y}(x, y) dx dy = \int_0^{0.6} \int_{0.5}^1 \frac{6}{5} (x^2 + y) dx dy \\ &= \frac{6}{5} \int_0^{0.6} \left[ \frac{x^3}{3} + yx \right]_{x=0.5}^1 dy = \frac{6}{5} \int_0^{0.6} \left( \frac{7}{24} + \frac{y}{2} \right) dy \\ &= \frac{6}{5} \left[ \frac{7}{24}y + \frac{y^2}{2} \right]_{y=0}^{0.6} = \frac{6}{5} \left( \frac{7}{24} \times \frac{6}{10} + \frac{36}{400} \right) = 0.318 \end{aligned}$$

7.

$$\begin{aligned} E(X) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f_{X,Y}(x, y) dx dy \\ &= \frac{6}{5} \int_0^1 \int_0^1 x (x^2 + y) dx dy = \frac{6}{5} \int_0^1 \int_0^1 (x^3 + xy) dx dy = \frac{6}{5} \int_0^1 \left[ \frac{x^4}{4} + \frac{1}{2} x^2 y \right]_{x=0}^1 dy \\ &= \frac{6}{5} \int_0^1 \left( \frac{1}{4} + \frac{y}{2} - 0 - 0 \right) dy = \frac{6}{5} \left[ \frac{y}{4} + \frac{y^2}{4} \right]_{y=0}^1 = \frac{6}{5} \left( \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4} - 0 - 0 \right) = \frac{6}{5} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{3}{5} \end{aligned}$$

If the detection rate is 0.999 and the false alarm rate is 0.001, and the probability of an intrusion occurring is 0.01, find

$$\text{false alarm rate} = P(\text{detection declared} \mid \text{no intrusion})$$

$$\text{detection rate} = P(\text{detection declared} \mid \text{intrusion})$$

**Ex. 2.13** — \*\*The detection rate and false alarm rate of an intrusion sensor are defined as

- (a) the probability that a patient who tests positive actually has the disease,
- (b) the probability that a patient who tests negative is free from the disease.

Suppose that a medical test has a sensitivity of 0.7 and a specificity of 0.95. If the prevalence of the disease in the general population is 1%, and

$$\text{specificity} = P(\text{test is negative} \mid \text{patient does not have the disease})$$

$$\text{sensitivity} = P(\text{test is positive} \mid \text{patient has the disease})$$

as follows:

**Ex. 2.12** — \*\*The sensitivity and specificity of a medical diagnostic test for a disease are defined

3.

(c) If the gale did NOT cause damage, find the probabilities that it was of: force 1; force 2; force 3.

(b) If the gale caused damage, find the probabilities that it causing damage?

(a) If a gale is reported, what is the probability that force 3 gales cause damage?

is  $\frac{2}{3}$  and the probability that force 1 gales cause damage is  $\frac{1}{3}$ , the probability that force 2 gales cause damage

Ex. 2.11 — Suppose that  $\frac{3}{5}$  of all galaxies are force 1,  $\frac{1}{5}$  are force 2 and  $\frac{1}{5}$  are force 3. Furthermore,

(c) If 2 micro-chips are tested and determined to be good, what is the probability that at least one is in fact defective?

(b) If a micro-chip is chosen at random, and tested to be defective, what was the probability that it was good anyway?

(a) If a micro-chip is chosen at random, and tested to be good, what was the probability that it was defective anyway?

Ex. 2.10 — A process producing micro-chips, produces 5% defective, at random. Each micro-chip is tested, and the test will correctly detect a defective one  $\frac{4}{5}$  of the time, and if a good chip is tested, and the test will correctly declare it is defective with probability  $1/10$ .

Ex. 2.9 — A small brewery has two bottling machines. Machine 1 produces 75% of the bottles

that a randomly selected bottle comes from machine 1 given that it is accepted? Assuming that the three light bulbs function independently of each other, the probability that none of them need to be replaced in the first 1200 hours is

$$P(X < 1.2) = 1 - P(X > 1.2)$$

$$= 1 - \int_{1.2}^{12} (0.25 - (x - 1.5)^2) dx$$

$$= 1 - \int_{1.2}^{12} 6(0.25 - x^2 + 3x - 2.25) dx$$

$$= 1 - \int_{1.2}^{12} 6(0.25 - x^2 + 3x - 2.25) dx$$

$$= 1 - \int_{1.2}^{12} (-6x^2 + 18x - 12) dx$$

$$= 1 - [(-2x^3 + 9x^2 - 12x)]_{1.2}^{12}$$

$$= 1 - [(-2x^3 + 9x^2 - 12x)]_{1.2}^{12}$$

$$= 0.8960$$

where  $X$ , is the length of time that bulb  $i$  lasts.

$$P(\{X_1 > 1.2\} \cup \{X_2 > 1.2\} \cup \{X_3 > 1.2\}) = 0.8960^3 = 0.7193$$

Assuming that the three light bulbs function independently of each other, the probability that none

$$= a \left( \begin{array}{l} \frac{9}{5} \\ \frac{6}{5}(x^2 + 1) \end{array} \right)_{y=0}^{y=\infty} = a \left( \begin{array}{l} \frac{9}{5} \\ \frac{6}{5}(x^2 + 1) \end{array} \right)_{y=0}^{y=1} = a \left( \begin{array}{l} \frac{3}{5} + \frac{2}{5} \\ \frac{3}{5} + \frac{2}{5} \end{array} \right) = a \left( \begin{array}{l} 0 \\ 0 \end{array} \right) = a \left( \begin{array}{l} \frac{9}{5} \\ \frac{6}{5}(x^2 + 1) \end{array} \right)_{y=0}^{y=\infty} = a \left( \begin{array}{l} \frac{3}{5} + \frac{2}{5} \\ \frac{3}{5} + \frac{2}{5} \end{array} \right) = a \left( \begin{array}{l} 0 \\ 0 \end{array} \right) = a$$

2. First compute the marginal PDF  $f_{XY}(x)$  for any  $x \in (0, 1)$  by integrating over  $y$

$$f_{XY}(x, y) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ \frac{6}{5}(x^2 + 1) & \text{if } 0 < x < 1 \text{ and } 0 < y < 1 \end{cases}$$

Therefore  $a = 6/5$  and the joint PDF is

$$= a \left( \begin{array}{l} \frac{9}{5} \\ \frac{6}{5}(x^2 + 1) \end{array} \right)_{y=0}^{y=\infty} = a \left( \begin{array}{l} \frac{3}{5} + \frac{2}{5} \\ \frac{3}{5} + \frac{2}{5} \end{array} \right) = a \left( \begin{array}{l} 0 \\ 0 \end{array} \right) = a \left( \begin{array}{l} \frac{9}{5} \\ \frac{6}{5}(x^2 + 1) \end{array} \right)_{y=0}^{y=1} = a \left( \begin{array}{l} \frac{3}{5} + \frac{2}{5} \\ \frac{3}{5} + \frac{2}{5} \end{array} \right) = a \left( \begin{array}{l} 0 \\ 0 \end{array} \right) = a$$

1. To find  $a$  we simply set  $1 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{XY}(x, y) dx dy$  and solve for  $a$  as follows:

**Answer (Ex. 3.39)** —

Ex. 2.8 — Based on past experience, 70% of students in a certain course pass the mid-term test. The final exam is passed by 80% of those who passed the mid-term test, but only by 40% of those

who fail the mid-term test. What fraction of students pass the final exam?

Ex. 2.7 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 2.6 — A small brewery has two bottling machines. Machine 1 produces 75% of the bottles

that a randomly selected bottle comes from machine 1 given that it is accepted? Assuming that the three light bulbs function independently of each other, the probability that none

of them need to be replaced in the first 1200 hours is

Ex. 2.5 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 2.4 — Based on past experience, 70% of students in a certain course pass the mid-term test.

The final exam is passed by 80% of those who passed the mid-term test, but only by 40% of those

who fail the mid-term test. What fraction of students pass the final exam?

Ex. 2.3 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 2.2 — Based on past experience, 70% of students in a certain course pass the mid-term test.

The final exam is passed by 80% of those who passed the mid-term test, but only by 40% of those

who fail the mid-term test. What fraction of students pass the final exam?

Ex. 2.1 — Based on past experience, 70% of students in a certain course pass the mid-term test.

The final exam is passed by 80% of those who passed the mid-term test, but only by 40% of those

who fail the mid-term test. What fraction of students pass the final exam?

Ex. 2.0 — Based on past experience, 70% of students in a certain course pass the mid-term test.

The final exam is passed by 80% of those who passed the mid-term test, but only by 40% of those

who fail the mid-term test. What fraction of students pass the final exam?

Ex. 1.9 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 1.8 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 1.7 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 1.6 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 1.5 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 1.4 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 1.3 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 1.2 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 1.1 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 1.0 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 0.9 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 0.8 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 0.7 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 0.6 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 0.5 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 0.4 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 0.3 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 0.2 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 0.1 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. 0.0 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. -1.0 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. -2.0 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. -3.0 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. -4.0 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. -5.0 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. -6.0 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. -7.0 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. -8.0 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. -9.0 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

Ex. -10.0 — Suppose we independently roll two fair dice each of whose faces are marked by numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1. List the sample space for the experiment if we note the numbers on the 2 upturned faces.

2. What is the probability of obtaining a sum greater than 4 but less than 7?

&lt;p

- (a) the probability that there is an intrusion when a detection is declared,  
 (b) the probability that there is no intrusion when no detection is declared.

**Ex. 2.14** — \*\*Let  $A$  and  $B$  be events such that  $P(A) \neq 0$  and  $P(B) \neq 0$ . When  $A$  and  $B$  are disjoint, are they also independent? Explain clearly why or why not.

**Answer (Ex. 3.35)** — 1. The probability mass function of  $X$  is

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{6} & x = 1 \\ \frac{1}{6} & x = 2 \\ \frac{1}{6} & x = 3 \\ \frac{1}{6} & x = 4 \\ \frac{1}{6} & x = 5 \\ \frac{1}{6} & x = 6 \end{cases}$$

and so

$$E(X) = \sum_{i=1}^6 x_i f(x_i) = \frac{1}{6} + \frac{2}{6} + \frac{3}{6} + \frac{4}{6} + \frac{5}{6} + \frac{6}{6} = 3.5.$$

Now,

$$E(X^2) = \sum_{i=1}^6 x_i^2 f(x_i) = \frac{1}{6} + \frac{4}{6} + \frac{9}{6} + \frac{16}{6} + \frac{25}{6} + \frac{36}{6} = \frac{91}{6} = 15.1667$$

and so the variance is

$$V(X) = E(X^2) - (E(X))^2 = 15.1667 - 3.5^2 = 2.9167.$$

2. The density function of the uniform distribution,  $X$ , on  $[0, 8]$  is

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{8} & 0 < x < 8 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Therefore,

$$E(X) = \frac{8+0}{2} = 4,$$

and

$$V(X) = \frac{(8-0)^2}{12} = \frac{16}{3}$$

3. Since  $f(x)$  is the density function of an Exponential( $\lambda$ ) random variable with parameter  $\lambda = 2$ , we can use earlier results to get

$$E(X) = \frac{1}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad V(X) = \frac{1}{4}.$$

(You should also be able to do this by integration!)

**Answer (Exercise 3.36)** —

- The number of paths that lead to a  $(x_1, x_2)$  with  $x_1 + x_2 = n$  is equal to  $\binom{n}{x_1}$ . We have already seen this as random walks in Manhattan.
- $\binom{n}{x_1} \theta^{x_1} (1-\theta)^{x_2}$

**Answer (Exercise 3.37)** — The probability of going east or north in the first quadrant (idealized Manhattan with streets and avenues) is the same as a ball falling left or right in the Galton's Quincunx. The buckets that collect the balls after dropping through  $n$  levels of nails are labelled by the number of right turns as  $0, 1, \dots, n$  when modelled by a Binomial( $n, \theta$ ), and this is analogous to the number of steps taken north in the random walk case.

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} 0, & \text{if } \omega = \text{not rain} \\ 1, & \text{if } \omega = \text{rain} \end{array} \right\} = (\omega)X$$

**Example 38 (Rain or Shine)** Suppose our experiment is to observe whether it will rain or not rain tomorrow. The sample space of this experiment is  $\Omega = \{\text{rain}, \text{not rain}\}$ . We can associate a random variable  $X$  with this experiment as follows:

Thus, we want a **random variable** to be a function from the set of real numbers  $\mathbb{R}$ , that is,  $X: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  that should satisfy certain conditions to keep the meaning of the underlying probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ . Let us go through some examples before giving the formal definition of such a real-valued or  $\mathbb{R}$ -valued random variable.

|  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|
| Counting the number of types up to now | $\mathbb{Z}_+ = \{0, 1, 2, \dots\} \subset \mathbb{R}$ | Length in centi-meters of some shelves on New Brighton beach | Waiting time in minutes for the next Orbiter bus to arrive | Vertical displacement from current position of a pollen on water |
| Experiment                             | Possible measured outcomes                             |  | $\mathbb{R}_+ = [0, \infty) \subset \mathbb{R}$            | $\mathbb{R}$   |

Crucially, it can become inconvenient to work with a set of outcomes  $\Omega$  upon which arithmetic is not possible. We are often measuring our outcomes with subsets of real numbers. Some examples include:

We need a different kind of variable to deal with real-world situations where the same variable may take different values in a non-deterministic manner. **Random variables** do this job for us.

What these classical variables have in common is that they take a fixed or deterministic value when

$$\{a_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} = a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots$$

Yet another example is the use of variables to represent sequences such as: over the real line  $\mathbb{R} = (-\infty, \infty)$ .

$$z - x\epsilon = f$$

We also use classical variables to represent geometric objects such as a line:

We are used to classical variables such as  $x$  as an "unknown" in the equations

## Random Variables

Chapter 3

is \$643.50.

$$= (X^{\text{CC}} E^{\text{CC}}) = (X^{\text{CC}}) E^{\text{CC}} = 643.50,$$

2. The profit per conditioner is \$55, and so the expected daily profit given by

۱۹۸

Thus,  $X$  will take the value 1 if it will rain tomorrow and 0 otherwise. Note that another equally valid (though possibly not so useful) random variable, say  $Y$ , for this experiment is:

$$Y(\omega) = \begin{cases} \pi, & \text{if } \omega = \text{rain} \\ \sqrt{2}, & \text{if } \omega = \text{not rain} \end{cases}$$

**Example 39 (Rain Fall on Angstrom)** Suppose our experiment instead is to measure the volume of rain that falls into a large funnel stuck on top of a graduated cylinder that is placed on top of the middle of House 1 of Angstrom Laboratory. Suppose the cylinder is graduated in millimeters then our random variable  $X(\omega)$  can report a non-negative real number given by the lower miniscus of the water column, if any, in the cylinder tomorrow. Thus,  $X(\omega)$  will measure the volume of rain in millilitres that will fall into our funnel tomorrow.

**Example 40 (Counting Seedlings)** Suppose ten seeds are planted. Perhaps fewer than ten will actually germinate. The number which do germinate, say  $X$ , must be one of the integer numbers in  $\mathbb{R}$  given by the set:

$$\mathbb{X} := \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10\} .$$

But until the seeds are actually planted and allowed to germinate it is impossible to say which number  $X(\omega) : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{X}$  will take. The number of seeds which germinate is a variable, but it is not necessarily the same for each group of ten seeds planted, but takes values from the same set  $\mathbb{X}$ . As  $X$  is not known in advance it is called a **random variable**. Its value cannot be known until we actually perform the experiment, i.e., plant the seeds.

Certain things can be said about the value a random variable might take. In the case of these ten seeds we can be sure the number that germinate is less than eleven, and not less than zero! It may also be known that the probability of seven seeds germinating is greater than the probability of one seed; or perhaps that the number of seeds germinating averages eight. These statements are based on probabilities unlike the sort of statements made about deterministic variables.

#### Discrete versus continuous random variables.

A **discrete** random variable is one in which the set of possible values of the random variable is finite or at most countably infinite, whereas a **continuous** random variable may take on any value in some range, and its value may be any real value in that range (Think: uncountably infinite). Examples 38 and 40 are about discrete random variables and Example 39 is about a continuous random variable.

Discrete random variables are usually generated from experiments where things are “counted” rather than “measured” such as the seed planting experiment in Example 40. Continuous random variables appear in experiments in which we measure, such as the amount of rain, in millilitres in Example 39.

#### Random variables as functions.

In fact, random variables are actually functions, more formally measurable maps from  $\mathcal{F}$  to certain subsets of  $\mathbb{R}$  that you will learn carefully in more advanced courses. They take you from the “world of random processes and phenomena” to the world of real numbers. In other words, a random variable is a numerical value determined by the outcome of the experiment.

We said that a random variable can take one of many values, but we cannot be certain of which value it will take. However, *we can make probabilistic statements about the value  $x$  the random variable  $X$  will take*. A question like,

**Answer (Ex. 3.27)** — Since  $y = g(x) = \sqrt{x}$  is a monotone increasing function for  $x \geq 0$ , we can apply the change of variable formula.

Now  $x = g^{-1}(y) = y^2$  is a monotone increasing function for  $y \geq 0$  so on this interval

$$\left| \frac{d}{dy} (g^{-1}(y)) \right| = \left| \frac{d}{dy} (y^2) \right| = 2y .$$

Therefore

$$f_Y(y) = f_X(y^2) \times |2y| = \lambda e^{-\lambda y^2} \times 2y = 2\lambda y e^{-\lambda y^2} .$$

So the probability density function of  $Y$  is given by

$$f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} 2\lambda y e^{-\lambda y^2} & y \geq 0 \\ 0 & y < 0 \end{cases} .$$

**Answer (Ex. 3.28)** — First note that  $y = g(x) = \log_e(x)$  is a monotone increasing function over  $a \leq x \leq b$ , so we can apply the change of variable formula.

$x = g^{-1}(y) = e^y$  is a monotone increasing function over  $\log_e(a) \leq \log_e(x) \leq \log_e(b)$ , that is, over  $\log_e(a) \leq y \leq \log_e(b)$ .

For  $\log_e(a) \leq y \leq \log_e(b)$ ,

$$\left| \frac{d}{dy} (g^{-1}(y)) \right| = \left| \frac{d}{dy} (e^y) \right| = e^y .$$

Therefore

$$f_Y(y) = f_X(g^{-1}(y)) \times \left| \frac{d}{dy} (g^{-1}(y)) \right| = \frac{1}{b-a} \times e^y .$$

So the probability density function of  $Y$  is given by

$$f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{e^y}{b-a} & \log_e(a) \leq y \leq \log_e(b) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} .$$

**Answer (Exercise 3.29)** — Derive the answers from the definition of  $E(X)$  and  $V(X) = E(X^2) - (E(X))^2$  when  $X \sim \text{Uniform}(\theta_1, \theta_2)$  with PDF given in Model 9.

$$E(X) = \frac{\theta_1 + \theta_2}{2} \quad V(X) = \frac{(\theta_2 - \theta_1)^2}{12}$$

**Answer (Ex. 3.30)** — 1. The expected number of conditioners that the store sells daily is

$$\begin{aligned} E(X) &= \sum_{i=1}^n x_i p_{x_i} \\ &= (10 \times 0.1 + 11 \times 0.3 + 12 \times 0.4 + 13 \times 0.2) \\ &= 1 + 3.3 + 4.8 + 2.6 \\ &= 11.7 . \end{aligned}$$

( $\exists \geq X \geq \zeta$ ) $D$

above, and work with random variables using simplified notation like  $\text{mean}(\mathbf{x})$  or  $\text{var}(\mathbf{x})$ , it is enough to understand the idea of random variables as objects

a RV  $X$  has DF  $F$  we write  $X \sim F$ .  
 If  $f(x)$  or simply  $f$  is a non-decreasing, right continuous,  $[0, 1]$ -valued function over  $\mathbb{R}$ , When

$$(3.2) \quad \text{for any } x \in \mathbb{R}, \quad \{x > (w)X : w\} = (x > X) =: (x)_{H^+}$$

Distribution Function (CDF) of any RV  $X$ , over a probability triple  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ , denoted by  $F$  is:

$$(1 \cdot x) \cdot (\{x \geq (m)X : m\})_d = (([x, \infty))_{[1]} X)_d = (x \geq X)_d$$

This definition can be summarised by the statement that a RV is an  $F$ -measurable map. We assign probability to the RV  $X$  as follows:

•  $\mathcal{L} \ni \{x > (\omega)X : \omega\} =: ([x, \infty))_{[\mathbb{L}]} X$  for every  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

such that for every  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , the inverse image of the half-open real interval  $(-\infty, x]$  is an element of the collection of events  $\mathcal{F}$ , i.e.:

**Definition 18 (Random Variable)** Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$  be some probability triple. Then, a Random Variable (RV), say  $X$ , is a function from the sample space  $\Omega$  to the set of real numbers  $\mathbb{R}$ .

and arithmetic, we need to formally define this measurement process using the notion of a random variable.

3.1 Basic Definitions

With this motivation we are ready to formally define such a random variable.

“What is  $P(I = X)$ ?”

or, more simply,

"What is  $P$ ?" (The set  $\{\omega \in (\omega)X : \omega\}$ )

in the rain/not experiment of Example 38 becomes

“What is the probability of it raining tomorrow?”

CHAPTER 3. RANDOM VARIABLES

L9

rather than

$$P(\{\omega : 2 \leq X(\omega) \leq 3\})$$

but note that when learning or doing more advanced work this sample space notation is usually needed to clarify the true meaning of the simplified notation at least to yourself! But in the exam you can use the simpler notation as done in the solutions to exercises.

From the idea of a distribution function, we get:

**Proposition 21** The probability that the random variable  $X$  takes a value  $x$  in the half-open interval  $(a, b]$ , i.e.,  $a < x \leq b$ , is:

$$P(a < X \leq b) = F(b) - F(a) . \quad (3.3)$$

**Proof:** Since  $(X \leq a)$  and  $(a < X \leq b)$  are disjoint events whose union is the event  $(X \leq b)$ ,

$$F(b) = P(X \leq b) = P(X \leq a) + P(a < X \leq b) = F(a) + P(a < X \leq b) .$$

Subtraction of  $F(a)$  from both sides of the above equation yields Equation 3.3.

A special RV that often plays the role of ‘building-block’ in Probability and Statistics is the indicator function of an event  $A$  that tells us whether the event  $A$  has occurred or not. Recall that an event belongs to the collection of possible events  $\mathcal{F}$  for our experiment.

**Definition 22 (Indicator Function)** Given a probability triple  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ , the **Indicator Function** of an event  $A \in \mathcal{F}$  which is denoted  $\mathbb{1}_A$  is defined as follows:

$$\mathbb{1}_A(\omega) := \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } \omega \in A \\ 0 & \text{if } \omega \notin A \end{cases} \quad (3.4)$$

**Model 1 (Indicator of an event as Bernoulli RV)** This is the most primitive RV from which all others are obtained. Let us convince ourselves that  $\mathbb{1}_A$  is really a RV. For  $\mathbb{1}_A$  to be a RV, we need to verify that for any real number  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , the inverse image  $\mathbb{1}_A^{[-1]}((-\infty, x])$  is an event, ie :

$$\mathbb{1}_A^{[-1]}((-\infty, x]) := \{\omega : \mathbb{1}_A(\omega) \leq x\} \in \mathcal{F} .$$

All we can assume about the collection of events  $\mathcal{F}$  is that it contains the event  $A$  and that it is a sigma algebra. A careful look at the Figure 3.1 yields:

$$\mathbb{1}_A^{[-1]}((-\infty, x]) := \{\omega : \mathbb{1}_A(\omega) \leq x\} = \begin{cases} \emptyset & \text{if } x < 0 \\ A^c & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1 \\ A \cup A^c = \Omega & \text{if } 1 \leq x \end{cases}$$

Thus,  $\mathbb{1}_A^{[-1]}((-\infty, x])$  is one of the following three sets that belong to  $\mathcal{F}$ ; (1)  $\emptyset$ , (2)  $A^c$  and (3)  $\Omega$  depending on the value taken by  $x$  relative to the interval  $[0, 1]$ . We have proved that  $\mathbb{1}_A$  is indeed a RV.

Model 1 is called the Bernoulli RV for event  $A$  with a known probability  $P(A)$ . We will define as our next model the Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV by introducing a parameter  $\theta \in [0, 1]$  for the typically unknown probability  $P(A)$ .

**Answer (Ex. 3.21)** — 1.

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^2 k e^{-x} dx &= 1 \\ [-k e^{-x}]_0^2 &= 1 \\ k(-e^{-2} + 1) &= 1 \\ k &= \frac{1}{1 - e^{-2}} \quad (\approx 1.1565) \end{aligned}$$

2.

$$\begin{aligned} P(X \geq 1) &= 1 - P(X < 1) \\ &= 1 - \int_0^1 k e^{-x} dx \\ &= 1 + k(e^{-x}]_0^1 \\ &= 1 + \frac{e^{-1} - 1}{1 - e^{-2}} \\ &\approx 0.2689 \end{aligned}$$

**Answer (Ex. 3.22)** — Using Equation (3.37), we can tabulate as follows:

| $y$      | 0                      | 1                               | 4                               | 9                      |
|----------|------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| $f_Y(y)$ | $f_X(3) = \frac{1}{6}$ | $f_X(2) + f_X(4) = \frac{2}{6}$ | $f_X(1) + f_X(5) = \frac{2}{6}$ | $f_X(6) = \frac{1}{6}$ |

**Answer (Ex. 3.23)** — The probability mass function  $f_Y(y; n)$  for  $Y = |X|$ , the absolute value of  $X$ , comes from applying the formula:

$$f_Y(y; n) = \sum_{x \in \{x: g(x)=y\}} f_X(x; n) ,$$

as follows:

$$f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} \sum_{x \in \{x: |x|=0\}} f_X(x; n) = f_X(0; n) = \frac{1}{2n+1} & \text{if } y = 0 \\ \sum_{x \in \{x: |x|=y\}} f_X(x; n) = (f_X(y; n) + f_X(-y; n)) = \frac{2}{2n+1} & \text{if } y \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

**Answer (Ex. 3.24)** — We are given that  $Y = 2^{-X}$ . Define the function

$$g : \{1, 2, 3, \dots\} \rightarrow \{2^{-1}, 2^{-2}, 2^{-3}, \dots\}$$

by  $y = g(x) = 2^{-x}$ . Then  $g$  is one-to-one and onto and so by Equation (3.37),

$$f_Y(y) = \sum_{x \in g^{[-1]}(y)} f_X(x) = \sum_{x \in g^{-1}(y)} f_X(x) = \sum_{x \in \{-\log_2(y)\}} f_X(x) = f_X(-\log_2(y)) .$$

2. Set

and solve for  $\tau$  to get then  $\tau = -100 \times \log(0.5) = 69.3$  (3 sig. fig.).

$$P(t < \tau) = e^{-0.01\tau} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$P(t < \tau) = 1 - P(t \geq \tau) = 1 - P(\tau; \lambda = 0.01) = 1 - (1 - e^{-0.01\tau}) = e^{-0.01\tau}.$$

**Answer (Ex. 3.20)** — 1. Since the distribution function is  $F(t; \lambda) = 1 - \exp(-\lambda t)$ ,

3. The graphs of  $f(x)$  and  $F(x)$  for random variable  $X$  are as follows:

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & x \geq 4 \\ \frac{8}{1}(x+4) & -4 \leq x < 4 \\ 0 & x < -4 \end{cases}$$

= 1

$$0 = 0 + \int_{-4}^{\infty} \frac{8}{1} da + \int_{-4}^4 0 da + \int_x^{\infty} 0 da + \int_4^{\infty} \frac{8}{1} da$$

If  $x \geq 4$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{8}{1}(x+4) &= \\ \frac{8}{1} \left[ a \right]_{-4}^x &+ 0 = \\ \frac{8}{1} \left[ x \right]_{-4}^{\infty} + ap &= \\ \frac{8}{1} \int_{-4}^{\infty} x da + ap &= F(x) \end{aligned}$$

If  $-4 \leq x \leq 4$ , then

$$\int_x^{\infty} 0 da = 0.$$

2. First note that if  $x < -4$ , then

$$k = \frac{8}{1}$$

$$8k = 1$$

$$k(4 - (-4)) = 1$$

$$k \left[ x \right]_{-4}^4 = 1$$

That is,

Some useful properties of the Indicator Function are:

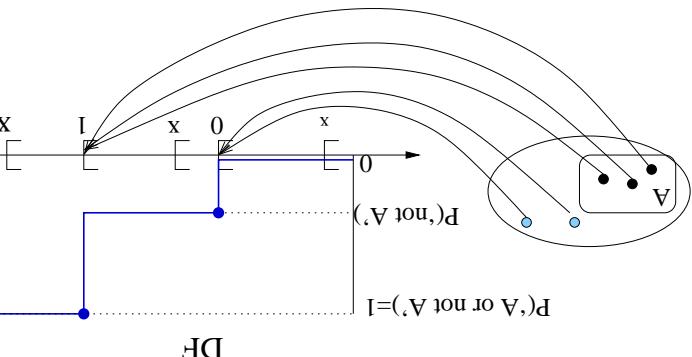


Figure 3.1: The Indicator function of event  $A$  is a RV  $\mathbb{I}_A$  with DF  $F$ .

We slightly abuse notation when  $A$  is a single element set by ignoring the curly braces.

$$\mathbb{I}_A^c = 1 - \mathbb{I}_A, \quad \mathbb{I}_A \cup \mathbb{B} = \mathbb{I}_A \mathbb{I}_B, \quad \mathbb{I}_A \cup \mathbb{B} = \mathbb{I}_A + \mathbb{I}_B - \mathbb{I}_A \mathbb{I}_B$$

That is,

Figure 3.2: A RV  $X$  from a sample space  $\Omega$  with 8 elements to  $\mathbb{R}$  and its DF  $F$ .

Classwork 41 (A random variable with three values and eight sample points) Consider the RV  $X$  of Figure 3.2. First draw this property as done in Ex. 3.1. Let the events  $A = \{w_1, w_2\}$ ,  $B = \{w_3, w_4, w_5\}$  and  $C = \{w_6, w_7, w_8\}$ . Define the RV  $X$  formally. What sets should  $X$  minimally include? What do you need to do to make sure that  $X$  is a sigma algebra?

**Exercise 3.1 (Drawing discontinuous functions)** Identify the mistakes in how the  $\mathbb{I}_A$  is drawn as a discontinuous function in Figure 3.1.

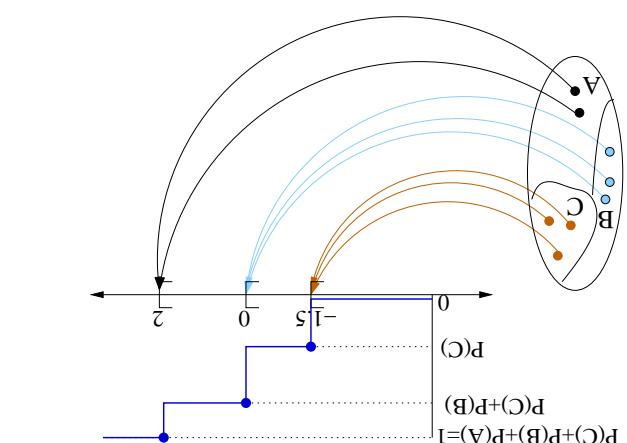


Figure 3.2: A RV  $X$  from a sample space  $\Omega$  with 8 elements to  $\mathbb{R}$  and its DF  $F$ .

**Exercise 3.2 (Fair coin toss RV)** Consider the *fair coin toss experiment* with  $\Omega = \{\text{H}, \text{T}\}$  and  $P(\text{H}) = P(\text{T}) = 1/2$ .

We can associate a Bernoulli random variable  $X$  (in Model 1) for the event that the coin lands as H, with this experiment as follows:

$$X(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \omega = \text{H} \\ 0, & \text{if } \omega = \text{T} \end{cases}$$

Find the distribution function for  $X$ .

### 3.2 Discrete Random Variables

When a RV takes at most countably many values from a discrete set  $\mathbb{X}$ , we call it a **discrete** RV. Recall that a set  $\mathbb{X}$  is said to be discrete if we can enumerate its elements, i.e., find an enumerating or counting function  $\mathbb{X} \ni x \mapsto i \in \mathbb{N}$  that associates each element  $x \in \mathbb{X}$  to a natural number  $i \in \mathbb{N}$ . So,  $\mathbb{X}$  is either finite with  $k$  elements in  $\mathbb{X} = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k\}$  or countably infinite with the same cardinality as  $\mathbb{N}$  with  $\mathbb{X} = \{x_1, x_2, \dots\}$ . When  $\mathbb{X} \subset \mathbb{R}$ , we have a real-valued or  $\mathbb{R}$ -valued discrete random variable.

**Definition 23 (probability mass function (PMF))** Let  $X$  be a  $\mathbb{R}$ -valued discrete RV over a probability triple  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ . We define the **probability mass function** (PMF)  $f$  of  $X$  to be the function  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow [0, 1]$  defined as follows:

$$f(x) := P(X = x) = P(\{\omega : X(\omega) = x\}) = \begin{cases} \theta_i & \text{if } x = x_i \in \mathbb{X}. \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (3.5)$$

The DF  $F$  and PMF  $f$  for a discrete RV  $X$  satisfy the following:

- For any  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$P(X \leq x) = F(x) = \sum_{x_i \leq x} f(x_i) = \sum_{x_i \leq x} \theta_i. \quad (3.6)$$

- For any  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  with  $a < b$ ,

$$P(a < X \leq b) = F(b) - F(a) = \sum_{a < x_i \leq b} \theta_i. \quad (3.7)$$

This is just the sum of all probabilities  $\theta_i$  for which  $x_i$  satisfies  $a < x_i \leq b$ .

- From the fact that  $P(\Omega) = 1$ , we get that the sum of all the probabilities is 1:

$$\sum_i \theta_i = 1. \quad (3.8)$$

4. Occurrence of lacunae may not always be independent. For example, a machine malfunction may cause them to be clumped.

**Answer (Exercise 3.17)** — Let  $X \sim \text{Exponential}(\lambda = 0.1)$  denote the time taken to serve any given customer in an IID manner. Let  $y$  denote the unknown time that the current customer being served has already been served before your arrival. By memorylessness of  $\text{Exponential}(\lambda = 0.1)$  RV  $X$ , we know  $P(X > 2 + y | X > y) = P(X > 2) = e^{-\lambda^2} = e^{-2/10}$ .

**Answer (Exercise 3.18)** —

- Since  $f(x)$  is a density function which integrates to one,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_2^6 f(x) dx &= \int_2^6 k dx \\ 1 &= kx|_2^6 \\ 1 &= 6k - 2k \\ 1 &= 4k \\ k &= \frac{1}{4} \end{aligned}$$

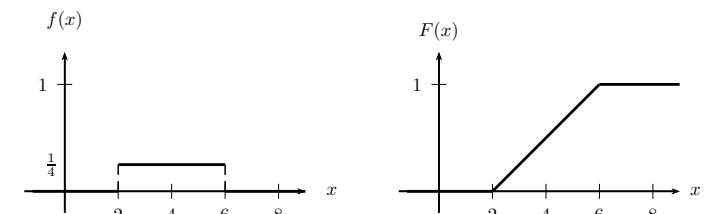
as expected!

- Now

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x < 2 \\ \frac{1}{4}(x - 2) & 2 \leq x < 6 \\ 1 & x \geq 6 \end{cases}.$$

so the graphs are:

Graphs of  $f(x)$  and  $F(x)$ .



**Answer (Ex. 3.19)** — 1. Since  $f(x)$  is a (continuous) probability density function which integrates to one,

$$\int_{-4}^4 kdx = 1.$$

$$P(X=2) = \frac{2!}{e^{-0.1}(0.1)^2} = 0.45\% \text{ (approximately.)}$$

Hence

$$e^{-\lambda} = 0.9 \text{ that is, } \lambda = -\ln(0.9) = 0.1 \text{ (approximately.)}$$

Using (b) and solving for  $\lambda$  gives:

$$P(X=0) = 1 - P(X \geq 1) = 0.9.$$

3. Since  $P(X \geq 1) = 0.1$ ,

$$2. If  $x = 0$  then  $x! = 0! = 1$  and  $\lambda x = \lambda_0 = 1$ , and the formula becomes  $P(X=0) = e^{-\lambda}$ .$$

of Lacunae on a specimen".

where  $\lambda$  is the mean number of lacunae per specimen and  $X$  is the random variable "number

$$P(X=x) = f(x; \lambda) = \frac{x^x}{x!} e^{-\lambda}$$

**Answer (Ex. 3.16)** — 1. The Probability mass function for  $\text{Poisson}(\lambda)$  random variable  $X$  is

$$P(X \geq 2) = 1 - 0.9098 = 0.0902.$$

and so

$$P(X=1) = \frac{1!}{0.5^1} \times e^{-0.5} = 0.3033$$

$$P(X=0) = \frac{0!}{0.5^0} \times e^{-0.5} = 0.6065$$

$$P(X=x) = f(x; \lambda) = \frac{x^x}{x!} e^{-\lambda}$$

where  $P(X=1)$  and  $P(X=0)$  can be carried out by the Poisson probability mass function

$$P(X \geq 2) = 1 - P(X < 2) = 1 - P(X=1) - P(X=0),$$

probability of observing two or more particles during any given second.

**Answer (Ex. 3.15)** — Since  $X$  is  $\text{Poisson}(\lambda)$  random variable with  $\lambda = 0.5$ ,  $P(X \geq 2)$  is the

$$P(X=0; 6) = \frac{0!}{6!} e^{-6} = 0.0025.$$

and so the probability of zero defects is 300 meter tape. If  $X$  is the number of defects on a 300 meter tape, then  $X$  is Poisson with  $\lambda = 6$  300 meter tape. If  $X$  is the number of defects on every 100 metres, we would expect 6 defects on a

so

$$1 - 0.3487 \approx 0.6513.$$

Therefore, the probability that the target will be hit at least once is

$$P(X=0) = \binom{0}{10} 0.10 \cdot 0.9^{10} \approx 0.3487.$$

$$\text{where } P(X \geq 1) = 1 - P(X < 1) = 1 - P(X=0).$$

**Answer (Ex. 3.13)** — This is a Binomial experiment with parameters  $\theta = 0.1$  and  $n = 10$ , and

CHAPTE R 7. INFERENCE FOR STATISTICAL EXPERIMENTS

|   |
|---|
| <p><b>Model 2 (Discrete Uniform)</b> We say that a discrete random variable <math>X</math> is uniformly distributed over <math>k</math> possible values in <math>\mathbb{X} = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k\}</math> if its probability mass function is:</p> $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ \frac{1}{k} & \text{if } x = x_i \end{cases} \quad \text{where } i = 1, 2, \dots, k, \quad (3.11)$ |
|---|

Out of the class of discrete random variables we will define specific kinds as they arise often in applications. We classify discrete random variables into three types for convenience as follows:

- Discrete non-uniform random variables with finitely many possibilities
- Discrete non-uniform random variables with infinitely many possibilities
- Discrete uniform random variables with finitely many possibilities

Out of the class of discrete random variables we will define specific kinds as they arise often in applications. We classify discrete random variables into three types for convenience as follows:

Notice that this table hides the more complex notation but it is still there, under the surface. In fact us when we start doing Measure Theory soon!

|                                    |            |            |            |     |
|------------------------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----|
| Probability: $P(X=x_i) = \theta_i$ | $\theta_1$ | $\theta_2$ | $\theta_3$ | ... |
| Possible values: $x_i$             | $x_1$      | $x_2$      | $x_3$      | ... |

Hence, we can describe a discrete random variable by the table:

Note that in equations (3.5), (3.6) and (3.7) the use of the " $w \in \mathcal{S}$ " notation, where random variables are defined as functions, is much reduced. The reason is that in straightforward examples it is convenient to associate the possible values  $x_1, x_2, \dots$  with the outcomes  $w_1, w_2, \dots$

### DISCRETE RANDOM VARIABLES - SIMPLIFIED NOTATION

See bits: [https://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Discrete\\_random\\_variable&oldid=9630000](https://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Discrete_random_variable&oldid=9630000) for the images scribed on the board.

$$\Delta_1 := \{(\theta, 1-\theta) \in \mathbb{F}^2 : 0 \leq \theta \leq 1\}. \quad (3.10)$$

the point  $(\theta, 1-\theta)$  in the unit 1 simplex:

In particular when  $X$  has only two possible values with  $\mathbb{X} = \{x_1, x_2\}$  then  $\theta_2 = 1 - \theta_1$ , so we can avoid subscripts and take  $\theta = \theta_1$  and realize that the probability  $P$  is now specified by

$$\Delta_{k-1} := \{(\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k) \in \mathbb{F}^k : \sum_i \theta_i = 1 \text{ and } \theta_i \geq 0, \text{ for all } i\} \quad (3.9)$$

think of the probability  $P$  specified by  $(\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k)$  as a point in the unit  $(k-1)$  simplex:

4. When  $X$  only has finitely many possibilities, say  $k$  with  $\mathbb{X} = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k\}$ , then we may

Answer (Ex. 3.13) — This is a Binomial experiment with parameters  $\theta = 0.1$  and  $n = 10$ , and

so

CHAPTE R 3. RANDOM VARIABLES

The distribution function for the discrete uniform random variable  $X$  is:

$$F(x) = \sum_{x_i \leq x} f(x_i) = \sum_{x_i \leq x} \theta_i = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } -\infty < x < x_1 , \\ \frac{1}{k} & \text{if } x_1 \leq x < x_2 , \\ \frac{2}{k} & \text{if } x_2 \leq x < x_3 , \\ \vdots & \\ \frac{k-1}{k} & \text{if } x_{k-1} \leq x < x_k , \\ 1 & \text{if } x_k \leq x < \infty . \end{cases} \quad (3.12)$$

The discrete uniform RV with values in  $\mathbb{X} = \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$  is called the equi-probable de Moivre( $k$ ) RV as we will see in the sequel.

**Example 42** The *fair coin toss experiment* of Exercise 3.2 is an example of a discrete uniform random variable with finitely many possibilities. Its probability mass function is given by

$$f(x) = P(X = x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } x = 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } x = 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

and its distribution function is given by

$$F(x) = P(X \leq x) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } -\infty < x < 0 \\ \frac{1}{2}, & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1 \\ 1, & \text{if } 1 \leq x < \infty \end{cases}$$

Let us sketch the probability mass function and distribution function for  $X$  below.

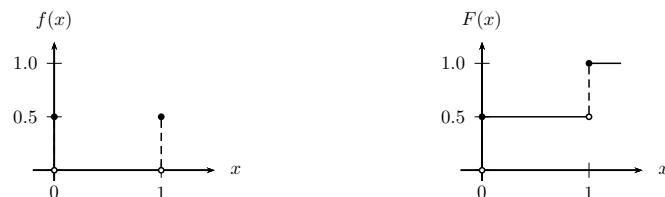


Figure 3.3:  $f(x)$  and  $F(x)$  of the *fair coin toss* random variable  $X$ , a discrete uniform RV on  $\{0, 1\}$ .

**Example 43 (Fair dice RV)** Now consider the *toss a fair die* experiment and define  $X$  to be the number that shows up on the top face. Note that here  $\Omega$  is the set of numerical symbols  $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$  that label each face while each of these symbols are associated with the real number  $x \in \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ . We can describe this random variable by the table

| Possible values, $x_i$  | 1             | 2             | 3             | 4             | 5             | 6             |
|-------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| Probability, $\theta_i$ | $\frac{1}{6}$ | $\frac{1}{6}$ | $\frac{1}{6}$ | $\frac{1}{6}$ | $\frac{1}{6}$ | $\frac{1}{6}$ |

$$\begin{aligned} P(X \geq 1) &= 1 - P(X = 0) = 1 - f(0) = \frac{15}{16} \\ P(X \leq 3) &= f(0) + f(1) + f(2) + f(3) = \frac{15}{16} \end{aligned}$$

**Answer (Ex. 3.12)** — 1. If the random variable  $X$  denotes the number of type *AB* blood donors in the sample of 15, then  $X$  has a binomial distribution with  $n = 15$  and  $\theta = 0.05$ . Therefore

$$P(X = 1) = \binom{15}{1} (0.05)^1 (0.95)^{14} = 0.366 \quad (\text{3 sig. fig.})$$

2. If the random variable  $X$  denotes the number of type *B* blood donors in the sample of 15, then  $X$  has a binomial distribution with  $n = 15$  and  $\theta = 0.10$ . Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} P(X \geq 3) &= 1 - P(X = 0) - P(X = 1) - P(X = 2) \\ &= 1 - \binom{15}{0} (0.1)^0 (0.9)^{15} - \binom{15}{1} (0.1)^1 (0.9)^{14} - \binom{15}{2} (0.1)^2 (0.9)^{13} \\ &= 1 - 0.2059 - 0.3432 - 0.2669 \\ &= 0.184 \quad (\text{to 3 sig. fig.}) \end{aligned}$$

3. If the random variable  $X$  denotes the number of type *O* or type *A* blood donors in the sample of 15, then  $X$  has a binomial distribution with  $n = 15$  and  $\theta = 0.85$ . Therefore

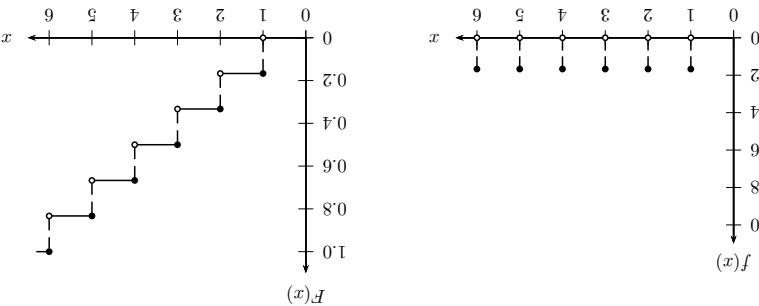
$$\begin{aligned} P(X > 10) &= P(X = 11) + P(X = 12) + P(X = 13) + P(X = 14) + P(X = 15) \\ &= \binom{15}{11} (0.85)^{11} (0.15)^4 + \binom{15}{12} (0.85)^{12} (0.15)^3 \\ &\quad + \binom{15}{13} (0.85)^{13} (0.15)^2 + \binom{15}{14} (0.85)^{14} (0.15)^1 + \binom{15}{15} (0.85)^{15} (0.15)^0 \\ &= 0.1156 + 0.2184 + 0.2856 + 0.2312 + 0.0874 \\ &= 0.938 \quad (\text{to 3 sig. fig.}) \end{aligned}$$

4. If the random variable  $X$  denotes the number of blood donors that are *not* of type *A* blood donors in the sample of 15, then  $X$  has a binomial distribution with  $n = 15$  and  $\theta = 0.6$ . Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} P(X < 5) &= P(X = 0) + P(X = 1) + P(X = 2) + P(X = 3) + P(X = 4) \\ &= \binom{15}{0} (0.6)^0 (0.4)^{15} + \binom{15}{1} (0.6)^1 (0.4)^{14} + \binom{15}{2} (0.6)^2 (0.4)^{13} \\ &\quad + \binom{15}{3} (0.6)^3 (0.4)^{12} + \binom{15}{4} (0.6)^4 (0.4)^{11} \\ &= 0.0000 + 0.0000 + 0.0003 + 0.0016 + 0.0074 \\ &= 0.009 \quad (\text{to 3 DP.}) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 44 (Astрагали with a Kiwi sheep ankle bone)** Astrogalli. Board games involving chance were known in Egypt, 3000 years before Christ. The last bone needed for those games was at first provided by tossing astrogalli, the ankle bones of sheep. These games were known in Egypt, 3000 years before Christ. The last bone needed for those games was at first provided by tossing astrogalli, the ankle bones of sheep. These games were known in Egypt, 3000 years before Christ. The last bone needed for those games was at first provided by tossing astrogalli, the ankle bones of sheep. These games were known in Egypt, 3000 years before Christ. The last bone needed for those games was at first provided by tossing astrogalli, the ankle bones of sheep.

Figure 3.4:  $f(x)$  and  $F(x)$  of the fair die toss random variable  $X$ , a discrete uniform RV on  $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ .



$$F(x) = P(X \leq x) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } -\infty > x > 1 \\ \frac{1}{6}, & \text{if } 1 \leq x > 2 \\ \frac{1}{3}, & \text{if } 2 \leq x > 3 \\ \frac{1}{2}, & \text{if } 3 \leq x > 4 \\ \frac{3}{4}, & \text{if } 4 \leq x > 5 \\ \frac{5}{6}, & \text{if } 5 \leq x > 6 \\ 1, & \text{if } 6 \geq x > \infty \end{cases}$$

and the distribution function is:

$$f(x) = P(X = x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ \frac{1}{6} & \text{if } x = 1 \\ \frac{1}{6} & \text{if } x = 2 \\ \frac{1}{6} & \text{if } x = 3 \\ \frac{1}{6} & \text{if } x = 4 \\ \frac{1}{6} & \text{if } x = 5 \\ \frac{1}{6} & \text{if } x = 6 \end{cases}$$

The probability mass function of this random variable is:

Solution:

Find the probability mass function and distribution function for this random variable, and sketch their graphs.

Now  $\sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \frac{2^x}{1} = 2^0 + 2^1 + 2^2 + \dots$  is a geometric series with common ratio  $r = 2$  and first term  $a = 1$ , and so has

$$\left. \begin{aligned} P(X = 1) &= f(1) = \frac{1}{6} \\ P(X = 0) &= f(0) = \frac{1}{16} \\ \text{2. The required probabilities are:} \end{aligned} \right\} \begin{aligned} f(x) &= \begin{cases} \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^x \frac{2}{1} = \frac{2}{16} & x = 0 \\ \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^x \frac{2}{2} = \frac{2}{16} & x = 1 \\ \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^x \frac{2}{3} = \frac{2}{16} & x = 2 \\ \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^x \frac{2}{4} = \frac{2}{16} & x = 3 \\ \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^x \frac{2}{5} = \frac{2}{16} & x = 4 \end{cases} \\ 1. X \text{ has probability mass function} \end{aligned}$$

Answer (Ex. 3.11) — Note that  $\theta = \frac{2}{3}$  here.

That is,  $P(X \geq 4) = \frac{1}{16}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} P(X \geq 3) &= \sum_{x=0}^{x=0} \frac{2^{2x+1}}{1} = \frac{2}{1} = \frac{1}{16} \\ &= \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{16} \\ &= \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16} \\ &= \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16} \\ &= \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16} \end{aligned}$$

where

$$P(X \geq 4) = 1 - P(X < 4) = 1 - P(X \leq 3)$$

Now

$$f(x) = \frac{\frac{2^x}{2}}{1} = \frac{2^{x+1}}{1} \quad (x = 0, 1, 2, \dots)$$

2. From (a), the probability mass function of  $f$  is

$$2k = 1, \text{ that is, } k = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Therefore,

$$S = \frac{1 - r}{1 - \frac{r}{2}} = \frac{1 - \frac{1}{2}}{1 - \frac{1}{2}} = 2$$

sum

Now  $\sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \frac{2^x}{1} = 2^0 + 2^1 + 2^2 + \dots$  is a geometric series with common ratio  $r = 2$  and first term  $a = 1$ , and so has

CHAPTER 7. INFERENCE FOR STATISTICAL EXPERIMENTS

and slightly convex counted four; the opposite side broad and slightly concave counted three; the lateral side flat and narrow, one, and the opposite narrow lateral side, which is slightly hollow, six. You may examine an astragali of a kiwi sheep.

This is an example of a discrete non-uniform random variable with finitely many possibilities. A surmised probability mass function with  $f(4) = \frac{4}{10}$ ,  $f(3) = \frac{3}{10}$ ,  $f(1) = \frac{2}{10}$ ,  $f(6) = \frac{1}{10}$  and distribution function are shown below.

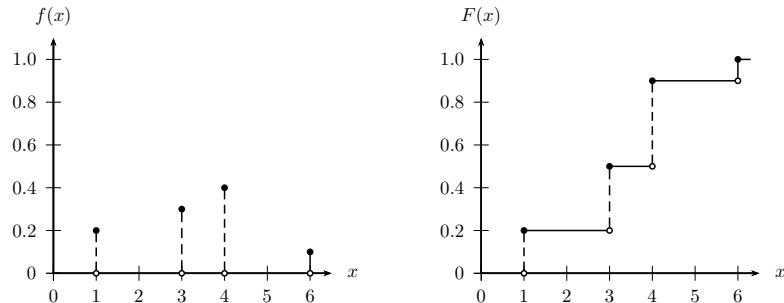


Figure 3.5:  $f(x)$  and  $F(x)$  of surmised *astragali toss* random variable  $X$ , a discrete (non-uniform) RV on  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ .

### 3.2.1 An Elementary Family of Bernoulli Random Variables

In many experiments there are only two outcomes. For instance:

- Flip a coin to see whether it is defective.
- Roll a die and determine whether it is a 6 or not.
- Determine whether it will be below 0 degrees Celsius at 0600 hours in Uppsala tomorrow or not.

Performing such an experiment  $\mathcal{E}$  once to see if an event of interest  $A$  occurs is called a **Bernoulli trial** and its probability model over a triple  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ , with  $A \in \mathcal{F}$ , given by the Indicator Function  $\mathbf{1}_A$  in Model 1 is called the Bernoulli RV.

If we do not know the probability  $\theta$  that ‘ $A$  occurs’, i.e., the Bernoulli RV will equal 1, then we can define a whole family of Bernoulli RVs for each  $\theta \in [0, 1]$  or more precisely for each  $(\theta, 1 - \theta) \in \Delta^1$ , the unit 1-Simplex. Note that this family includes the fair Bernoulli trial of Example 42 when  $\theta = 0.5$ . Let us formalise this as the Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV for each  $\theta \in [0, 1]$  next.

**Model 3 (Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV)** Given a parameter  $\theta \in [0, 1]$ , the probability mass function (PMF) for the Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV  $X$  is:

$$f(x; \theta) = \theta^x (1 - \theta)^{1-x} \mathbf{1}_{\{0,1\}}(x) = \begin{cases} \theta & \text{if } x = 1, \\ 1 - \theta & \text{if } x = 0, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (3.13)$$

**Answer (Ex. 3.8) —** (a)

| $x$                  | 3    | 4    | 5    | 6    | 7    | 8    | 9    | 10   | 11   | 12   | 13   |
|----------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| $F(x) = P(X \leq x)$ | 0.07 | 0.08 | 0.17 | 0.18 | 0.34 | 0.59 | 0.79 | 0.82 | 0.84 | 0.95 | 1.00 |

(b) (i)  $P(X \leq 5) = F(5) = 0.17$

(ii)  $P(X < 12) = P(X \leq 11) = F(11) = 0.84$

(iii)  $P(X > 9) = 1 - P(X \leq 9) = 1 - F(9) = 1 - 0.79 = 0.21$

(iv)  $P(X \geq 9) = 1 - P(X < 9) = 1 - P(X \leq 8) = 1 - 0.59 = 0.41$

(v)  $P(4 < X \leq 9) = F(9) - F(4) = 0.79 - 0.08 = 0.71$

(vi)  $P(4 < X < 11) = P(4 < X \leq 10) = F(10) - F(4) = 0.82 - 0.08 = 0.74$

**Answer (Ex. 3.9) —** Since we are sampling without replacement,

$$\begin{aligned} P(X = 0) &= \frac{4}{10} \cdot \frac{3}{9} = \frac{2}{15} \quad (\text{one way of drawing two right screws}), \\ P(X = 1) &= \frac{6}{10} \cdot \frac{4}{9} + \frac{4}{10} \cdot \frac{6}{9} = \frac{8}{15} \quad (\text{two ways of drawing one left and one right screw}), \\ P(X = 2) &= \frac{6}{10} \cdot \frac{5}{9} = \frac{1}{3} \quad (\text{one way of drawing two left screws}). \end{aligned}$$

So the probability mass function of  $X$  is:

$$f(x) = P(X = x) = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{15} & \text{if } x = 0 \\ \frac{8}{15} & \text{if } x = 1 \\ \frac{1}{3} & \text{if } x = 2 \end{cases}$$

The required probabilities are:

1.  $P(X \leq 1) = P(X = 0) + P(X = 1) = \frac{2}{15} + \frac{8}{15} = \frac{2}{3}$
2.  $P(X \geq 1) = P(X = 1) + P(X = 2) = \frac{8}{15} + \frac{1}{3} = \frac{13}{15}$
3.  $P(X > 1) = P(X = 2) = \frac{1}{3}$

**Answer (Ex. 3.10) —** 1. Since  $f$  is a probability mass function,

$$\sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \frac{k}{2^x} = 1, \quad \text{that is,} \quad k \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^x} = 1.$$

in the sense of Definition 1.7 about independence of a sequence of events, then we can obtain the dence across trials, so one trial's outcome does not affect the outcome of any of the other trials, hence each  $\theta_i \in [0, 1]$  being possibly unknown but fixed as a parameter. Now, if we assume independence of Bernoulli( $\theta_i$ ) trials, say,

$$X_i \sim \text{Bernoulli}(\theta_i) \text{ with } i \in \mathbb{N},$$

Since the Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV has only two outcomes, i.e., simple events, we know how to obtain the probability of each of the two outcomes in a given Bernoulli trial so we have sequence of Bernoulli( $\theta_i$ ) trials, say.

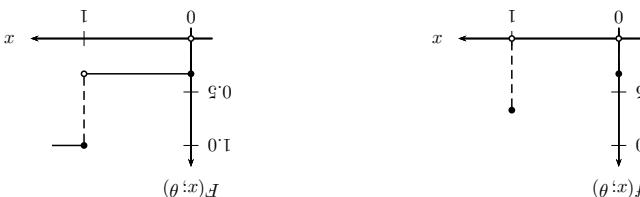
Probability of flooding is the same each year. Note: we assume that flooding is independent from year to year, and that the years; count the number of years, during the 20-year period, during which the property is flooded. Note: we assume that flooding is independent from year to year, and that the

- Provide a property near a particular bridge in our archipelago with flood insurance for 20 years; count the number of sixes you throw.
- Roll a die 100 times; count the number of heads.
- Test 50 randomly selected circuits from an assembly line; count the number of defective circuits.
- Flip a coin 10 times; count the number of heads.
- by possibility allowing for the coin's  $P(H)$  to change each time because each of them are manufactured in a terrible mint.

Random variables make sense for a series of trials as well as just a single trial of an experiment. We now look at what happens when we perform a sequence of independent Bernoulli trials. For instance:

### 3.2.2 Independent Bernoulli Trials

Figure 3.6: PMF  $f(x; \theta)$  and DF  $F(x; \theta)$  with  $\theta = 0.33$ . You should see how PMF and DF change as  $\theta$  goes from 0 to 1



$$\text{and } P_\theta(X = 0) = 1 - \theta.$$

We emphasize the dependence of the probabilities on the parameter  $\theta$  by specifying it following the semicolon in the argument for  $f$  and  $F$  and by subscripting the probabilities, i.e.,  $P_\theta(X = 1) = \theta$

$$F(x; \theta) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ 1 & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1, \\ 1 & \text{if } 1 \leq x, \end{cases} \quad (3.14)$$

and its DF is:

$$\text{and its DF is:}$$

|   |     |                    |                             |  |
|---|-----|--------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| 0 | $x$ | observed frequency | observed relative frequency | Prob of $x$ hits                         |
| 1 | 211 | 229/576 = 0.38     | $f(0; 0.933) = 0.394$       | $1 - \sum_{x=0}^4 f(x; 0.933) = 0.00275$ |
| 2 | 93  | 93/576 = 0.161     | $f(1; 0.933) = 0.367$       | $1/576 = 0.00174$                        |
| 3 | 35  | 35/576 = 0.068     | $f(2; 0.933) = 0.171$       | $f(4; 0.933) = 0.0124$                   |
| 4 | 7   | 7/576 = 0.0122     | $f(3; 0.933) = 0.0532$      | $f(4; 0.933) = 0.0124$                   |
| 5 | 1   | 1/576 = 0.00174    |                             |  |

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{200} & x = 3 \\ \frac{22}{200} & x = 2 \\ \frac{200}{200} & x = 1 \\ \frac{176}{200} & x = 0 \end{cases}$$

active frequencies, the probability mass function is:

$$P(X < 3) = 1 - P(X \leq 3) = 0.5.$$

3. The probability that the machine needs no replacement during the first three years is

$$(This answer is easily seen from the distribution function of  $X$ .)$$

$$P(X \leq 3) = P(X = 1) + P(X = 2) + P(X = 3) = 0.1 + 0.2 + 0.2 = 0.5.$$

2. The probability that the machine needs to be replaced during the first 3 years is:

$$F(x) = P(X \leq x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1 \\ 0.1 & \text{if } 1 \leq x < 2 \\ 0.3 & \text{if } 2 \leq x < 3 \\ 0.5 & \text{if } 3 \leq x < 4 \\ 0.7 & \text{if } 4 \leq x < 5 \\ 1 & \text{if } x \geq 5 \end{cases}$$

so the distribution function is:

$$\begin{array}{c|ccccc} P(X=x) & | & 0.1 & 0.2 & 0.2 & 0.3 \\ \hline x & | & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array}$$

Answer (Ex. 3.6) — 1. Tabulate the values for the probability mass function as follows:

$$P(X = 3) = 1 - 0.07 - 0.10 - 0.32 - 0.40 = 0.11.$$

A. If  $\Omega$  is the sample space, then  $P(\Omega) = 1$  and so the correct probability is

Answer (Ex. 3.5) —  $P(X = 3)$  does not satisfy the condition that  $0 \leq P(A) \leq 1$  for any event

probability of the entire sequence of outcomes for this sequence of **independently distributed Bernoulli( $\theta_i$ ) trails** which can be any infinite sequence of 0's and 1's, i.e., any element of  $\{0, 1\}^\infty$ , by simply multiplying the corresponding probabilities given by  $\theta_i$ 's in  $(\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots) \in [0, 1]^\infty$ , an infinite dimensional parameter space, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} P(x; (\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots)) &= \prod_i f(x_i; \theta_i) = \prod_i \theta_i^{x_i} (1 - \theta_i)^{1-x_i} \mathbb{1}_{\{0,1\}}(x_i), \\ \text{where } x &:= (x_1, x_2, \dots) \in \mathbb{X}_\infty = \{0, 1\}^\infty := \{0, 1\} \times \{0, 1\} \times \dots \end{aligned} \quad (3.15)$$

By further assuming that all the  $\theta_i$ 's are identical, say  $\theta = \theta_1 = \theta_2 = \dots$ , with  $\theta \in [0, 1]$ , a one-dimensional parameter space, we get the much simpler expression for the **independent and identically distributed (IID) Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) trials** as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} P(x; \theta) &= \prod_i f(x_i; \theta) = \prod_i \theta^{x_i} (1 - \theta)^{1-x_i} \mathbb{1}_{\{0,1\}}(x_i) = \mathbb{1}_{\{0,1\}^\infty}(x) \theta^{\sum_i x_i} (1 - \theta)^{\sum_i (1-x_i)} \\ &= \begin{cases} \theta^{\sum_i x_i} (1 - \theta)^{n - \sum_i x_i} & \text{if } x := (x_1, x_2, \dots) \in \mathbb{X}_\infty = \{0, 1\}^\infty \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \end{aligned} \quad (3.16)$$

Remembering that all other RVs can be derived from such IID Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) trials using  $\theta = 1/2$ , as we will see in the sequel, we are ready to take a tour through some common discrete and continuous random variables that are useful in many applications.

### 3.2.3 Some Common Discrete Random Variables

Let us start with the simplest example to fix ideas carefully.

**Example 45 (Waiting For the First Heads)** Suppose our experiment is to toss a fair coin independently and identically (that is, the same coin is tossed in essentially the same manner independent of the other tosses in each trial) as often as necessary until we have a head, H. Let the random variable  $X$  denote the *Number of trials until the first H appears*.

Let's first find the probability mass function of  $X$ .

Now  $X$  can take on the values  $\{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ , so we have a non-uniform random variable with infinitely many possibilities. Since

$$\begin{aligned} f(1) &= P(X = 1) = P(H) = \frac{1}{2}, \\ f(2) &= P(X = 2) = P(TH) = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2, \\ f(3) &= P(X = 3) = P(TTH) = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^3, \quad \text{etc.} \end{aligned}$$

the probability mass function of  $X$  is:

$$f(x) = P(X = x) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^x, \quad x = 1, 2, \dots.$$

In the previous Example, noting that we have independent trials, we get:

**Answer (Exercise 3.1)** — The first mistake is the solid vertical lines (blue) from 0 in the domain or  $x$ -axis to  $P('not A')$  in the range or  $y$ -axis and from 1 in the domain to 1 in the range. This is ill-defined for any function if we are to interpret that the elements in the domain, namely 0 and 1, are to be associated with the uncountably many image values in the range of the function, namely  $[0, P('not A')]$  and  $[P('not A'), 1]$ , respectively. So we should first replace them by dotted lines which merely help us track where the function jumped to at 0 and 1.

The second mistake is failing to emphasise that the value taken by the function at 0 and 1 is not 0 and  $P('not A')$ , respectively. So it is best to introduce an empty circle like  $\circ$  at  $(0, 0)$  and  $(1, P('not A'))$  to indicate the points of discontinuity. The same mistakes should be fixed in the next Figure 3.2.

**Answer (Exercise 3.2)** — The probability that  $X$  takes on a specific value  $x$  is:

$$P(X = x) = P(\{\omega : X(\omega) = x\}) = \begin{cases} P(\emptyset) = 0, & \text{if } x \notin \{0, 1\} \\ P(\{T\}) = \frac{1}{2}, & \text{if } x = 0 \\ P(\{H\}) = \frac{1}{2}, & \text{if } x = 1 \end{cases}$$

or more simply,

$$P(X = x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } x = 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } x = 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

The distribution function for  $X$  is:

$$F(x) = P(X \leq x) = P(\{\omega : X(\omega) \leq x\}) = \begin{cases} P(\emptyset) = 0, & \text{if } -\infty < x < 0 \\ P(\{T\}) = \frac{1}{2}, & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1 \\ P(\{H, T\}) = P(\Omega) = 1, & \text{if } 1 \leq x < \infty \end{cases}$$

or more simply,

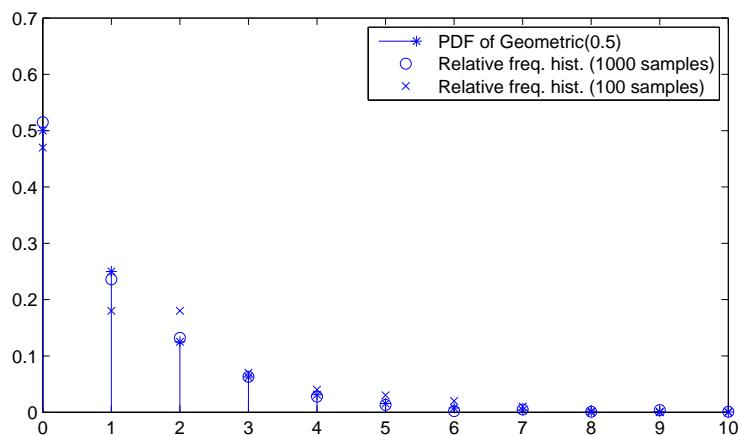
$$F(x) = P(X \leq x) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } -\infty < x < 0 \\ \frac{1}{2}, & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1 \\ 1, & \text{if } 1 \leq x < \infty \end{cases}$$

**Answer (Exercise 3.3)** — This was done in week 1. Get notes from your mates or wait until Raaz scribes for virtual convenience.

**Answer (Exercise 3.4)** — We are given that 537 flying bombs hit an area  $A$  of south London made up of  $24 \times 24 = 576$  small equal-sized areas, say  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_{576}$ . Assuming the hits were purely random over  $A$  the probability that a particular bomb will hit a given small area, say  $A_i$ , is  $\frac{1}{576}$ . Let  $X$  denote the number of hits that a small area  $A_i$  receives in this German raid. Since 537 bombs fell over  $A$ , we can model  $X$  as Binomial( $n = 537, \theta = \frac{1}{576}$ ) that is counting the number of 'successes' (for German bombers) with probability  $\theta$  in a sequence of  $n = 537$  independent Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) trials. Finally, we can approximate this Binomial( $n = 537, \theta = \frac{1}{576}$ ) random variable by Poisson( $\lambda$ ) random variable with  $\lambda = n\theta = \frac{537}{576} \cong 0.933$ . Using the probability mass function formula for Poisson( $\lambda = 0.933$ ) random variable  $X$  we can obtain the probabilities and compare them with the relative frequencies from the data as follows:



Figure 3.7: PMF of  $X \sim \text{Geometric}(\theta = 0.5)$  and the relative frequency histogram based on 100 and 1000 samples from  $X$  according to Simulation 144 and Labwork 145 you will see in the sequel.



**Example 46** Suppose we flip a coin 10 times and count the number of heads. Let's consider the probability of getting three heads, say. The probability that the first three flips are heads and the last seven flips are tails, *in order*, is

$$\underbrace{\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2}}_{3 \text{ successes}} \underbrace{\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \cdots \frac{1}{2}}_{7 \text{ failures}}.$$

But there are

$$\binom{10}{3} = \frac{10!}{7!3!} = 120$$

ways of ordering three heads and seven tails, so the probability of getting three heads and seven tails *in any order*, is

$$P(\text{'3 heads'}) = \binom{10}{3} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^3 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^7 \approx 0.117$$

We can describe this sort of situation by considering a random variable  $X$  which counts the number of successes, as follows:

**Model 5 (Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) RV)** Let the RV  $X = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$  be the sum of  $n$  independent and identically distributed Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RVs, i.e.:

$$X = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i, \quad X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Bernoulli}(\theta).$$

Given two parameters  $n$  and  $\theta$ , the PMF of the Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) RV  $X$  is:

$$f(x; n, \theta) = \begin{cases} \binom{n}{x} \theta^x (1-\theta)^{n-x} & \text{if } x \in \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (3.19)$$

**Answer (Ex. 2.10)** — Let the event that a micro-chip is defective be  $D$ , and the event that the test is correct be  $C$ . So the probability that the micro-chip is defective is  $P(D) = 0.05$ , and the probability that it is effective is  $P(D^c) = 0.95$ .

The probability that the test correctly detects a defective micro-chip is the conditional probability  $P(C|D) = 0.8$ , and the probability that if a good micro-chip is tested but the test declares it is defective is the conditional probability  $P(C^c|D^c) = 0.1$ . Therefore, we also have the probabilities  $P(C^c|D) = 0.2$ , and  $P(C|D^c) = 0.9$ .

Moreover, the probability that a micro-chip is defective, and has been declared as defective is

$$P(C \cap D) = P(C|D)P(D) = 0.8 \times 0.05 = 0.04.$$

The probability that a micro-chip is effective, and has been declared as effective is

$$P(C \cap D^c) = P(C|D^c)P(D^c) = 0.9 \times 0.95 = 0.855.$$

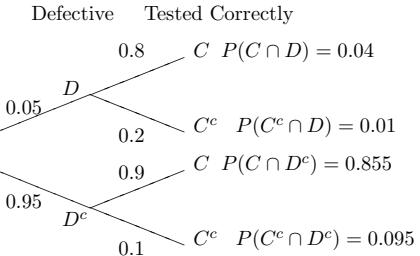
The probability that a micro-chip is defective, and has been declared as effective is

$$P(C^c \cap D) = P(C^c|D)P(D) = 0.2 \times 0.05 = 0.01.$$

The probability that a micro-chip is effective, and has been declared as defective is

$$P(C^c \cap D^c) = P(C^c|D^c)P(D^c) = 0.1 \times 0.95 = 0.095.$$

The tree diagram for these events and probabilities is:



(a) If a micro-chip is tested to be good, it could be defective but tested incorrectly, or it could be effective and tested correctly. Therefore, the probability that the micro-chip is tested good, but it is actually defective is

$$\frac{P(C^c \cap D)}{P(C^c \cap D) + P(C \cap D^c)} = \frac{0.01}{0.01 + 0.855} \approx 0.012$$

(b) Similarly, the probability that a micro-chip is tested to be defective, but it was good is

$$\frac{P(C \cap D^c)}{P(C \cap D) + P(C^c \cap D^c)} = \frac{0.095}{0.095 + 0.04} \approx 0.704$$

(c) The probability that both the micro-chips are effective, and have been tested and determined to be good, is

$$\left( \frac{P(C \cap D^c)}{P(C^c \cap D) + P(C \cap D^c)} \right)^2$$

and so the probability that at least one is defective is:

$$1 - \left( \frac{P(C \cap D^c)}{P(C^c \cap D) + P(C \cap D^c)} \right)^2 = 1 - \left( \frac{0.095}{0.095 + 0.04} \right)^2 \approx 0.023$$

**A Quick Justification:** The argument from Example 46 generalizes as follows. Since the trials are independent and identical, the probability of  $x$  successes followed by  $n - x$  failures, in order, is given by

$$\underbrace{\text{SS} \dots \text{SF}}_x \dots \underbrace{\text{FF} \dots \text{F}}_{n-x}$$

Since the  $n$  symbols SS  $\dots$  SF  $\dots$  F may be arranged in

$$\binom{x}{n} = \frac{(n-x)(x-1)(x-2)\dots(2)(1)}{n!}$$

where,  $\binom{x}{n}$  is:

$$\binom{x}{n} \text{ is read as "n choose } x.$$

$$\frac{x(x-1)(n-2)\dots(n-x+1)}{n!} = \frac{x!(n-x)!}{n!(x-n)!}$$

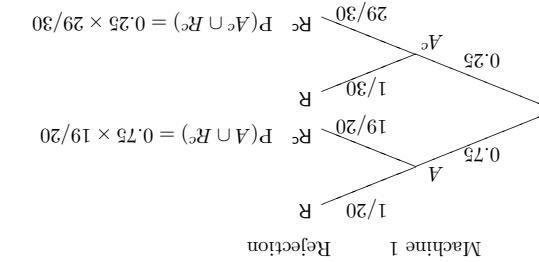
To do this with formulae, partitioning according to the mid-term test result and using the multiplication rule, we get:

$$\begin{aligned} P(A) &= P(A \cup B) + P(A \cap B^c) \\ &= P(A|B)P(B) + P(A|B^c)P(B^c) \\ &= (0.8)(0.7) + (0.4)(0.3) = 0.68 \end{aligned}$$

**Answer (Ex. 2.9)** — Let  $A$  be the event that bottles are accepted. We know the following probabilities: event that bottles are produced by machine 2;  $R$  denotes the event that the bottles are rejected; and  $R^c$  denotes the event that the bottles are accepted. We know the following probabilities:

$$\begin{aligned} P(A|R^c) &= \frac{P(R^c \cup A)}{P(R^c \cup A)} = \frac{P(R^c \cup A) + P(R^c \cap A)}{P(R^c \cup A)} \\ &\text{We want } P(A|R^c) \text{ which is give by} \\ P(R|A^c) &= \frac{1}{30} \quad \text{and} \quad P(R|A^c) = \frac{29}{30} \\ P(R|A) &= \frac{20}{19} \quad \text{and} \quad P(R|A) = \frac{19}{20} \\ P(A) &= 0.75 \quad \text{and} \quad P(A^c) = 0.25 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} P(R^c \cap A) &= P(R^c|A)P(A) = \frac{19}{20} \times 0.75 \\ \text{Therefore,} & \\ P(R^c \cup A^c) &= P(R^c|A^c)P(A^c) = \frac{29}{30} \times 0.25 \\ \text{The tree diagram for this problem is:} & \end{aligned}$$



The tree diagram for this problem is:  
Machine 1      Rejection

where the probability is identically 0.80 that any one of them will recover from the disease.  
**Example 47** Find the probability that seven of ten persons will recover from a tropical disease variable, we get:

We can assume independence here, so we have a binomial situation with  $x = 7$ ,  $n = 10$ , and  $\theta = 0.8$ . Substituting these into the formula for the probability mass function for Binomial(10, 0.8) random variable, we get:

$$f(7; 10, 0.8) = \binom{10}{7} \times (0.8)^7 \times (1 - 0.8)^{10-7}$$

$$= \frac{10!}{7!3!} \times (0.8)^7 \times (1 - 0.8)^{10-7}$$

$$\approx 0.20$$

$$= 120 \times (0.8)^7 \times (1 - 0.8)^{10-7} \quad * \text{ In the exam you can give your answer as such an expression.}$$

$$P(A|R^c) = \frac{P(R^c)}{P(R^c \cup A)} = \frac{\frac{29}{30} \times 0.75 + \frac{30}{30} \times 0.25}{\frac{19}{20} \times 0.75 + \frac{30}{30} \times 0.25} \approx 0.747$$

So the required probability is

$$P(A^c \cap R^c) = 0.25 \times 29/30$$

Substituting these into the formula for the probability mass function for Binomial(10, 0.8) random variable, we get:

Solution:

where the probability is identically 0.80 that any one of them will recover from the disease.

Now let us compute  $f(x; n, \theta)$  when  $x \in \{0, 1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . Consider the set of indices  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  for the  $n$  Bernoulli trials  $\{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n\}$ . Now choose  $n$  indices from  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  to mark those trials in  $\{0, 1, 2, \dots, n\}$  and therefore  $f(x; n, \theta) = 0$  if  $x \notin \{0, 1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .

Observe that for the Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) RV  $X$ ,  $P(X=x) = f(x; n, \theta)$  is the probability that  $x$  of the  $n$  Bernoulli trials result in an outcome of 1's. Next note that if all  $n$   $X_i$ 's are 0's, then  $X = 0$ , and if all  $n$   $X_i$ 's are 1's, then  $X = n$ . In general, if some of the  $n$   $X_i$ 's are 1's and the others are 0, then  $X$  can only take values in  $\{0, 1, 2, \dots, n\}$  and therefore  $f(x; n, \theta) = 0$  if  $x \notin \{0, 1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .

**Proof** This is only a sketch. A formal proof should start with the mathematical induction for the very formula for the  $n$  Bernoulli coefficients.

ways, the probability of  $x$  successes and  $n - x$  failures, in any order, is given by

$$\binom{x}{n} = \frac{(n-x)x!}{n!}$$

which is only a sketch. A formal proof should start with the mathematical induction for the very formula for the  $n$  Bernoulli coefficients.

ways, the probability of  $x$  successes and  $n - x$  failures, in any order, is given by

$$\binom{x}{n} = \frac{(n-x)x!}{n!}$$

$$\underbrace{\text{SS} \dots \text{SF}}_x \dots \underbrace{\text{FF} \dots \text{F}}_{n-x}$$

**A Quick Justification:** The argument from Example 46 generalizes as follows. Since the trials are independent and identical, the probability of  $x$  successes followed by  $n - x$  failures, in order, is given by

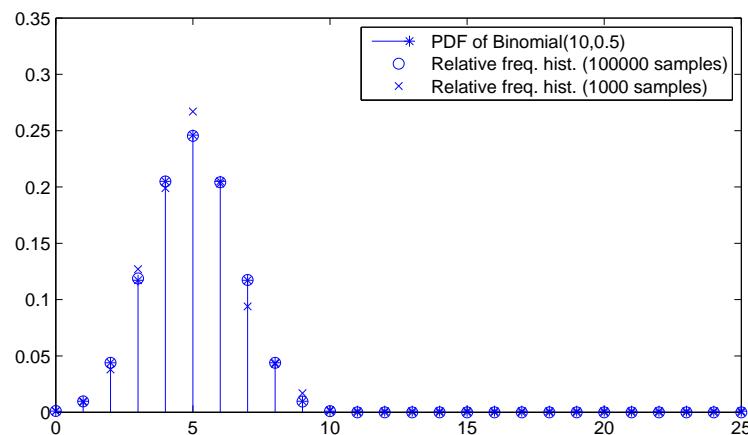
$$\underbrace{\text{SS} \dots \text{SF}}_x \dots \underbrace{\text{FF} \dots \text{F}}_{n-x}$$

are independent and identical, the probability of  $x$  successes followed by  $n - x$  failures, in order, is given by

$$\underbrace{\text{SS} \dots \text{SF}}_x \dots \underbrace{\text{FF} \dots \text{F}}_{n-x}$$

are independent and identical, the probability of  $x$  successes followed by  $n - x$  failures, in order, is given by

Figure 3.8: PDF of  $X \sim \text{Binomial}(n = 10, \theta = 0.5)$  and the relative frequency histogram based on 100,000 samples from  $X$  obtained according to Simulation 148.



**Example 48** Compute the probability of obtaining *at least two 6's* in rolling a fair die independently and identically four times.

Solution:

In any given toss let  $\theta = P(\{6\}) = 1/6$ ,  $1 - \theta = 5/6$ ,  $n = 4$ .

The event *at least two 6's* occurs if we obtain two or three or four 6's. Hence the answer is:

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{at least two 6's}) &= f\left(2; 4, \frac{1}{6}\right) + f\left(3; 4, \frac{1}{6}\right) + f\left(4; 4, \frac{1}{6}\right) \\ &= \binom{4}{2} \left(\frac{1}{6}\right)^2 \left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^{4-2} + \binom{4}{3} \left(\frac{1}{6}\right)^3 \left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^{4-3} + \binom{4}{4} \left(\frac{1}{6}\right)^4 \left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^{4-4} \\ &= \frac{1}{6^4} (6 \cdot 25 + 4 \cdot 5 + 1) \\ &\approx 0.132 \end{aligned}$$

To make concrete sense of the  $\text{Binomial}(n, \theta)$  and other more sophisticated concepts in the sequel, let us take a historical detour into some origins of statistical thinking in 19th century England.

#### Sir Francis Galton's Quincunx

This section is introduced to provide some forms for a kinesthetic (hands-on) and visual understanding of some elementary statistical distributions and laws. The following words are from Sir Francis Galton, F.R.S., *Natural Inheritance*, pp. 62-65, Macmillan, 1889. In here you will already find the kernels behind the construction of  $\text{Binomial}(\theta)$  RV as sum of IID  $\text{Bernoulli}(\theta)$  RVs, Weak Law of Large Numbers, Central Limit Theorem, and more. We will mathematically present these concepts

**Answer (Ex. 2.7)** — 1. The sample space is

$$\{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (1, 5), (1, 6), (2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 4), (2, 5), (2, 6), (3, 1), (3, 2), (3, 3), (3, 4), (3, 5), (3, 6), (4, 1), (4, 2), (4, 3), (4, 4), (4, 5), (4, 6), (5, 1), (5, 2), (5, 3), (5, 4), (5, 5), (5, 6), (6, 1), (6, 2), (6, 3), (6, 4), (6, 5), (6, 6)\}$$

Note: Order matters here. For example, the outcome “16” refers to a “1” on the first die and a “6” on the second, whereas the outcome “61” refers to a “6” on the first die and a “1” on the second.

2. First tabulate all possible sums as follows:

| + | 1        | 2        | 3        | 4        | 5        | 6  |
|---|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----|
| 1 | 2        | 3        | 4        | <b>5</b> | <b>6</b> | 7  |
| 2 | 3        | 4        | <b>5</b> | <b>6</b> | 7        | 8  |
| 3 | 4        | <b>5</b> | <b>6</b> | 7        | 8        | 9  |
| 4 | <b>5</b> | <b>6</b> | 7        | 8        | 9        | 10 |
| 5 | <b>6</b> | 7        | 8        | 9        | 10       | 11 |
| 6 | 7        | 8        | 9        | 10       | 11       | 12 |

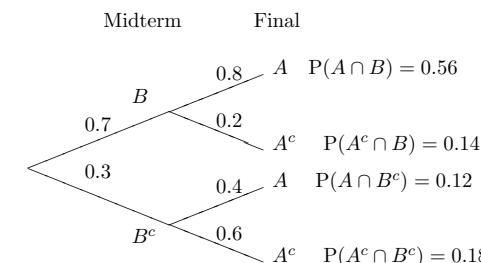
Let  $A$  be the event *the sum is 5* and  $B$  be the event *the sum is 6*, then  $A$  and  $B$  are mutually exclusive events with probabilities

$$P(A) = \frac{4}{36} \quad \text{and} \quad P(B) = \frac{5}{36}.$$

Therefore,

$$P(4 < \text{sum} < 7) = P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) = \frac{4}{36} + \frac{5}{36} = \frac{1}{4}$$

**Answer (Ex. 2.8)** — First draw a tree with the first split based on the outcome of the midterm test and the second on the outcome of the final exam. Note that the probabilities involved in this second branch are *conditional* probabilities that depend on the outcome of the midterm test. Let  $A$  be the event that the student passes the final exam and let  $B$  be the event that the student passes the midterm test.



Then the probability of passing the final exam is:

$$P(A) = 0.56 + 0.12 = 0.68.$$

of the same shape however often the experiment is repeated. The outline of the columns would then successively approximate to the Curve of Frequency (Fig. 38), and is closely after fitting itself from the last row of pins. The outline of the columns of shot accumulate in broad areas as it descends, and, at length, every shot finds itself in a compartment immediately descending shot strikes against a pin in each successive row. The cascade descending from the last row of pins, so that the outline of the columns of shot accumulate in case may be, every time it strikes a pin. The pins are disposed in a unique fashion, so that every the pins in a curious and interesting way: each of them starting a step to the right or left, as the shot passes through the funnel and issuing from its narrow end, scatters rapidly down through that had collected at the upper end of the frame to run into the wide mouth of the funnel. The action commences. Lateral steps, shown in the diagram, have the effect of directing all the shot to the upper end; then, when it is turned back into this working position, the desired vertical compartments. A charge of small shot is scattered over the entire surface of the board, and below these again are a series of rows of pins stuck squarely into the backboard, and below these again are a series of the glass. Steps are placed in the upper part to act as a funnel. Below the outlet of the funnel stand Deivation depends. It is a frame glazed in front, leaving a depth of about a quarter of an inch behind means of an apparatus shown in Fig. 7, that mimics in a very pretty way the conditions of Frequency, by of the other also becomes intelligible. I shall now illustrate the origin of the Curve of Frequency, that of Distribution, are conceivable: therefore if the geneses of either of them can be made clear, that Mechanical Illustration of the Cause of Frequency.—The Curve of Frequency, and that

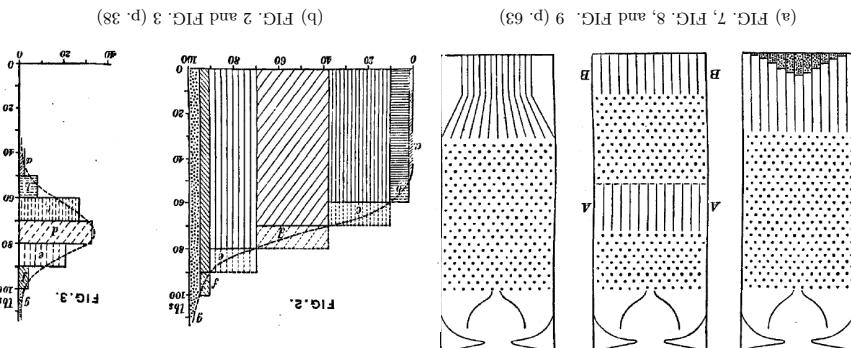


Figure 3.9: Figures from Sir Francis Galton, F.R.S., *Natural Inheritance*, Macmillan, 1889.

Scheme, which nearly corresponds to the observed one, starts potentially into existence. Some people hate the very name of statistics, but I find them full of beauty and interest. Whenever they are not brutalised, but definitely handled by the higher methods, and are warily interpreted, they have an opening can be cut through the formidable thickness that bars the path of those who pursue the Science of man.

An average is but a solitary fact, whereas if a single other fact be added to it, an entire Normal distribution could be thrown into its laces, two nuances would be got rid of at once. This was that, it is mountains could be one of our flat English counts, whose retrospective of variety as that of the native of one of our Swiss and of Zurich counts seems as dull to the charm to Averages, and do not reveal in more comprehensive terms. Their souls seem as dull to the charm of Statistics. It is difficult to understand why statistics commonly limit their inquiries in the sequel as a way of giving precise meanings to Galton's observations with his Quincunx. The

Therefore, case B has the greater probability of hitting the target at least once.

$$1 - P(\text{missing the target both times}) = 1 - \frac{9}{4} = \frac{5}{9}$$

For case B, the probability of missing both shots is  $\frac{3}{4} = \frac{9}{12}$ , so the probability hitting some target at least once is  $\frac{3}{4}$ .

For case A, there is only one shot so the probability of hitting at least one is  $\frac{1}{4}$ .

Answer (Ex. 2.6) — We can assume that the first shot is independent of the second shot so we can multiply the probabilities here.

$$\begin{aligned} P(C \cup D) &= P(C) + P(D) - P(C \cap D) \\ &= P\{\{B, L, G\}\} + P\{\{G, L, N\}\} - P\{\{G, L\}\} \\ &= \frac{3}{5} + \frac{3}{5} - \frac{2}{5} \\ &= \frac{4}{5}. \end{aligned}$$

3. Using the addition rule for two arbitrary events we get,

$$P\{\{B\} \cup \{I\}\} = P(B) + P(I) = \frac{5}{15} + \frac{1}{15} = \frac{2}{5}.$$

4. Since the events  $\{B\}$  and  $\{I\}$  are disjoint,

$$\begin{aligned} P(Q) &= P\{\{B, L, N, G, O\}\} \\ &= P\{\{B\} \cup \{I\} \cup \{N\} \cup \{G\} \cup \{O\}\} \\ &= P\{\{B\}\} + P\{\{I\}\} + P\{\{N\}\} + P\{\{G\}\} + P\{\{O\}\} \quad \text{Simplifying notation} \\ &= \frac{1}{5} + \frac{1}{15} + \frac{1}{15} + \frac{1}{15} + \frac{1}{15} \\ &= \frac{1}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

3. Using the addition rule for mutually exclusive events,

$$P(B) = P(I) = P(N) = P(G) = P(O) = \frac{15}{75} = \frac{1}{5}.$$

2. The probabilities of simple events are:

Answer (Ex. 2.5) — 1. First, the sample space is:  $\Omega = \{B, I, N, G, O\}$ .

$P(B) = \frac{1}{11}$

$$1 - P(\text{choosing the letter H}) = 1 - \frac{2}{9} = \frac{7}{9}.$$

3. By the complementation rule, the probability of not choosing the letter H is:

$$P\{\{W\}\} = \frac{1}{11}, P\{\{A\}\} = \frac{3}{11}, P\{\{I\}\} = \frac{3}{11}, P\{\{M\}\} = \frac{1}{11}, P\{\{K\}\} = \frac{1}{11}, P\{\{R\}\} = \frac{2}{11}.$$

2. Since there are eleven letters in WAIMAKARIKI the probabilities are:

become more nearly identical with the Normal Curve of Frequency, if the rows of pins were much more numerous, the shot smaller, and the compartments narrower; also if a larger quantity of shot was used.

The principle on which the action of the apparatus depends is, that a number of small and independent accidents befall each shot in its career. In rare cases, a long run of luck continues to favour the course of a particular shot towards either outside place, but in the large majority of instances the number of accidents that cause Deviation to the right, balance in a greater or less degree those that cause Deviation to the left. Therefore most of the shot finds its way into the compartments that are situated near to a perpendicular line drawn from the outlet of the funnel, and the Frequency with which shots stray to different distances to the right or left of that line diminishes in a much faster ratio than those distances increase. This illustrates and explains the reason why mediocrity is so common."

We now consider the last of our common discrete random variables for now, the **Poisson** case. A Poisson random variable counts the number of times an event occurs.

We might, for example, ask:

- How many customers visit Cafe Angstrom each day?
- How many sixes are scored in a cricket season? Cricket is a game played in the English-speaking worlds.
- How many bombs hit a city block in south London during World War II?

A Poisson experiment has the following characteristics:

- The average rate of an event occurring is known. This rate is constant.
- The probability that an event will occur during a short continuum is proportional to the size of the continuum.
- Events occur independently.

The number of events occurring in a Poisson experiment is referred to as a **Poisson random variable**.

**Model 6** (Poisson( $\lambda$ ) RV) Given a real parameter  $\lambda > 0$ , the discrete RV  $X$  is said to be Poisson( $\lambda$ ) distributed if  $X$  has PDF:

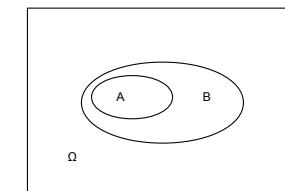
$$f(x; \lambda) = \begin{cases} \frac{e^{-\lambda} \lambda^x}{x!} & \text{if } x \in \mathbb{Z}_+ := \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (3.20)$$

Note that the PDF integrates to 1:

$$\sum_{x=0}^{\infty} f(x; \lambda) = \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\lambda} \lambda^x}{x!} = e^{-\lambda} \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda^x}{x!} = e^{-\lambda} e^{\lambda} = 1,$$

where we exploit the Taylor series of  $e^{\lambda}$  to obtain the second-last equality above.

We interpret  $X$  as the number of times an event occurs during a specified continuum given that the average value in the continuum is  $\lambda$ .



**Answer (Exercise 1.5)** — We start by assuming that order does matter, that is, we have a permutation, so that the number of ways we can select the three class representatives is

$${}^{50}P_3 = \frac{50!}{(50-3)!} = \frac{50!}{47!}$$

But, because order doesn't matter, all we have to do is to adjust our permutation formula by a factor representing the number of ways the objects could be in order. Here, three students can be placed in order  $3!$  ways, so the required number of ways of choosing the class representatives is:

$$\frac{50!}{47!3!} = \frac{50 \cdot 49 \cdot 48}{3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1} = 19,600$$

**Answer (Exercise 2.1)** — This is an optional exercise. You will understand this as you progress through your mathematics programme. The explanation in the said item was (or will be explained in person again) in the lectures. This exercise was created to answer natural questions that were asked by students who wanted to know.

- Answer (Ex. 2.2)** — (a)  $P(\{Z\}) = 0.1\% = \frac{0.1}{100} = 0.001$   
(b)  $P(\text{'picking any letter'}) = P(\Omega) = 1$   
(c)  $P(\{E, Z\}) = P(\{E\} \cup \{Z\}) = P(\{E\}) + P(\{Z\}) = 0.13 + 0.001 = 0.131$ , by Axiom (3)  
(d)  $P(\text{'picking a vowel'}) = P(\{A, E, I, O, U\}) = (7.3\% + 13.0\% + 7.4\% + 7.4\% + 2.7\%) = 37.8\%$ , by the addition rule for mutually exclusive events, rule (2).  
(e)  $P(\text{'picking any letter in the word WAZZZUP'}) = P(\{W, A, Z, U, P\}) = 14.4\%$ , by the addition rule for mutually exclusive events, rule (2).  
(f)  $P(\text{'picking any letter in the word WAZZZUP or a vowel'}) = P(\{W, A, Z, U, P\}) + P(\{A, E, I, O, U\}) - P(\{A, U\}) = 14.4\% + 37.8\% - 10\% = 42.2\%$ , by the addition rule for two arbitrary events, rule (3).

- Answer (Ex. 2.3)** — 1.  $\{BB, BW, WB, WW\}$   
2.  $\{RRRR, RRRR, RRLR, RLRR, LRRR, RLRL, RRLL, LLRR, LRLR, LRRL, RLLL\}$   
3.  $\{6, 16, 26, 36, 46, 56, 116, 126, 136, 146, 156, 216, 226, 236, 246, 256, \dots\}$

- Answer (Ex. 2.4)** — 1. The sample space  $\Omega = \{W, A, I, M, K, R\}$ .

**Remark 24** In the binomial case where  $\theta$  is small and  $n$  is large, it can be shown that the binomial distribution with parameters  $n$  and  $\theta$  is closely approximated by the Poisson distribution having  $\lambda = n\theta$ . The smaller the value of  $\theta$  and larger the value of  $n$ , the better the approximation.

In the sequel we will see more formally, after understanding notions of convergence of RVs, that the sum of a sequence of  $n$  IID Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RVs with  $\lambda = n\theta$  converges to the Poisson( $\lambda$ ) RV as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  and  $\theta \rightarrow 0$  in a specific sense.

$$\begin{aligned} P(X \leq 3) &= 1 - P(X > 3) \\ &= 1 - f(4; 2) - f(1; 2) - f(2; 2) \\ &= 1 - P(X = 0) - P(X = 1) - P(X = 2) \\ &= 1 - 0.1353 - 0.2707 - 0.2707 \\ &= 0.323 \quad (3 \text{ sig. fig.}) \end{aligned}$$

(b)

$$P(X = 0) = f(0; 2) = \frac{e^{-2} 2^0}{0!} = 0.135 \quad (3 \text{ sig. fig.})$$

(a)

$$\lambda = \frac{4}{8} = 2.$$

Let the random variable  $X$  denote the number of cars arriving in a 15 minute interval, or  $\frac{1}{4}$  of an hour. We know that 8 cars arrive per hour, so  $X$  has a Poisson distribution with continuum is 15 minutes here so we need the average number of cars that arrive in a 15 minute period, or  $\frac{8}{4} = 2$ .

Solution:

- (a) No cars arrive?
- (b) At least three cars arrive?

**Example 50 (Arrivals at a Service Station)** The proprietor of a service station finds that, on average, 8 cars arrive per hour on Saturdays. What is the probability that during a randomly chosen 15 minute period on a Saturday:

**Example 50 (Arrivals at a Service Station)** The proprietor of a service station finds that, on average, 8 cars arrive per hour on Saturdays. What is the probability that during a randomly chosen 15 minute period on a Saturday:

$$\begin{aligned} P(X \leq 3) &= f(0; 2) + f(1; 2) + f(2; 2) \\ &= e^{-2} \left( \frac{2^0}{0!} + \frac{2^1}{1!} + \frac{2^2}{2!} + \frac{2^3}{3!} \right) \\ &= 0.857 \quad (3 \text{ sig. fig.}) \end{aligned}$$

The probability that three cars or fewer enter the lot is:

cars enter on average.

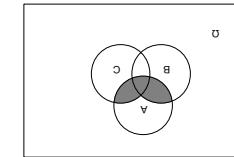
Let the random variable  $X$  denote the number of cars arriving per minute. Note that the continuum is 1 minute here. Then  $X$  can be considered to have a Poisson distribution with  $\lambda = 2$  because 2 cars enter on average.

Note: Use calculators, or Excel or Maple, etc. In an exam you may be given needed values from Poisson tables.

Think: Why are the assumptions for a Poisson random variable likely to be correct here? That during any given minute three cars or fewer will enter the lot?

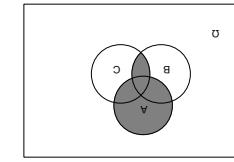
**Example 49** If on the average, 2 cars enter a certain parking lot per minute, what is the probability

The following Venn diagram illustrates the two implications clearly.

2. If  $A \cup B = B$  then  $A \subseteq B$ .1. If  $A \subseteq B$  then  $A \cup B = B$ **Answer (Ex. 1.4)** — To illustrate the idea that  $A \subseteq B$  if and only if  $A \cup B = B$ , we need to illustrate two implications:

We can check  $A \cup (B \cup C) = (A \cup B) \cup (A \cup C)$  from the following sketch:

**Answer (Ex. 1.3)** — We can check  $A \cup (B \cup C) = (A \cup B) \cup (A \cup C)$  from the following sketch:



We can check  $A \cup (B \cup C) = (A \cup B) \cup (A \cup C)$  from the following sketch:

- (a)  $T \cup S = \emptyset$
- (b)  $T \cap S = T$
- (c)  $T \cup L = \{T_1, T_2, T_3, L_1, L_2\}$
- (d)  $T \cap L \cup S = S$
- (e)  $S_c = \{L_1, L_2, T_3, L_3, T_1, T_2\}$
- (f)  $S \cup T = \emptyset$
- (g)  $S_c \cap T = \{T_1, T_2, T_3\} = T$
- (h)  $L_c = \{L_1, L_2, S_1, S_2, \dots, S_{50}\}$
- (i)  $L_c \cap T = \{T_1, T_2\}$
- (j)  $L_c \cup T = \emptyset$

**Answer (Ex. 1.1)** — By operating with  $Q$ ,  $T$ ,  $L$  and  $S$  we can obtain the answers as follows:

## Answers to Selected Exercises

**Example 51 (Still-born Babies)** About 0.01% of babies are stillborn in a certain hospital. We find the probability that of the next 5000 babies born, there will be no more than 1 stillborn baby. Let the random variable  $X$  denote the number of stillborn babies. Then  $X$  has a binomial distribution with parameters  $n = 5000$  and  $\theta = 0.0001$ . Since  $\theta$  is so small and  $n$  is large, this binomial distribution may be approximated by a Poisson distribution with parameter

$$\lambda = n\theta = 5000 \times 0.0001 = 0.5.$$

Hence

$$P(X \leq 1) = P(X = 0) + P(X = 1) = f(0; 0.5) + f(1; 0.5) = 0.910 \quad (\text{3 sig. fig.})$$

**Exercise 3.4 (Nazi Bombs on London)** Feller discusses the probability and statistics of flying bomb hits in an area of southern London during II world war. The area in question was partitioned into  $24 \times 24 = 576$  small squares. The total number of hits was 537. There were 229 squares with 0 hits, 211 with 1 hit, 93 with 2 hits, 35 with 3 hits, 7 with 4 hits and 1 with 5 or more hits. Assuming the hits were purely random, use the Poisson approximation to find the probability that a particular square would have exactly  $k$  hits. Compute the expected number of squares that would have 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 or more hits and compare this with the observed results (Snell 9.2.14).

#### THINKING POISSON

The Poisson distribution has been described as a limiting version of the Binomial. In particular, Exercise 49 thinks of a Poisson distribution as a model for the number of events (cars) that occur in a period of time (1 minute) when in each little chunk of time one car arrives with constant probability, independently of the other time intervals. This leads to the general view of the Poisson distribution as a good model when:

*You count the number of events in a continuum when the events occur at constant rate, one at a time and independent of each other.*

#### DISCRETE RANDOM VARIABLE SUMMARY

Probability mass function

$$f(x) = P(X = x_i)$$

Distribution function

$$F(x) = \sum_{x_i \leq x} f(x_i)$$

#### Estimated Standard Errors

The estimated standard errors for  $\hat{\beta}_0$  and  $\hat{\beta}_1$ , or more precisely, the estimated standard errors conditional on the covariates, are given by the square-root of the diagonal terms of the variance-covariance matrix  $V(\hat{\beta} | X_{1:n})$  and substituting the estimate  $\hat{\sigma}$  for  $\sigma$ , as follows:

$$\hat{s}\hat{e}(\hat{\beta}_0) := \hat{s}\hat{e}(\hat{\beta}_0 | X_{1:n}) = \frac{\hat{\sigma}}{s_X \sqrt{n}} \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^n X_i^2}{n}} \quad (7.74)$$

$$\hat{s}\hat{e}(\hat{\beta}_1) := \hat{s}\hat{e}(\hat{\beta}_1 | X_{1:n}) = \frac{\hat{\sigma}}{s_X \sqrt{n}} \quad (7.75)$$

Thus under appropriate modeling assumptions in simple linear regression we have the following four properties.

#### Four Asymptotic Properties of the LSE

1. Asymptotic Consistency: As  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , the LSE, i.e.  $\hat{\beta}_0$  and  $\hat{\beta}_1$ , converges in probability to the parameters, i.e.,  $\beta_0, \beta_1$ , generating the data  $(Y_1, X_1), (Y_2, X_2), \dots, (Y_n, X_n)$  as summarised below.

$$\boxed{\hat{\beta}_0 \xrightarrow{P} \beta_0 \quad \text{and} \quad \hat{\beta}_1 \xrightarrow{P} \beta_1}$$

2. Asymptotic Normality: As  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , the LSE, i.e.  $\hat{\beta}_0$  and  $\hat{\beta}_1$ , converges in distribution to the parameters, i.e.,  $\beta_0, \beta_1$ , generating the data  $(Y_1, X_1), (Y_2, X_2), \dots, (Y_n, X_n)$  as summarised below.

$$\boxed{\frac{\hat{\beta}_0 - \beta_0}{\hat{s}\hat{e}(\hat{\beta}_0)} \xrightarrow{d} \text{Normal}(0, 1) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\hat{\beta}_1 - \beta_1}{\hat{s}\hat{e}(\hat{\beta}_1)} \xrightarrow{d} \text{Normal}(0, 1)}$$

3. Approximate  $1 - \alpha$  Confidence Interval: The  $1 - \alpha$  confidence interval for  $\beta_0$  and  $\beta_1$  that is obtained from the approximately normal distribution as  $n$  gets large is:

$$\boxed{\hat{\beta}_0 \pm z_{\alpha/2} \hat{s}\hat{e}(\hat{\beta}_0) \quad \text{and} \quad \hat{\beta}_1 \pm z_{\alpha/2} \hat{s}\hat{e}(\hat{\beta}_1)}$$

4. The Wald Test: Recall Wald test statistic for testing the null hypothesis with the null value  $\beta^{(0)}$ :

$$H_0 : \beta = \beta^{(0)} \quad \text{versus} \quad H_1 : \beta \neq \beta^{(0)} \quad \text{is} \quad W = \frac{(\hat{\beta} - \beta^{(0)})}{\hat{s}\hat{e}(\hat{\beta})}$$

Thus the Wald test for testing  $H_0 : \beta_1 = 0$  versus  $H_1 : \beta_1 \neq 0$  is to reject  $H_0$  if  $|W| > z_{\alpha/2}$  where  $W = \frac{\hat{\beta}_1}{\hat{s}\hat{e}(\hat{\beta}_1)}$ .



(a) Construct a row of cumulative probabilities for this table, that is, find the distribution function of  $X$ .

(b) Find the following probabilities.

- |                   |                    |                       |
|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| (i) $P(X \leq 5)$ | (iii) $P(X > 9)$   | (v) $P(4 < X \leq 9)$ |
| (ii) $P(X < 12)$  | (iv) $P(X \geq 9)$ | (vi) $P(4 < X < 11)$  |

**Ex. 3.9** — A box contains 4 right-handed and 6 left-handed screws. Two screws are drawn at random without replacement. Let  $X$  be the number of left-handed screws drawn. Find the probability mass function for  $X$ , and then calculate the following probabilities:

1.  $P(X \leq 1)$
2.  $P(X \geq 1)$
3.  $P(X > 1)$

**Ex. 3.10** — Suppose that a random variable  $X$  has geometric probability mass function,

$$f(x) = \frac{k}{2^x} \quad (x = 0, 1, 2, \dots).$$

1. Find the value of  $k$ .
2. What is  $P(X \geq 4)$ ?

**Ex. 3.11** — Four fair coins are tossed simultaneously. If we count the number of heads that appear then we have a binomial random variable,  $X = \text{the number of heads}$ .

1. Find the probability mass function of  $X$ .
2. Compute the probabilities of obtaining no heads, precisely 1 head, at least 1 head, not more than 3 heads.

**Ex. 3.12** — The distribution of blood types in a certain population is as follows:

| Blood type | Type O | Type A | Type B | Type AB |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|---------|
| Proportion | 0.45   | 0.40   | 0.10   | 0.05    |

A random sample of 15 blood donors is observed from this population. Find the probabilities of the following events.

1. Only one type  $AB$  donor is included.
2. At least three of the donors are type  $B$ .
3. More than ten of the donors are either type  $O$  or type  $A$ .
4. Fewer than five of the donors are not type  $A$ .

**Ex. 3.13** — If the probability of hitting a target in a single shot is 10% and 10 shots are fired independently, what is the probability that the target will be hit at least once?

**Ex. 3.14** — Suppose that a certain type of magnetic tape contains, on the average, 2 defects per 100 meters. What is the probability that a roll of tape 300 meters long will contain no defects?

**Ex. 3.15** — In 1910, E. Rutherford and H. Geiger showed experimentally that the number of alpha particles emitted per second in a radioactive process is a random variable  $X$  having a Poisson distribution. If the average number of particles emitted per second is 0.5, what is the probability of observing two or more particles during any given second?

The *least squares estimates* are the values  $\hat{\beta}_0$  and  $\hat{\beta}_1$  that minimise  $RSS$  and they are given by:

$$\hat{\beta}_1 = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n)(Y_i - \bar{Y}_n)}{\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n)^2}, \quad \hat{\beta}_0 = \bar{Y}_n - \hat{\beta}_1 \bar{X}_n, \quad \hat{\sigma}^2 = \left( \frac{1}{n-2} \right) \sum_{i=1}^n \hat{\epsilon}_i^2 \quad (7.64)$$

Geometric understanding of simple linear regression can be obtained from interactive animations<sup>4</sup>.

### 7.16.3 Least Squares and Maximum Likelihood

Suppose we add the assumption about the model's noise that

$$\epsilon_i | X_i \sim \text{Normal}(0, \sigma^2) \quad \text{i.e.,} \quad Y_i | X_i \sim \text{Normal}(\mu_i, \sigma^2), \quad \text{where} \quad \mu_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 X_i$$

Then, the likelihood function is:

$$\prod_{i=1}^n f_{X,Y}(X_i, Y_i) = \prod_{i=1}^n f_X(X_i) f_{Y|X}(Y_i | X_i) \quad (7.65)$$

$$= \prod_{i=1}^n f_X(X_i) \prod_{i=1}^n f_{Y|X}(Y_i | X_i) \quad (7.66)$$

$$=: L_{n,X} L_{n,Y|X} \quad (7.67)$$

where,  $L_{n,X} := \prod_{i=1}^n f_X(X_i)$  is the marginal likelihood of  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  that does not depend on the parameters  $(\beta_0, \beta_1, \sigma)$ , and  $L_{n,Y|X} := \prod_{i=1}^n f_{Y|X}(Y_i | X_i)$  is the \*conditional likelihood\* that does depend on the parameters. Therefore the likelihood function is given by the conditional likelihood:

$$L(\beta_0, \beta_1, \sigma) \propto \prod_{i=1}^n f(X_i, Y_i) \quad (7.68)$$

$$\propto L_{n,Y|X} = \prod_{i=1}^n f_{Y|X}(Y_i | X_i) \quad (7.69)$$

$$\propto \sigma^{-n} \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \sum_{i=1}^n (Y_i - \mu_i)^2 \right) \quad (7.70)$$

and the conditional log-likelihood is:

$$l(\beta_0, \beta_1, \sigma) = -n \log(\sigma) - \frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \sum_{i=1}^n (Y_i - \mu_i)^2$$

To find the MLE of  $(\beta_0, \beta_1)$  we need to maximise  $\ell(\beta_0, \beta_1, \sigma)$  for a given  $\sigma$ . From the above expression it is clear that maximising the log-likelihood is equivalent to minimising the *residual sum of squares* or *RSS* given by

<sup>4</sup>Explore at <http://setosa.io/ev/ordinary-least-squares-regression/>

in a metallurgical laboratory, is thought to have a Poisson distribution.

1. Write down the formula for the probability that a specimen has  $x$  defects, explaining the meanings of the symbols you use.

2. Simplify the formula in the case  $x = 0$ .

3. In a large homogeneous collection of specimens, 10% have one or more lacunae. Find (approximate) the percentage having exactly two.

**[HINT: Recall the emphasised sentence in THINKING POISSON and what the continuum on which the number of events occur is for the problem, and what could possibly go wrong in your imagination of the manufacturing process of the steel specimens (normally you need to melt and manipulate iron with other elements and cast them in moulds and this needs energy and raw materials of possibly varying quality and the machines used in the process could break down, etc.) to violate the Poisson assumption about the occurrence of pits on the surface of the specimens].**

If  $X$  is a measurement of a continuous quantity, such as,

### 3.4 Continuous Random Variables

The characteristics of continuous random variables are:

Finding  $P(X = 2)$ , for example, doesn't make sense because how can it ever be exactly 2.00000 ... with  $a < b$ , up to measure precision of the time-measuring clock rather than the discrete approach of trying to compute  $P(X = x)$ . It is more sensible to consider probabilities like  $P(X > x)$  or  $P(X < x)$  or  $P(a < X < b)$  minutes? When a student leaves,  $X$  will take on the value  $x$  and this  $x$  could be 2.1 minutes, many values. This is an example of a continuous random variable that takes one of (uncountably) infinitesimally room. This is a continuous scale of a given precision as opposed to discrete random variables that are based on counting.

then  $X$  is a continuous random variable. Continuous random variables are based on measurements in a continuous scale of a given precision, before the next student leaves the lecture room. This is the time, in minutes, to measure time.

- the volume of water (in cubic metres) that fell on the southern Alps of the South Island of New Zealand throughout last year.
- the vertical position (in micro metres above sea-level) since the release of a pollen grain at a location in Lake Rogen in Hässedalen, as it traces through Göta älvi-Klarälven, the longest river of Sweden before discharging in a delta into Vänern at Karlstad.
- the volume of rain that fell on the roof of this building over the past 365 days in litres.
- the distance you transported yourself to lectures today in metres.
- the maximum diameter in millimetres of a venus shell I picked up at New Brighton beach,

If  $X$  is a measurement of a continuous quantity, such as,

### 3.4 Continuous Random Variables

- The outcomes are measured, not counted.
- Geometrically, *the probability of an outcome is equal to an area under a mathematical curve.*
- Each individual value has zero probability of occurring. So we find the probability that the value is between two endpoints of an interval, or a set of intervals, including half-lines in  $\mathbb{R}$ .

**Definition 25 (probability density function (PDF))** A RV  $X$  with distribution function (DF) given by  $F$  is said to be **continuous** if there exists a piecewise-continuous function  $f$ , called the **probability density function (PDF)** of  $X$ , such that

$$F(x) = P(X \leq x) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(v) dv \quad (3.21)$$

where  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a non-negative function, i.e.,  $f(x) \geq 0$ . We write  $v$  because  $x$  is needed as the upper limit of the integral. Piecewise-continuity of  $f$  means  $f$  is continuous, perhaps possibly at the  $x$ -values where  $f$  is discontinuous between the continuous pieces (see <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Piecewise>).

The following hold for a continuous RV  $X$  with PDF  $f$ :

1. For any  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $P(X = x) = P(X \in [x, x]) = \int_x^x f(v)dv = 0$ .
2. By the fundamental theorem of calculus:

$$f(x) = \frac{d}{dx} F(x) =: F'(x), \quad (3.22)$$

for every  $x$  at which  $f(x)$  is continuous.

3. Consequentially, for any  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  with  $a < b$ ,

$$P(a < X < b) = P(a < X \leq b) = P(a \leq X \leq b) = P(a \leq X < b) \quad (3.23)$$

$$= F(b) - F(a) = \int_a^b f(v)dv. \quad (3.24)$$

4. And  $P(\Omega) = 1$  implies that:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx = P(-\infty < X < \infty) = 1.$$

The next set of examples illustrate notation and typical applications of the formulae above.

**Example 53** Consider the continuous random variable,  $X$ , whose probability density function is:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 3x^2 & 0 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- (a) Find the distribution function,  $F(x)$ .
- (b) Find  $P(\frac{1}{3} \leq X \leq \frac{2}{3})$ .

*Solution*

---

```
CoeffOfVarNormalBoot.m
n=100; Mustar=100; Sigmapstar=10; % sample size, true mean and standard deviation
rand('twister',67345);
x=arrayfun(@(u)(Sample1NormalByNewRap(u,Mustar,Sigmapstar^2)),rand(n,1)); % normal samples
Muhat=mean(x); Sigmahat=std(x); Psihat=Sigmahat/Muhat % MLE of Mustar, Sigmapstar and Psihat
Sehat = sqrt((1/Muhat^4)+(Sigmahat^2/(2*Muhat^2))/sqrt(n)) % standard error estimate
% 95% Confidence interval by Delta Method
ConfInt95DeltaMethod=[Psihat-1.96*Sehat, Psihat+1.96*Sehat] % 1.96 since 1-alpha=0.95
B = 1000; % B is number of bootstrap replications
% Step 1: draw n IID samples in Bootstrap World from Normal(Muhat,Sigmahat^2)
xBoot = arrayfun(@(u)(Sample1NormalByNewRap(u,Muhat,Sigmahat^2)),rand(n,B));
% Step 2: Compute Bootstrapped Statistic Psihat
PsihatBoot = std(xBoot) ./ mean(xBoot);
% 95% Normal based Confidence Interval
SehatBoot = std(PsihatBoot); % std of PsihatBoot
ConfInt95BootNormal = [Psihat-1.96*SehatBoot, Psihat+1.96*SehatBoot] % 1-alpha=0.95
% 95% Percentile based Confidence Interval
ConfInt95BootPercentile = ...
[qthSampleQuantile(0.025,sort(PsihatBoot)),qthSampleQuantile(0.975,sort(PsihatBoot))]
```

---

```
>> CoeffOfVarNormal
Muhat = 100.3117
Sigmahat = 10.9800
Psihat = 0.1095
Sehat = 0.0077
ConfInt95DeltaMethod = 0.0943 0.1246
ConfInt95BootNormal = 0.0943 0.1246
ConfInt95BootPercentile = 0.0946 0.1249
```

$$f(x) = F_r(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x < 0 \\ \cos x & 0 < x < \frac{\pi}{2} \\ 0 & x > \frac{\pi}{2} \end{cases}$$

(a) The probability density function,  $f(x)$  is given by

*Solution*

$$(b) \text{Find } P(X < \frac{\pi}{4})$$

(a) Find the probability density function,  $f(x)$ .

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x \leq 0 \\ \sin(x) & 0 < x < \frac{\pi}{2} \\ 1 & x \geq \frac{\pi}{2} \end{cases}$$

**Example 54** Consider the continuous random variable,  $X$ , whose distribution function is:

$$= \frac{27}{7}$$

$$P\left(\frac{3}{1} \leq X \leq \frac{3}{2}\right) = F\left(\frac{3}{2}\right) - F\left(\frac{3}{1}\right) = \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^3 - \left(\frac{3}{1}\right)^3 = \frac{27}{8}$$

(b)

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x < 0 \\ x^3 & 0 < x < 1 \\ 1 & x \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

Hence

$$F(x) = \int_x^1 3a^2 da = a^3 \Big|_x^1 = 1 - x^3$$

If  $x \geq 1$ , then

$$F(x) = \int_x^0 3a^2 da = a^3 \Big|_x^0 = 0$$

If  $0 < x < 1$ , then

$$F(x) = \int_x^1 3a^2 da = a^3 \Big|_x^1 = 1 - x^3$$

(a) First note that if  $x \leq 0$ , then

Let us apply the bootstrap method to the previous problem of estimating the standard error of the coefficient of variation from  $n = 100$  samples from Normal(100, 10<sup>2</sup>) RV. The confidence interval from bootstrap-based methods are similar to those from the Delta method.

where  $\hat{G}_n$  is the empirical DF of the bootstrap sample  $t_{n,1}, t_{n,2}, \dots, t_{n,B}$ , and  $G_{n-1}(y)$  is the

$$C_n = [\hat{G}_{n-1}(a/2), \hat{G}_{n-1}(1 - a/2)],$$

(b) The  $1 - \alpha$  percentile-based bootstrap confidence interval:

$$\hat{s}_{\text{boot}} = \sqrt{\hat{a}_{\text{boot}}} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B \left( \hat{t}_{n,b} - \bar{t}_{n,\text{boot}} \right)^2}$$

where the bootstrap-based error estimate is:

$$C_n = [T_n - z_{\alpha/2} \hat{s}_{\text{boot}}, T_n + z_{\alpha/2} \hat{s}_{\text{boot}}],$$

(a) The  $1 - \alpha$  normal-based bootstrap confidence interval is:

Step 4: We can estimate the bootstrap confidence intervals in several ways:

Step 3: Repeat Step 1 and Step 2  $B$  times, for some large  $B$ , say  $B \geq 1000$ , to get  $t_{n,1}, t_{n,2}, \dots, t_{n,B}$

Step 2: Compute  $t_n = T_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n))$

Step 1: Draw  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \sim F(\theta)$

Bootstrap Variance Estimation:

To simulate  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  from  $F(\theta)$ , we must have a simulation algorithm that allows us to draw IID samples from  $F(\theta)$ , for instance the inversion sampler. In summary, the algorithm for

Bootstrap World Data come from  $F(\theta_w) \iff X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \iff T_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)) = t_n$

For example, if  $T_n = \underline{X}_n$ , the sample mean, then in Step 1,  $V_{\theta^*}(T_n) = n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x}_n)$  is the sample variance. Thus, in this case, Step 1 is enough. However, when the statistic  $T_n$  is more complicated, say  $T_n = \bar{X}_n$ , the sample mean, then we may not be able to write down a simple expression for  $V_{\theta^*}(T_n)$  and may need Step 2 of the bootstrap.

Step 2: Approximate  $V_{\theta^*}(T_n)$  using simulated data from the "Bootstrap World."

Step 1: Estimate  $V_{\theta^*}(T_n)$  with  $V_{\theta^*}(T_n)$ , where  $\theta^*$  is an estimate of  $\theta^*$  based on maximum likelihood or the method of moments.

The parametric bootstrap concept has the following two basic steps:

That is, our data come from a parametric distribution  $F(x; \theta^*)$  and we want to know the variance of our statistic  $T_n$ , i.e.  $V_{\theta^*}(T_n)$ . We saw earlier is that our statistic of interest  $T_n = T_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n))$  is a function of the data:

$$X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} F(x; \theta^*).$$

The only difference in the parametric bootstrap as opposed to the non-parametric bootstrap we saw earlier is that our statistic of interest  $T_n = T_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n))$  is a function of the data:

(b)

$$P\left(X > \frac{\pi}{4}\right) = 1 - P\left(X \leq \frac{\pi}{4}\right) = 1 - F\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = 1 - \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = 0.293 \text{ (3 sig. fig.)}$$

\* You may stop at  $1 - \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$  for full credit in the exam.

Note:  $f(x)$  is not defined at  $x = 0$  as  $F(x)$  is not differentiable at  $x = 0$ . There is a “kink” in the distribution function at  $x = 0$  causing this problem. It is standard to define  $f(0) = 0$  in such situations, as  $f(x) = 0$  for  $x < 0$ . This choice is arbitrary but it simplifies things and makes no difference to the calculated probability.

Now that we have warmed-up with two examples of continuous RVs, let us define the most elementary continuous RV next.

### 3.4.1 An Elementary Continuous Random Variable

An elementary and fundamental example of a continuous RV is the  $\text{Uniform}(0, 1)$  RV of Model 7. It forms the foundation for all non-uniform random variate generation and simulation as we will see in Chapter 4. In fact, it is appropriate to call this the fundamental model since every other probability model can be obtained from this one!

**Model 7 (The Fundamental Model)** The probability density function (PDF) of the fundamental model or the  $\text{Uniform}(0, 1)$  RV is

$$f(x) = \mathbb{1}_{[0,1]}(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (3.25)$$

and its distribution function (DF) or cumulative distribution function (CDF) is:

$$F(x) := \int_{-\infty}^x f(y) dy = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x < 0, \\ x & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1, \\ 1 & \text{if } x > 1 \end{cases} \quad (3.26)$$

Note that the DF is the identity map in  $[0, 1]$ . The PDF and DF are depicted in Figure 3.11.

Let us draw the PDF and DF for  $\text{Uniform}(0, 1)$  RV next by hand.

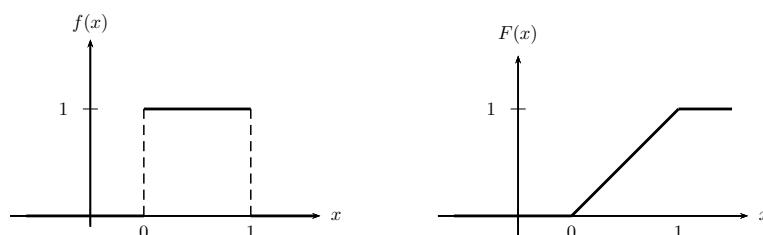
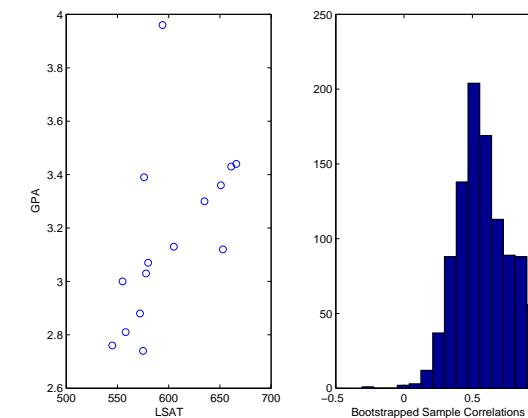


Figure 3.10:  $f(x)$  and  $F(x)$  of the  $\text{Uniform}(0, 1)$  random variable  $X$ .

Figure 7.17: Data from Bradley Efron's LSAT and GPA scores for fifteen individuals (left). The confidence interval of the sample correlation, the plug-in estimate of the population correlation, is obtained from the sample correlation of one thousand bootstrapped data sets (right).



```

CCB=corrcoef(BootstrappedLSAT,BootstrappedGPA);
BootstrappedCCs(b)=CCB(1,2); % sample correlation of bootstrapped data
end
%plot the histogram of Bootstrapped Sample Correlations with 15 bins
subplot(1,2,2);hist(BootstrappedCCs,15); xlabel('Bootstrapped Sample Correlations')

% 95% Normal based Confidence Interval
SehatBoot = std(BootstrappedCCs); % std of BootstrappedMedians
% 95% C.I. for median from Normal approximation
ConfInt95BootNormal = [SampleCorrelation-1.96*SehatBoot, SampleCorrelation+1.96*SehatBoot]
% 95% Percentile based Confidence Interval
ConfInt95BootPercentile = ...
[qthSampleQuantile(0.025,sort(BootstrappedCCs)),...
qthSampleQuantile(0.975,sort(BootstrappedCCs))]

```

We get the following output when we call the script file.

```

>> LSATGPACorrBootstrap
SampleCorrelation = 0.5459
ConfInt95BootNormal = 0.1770 0.9148
ConfInt95BootPercentile = 0.2346 0.9296

```

### 7.15.2 Parametric Bootstrap for Confidence Sets

The **bootstrap** may also be employed for estimating standard errors and confidence sets of statistics, such as estimators, even in a parametric setting. This is much easier than the variance calculation based on Fisher Information and/or the Delta method.

Solution: Therefore,

$$0 \lesssim x \text{ if } x = 1 - e^{-x} = \int_x^0 ap_{a-} \partial - = ap_{a-} \int_x^0 = (x)F$$

(a)

(a) Find the distribution function.  
 (b) Find the probabilities,  $P\left(\frac{1}{4} \leq X \leq 2\right)$  and  $P\left(-\frac{2}{3} \leq X \leq \frac{2}{3}\right)$ .  
 (c) Find  $x$  such that  $P(X \leq x) = 0.95$ .

**Example 55** Let  $X$  have density function  $f(x) = e^{-x}$ , if  $x \geq 0$ , and zero otherwise.

Let us warm-up with an example

### 3.4.2 Some Common Continuous Random Variables

\*\*Universality of the fundamental model

— The multidimensional model has limitations in that it may copy features of test sets within itself [1]. You can see this since this  $DF_F$  is the identity function on  $[0, 1]$ , or equivalently how the dyadic binary tree is identical below a given node in the tree no matter which node in the tree you choose.

— The fundamental model is equivalent to infinite tosses of a fair coin (see using binary expansion of a real number), and the following is an immediate consequence, i.e., the sequence of partial sums ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ) terms, and the sum of any  $x \in (0, 1)$  if you want as suggested in optional Exercise 2.1 on intuiting a most primitive algorithm

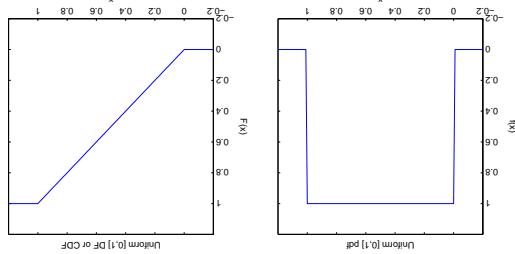


Figure 3.11: A conventional but mathematically imprecise Matlab plot from a polyline interpolation for the PDF and CDF of the Uniform(0,1) continuous RV  $X$ .

16

$$\frac{\zeta(uZ - {}^t Z)^{1-i} u \zeta(uA - {}^t A)^{1-i} u \zeta}{(uZ - {}^t Z)(uA - {}^t A)^{1-i} u \zeta} = {}^u \Theta$$

The plug-in estimate of the population correlation  $\theta^*$  is the sample correlation:

$$\frac{(z)_\lambda Fp_\lambda((Z)\mathbb{E} - z) \int (\mathfrak{h})_x Fp_x((\Lambda)\mathbb{E} - \mathfrak{h}) \int \bigwedge}{(z, \mathfrak{h})_x Fp_x((Z)\mathbb{E} - z)((\Lambda)\mathbb{E} - \mathfrak{h}) \int \int} = {}_{*\theta}$$

Labwork 234 (Confidence interval for correlation) Here is a classical data set used by Brealey (the inventor of bootstrap) to illustrate the method. The data are LSAT (Law School Ad-mission Test in the U.S.A.) scores and GPA of fifteen individuals.

Thus, we have bivariate data of the form  $(Y_i, Z_i)$ , where  $Y_i = \text{LSAT}_i$  and  $Z_i = \text{GPA}_i$ . For example,

the first individual had an LSAT score of  $y_1 = 576$  and a GPA of  $z_1 = 3.39$  while the fifteenth individual had an LSAT score of  $y_{15} = 594$  and a GPA of  $z_{15} = 3.99$ . We suppose that the bivariate data  $(Y_i, Z_i)$ ,  $i \in F^*$ , such that  $F^* \in \{\text{all bivariate } DFs\}$ . This is a bivariate non-parametric experiment. The bivariate data are plotted in Figure .

The law school is interested in the correlation between the GPA and LSAT scores:

```

>>> WebLogDataProc % Load in the data
>>> Mediansat = Median(WebLogSeconds20071001035730) % Plug-in estimate of median
>>> Mediansat = 37416
>>> % Store the Length of data array
>>> K = 56486
>>> % Length(WebLogSeconds20071001035730)
>>> B = 1000 % Number of Bootstraps replications
>>> % Size(BootstrappedDataset) % dimension of the BootstrappedDataset
>>> ans = 56485 1000
>>> % BootstrappedDataset = WebLogSeconds20071001035730([ceil(k*xrand(k,B))]);
>>> % BootstrappedDataset = size(BootstrappedDataset) % dimensions of the BootstrappedDataset
>>> % Get the statistics in Bootstrap world
>>> % 95% Normal based confidence interval
>>> % get the statistics in Bootstrap world
>>> % Set of BooststrapMedians
>>> % Set of MedianApproximation
>>> % 95% CI for Median from MedianApproximation
>>> ConfidenceBootNormal = [Mediansat-1.96*SehatBoot, Mediansat+1.96*SehatBoot]
>>> ConfidenceBootNormal = 3722 3750
>>> % 95% Percentile based Confidence Interval
>>> ConfidenceBootNormal = sort(BootsrapMedians);
>>> qbetaSampleQuantiles(0.975,sort(BootsrapMedians));
>>> qbetaSampleQuantiles(0.025,sort(BootsrapMedians));
>>> ConfidenceBootNormal = ...
>>> ConfidenceBootNormal = 3723 3754
>>> ConfidenceBootNormal = 3729 37554

```

(b)

$$P\left(\frac{1}{4} \leq X \leq 2\right) = F(2) - F\left(\frac{1}{4}\right) = 0.634 \text{ (3 sig. fig.)}$$

$$P\left(-\frac{1}{2} \leq X \leq \frac{1}{2}\right) = F\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) - F\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) = 0.394 \text{ (3 sig. fig.)}$$

(c)

$$P(X \leq x) = F(x) = 1 - e^{-x} = 0.95$$

Therefore,

$$x = -\log(1 - 0.95) = 3.00 \text{ (3 sig. fig.)}.$$

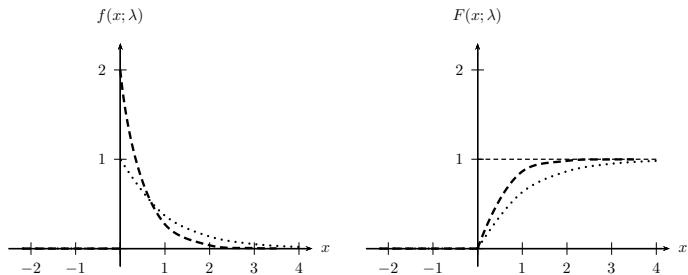


Figure 3.12:  $f(x; \lambda)$  and  $F(x; \lambda)$  of an exponential random variable where  $\lambda = 1$  (dotted) and  $\lambda = 2$  (dashed).

The previous example is a special case of the following parametric family of random variables.

**Model 8 (Exponential( $\lambda$ ))** For a given  $\lambda > 0$ , an Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RV has the following PDF  $f$  and DF  $F$  and its complementary distribution function denoted by  $\bar{F}(x; \lambda) := P(X > x) = 1 - F(x; \lambda)$ :

$$f(x; \lambda) = \mathbf{1}_{(0, \infty)} \lambda e^{-\lambda x} = \begin{cases} \lambda \exp(-\lambda x) & x > 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}, \quad (3.27)$$

$$F(x; \lambda) = 1 - e^{-\lambda x}, \quad (3.28)$$

$$\bar{F}(x; \lambda) = e^{-\lambda x}. \quad (3.29)$$

The last two equations are derived from definitions as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} F(x; \lambda) &= \int_{-\infty}^x \mathbf{1}_{(0, \infty)} \lambda e^{-\lambda v} dv = \lambda \int_0^x e^{-\lambda v} dv = \lambda \left( -\frac{1}{\lambda} e^{-\lambda v} \right)_0^x = \left( -e^{-\lambda v} \right)_0^x \\ &= -e^{-\lambda x} - (-e^0) = -e^{-\lambda x} - (-1/e^0) = -e^{-\lambda x} - (-1/1) = -e^{-\lambda x} - (-1) = -e^{-\lambda x} + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$P(X > x) = 1 - P(X \leq x) = 1 - F(x; \lambda) = 1 - \left( 1 - e^{-\lambda x} \right) = e^{-\lambda x}$$

This distribution is unique because of its property of **memorylessness**, i.e.,  $P(X > x+y | X > y) = e^{-\lambda x}$ , and plays a fundamental role in modeling continuous time processes, such as time between occurrence of events of interest, as we will see in the sequel.

(b) The  $1 - \alpha$  percentile-based bootstrap confidence interval is:

$$C_n = [\widehat{G}_n^{* -1}(\alpha/2), \widehat{G}_n^{* -1}(1 - \alpha/2)],$$

where  $\widehat{G}_n^{*}$  is the empirical DF of the bootstrapped  $t_{n,1}^*, t_{n,2}^*, \dots, t_{n,B}^*$  and  $\widehat{G}_n^{* -1}(q)$  is the  $q^{\text{th}}$  sample quantile (3.83) of  $t_{n,1}^*, t_{n,2}^*, \dots, t_{n,B}^*$ .

### Labwork 232 (Confidence Interval for Median Estimate of Inter Earth Quake Times)

Let us find the 95% Normal-based bootstrap confidence interval as well as the 95% percentile-based bootstrap confidence interval for our plug-in estimate of the median of inter earth quake times from Labwork 231 using the following script:

```
%>> NZSIEQTimesMedianBootstrap.m
%% The columns in earthquakes.csv file have the following headings
%% CUSP_ID, LAT, LONG, NZMGE, NZMGN, ORI_YEAR, ORI_MONTH, ORI_DAY, ORI_MINUTE, ORI_SECOND, MAG, DEPTH
EQ=dlmread('earthquakes.csv',','); % load the data in the matrix EQ
% Read help datenum -- converts time stamps into numbers in units of days
MaxD=max(datenum(EQ(:,6:11))); % maximum datenum
MinD=min(datenum(EQ(:,6:11))); % minimum datenum
% get an array of sorted time stamps of EQ events starting at 0
Times=sort(datenum(EQ(:,6:11))-MinD);
TimeDiff=diff(Times); % inter-EQ times = times between successive EQ events
n=length(TimeDiff) % sample size
Medianhat=median(TimeDiff)*24*60 % plug-in estimate of median in minutes
B= 1000 % Number of Bootstrap replications
% REPEAT B times: PROCEDURE of sampling n indices uniformly from 1,...,n with replacement
BootstrappedDataSet = TimeDiff([ceil(n*rand(n,B))]);
size(BootstrappedDataSet) % dimension of the BootstrappedDataSet
BootstrappedMedians=median(BootstrappedDataSet)*24*60; % get the statistic in Bootstrap world
% 95% Normal based Confidence Interval
SehatBoot = std(BootstrappedMedians); % std of BootstrappedMedians
% 95% C.I. for median from Normal approximation
ConfInt95BootNormal = [Medianhat-1.96*SehatBoot, Medianhat+1.96*SehatBoot]
% 95% Percentile based Confidence Interval
ConfInt95BootPercentile = ...
    [qthSampleQuantile(0.025,sort(BootstrappedMedians)),...
     qthSampleQuantile(0.975,sort(BootstrappedMedians))]
```

We get the following output when we call the script file.

```
>> NZSIEQTimesMedianBootstrap
n = 6127
Medianhat = 25.5092
B = 1000
ans = 6127 1000
ConfInt95BootNormal = 24.4383 26.5800
ConfInt95BootPercentile = 24.4057 26.4742
```

**Labwork 233 (Confidence Interval for Median Estimate of Web Login Data)** Find the 95% Normal-based bootstrap confidence interval as well as the 95% percentile-based bootstrap confidence interval for our plug-in estimate of the median for each of the data arrays:

WebLogSeconds20071001035730 and WebLogSeconds20071002035730 .

Once again, the arrays can be loaded into memory by following the commands in the first 13 lines of the script file WebLogDataProc.m of Section 242. Produce four intervals (two for each data-set). Do the confidence intervals for the medians for the two days intersect?

$$\begin{aligned} P(X < x) &= \\ P(Y < x) &= \frac{e^{-\lambda x}}{\lambda} = \frac{e^{-\lambda x}}{\lambda + x} = \frac{(Y < X)}{P(X)} = \frac{(y < X)}{P(X)} = \frac{(y < X) \cup (y < x)}{P(X)} = \end{aligned}$$

Due to redundancy, i.e.,  $X < x \cup Y < x \subseteq X < y \cup Y < y \subseteq X < x$ , so

$$P(X < x \cup Y < x) = P(X < y \cup Y < y) = P(X < y) = \frac{P(X < y)}{P(X < x)}$$

**Proof:** By the definition of conditional probability,

$$P(X < x \mid Y < y) = P(X < x) \quad (3.30)$$

the property of memorylessness, i.e.,

**Proposition 26** (Memorylessness of Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RV) If  $X \sim \text{Exponential}(\lambda)$ , then  $X$  has

$$P(0 \leq X < 5) = F\left(\frac{5}{\lambda}\right) - F\left(\frac{0}{\lambda}\right) = \frac{e^{-\frac{5}{\lambda}}}{1} - \frac{e^{-\frac{0}{\lambda}}}{1} = 1 - e^{-\frac{5}{\lambda}} \approx 0.07996$$

Note: We could use the distribution function directly:

In exam you can stop at the expression  $-e^{-\frac{5}{\lambda}} + 1$  for full credit. You may need a calculator for the last step (with answer 0.07996).

$$P(0 \leq X < 5) = \int_0^5 \frac{1}{\lambda} e^{-\frac{x}{\lambda}} dx = -e^{-\frac{x}{\lambda}} \Big|_0^5 = -e^{-\frac{5}{\lambda}} + 1 \approx 0.07996.$$

the desired probability is

The waiting time in minutes is simply given by the Exponential( $\lambda = 1/60$ ) random variable. Thus,

*Solution:*

**Example 56** (On a dark desert highway) At a certain location on a dark desert highway, the time in minutes between arrival of cars that exceed the speed limit is an Exponential( $\lambda = 1/60$ ) random variable. If you just saw a car that exceeded the speed limit then what is the probability of waiting less than 5 minutes before seeing another car that will exceed the speed limit?

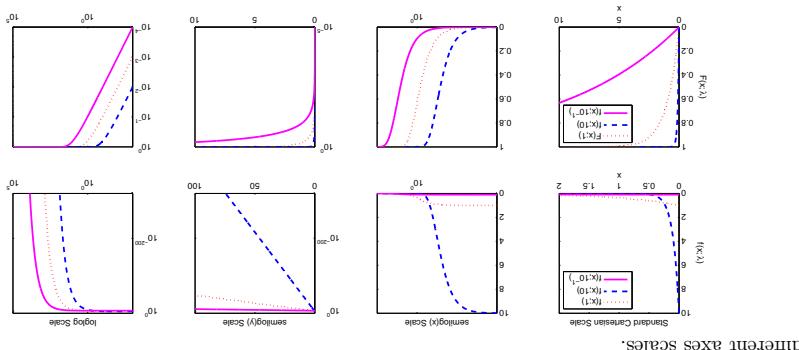


Figure 3.13: Density and distribution functions of Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RVs, for  $\lambda = 1, 10, 10^{-1}$ , in four different axes scales.

$$S_{\text{boot}} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B t_{n,q}^b - \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B t_{n,q}^b}$$

where the bootstrap-based standard error estimate is:

$$C_n = [T_n - z_{\alpha/2} S_{\text{boot}}, T_n + z_{\alpha/2} S_{\text{boot}}],$$

(a) The 1 -  $\alpha$  Normal-based bootstrap confidence interval is:

Step 4: Several ways of estimating the bootstrap confidence intervals are possible:

Step 3: Repeat Step 1 and Step 2  $B$  times, for some large  $B$ , say  $B > 1000$ , to get  $t_{n,1}, t_{n,2}, \dots, t_{n,B}$

Step 2: Compute  $t_n = T_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n))$

Step 1: Draw  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \sim F_n$

In summary, the algorithm for Bootstrap Variance Estimation is:

Observe that drawing an observation from the ECDF  $F_n$  is equivalent to drawing one point at random from the original data (think of the indices  $[n] = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  of the original data  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  being drawn according to the equi-probable de Molière ( $1/n, 1/n, \dots, 1/n$ ) RV uniform from  $[n]$ ). Thus, to simulate  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  from  $F_n$ , it is enough to draw  $n$  observations with replacement from the original data ( $t_n$  is equivalent to drawing one point at the last step (with answer 0.07996)).

Real World Data come from  $F^*$   $\iff X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \iff T_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)) = t_n$

Bootstrap World Data come from  $F_n$   $\iff X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \iff T_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)) = t_n$

For example, if  $T_n = X_n$ , in Step 1,  $V_{F_n}(T_n) = s_n^2/n$ , where  $s_n^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2$  is the sample variance. In this case, Step 1 is simple mean. In this case, Step 1 is more complicated (e.g.,  $T_n = X_n = F_{[1-0.5]}$ ), the sample median, then we may not be able to find a simple expression for  $V_{F_n}(T_n)$  and may need Step 2 of the bootstrap.

If our statistic  $T_n$  is one with an analytically unknown variance, then we can use the bootstrap to estimate it. The bootstrap idea has the following two basic steps:

Suppose we want to know its variance  $V_{F_n}(T_n)$ , which clearly depends on the fixed and possibly unknown DF  $F^*$ .

Let  $T_n = T_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n))$  be a statistic, i.e., any function of the data  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$   $\sim F^*$ . The bootstrap is a statistical method for estimating standard errors and confidence sets of statistics, such as estimators.

### 7.15.1 Non-parametric Bootstrap for Confidence Sets

The bootstrap is a statistical method for estimating standard errors and confidence sets of statistics, such as estimators.

**Exercise 3.17 (Memoryless Server Times)** Suppose customers in a Queue are served one at a time by a server whose service time is an independent and identical  $\text{Exponential}(\lambda)$  RV, with  $\lambda = 1/10$ . The server is immediately free to serve the next customer once the current customer being served is done. Suppose you just arrive and are the first in the queue and know that the server is busy serving another customer. You do not know how long the customer has already been in service. What is the probability that the server will be free after 2 units of time?

Let us introduce parameters for the lower and upper bounds of the interval upon which a continuous RV is uniformly distributed using the following probability model.

**Model 9 (Uniform( $\theta_1, \theta_2$ ))** Given two real parameters  $\theta_1, \theta_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ , such that  $\theta_1 < \theta_2$ , the PDF of the  $\text{Uniform}(\theta_1, \theta_2)$  RV  $X$  is:

$$f(x; \theta_1, \theta_2) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\theta_2 - \theta_1} & \text{if } \theta_1 \leq x \leq \theta_2, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (3.31)$$

and its DF given by  $F(x; \theta_1, \theta_2) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(y; \theta_1, \theta_2) dy$  is:

$$F(x; \theta_1, \theta_2) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x < \theta_1 \\ \frac{x - \theta_1}{\theta_2 - \theta_1} & \text{if } \theta_1 \leq x \leq \theta_2, \\ 1 & \text{if } x > \theta_2 \end{cases} \quad (3.32)$$

Recall that we emphasise the dependence of the probabilities on the two parameters  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  by specifying them following the semicolon in the argument for  $f$  and  $F$ .

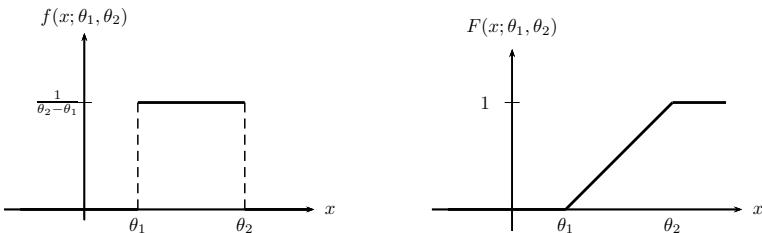


Figure 3.14:  $f(x)$  and  $F(x)$  of the  $\text{Uniform}(\theta_1, \theta_2)$  random variable  $X$ .

**Exercise 3.18** Consider a random variable with a probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} k & \text{if } 2 \leq x \leq 6, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- (a) Find the value of  $k$ .
- (b) Sketch the graphs of  $f(x)$  and  $F(x)$ .

**Labwork 230 (Plug-in Estimate for Median of Web Login Data)** Compute the plug-in estimates for the median for each of the data arrays:

WebLogSeconds20071001035730 and WebLogSeconds20071002035730

that can be loaded into memory by following the commands in the first 13 lines of the script file WebLogDataProc.m of Data 242.

**Labwork 231 (Plug-in Estimates of Times Between Earth Quakes)** Compute the plug-in estimates for the median and mean time in minutes between earth quakes in NZ using the data in earthquakes.csv.

```
%>> NZSIEQTimesPlugInEstimates
%% The columns in earthquakes.csv file have the following headings
%% CUSP_ID, LAT, LONG, NZMGE, ORI_YEAR, ORI_MONTH, ORI_DAY, ORI_HOUR, ORI_MINUTE, ORI_SECOND, MAG, DEPTH
EQ=dlmread('earthquakes.csv', ','); % load the data in the matrix EQ
% Read help datenum -- converts time stamps into numbers in units of days
MaxD=max(datenum(EQ(:,6:11))); % maximum datenum
MinD=min(datenum(EQ(:,6:11))); % minimum datenum
% get an array of sorted time stamps of EQ events starting at 0
Times=sort(datenum(EQ(:,6:11))-MinD);
TimeDiff=diff(Times); % inter-EQ times = times between successive EQ events
n=length(TimeDiff); % sample size
PlugInMedianEstimate=median(TimeDiff) % plug-in estimate of median
PlugInMedianEstimateMinutes=PlugInMedianEstimate*24*60 % median estimate in minutes
PlugInMeanEstimate=mean(TimeDiff) % plug-in estimate of mean
PlugInMeanEstimateMinutes=PlugInMeanEstimate*24*60 % mean estimate in minutes
```

```
>> NZSIEQTimesPlugInEstimates
PlugInMedianEstimate = 0.0177
PlugInMedianEstimateMinutes = 25.5092
PlugInMeanEstimate = 0.0349
PlugInMeanEstimateMinutes = 50.2278
```

Note that any statistical functional can be estimated using the plug-in estimator. However, to produce a  $1 - \alpha$  confidence set for the plug-in point estimate, we need bootstrap methods. The subject of next chapter.

**Model 10** (Normal(0, 1) or standard normal or Gaussian RV) A continuous random variable  $Z$  is called **standard normal** or **Gaussian RV**. A distribution is

$$\phi(z) = \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{z} \exp\left(-\frac{z^2}{2}\right). \quad (3.33)$$

The standard normal distribution is the most important continuous probability distribution. It was first described by De Moivre in 1733 and subsequently by C. F. Gauss (1777 - 1855). Many random variables have a normal distribution, or they are approximately normal, or can be transformed into normal random variables in a relatively simple fashion. Furthermore, the normal distribution is a useful approximation of more complicated distributions.

**Classwork 58** Note that the curve of  $\phi(z)$  is  $S$ -shaped, increasing in a strictly monotone way from 0 at  $-\infty$  to 1 at  $\infty$ , and intersects the vertical axis at  $1/2$ . Draw this by hand too.

And use MATLAB's `erf` function to get  $\phi(z)$  numerically instead of looking up the Table.

$$\Phi(z) = \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{erf}\left(\frac{z}{\sqrt{2}}\right) + \frac{1}{2} \quad (3.35)$$

We can express  $\Phi(z)$  in terms of the error function (`erf`) as follows:

**Remark 27** The integral for  $\phi(z)$  has no closed form expression and cannot be evaluated exactly by standard methods of calculus, but its values can be obtained numerically and tabulated. Values of  $\Phi(z)$  are tabulated in the "Standard Normal Distribution Function Table" in Sec. 6.6.

$$\Phi(z) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_z^{-\infty} e^{-y^2/2} dy. \quad (3.34)$$

The distribution function of  $Z$  is given by

$$\text{Do it step by step: } z^2, -z^2, -z^2/2, \exp(-z^2/2), \phi(z) = \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{z^2} \exp(-z^2/2) \text{ now!}$$

**Classwork 57** From the above exercise in calculus let us draw the graph of  $\phi$  by hand now!

at the origin over the real line. Thus,  $\phi$  has a global maximum at 0, it is concave down if  $z \in (-1, 1)$  and concave up if  $z \in (-\infty, -1) \cup (1, \infty)$ . This shows that the graph of  $\phi$  is shaped like a smooth symmetric bell centred

$$\frac{d\phi}{dz} = -\frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{z^2} z \exp\left(-\frac{z^2}{2}\right) = -z\phi(z), \quad \frac{d^2\phi}{dz^2} = \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{z^2} (z^2 - 1)\exp\left(-\frac{z^2}{2}\right) = (z^2 - 1)\phi(z).$$

An exercise in calculus yields the first two derivatives of  $\phi$  as follows:

$$\phi(z) = \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{z} \exp\left(-\frac{z^2}{2}\right).$$

Some specific examples of statistical linear functions we have already seen include:

$$T(F_n) = \int x dF_n(x).$$

1. The mean of  $\text{RV } X \sim F$  is a function of the DF  $F$ :

$$T(F) = E(X) = \int x dF(x).$$

4. The  $q$ th quantile of  $\text{RV } X \sim F$ :

$$T(F) = F_{-1}(q) \text{ where } q \in [0, 1].$$

6. The median or the second quartile or the  $0.50$ th quantile of the RV  $X \sim F$ :

$$T(F) = F_{-1}(0.25).$$

7. The third quartile or the  $0.75$ th quantile of the RV  $X \sim F$ :

$$T(F) = F_{-1}(0.75).$$

just do it!

**Example 59** Find the probabilities, using normal tables, that a random variable having the standard normal distribution will take on a value:



$$P(Z < 1.72) = \Phi(1.72) = 0.9573$$

- (b) First note that  $P(Z < 0.88) = 0.8106$ , so that

$$\begin{aligned}
 P(Z < -0.88) &= P(Z > 0.88) \\
 &= 1 - P(Z < 0.88) \\
 &= 1 - \Phi(0.88) \\
 &= 1 - 0.8106 = 0.1894
 \end{aligned}$$

$$(c) \ P(1.30 < Z < 1.75) = \Phi(1.75) - \Phi(1.30) = 0.9599 - 0.9032 = 0.0567$$

- (d)

$$\begin{aligned}
 P(-0.25 < Z < 0.45) &= P(Z < 0.45) - P(Z < -0.25) \\
 &= P(Z < 0.45) - (1 - P(Z < 0.25)) \\
 &= \Phi(0.45) - (1 - \Phi(0.25)) \\
 &= (0.6736) - (1 - 0.5987) \\
 &= 0.2723
 \end{aligned}$$

## CONTINUOUS RANDOM VARIABLES: NOTATION

$f(x)$ : Probability density function (PDF)

- $f(x) \geq 0$
  - Areas underneath  $f(x)$  measure probabilities

$F(x)$ : Distribution function (DF)

- $0 \leq F(x) \leq 1$
  - $F(x) = P(X \leq x)$  is a probability
  - $F'(x) = f(x)$  for every  $x$  where  $f(x)$  is continuous
  - $F(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(v)dv$

$$\bullet \quad P(a < X \leq b) = F(b) - F(a) = \int_a^b f(v)dv$$

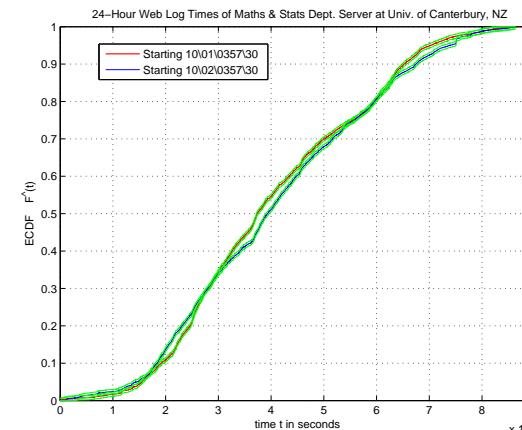
```

%% Non-parametric Estimation X_1,X_2,...,X_132 ~ IID F
[x1 y1] = ECDF(sampleTimes,0,0,10); stairs(x1,y1,'k'); % plot the ECDF
% get the 5% non-parametric confidence bands
Alpha=0.05; % set alpha to 5% for instance
Epsn = sqrt((1/(2*n))*log(2/Alpha)); % epsilon_n for the confidence band
stairs(x1,max(y1-Epsn,zeros(1,length(y1))), 'r--'); % non-parametric 95% lower confidence band
stairs(x1,min(y1+Epsn,ones(1,length(y1))), 'b--'); % non-parametric 95% upper confidence band
axis([0 40 -0.1 1.05]);
legend('Param. Point Estim.', 'Param. 95% Lower Conf. band', 'Param. 95% Upper Conf. Band',...
    'Non-Param. Point Estim.', 'Non-Param. 95% Lower Conf. band', 'Non-Param. 95% Upper Conf. Band')

```

**Example 229** First take a look at Data 242 to understand how the web login times to our Maths & Stats Department's web server (or requests to our WWW server) were generated. Figure 7.16 shows the login times in units of seconds over a 24 hour period starting at 0357 hours and 30 seconds (just before 4:00AM) on October 1st, 2007 (red line) and on October 2nd, 2007 (magenta). If we assume

Figure 7.16: The empirical DFs  $\hat{F}_{n_1}^{(1)}$  with  $n_1 = 56485$ , for the web log times starting October 1, and  $\hat{F}_{n_2}^{(2)}$  with  $n_2 = 53966$ , for the web log times starting October 2. Their 95% confidence bands are indicated by the green.



that some fixed and unknown DF  $F^{(1)}$  specifies the distribution of login times for October 1st data and another DF  $F^{(2)}$  for October 2nd data, then the non-parametric point estimates of  $F^{(1)}$  and  $F^{(2)}$  are simply the empirical DFs  $\widehat{F}_{n_1}^{(1)}$  with  $n_1 = 56485$  and  $\widehat{F}_{n_2}^{(2)}$  with  $n_2 = 53966$ , respectively, as depicted in Figure 7.16. See the script of `WebLogDataProc.m` in Data 242 to appreciate how the ECDF plots in Figure 7.16 were made.

## 7.14 Plug-in Estimators of Statistical Functionals

Recall from Chapter 3.14 that a **statistical functional** is simply any function of the DF  $F$ . For example, the median  $T(F) = F^{[-1]}(1/2)$  is a statistical functional. Thus,  $T(F) : \{\text{All DFs}\} \rightarrow \mathbb{T}$ , being a map or function from the space of DFs to its range  $\mathbb{T}$ , is a functional. The idea behind the

### 3.5 Exercises in Continuous Random Variables

**Ex. 3.19** — Consider the probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} h & -4 \leq x \leq 4 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Suppose that  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t) dt = 1$ . Find the value of  $h$ .

1. Find the distribution function  $F$ .  
 2. Find the probability density function  $f$ .  
 3. Graph  $f$  and  $F$ .

**Ex. 3.20** — Assume that a new light bulb will burn out at time  $t$  hours according to the probability density function given by

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} Ae^{-\lambda t} & \text{if } t > 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

In this context,  $A$  is often called the failure rate of the bulb.

(a) Assume that  $\lambda = 0.01$ , and find the probability that the bulb will not burn out before  $\tau$  hours.

This  $\tau$ -specific probability is often called the reliability of the bulb.  
 Hint: Use the distribution function for an Exponential( $\lambda$ ) random variable (recall,  $F(\tau; \lambda) = \int_{-\infty}^{\tau} f(t) dt$ ).

(b) For what value of  $\tau$  is the reliability of the bulb exactly  $\frac{1}{2}$ ?

**Ex. 3.21** — Let the random variable  $X$  be the time after which certain ball bearings wear out,

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} ke^{-x} & 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Note:  $X$  is measured in years.

1. Find  $k$ .  
 2. Find the probability that a bearing will last at least 1 year.

Suppose we know the distribution of a random variable  $X$ . How do we find the distribution of a transformation of  $X$ , say  $g(X)$ ? Before we answer this question let us ask a motivational question.

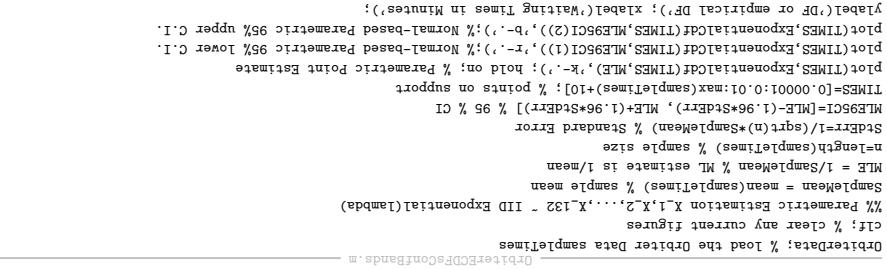
Why are we interested in functions of random variables?

**Ex. 6.60** Consider a simple financial example where an individual sells  $X$  items per day, the profit per item is \$5 and the overhead costs are \$500 per day. The original random variable is  $X$ , but the random variable  $Y$  which gives the daily profit is of more interest, where

$$Y = 5X - 500.$$

**Example 6.1** In a cell-phone system a mobile signal may have a signal-to-noise-ratio of  $X$ , but engineers prefer to express such ratios in decibels, i.e.,

$$Y = 10 \log_{10}(X).$$



Clearly, the non-parametric estimate and 95% confidence bands do not contain the parametric estimate of the DF. Notice how the non-parametric confidence bands is preferable to the parametric one for this example. Notice that the unknown DF  $F^*$  beside the parametric estimate and 95% confidence bands from Labwork 222.

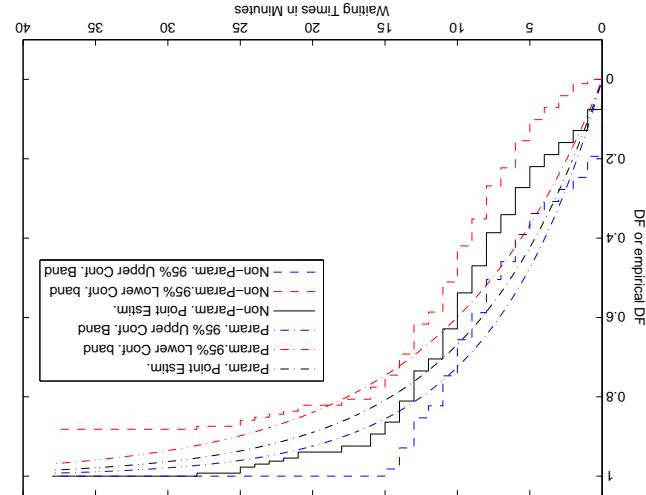


Figure 7.15: The empirical DF  $F_{132}$  for the Orbiter waiting times and the 95% confidence bands for the non-parametric experiment.

We compute and plot the non-parametric point estimate as well as the 95% confidence bands for the non-parametric estimate of  $F^*$  is  $F_{132}$ , the ECDF of the 132 Orbiter waiting times.

Then the non-parametric point estimate of  $F^*$  is  $\hat{F}_{132}$ , the EDF of the 132 Orbiter waiting times.

the waiting times at the Orbiter bus stop are:

$$X_1, \dots, X_{132} \stackrel{iid}{\sim} F^*, \quad F^* \in \{\text{all } DFs\}.$$

### 3.6.1 A Review of Inverse Images

Hence in a great many situations we are more interested in functions of random variables. Let us return to our original question of determining the distribution of a transformation or function of  $X$ . First note that this transformation of  $X$  is itself another random variable, say  $Y = g(X)$ , where  $g$  is a function from a subset  $\mathbb{X}$  of  $\mathbb{R}$  to a subset  $\mathbb{Y}$  of  $\mathbb{R}$ , i.e.,  $g : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ ,  $\mathbb{X} \subset \mathbb{R}$  and  $\mathbb{Y} \subset \mathbb{R}$ .

The **inverse image** of a set  $A$  is the set of all real numbers in  $\mathbb{X}$  whose image is in  $A$ , i.e.,

$$g^{[-1]}(A) = \{x \in \mathbb{X} : g(x) \in A\}.$$

In other words,

$$x \in g^{[-1]}(A) \text{ if and only if } g(x) \in A.$$

For example,

- if  $g(x) = 2x$  then  $g^{[-1]}([4, 6]) = [2, 3]$
- if  $g(x) = 2x + 1$  then  $g^{[-1]}([5, 7]) = [2, 3]$
- if  $g(x) = x^3$  then  $g^{[-1]}([1, 8]) = [1, 2]$
- if  $g(x) = x^2$  then  $g^{[-1]}([1, 4]) = [-2, -1] \cup [1, 2]$
- if  $g(x) = \sin(x)$  then  $g^{[-1]}([-1, 1]) = \mathbb{R}$
- if ...

For the singleton set  $A = \{y\}$ , we write  $g^{[-1]}(y)$  instead of  $g^{[-1]}(\{y\})$ . For example,

- if  $g(x) = 2x$  then  $g^{[-1]}(4) = \{2\}$
- if  $g(x) = 2x + 1$  then  $g^{[-1]}(7) = \{3\}$
- if  $g(x) = x^3$  then  $g^{[-1]}(8) = \{2\}$
- if  $g(x) = x^2$  then  $g^{[-1]}(4) = \{-2, 2\}$
- if  $g(x) = \sin(x)$  then  $g^{[-1]}(0) = \{k\pi : k \in \mathbb{Z}\} = \{\dots, -3\pi, -2\pi, -\pi, 0, \pi, 2\pi, 3\pi, \dots\}$
- if ...

If  $g : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  is one-to-one (injective) and onto (surjective), then the inverse image of a singleton set is itself a singleton set. Thus, the inverse image of such a function  $g$  becomes itself a function and is called the **inverse function**. One can find the inverse function, if it exists by the following steps:

Step 1; write  $y = g(x)$

Step 2; solve for  $x$  in terms of  $y$

Step 3; set  $g^{-1}(y)$  to be this solution

We write  $g^{-1}$  whenever the inverse image  $g^{[-1]}$  exists as an inverse function of  $g$ . Thus, the inverse function  $g^{-1}$  is a specific type of inverse image  $g^{[-1]}$ . For example,

- if  $g(x) = 2x$  then  $g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is injective and surjective and therefore its inverse function is:

$$\text{Step 1; } y = 2x, \text{ Step 2; } x = \frac{y}{2}, \text{ Step 3; } g^{-1}(y) = \frac{y}{2}$$

Figure 7.13: The empirical DFs  $\hat{F}_n^{(1)}$  from sample size  $n = 10, 100, 1000$  (black), is the point estimate of the fixed and known DF  $F(x) = x, x \in [0, 1]$  of Uniform(0, 1) RV (red). The 95% confidence band for each  $\hat{F}_n$  are depicted by green lines.

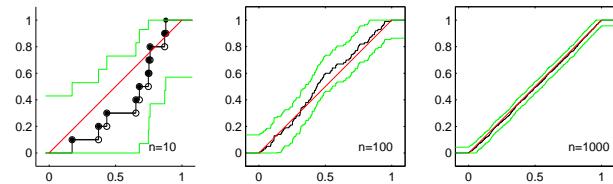
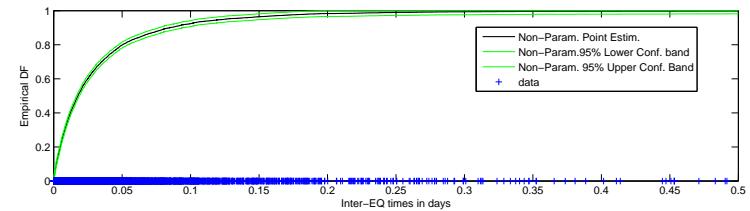


Figure 7.14: The empirical DF  $\hat{F}_{6128}$  for the inter earth quake times and the 95% confidence bands for the non-parametric experiment.



```
%>>> NZSIEQTimesECDFsConfBands.m
%% The columns in earthquakes.csv file have the following headings
%% CUSP_ID,LAT,LONG,NZNGE,NZMGN,ORI_YEAR,ORI_MONTH,ORI_DAY,ORI_HOUR,ORI_MINUTE,ORI_SECOND,MAG,DEPTH
EQ=dlmread('earthquakes.csv',' ',' ');
size(EQ) % report the size of the matrix EQ
% Read help datenum -- converts time stamps into numbers in units of days
MaxD=max(datenum(EQ(:,6:11))); % maximum datenum
MinD=min(datenum(EQ(:,6:11))); % minimum datenum
% get an array of sorted time stamps of EQ events starting at 0
Times=sort(datenum(EQ(:,6:11))-MinD);
TimeDiff=diff(Times); % inter-EQ times = times between successive EQ events
n=length(TimeDiff); % sample size
clf % clear any current figures
%% Non-parametric Estimation X_1,X_2,...,X_132 ~ IID F
[x y] = ECDF(TimeDiff,0,0,0); % get the coordinates for empirical DF
stairs(x,y,'k','LineWidth',1) % draw the empirical DF
hold on;
% get the 5% non-parametric confidence bands
Alpha=0.05; % set alpha to 5% for instance
Epsn = sqrt((1/(2*n))*log(2/Alpha)); % epsilon_n for the confidence band
stairs(x,max(y-Epsn,zeros(1,length(y))), 'g'); % non-parametric 95% lower confidence band
stairs(x,min(y+Epsn,ones(1,length(y))), 'g'); % non-parametric 95% upper confidence band
plot(TimeDiff,zeros(1,n),'+') % data points
axis([0 0.5 0 1])
xlabel('Inter-EQ times in days'); ylabel('Empirical DF');
legend('Non-Param. Point Estim.', 'Non-Param. 95% Lower Conf. band', 'Non-Param. 95% Upper Conf. Band', 'data')
```

Recall the poor fit of the Exponential PDF at the MLE for the Orbiter waiting time data. We can attribute the poor fit to coarse resolution of the waiting time measurements in minutes and the rigid decaying form of the exponential PDFs. Let us revisit the Orbiter waiting time problem with

Because we have more than one random variable to consider, namely,  $X$  and its transformation  $Y = g(X)$ , we will subscript the probability density or mass function and the distribution function by the random variable itself. For example we denote the distribution function of  $X$  by  $F_X(x)$  and that of  $Y$  by  $F_Y(y)$ .

$$\left( \left\{ (A)_{[I]} \beta \ni (\omega)X : U \ni \omega \right\} \right) D = (\{ A \ni ((\omega)X) \beta : U \ni \omega \})$$

of the underlying experiment in the sense that Equation (3.36) is just short-hand for its actual outcome by the random variable  $X$ . It is crucial to understand this from the sample space determined by the event probability of the event given by the inverse image of  $A$  information  $Y = g(X)$  in terms of the probability of the event  $A$  from the train-satisfies the axioms of probability and gives the desired probability of the event  $A$  from the train-

$$(9\mathcal{E}\cdot\mathcal{E}) \quad \left( (V)_{[I-]}^{\beta} \ni X \right) d = (V \ni (X)^{\beta}) d$$

Consequently,

- For any collection of sets  $\{A_1, A_2, \dots\}$ ,  $g_{[-l]}(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots) = g_{[-l]}(\{A_1, A_2, \dots\})$
  - For any set  $A$ ,  $g_{[-l]}(A^c) = (g_{[-l]}(A))^c$
  - For any set  $A$ ,  $g_{[-l]}(A^c) = (g_{[-l]}(A))^c$

To answer this question we must first observe that the inverse image  $g^{-1}(y)$  satisfies the following now, let us return to our question of determining the distribution of the transformation  $g(x)$ :

- 111

- If  $g(x) = x^2$  and domain of  $g$  is  $(-\infty, 0]$  then its inverse function is  $g^{-1}(y) = -\sqrt{y}$ , i.e., if  $y = x^2$  ( $-\infty < x \leq 0$ ) then the inverse image  $g_{[-\infty, 0]}^{-1}(y)$  for  $y \in [0, +\infty)$  is given by  $x = -\sqrt{y}$ .
  - If  $g(x) = x^2$  and domain of  $g$  is  $[0, +\infty)$  then its inverse function is  $g^{-1}(y) = \sqrt{y}$ , i.e., if  $y = x^2$  ( $0 \leq x < +\infty$ ) then the inverse image  $g_{[0, +\infty)}^{-1}(y)$  for  $y \in [0, +\infty)$  is given by  $x = \sqrt{y}$ .
  - If  $g(x) = x^2$  and domain of  $g$  is  $(-\infty, 0] \cup [0, +\infty)$  then its inverse function is  $g^{-1}(y) = -\sqrt{y} \cup \sqrt{y}$ , i.e., if  $y = x^2$  ( $x \in (-\infty, 0] \cup [0, +\infty)$ ) then the inverse image  $g_{(-\infty, 0] \cup [0, +\infty)}^{-1}(y)$  for  $y \in [0, +\infty)$  is given by  $x = -\sqrt{y}$  or  $x = \sqrt{y}$ .
  - If  $g(x) = \sin(x)$  and domain of  $g$  is  $\left[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$  then its inverse function is  $g^{-1}(y) = \arcsin(y)$ , i.e., if  $y = \sin(x)$  ( $-\frac{\pi}{2} \leq x \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ ) then the inverse image  $g_{\left[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]}^{-1}(y)$  for  $y \in [-1, 1]$  is given by  $x = \arcsin(y)$ .
  - If  $g(x) = \sin(x)$  and domain of  $g$  is  $\mathbb{R}$  then its inverse function is  $g^{-1}(y) = \arcsin(y)$ , i.e., if  $y = \sin(x)$  ( $x \in \mathbb{R}$ ) then the inverse image  $g_{\mathbb{R}}^{-1}(y)$  for  $y \in [-1, 1]$  is given by  $x = \arcsin(y)$ .

However, you need to be careful by limiting the domain to obtain the inverse function for the following examples:

- Step 1:  $y = x^3$ , Step 2:  $x = y^{\frac{1}{3}}$ , Step 3:  $y^{-\frac{1}{3}}(y) = y^{\frac{2}{3}}$

Step 1:  $y = 2x + 1$ , Step 2:  $x = \frac{y-1}{2}$ , Step 3:  $y_{-1}(y) = \frac{y-1}{2}$

- $\rightarrow$   $x + y = x + y$  is reflexive and therefore isitive transitive

$F^*$  in Figure 7.14.

When the non-parametric Point estimate of the maximum  $F$  is  $F_{123}$ , the ECDF of the inter-arrival times,  $\{T_i\}_{i=1}^n$ , We plot the non-parametric Point estimate as well as the 95% confidence bands for

$$X_1, \dots, X_{6128} \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} F^*, \quad F^* \in \{\text{all DFs}\}.$$

and 18-Aug-2008 19:29:29 are:

Non-parametric Estimation of the DF of Times Between Earthquakes

Next we look at a more interesting example involving real-world data.

```

% script PlotCDFForECDFScotBands.m to plot the ECDF from 10 and 100 samples
% from Unifform(0,1) RV
rand('twister',16534); % initialize the uniform(0,1) Sample
N = 3; % 10N is the maximum number of samples from uniform(0,1) RV
u = rand(1,10N); % generate 1000 samples from uniform(0,1) RV
u = sort(u); % sort the ECDF from 10 samples
subplot(1,N,1);
SampleSize=10-1;
for i=1:N
    % plot the ECDF from the first 10 samples using the function ECDF
    % get the x and y coordinates of SampleSize-based ECDF in xi and yi and
    % plot the ECDF using the function ECDF
    if (i==1) [xi yi] = ECDF(u(1:SampleSize),0,0,1,0,1);
    else
        [xi yi] = ECDF(u(1:SampleSize),0,0,1,0,1);
    end
    scatter(xi,yi,'r');
    hold on;
    % Note PlotFlag is 1 and the plot range of x-axis is
    % increasing by 0.1 or 0.2 on either side due to last 2 parameters to ECDF
    % being 0.1 or 0.2
    % being 0.1 or 0.2
    Alpha=0.05; % set Alpha to 5% for instance
    Epsn = sqrt((1/(2*SampleSize))*log(2/Alpha)); % solution_n for the confidence band
    hold off;
    % plot the upper band plot
    scatter(xi,max(yi+Epsn,ones(1,length(yi))),'g'); % lower band plot
    scatter(xi,min(yi-Epsn,ones(1,length(yi))),'g'); % upper band plot
    axes([0.1 1.1 -0.1 1.1]);
    plot(x,x,'r'); % plot the DF of uniform(0,1) RV in red
    LabelString=[“n”, “numStDev(SampleSize)”];
    text(0.75,0.05,LabelString);
    hold off;
end

```

**Laboratory 220** (Estimating the DR of Uniform(0,1) RV) Consider the problem of estimating the DR of Uniform(0,1) RV  $U$  on the basis of  $n=10$  samples. We use the function `ecdf` of `base` package to estimate the empirical CDF of  $U$ . The built-in function `stats::quantile` is used to render the plots. Figure 7.13 was generated by `plot_ecdf` function below.

$$\cdot x = 1 \in ((x)^u \cap \subseteq (x) \cdot H \subseteq (x)^u \overline{\cap})$$

The following table (Table 1) shows the total area of land used and possibly influenced by

### 3.6.2 Transformations of discrete random variables

For a discrete random variable  $X$  with probability mass function  $f_X$  we can obtain the probability mass function  $f_Y$  of  $Y = g(X)$  using Equation (3.36) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} f_Y(y) &= P(Y = y) = P(Y \in \{y\}) \\ &= P(g(X) \in \{y\}) = P\left(X \in g^{[-1]}\(\{y\}\)\right) \\ &= P\left(X \in g^{[-1]}\(y\)\right) = \sum_{x \in g^{[-1]}\(y\)} f_X(x) = \sum_{x \in \{x: g(x)=y\}} f_X(x) . \end{aligned}$$

This gives the formula:

$$f_Y(y) = P(Y = y) = \sum_{x \in g^{[-1]}\(y\)} f_X(x) = \sum_{x \in \{x: g(x)=y\}} f_X(x) . \quad (3.37)$$

**Example 62** Let  $X$  be the discrete random variable with probability mass function  $f_X$  as tabulated below:

|  |                     |               |               |               |
|--|---------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
|  | x                   | -1            | 0             | 1             |
|  | $f_X(x) = P(X = x)$ | $\frac{1}{4}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{4}$ |

If  $Y = 2X$  then the transformation  $g(X) = 2X$  has inverse image  $g^{[-1]}(y) = \{y/2\}$ . Then, by Equation (3.37) the probability mass function of  $Y$  is expressed in terms of the known probabilities of  $X$  as:

$$f_Y(y) = P(Y = y) = \sum_{x \in g^{[-1]}\(y\)} f_X(x) = \sum_{x \in \{y/2\}} f_X(x) = f_X(y/2) ,$$

and tabulated below:

|  |          |               |               |               |
|--|----------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
|  | y        | -2            | 0             | 2             |
|  | $f_Y(y)$ | $\frac{1}{4}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{4}$ |

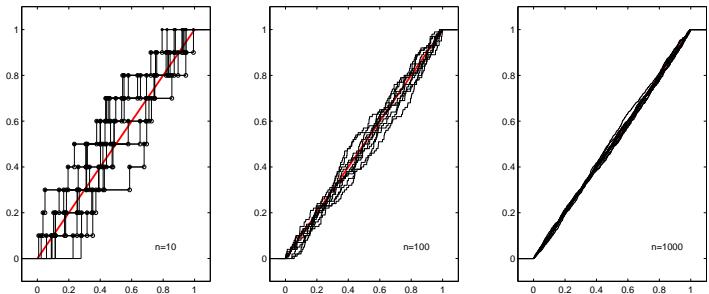
**Example 63** If  $X$  is the random variable in the previous Example then what is the probability mass function of  $Y = 2X + 1$ ? Once again,

$$f_Y(y) = P(Y = y) = \sum_{x \in g^{[-1]}\(y\)} f_X(x) = \sum_{x \in \{(y-1)/2\}} f_X(x) = f_X((y-1)/2) ,$$

and tabulated below:

|  |          |               |               |               |
|--|----------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
|  | y        | -1            | 1             | 3             |
|  | $f_Y(y)$ | $\frac{1}{4}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{4}$ |

Figure 7.12: Plots of ten distinct ECDFs  $\hat{F}_n$  based on 10 sets of  $n$  IID samples from  $\text{Uniform}(0, 1)$  RV  $X$ , as  $n$  increases from 10 to 100 to 1000. The DF  $F(x) = x$  over  $[0, 1]$  is shown in red. The script of Labwork 241 was used to generate this plot.



### 7.13.1 Estimating DF

Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} F^*$ , where  $F^*$  is some particular DF in the space of all possible DFs, i.e. the experiment is non-parametric. Then, based on the data sequence  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  we want to estimate  $F^*$ .

For any fixed value of  $x$ , the expectation and variance of the empirical DF (3.82) are:

$$E(\hat{F}_n(x)) = F^*(x) \implies \text{bias}_n(\hat{F}_n(x)) = 0 \quad (7.61)$$

$$V(\hat{F}_n(x)) = \frac{F^*(x)(1 - F^*(x))}{n} \implies \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \text{se}_n(\hat{F}_n(x)) = 0 \quad (7.62)$$

Therefore, by Proposition 125, the empirical DF evaluated at  $x$ , i.e.  $\hat{F}_n(x)$  is an asymptotically consistent estimator of the DF evaluated at  $x$ , i.e.  $F^*(x)$ . More formally, (7.61) and (7.62), by Proposition 125, imply that for any fixed value of  $x$ :

$$\hat{F}_n(x) \xrightarrow{P} F^*(x) .$$

We are interested in a point estimate of the entire DF  $F^*$ , i.e.  $F^*(x)$  over all  $x$ . A point estimator  $T_n = T_n(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$  of a fixed and possibly unknown  $F \in \{\text{All DFs}\}$  is the empirical DF  $\hat{F}_n$ . This estimator has an asymptotically desirable property:

$$\sup_x |\hat{F}_n(x) - F^*(x)| \xrightarrow{P} 0$$

because of the Gilvenko-Cantelli theorem in Proposition 141. Thus, we can simply use  $\hat{F}_n$ , based on the realized data  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ , as a point estimate of  $F^*$ .

On the basis of the DKW inequality (7.60), we can obtain a  $1 - \alpha$  confidence set or **confidence band**  $C_n(x) := [\underline{C}_n(x), \bar{C}_n(x)]$  about our point estimate of  $F^*$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{C}_n(x) &= \max\{\hat{F}_n(x) - \epsilon_n, 0\}, \\ \bar{C}_n(x) &= \min\{\hat{F}_n(x) + \epsilon_n, 1\}, \\ \epsilon_n &= \sqrt{\frac{1}{2n} \log\left(\frac{2}{\alpha}\right)} . \end{aligned} \quad (7.63)$$



- Second, let us consider the case when  $g$  is **monotone and decreasing** on the range of the random variable  $X$ . In this case  $g^{-1}$  is also a decreasing function and we can obtain the distribution function of  $Y = g(X)$  in terms of the distribution function of  $X$  as

$$F_Y(y) = P(Y \leq y) = P(g(X) \leq y) = P(X \geq g^{-1}(y)) = 1 - F_X(g^{-1}(y)) ,$$

and the density of  $Y$  as

$$f_Y(y) = \frac{d}{dy} F_Y(y) = \frac{d}{dy} (1 - F_X(g^{-1}(y))) = -f_X(g^{-1}(y)) \frac{d}{dy} (g^{-1}(y)) .$$

For a monotonic and decreasing  $g$ , its inverse function  $g^{-1}$  is also decreasing and consequently the density  $f_Y$  is indeed positive because  $\frac{d}{dy} (g^{-1}(y))$  is negative.

We can combine the above two cases and obtain the following **change of variable formula** for the probability density of  $Y = g(X)$  when  $g$  is one-to-one and monotone on the range of  $X$ .

$$\boxed{f_Y(y) = f_X(g^{-1}(y)) \left| \frac{d}{dy} g^{-1}(y) \right| .} \quad (3.38)$$

The steps involved in finding the density of  $Y = g(X)$  for a one-to-one and monotone  $g$  are:

1. Write  $y = g(x)$  for  $x$  in range of  $x$  and check that  $g(x)$  is monotone over the required range to apply the change of variable formula.
2. Write  $x = g^{-1}(y)$  for  $y$  in range of  $y$ .
3. Obtain  $\left| \frac{d}{dy} g^{-1}(y) \right|$  for  $y$  in range of  $y$ .
4. Finally, from Equation (3.38) get  $f_Y(y) = f_X(g^{-1}(y)) \left| \frac{d}{dy} g^{-1}(y) \right|$  for  $y$  in range of  $y$ .

Let us use these four steps to obtain the density of monotone transformations of continuous random variables.

**Example 65** Let  $X$  be Uniform(0,1) random variable and let  $Y = g(X) = 1 - X$ . We are interested in the density of the tranformed random variable  $Y$ . Let us follow the four steps and use the change of variable formula to obtain  $f_Y$  from  $f_X$  and  $g$ .

1.  $y = g(x) = 1 - x$  is a monotone decreasing function over  $0 \leq x \leq 1$ , the range of  $X$ . So, we can apply the change of variable formula.

2.  $x = g^{-1}(y) = 1 - y$  is a monotone decreasing function over  $1 - 0 \geq 1 - x \geq 1 - 1$ , i.e.,  $0 \leq y \leq 1$ .

3. For  $0 \leq y \leq 1$ ,

$$\left| \frac{d}{dy} g^{-1}(y) \right| = \left| \frac{d}{dy} (1 - y) \right| = |-1| = 1 .$$

4. we can use Equation (3.38) to find the density of  $Y$  as follows:

$$f_Y(y) = f_X(g^{-1}(y)) \left| \frac{d}{dy} g^{-1}(y) \right| = f_X(1 - y) 1 = 1 ,$$

for  $0 \leq y \leq 1$

is,

$$\log f(x; \sigma) = \log \left( \frac{1}{\sigma \sqrt{2\pi}} \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} (x - \mu)^2 \right) \right) = -\log(\sqrt{2\pi}) - \log(\sigma) - \left( \frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \right) (x - \mu)^2$$

Therefore, in much the same way as in part (2) earlier,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2 \log f(x; \sigma)}{\partial \sigma^2} &:= \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} \left( -\log(\sqrt{2\pi}) - \log(\sigma) - \left( \frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \right) (x - \mu)^2 \right) \right) \\ &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} (-\sigma^{-1} + \sigma^{-3}(x - \mu)^2) = \sigma^{-2} - 3\sigma^{-4}(x - \mu)^2 \end{aligned}$$

Now, we compute the Fisher Information of one sample as an expectation of the continuous RV  $X$  over  $\mathbb{X} = (-\infty, \infty)$  with density  $f(x; \sigma)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} I_1(\sigma) &= - \int_{x \in \mathbb{X} = (-\infty, \infty)} \left( \frac{\partial^2 \log f(x; \sigma)}{\partial \lambda^2} \right) f(x; \sigma) dx = - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (\sigma^{-2} - 3\sigma^{-4}(x - \mu)^2) f(x; \sigma) dx \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} -\sigma^{-2} f(x; \sigma) dx + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} 3\sigma^{-4}(x - \mu)^2 f(x; \sigma) dx \\ &= -\sigma^{-2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x; \sigma) dx + 3\sigma^{-4} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x - \mu)^2 f(x; \sigma) dx \\ &= -\sigma^{-2} + 3\sigma^{-4}\sigma^2 \quad \because \sigma^2 = V(X) = E(X - E(X))^2 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x - \mu)^2 f(x; \sigma) dx \\ &= -\sigma^{-2} + 3\sigma^{-4+2} = -\sigma^{-2} + 3\sigma^{-2} = 2\sigma^{-2} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the estimated standard error of the estimator of the unknown  $\sigma^*$  is

$$\widehat{\text{se}}_n(\widehat{\Sigma}_n) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{I_n(\widehat{\sigma}_n)}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n I_1(\widehat{\sigma}_n)}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n 2\sigma^{-2}}} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{2n}} .$$

(5) Given that  $\psi = g(\sigma) = \log(\sigma)$ , we derive the estimated standard error of  $\psi^* = \log(\sigma^*)$  via the Delta method as follows:

$$\widehat{\text{se}}_n(\widehat{\Psi}_n) = |g'(\sigma)| \widehat{\text{se}}_n(\widehat{\Sigma}_n) = \left| \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} \log(\sigma) \right| \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{2n}} = \frac{1}{\sigma} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{2n}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2n}} .$$

(6) Finally, the 95% confidence interval for  $\psi^*$  is  $\widehat{\psi}_n \pm 1.96 \widehat{\text{se}}_n(\widehat{\Psi}_n) = \log(\widehat{\sigma}_n) \pm 1.96 \frac{1}{\sqrt{2n}}$ .

$$\cdot \frac{\varrho}{\mathfrak{l}} = \left| \frac{\varrho}{\mathfrak{l}} \right| = \left| \left( \frac{\varrho}{n! - \mathfrak{f}!} \right) \frac{fip}{p} \right| = \left| (\mathfrak{f})_{\mathfrak{l}-6} \frac{fip}{p} \right|$$

3. For  $y < -\infty$ ,

$\cdot\infty > h > \infty-$

$$2. z = g_{-1}(y) = (y - \mu)/\sigma$$

We can apply the change of variable formula.

11.  $y = g(z) = \alpha z + \beta$  is a monotone increasing function over  $-\infty < z < \infty$ , the range of  $Z$ . So,

We are interested in the density of the transformed random variable  $Y = g(Z) = \sigma Z + \mu$ . Once again, since  $g$  is a one-to-one monotonic function let us follow the four steps and use the change of

Some graphs of such linear transformations of  $Z$  are shown in Figures (a) and (b).

density function  $\phi(z)$  given by Equation (3.33). For real numbers  $a < 0$  and  $b$  consider the linear transformation of  $Z$  given by

The next example yields the location-scale family of nonlinear random variables via a family of linear transformations of the standard normal random variable.

by  $\alpha$  and extremely useful in applications. This is nothing but our Exponentia $\alpha$  RV.

$$\cdot (\hbar -) dx \partial = (\hbar -) dx \partial \Gamma = (\hbar -) dx \partial ((\hbar -) dx \partial) X f = (\hbar)_\Gamma - \delta \frac{\hbar p}{p} ((\hbar)_\Gamma - \delta) X f = (\hbar)_\Gamma X f$$

M. We can use Equation (3.38) to find the density of  $Y$  as follows:

$$\cdot (\hbar -)dx\omega = |(\hbar -)dx\omega -| = \left| ((\hbar -)dx\omega) \frac{\hbar p}{p} \right| = \left| (\hbar)_- \delta \frac{\hbar p}{p} \right|$$

3. For  $0 < y < \infty$ ,

2.  $x = g_{-1}(y) = \exp(-y)$  is a monotone decreasing function over  $0 < y < \infty$ .

We can apply the change of variable formula.

1.  $y = g(x) = -\log(x)$  is a monotone decreasing function over  $0 < x < 1$ , the range of  $X$ . So, from  $f_X$  and  $g$ ,

**Example 66** Let  $X$  be a Uniform(0, 1) random variable and let  $Y = g(X) = -\log(X)$ . We are interested in the density of the transformed random variable  $Y$ . Once again, since  $g$  is a one-to-one monotone function let us follow the four steps and use the change of variable formula to obtain  $f_Y$

`Uniform(0, 1)` random variable.

CHAPTER 3. RANDOM VARIABLES

The Log-likelihood function of  $\sigma$ , based on one sample from the  $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  RV with known  $\mu$

Finally, we set the solution, i.e., the maximum of the concave-down log-likelihood function of  $\theta$  with a known and fixed  $\mu^*$  as our MLE estimate  $\hat{\theta}_n = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \mu^*)^2/n}$ . Analogously, the MLE estimator of  $\sigma^2$  is  $\hat{\sigma}_n^2 = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \mu^*)^2/n}$ . Don't confuse  $\hat{\sigma}_n$ , the upper-case sigma, with  $\hat{\sigma}_n = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \mu^*)^2/n}$ , the lower-case sigma, which is usually clear from the context.

$$\frac{u/\zeta(n! - ?x) \sum_{u=1}^{I=i} \lambda}{\zeta(n! - ?x) \sum_{u=1}^{I=i} u} = o \iff u/\left(\zeta(n! - ?x) \sum_{u=1}^{I=i}\right) = \zeta^o \iff$$

$$\zeta(n! - ?x) \sum_{u=1}^{I=i} = \zeta^o u \iff \zeta(n! - ?x) \sum_{u=1}^{I=i} = \varepsilon + I^{-o} u \iff$$

$$(n! - ?x) \sum_{u=1}^{I=i} = \varepsilon + o_{I-o} u \iff \zeta(n! - ?x) \sum_{u=1}^{I=i} \varepsilon^{-o} = I^{-o} u \iff \zeta(n! - ?x) \sum_{u=1}^{I=i} \varepsilon^{-o} + I^{-o} u - = 0$$

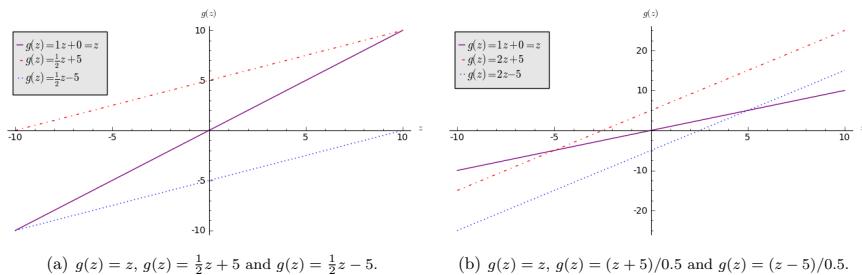
(3) Now, let us set the derivative equal to 0 and solve for  $a$ .

$$\begin{aligned} & \varepsilon(n - ix) \sum_u^{l=i} \varepsilon^{-\sigma} + \tau^{-\sigma} u - = (\varepsilon^{-\sigma} \zeta -) \left( \bar{\varepsilon}(n - ix) \sum_u^{l=i} \frac{\zeta}{l} \right) - \tau^{-\sigma} u - = \\ & (\zeta^{-\sigma}) \frac{\partial Q}{Q} \left( \bar{\varepsilon}(n - ix) \sum_u^{l=i} \frac{\zeta}{l} \right) - ((\sigma) \otimes \text{oi}) \frac{\partial Q}{Q} u - 0 = \\ & \left( \bar{\varepsilon}(n - ix) \sum_u^{l=i} \left( \frac{\varepsilon^{\sigma} \zeta}{l} \right) \right) \frac{\partial Q}{Q} - ((\sigma) \otimes \text{oi}) u \frac{\partial Q}{Q} - \left( \left( \frac{\varepsilon \zeta}{l} \wedge \right) \otimes \text{oi} u - \right) \frac{\partial Q}{Q} = \\ & \left( \bar{\varepsilon}(n - ix) \sum_u^{l=i} \left( \frac{\varepsilon^{\sigma} \zeta}{l} \right) - (\sigma) \otimes \text{oi} u - - \left( \frac{\varepsilon \zeta}{l} \wedge \right) \otimes \text{oi} u - \right) \frac{\partial Q}{Q} =: (\sigma) \mathcal{J} \frac{\partial Q}{Q} \end{aligned}$$

(2) Let us find its derivative with respect to the unknown parameter  $a$  next.

$$\begin{aligned}
& \tilde{\epsilon}(n - i)x \sum_u^{I=i} \left( \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u}{1} \right) - (\rho) \otimes u - \left( \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho}}{1} \wedge \right) \otimes u = \\
& \tilde{\epsilon}(n - i)x \sum_u^{I=i} \left( \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u}{1} \right) - (\rho) \otimes u + \left( \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho}}{1} \wedge \right) \otimes u = \\
& \tilde{\epsilon}(n - i)x \sum_u^{I=i} \left( \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u}{1} \right) - \left( \left( \frac{\rho}{1} \otimes \log \left( \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u}{1} \wedge \right) \right) \otimes I \right) u = \\
& \tilde{\epsilon}(n - i)x \sum_u^{I=i} \left( \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u}{1} \right) + \left( \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u}{1} \wedge \right) \otimes u = \left( \tilde{\epsilon}(n - i)x \tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u - \sum_u^{I=i} \left( \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u}{1} \wedge \right) \otimes I \right) \otimes u = \\
& \left( \left( \left( \left( \tilde{\epsilon}(n - i)x \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u}{1} \wedge \right) \otimes \exp \left( \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u}{1} \right) \right) \otimes I \right) \otimes \sum_u^{I=i} \left( \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u}{1} \wedge \right) \otimes I \right) = \\
& \therefore \left( \left( \left( \left( \tilde{\epsilon}(n - i)x \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u}{1} \wedge \right) \otimes \exp \left( \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u}{1} \right) \right) \otimes I \right) \otimes \sum_u^{I=i} \left( \frac{\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho} \tilde{\epsilon}_u}{1} \wedge \right) \otimes I \right) = ((\rho)_T) \otimes I =: ((\rho)_T) \otimes I
\end{aligned}$$

(1) First let us find the log-likelihood function  $\ell(\theta)$



4. we can use Equation (3.38) and Equation (3.33) which gives

$$f_Z(z) = \phi(z) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left(-\frac{z^2}{2}\right),$$

to find the density of  $Y$  as follows:

$$f_Y(y) = f_Z(g^{-1}(y)) \left| \frac{d}{dy} g^{-1}(y) \right| = \phi\left(\frac{y-\mu}{\sigma}\right) \frac{1}{\sigma} = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{y-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2\right],$$

for  $-\infty < y < \infty$ .

Thus, we have obtained the expression for the probability density function of the linear transformation  $\sigma Z + \mu$  of the standard normal random variable  $Z$ . This analysis leads to the following definition.

**Model 11 (Normal( $\mu, \sigma^2$ ) RV)** Given a location parameter  $\mu \in (-\infty, +\infty)$  and a scale parameter  $\sigma^2 > 0$ , the Normal( $\mu, \sigma^2$ ) or Gaussian( $\mu, \sigma^2$ ) random variable  $X$  has probability density function:

$$f(x; \mu, \sigma^2) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2\right] \quad (\sigma > 0). \quad (3.39)$$

This is simpler than it may at first look.  $f(x; \mu, \sigma^2)$  has the following features.

- $\mu$  is the expected value or mean parameter and  $\sigma^2$  is the variance parameter. These concepts, mean and variance, are described in more detail in the next section on expectations.
- $1/(\sigma\sqrt{2\pi})$  is a constant factor that makes the area under the curve of  $f(x)$  from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$  equal to 1, as it must be.
- The curve of  $f(x)$  is symmetric with respect to  $x = \mu$  because the exponent is quadratic. Hence for  $\mu = 0$  it is symmetric with respect to the  $y$ -axis  $x = 0$ .
- The exponential function decays to zero very fast — the faster the decay, the smaller the value of  $\sigma$ .

Normal( $\psi^*, \hat{s}_{\epsilon_n}(\hat{\Psi}_n)$ )<sup>2</sup>, i.e.:

$$\frac{\hat{\Psi}_n - \psi^*}{\hat{s}_{\epsilon_n}(\hat{\Psi}_n)} \rightsquigarrow \text{Normal}(0, 1)$$

where the standard error  $\hat{s}_{\epsilon_n}(\hat{\Psi}_n)$  of the ML estimator  $\hat{\Psi}_n$  of the unknown quantity  $\psi^* \in \Psi$  can be obtained from the standard error  $\hat{s}_{\epsilon_n}(\hat{\Theta}_n)$  of the ML estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  of the parameter  $\theta^* \in \Theta$ , as follows:

$$\hat{s}_{\epsilon_n}(\hat{\Psi}_n) = |g'(\hat{\theta}_n)| \hat{s}_{\epsilon_n}(\hat{\Theta}_n)$$

3. Using Normal( $\psi^*, \hat{s}_{\epsilon_n}(\hat{\Psi}_n)$ )<sup>2</sup>, we can construct the estimate of an approximate Normal-based  $1 - \alpha$  confidence interval for  $\psi^* \in \Psi$ :

$$C_n = [\underline{C}_n, \bar{C}_n] = \hat{\psi}_n \pm z_{\alpha/2} \hat{s}_{\epsilon_n}(\hat{\psi}_n)$$

Let us do an example next.

**Example 224** Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{IID}{\sim} \text{Bernoulli}(\theta^*)$ . Let  $\psi = g(\theta) = \log(\theta/(1-\theta))$ . Suppose we are interested in producing a point estimate and confidence interval for  $\psi^* = g(\theta^*)$ . We can use the Delta method as follows:

First, the estimated standard error of the ML estimator of  $\theta^*$ , as shown in Example 220, is

$$\hat{s}_{\epsilon_n}(\hat{\Theta}_n) = \sqrt{\frac{\hat{\theta}_n(1-\hat{\theta}_n)}{n}}.$$

The ML estimator of  $\psi^*$  is:

$$\hat{\psi}_n = \log(\hat{\theta}_n/(1-\hat{\theta}_n))$$

and the ML estimate of  $\psi^*$  is:

$$\hat{\psi}_n = \log(\hat{\theta}_n/(1-\hat{\theta}_n)).$$

Since,  $g'(\theta) = 1/(\theta(1-\theta))$ , by the Delta method, the estimated standard error of the ML estimator of  $\psi^*$  is:

$$\hat{s}_{\epsilon_n}(\hat{\Psi}_n) = |g'(\hat{\theta}_n)|(\hat{s}_{\epsilon_n}(\hat{\Theta}_n)) = \frac{1}{\hat{\theta}_n(1-\hat{\theta}_n)} \sqrt{\frac{\hat{\theta}_n(1-\hat{\theta}_n)}{n}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n\hat{\theta}_n(1-\hat{\theta}_n)}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n\bar{x}_n(1-\bar{x}_n)}}.$$

An approximate 95% confidence interval for  $\psi^* = \log(\theta^*/(1-\theta^*))$  is:

$$\hat{\psi}_n \pm \frac{1.96}{\sqrt{n\hat{\theta}_n(1-\hat{\theta}_n)}} = \log(\hat{\theta}_n/(1-\hat{\theta}_n)) \pm \frac{1.96}{\sqrt{n\hat{\theta}_n(1-\hat{\theta}_n)}} = \log(\bar{x}_n/(1-\bar{x}_n)) \pm \frac{1.96}{\sqrt{n\bar{x}_n(1-\bar{x}_n)}}.$$

**Example 225 (Delta Method for a Normal Experiment)** Let us try the Delta method on a continuous RV. Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{IID}{\sim} \text{Normal}(\mu^*, \sigma^{*2})$ . Suppose that  $\mu^*$  is known and  $\sigma^*$  is unknown. Let us derive the ML estimate  $\hat{\psi}_n$  of  $\psi^* = \log(\sigma^*)$  and a 95% confidence interval for it in 6 steps.



**Example 68** Suppose that the amount of cosmic radiation to which a person is exposed when flying by jet across the United States is a random variable,  $X$ , having a normal distribution with a mean of 4.35 mrem and a standard deviation of 0.59 mrem. What is the probability that a person will be exposed to more than 5.20 mrem of cosmic radiation on such a flight?

*Solution:*

$$\begin{aligned} P(X > 5.20) &= 1 - P(X \leq 5.20) \\ &= 1 - F(5.20) \\ &= 1 - \Phi\left(\frac{5.20 - 4.35}{0.59}\right) \\ &= 1 - \Phi(1.44) \\ &= 1 - 0.9251 \\ &= 0.0749 \end{aligned}$$

After some more notions you will see that  $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$  RV can actually be obtained from an IID process of  $\text{Bernoulli}(\theta)$  RVs. This is an instance of the central limit theorem. To appreciate this we first need to understand what we mean by statistics and then familiarise ourselves with notions of convergence of random variables.

#### Direct method

If the transformation  $g$  in  $Y = g(X)$  is not necessarily one-to-one then special care is needed to obtain the distribution function or density of  $Y$ . For a continuous random variable  $X$  with a known distribution function  $F_X$  we can obtain the distribution function  $F_Y$  of  $Y = g(X)$  using Equation (3.36) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} F_Y(y) &= P(Y \leq y) = P(Y \in (-\infty, y]) \\ &= P(g(X) \in (-\infty, y]) = P\left(X \in g^{[-1]}((-\infty, y])\right) = P(X \in \{x : g(x) \in (-\infty, y]\}) \end{aligned}$$

In words, the above equalities just mean that the probability that  $Y \leq y$  is the probability that  $X$  takes a value  $x$  that satisfies  $g(x) \leq y$ . We can use this approach if it is reasonably easy to find the set  $g^{[-1]}((-\infty, y]) = \{x : g(x) = (-\infty, y]\}$ .

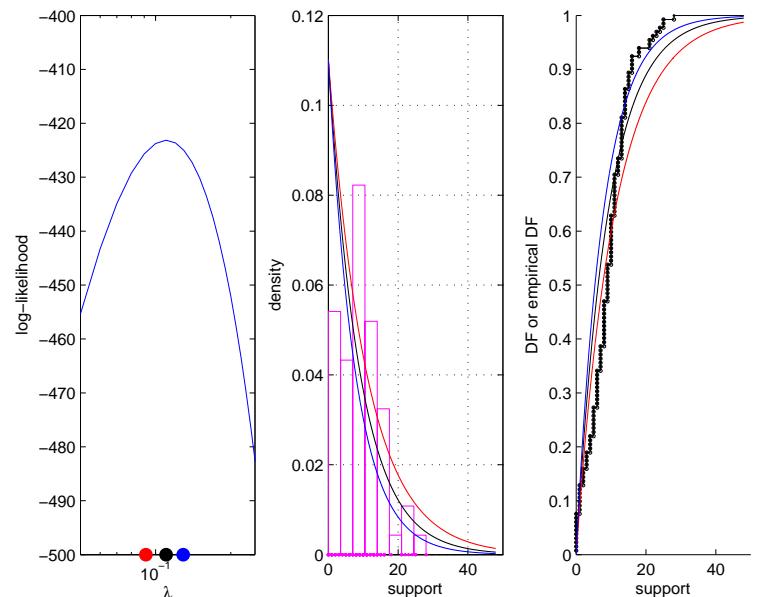
**Example 69** Let  $X$  be any random variable with distribution function  $F_X$ . Let  $Y = g(X) = X^2$ . Then we can find  $F_Y$ , the distribution function of  $Y$  from  $F_X$  as follows:

- Since  $Y = X^2 \geq 0$ , if  $y < 0$  then  $F_Y(y) = P(X \in \{x : x^2 < y\}) = P(X \in \emptyset) = 0$ .
- If  $y \geq 0$  then

$$\begin{aligned} F_Y(y) = P(Y \leq y) &= P(X^2 \leq y) \\ &= P(-\sqrt{y} \leq X \leq \sqrt{y}) \\ &= F_X(\sqrt{y}) - F_X(-\sqrt{y}) . \end{aligned}$$

By differentiation we get:

Figure 7.11: Plot of  $\log(L(\lambda))$  as a function of the parameter  $\lambda$ , the MLE  $\hat{\lambda}_{132} = 0.1102$  and 95% confidence interval  $C_n = [0.0914, 0.1290]$  for Fenemore-Wang Orbiter Waiting Times Experiment from STAT 218 S2 2007. The PDF and the DF at (1) the MLE 0.1102 (black), (2) lower 95% confidence bound 0.0914 (red) and (3) upper 95% confidence bound 0.1290 (blue) are compared with a histogram and the empirical DF.





### 3.7 Exercises in Transformations of Random Variables

**Ex. 3.22** — Let  $X$  be the outcome of a fair die roll with probability mass function given by

$$f_X(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{6} & \text{if } x \in \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

If  $Y = (X - 3)^2$  then find the probability mass function of  $Y$ ,  $f_Y(y)$ .

**Ex. 3.23** — Given a natural number  $n$  as a parameter, i.e., given a parameter  $n \in \{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ , let  $X$  be a discrete uniform random variable on the finite set

$$\mathbb{X} = \{-n, -n+1, \dots, -1, 0, 1, \dots, n-1, n\}$$

i.e. the probability mass function of  $X$  is:

$$f_X(x; n) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2n+1} & \text{if } x \in \mathbb{X} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Find the probability mass function  $f_Y(y; n)$  for  $Y = |X|$ , the absolute value of  $X$ .

**Ex. 3.24** — If  $X$  is a Geometric( $\theta$ ) random variable and  $Y = (\frac{1}{2})^X$  then find an expression for  $f_Y(y)$ .

**Ex. 3.25** — If  $X$  is a Poisson( $\lambda$ ) random variable find the probability mass function,  $f_Y(y)$ , of

$$Y = \frac{1}{(X+1)^2}.$$

**Ex. 3.26** — If  $X$  is a continuous random variable with probability density function

$$f_X(x) = \begin{cases} xe^{-x} & x \geq 0 \\ 0 & x < 0, \end{cases}$$

find the probability density function of  $Y = e^X$ .

**Ex. 3.27** — If  $X$ , the received power at an antenna is an Exponential( $\lambda$ ) random variable then find the probability density function of the amplitude  $Y = \sqrt{X}$ .

**Ex. 3.28** — If  $X$  is a Uniform( $a, b$ ) random variable where  $0 < a < b$ , find the probability density function,  $f_Y(y)$ , of

$$Y = \log_e(X).$$

### 3.8 Expectations

Expectation is perhaps the most fundamental concept in probability theory. In fact, probability is itself an expectation as you will soon see!

Expectation is one of the fundamental concepts in probability. The expected value of a real-valued random variable gives the population mean, a measure of the centre of the distribution of the variable in some sense. Its variance measures its spread and so on.

Now, we compute the expectation  $I_1$ , i.e. the sum over the two possible values of  $x \in \{0, 1\}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} I_1(\theta) &= - \sum_{x \in \mathbb{X}=\{0,1\}} \left( \frac{\partial^2 \log(\theta^x(1-\theta)^{1-x})}{\partial \theta^2} \right) \theta^x(1-\theta)^{1-x} \\ &= - ((-0 \theta^{-2} - (1-0)(1-\theta)^{-2}) \theta^0(1-\theta)^{1-0} + (-1 \theta^{-2} - (1-1)(1-\theta)^{-2}) \theta^1(1-\theta)^{1-1}) \\ &= - ((0 - 1(1-\theta)^{-2}) 1 (1-\theta)^1 + (-\theta^{-2} - 0) \theta^1 1) = (1-\theta)^{-2}(1-\theta)^1 + \theta^{-2}\theta^1 \\ &= (1-\theta)^{-1} + \theta^{-1} = \frac{1}{1-\theta} + \frac{1}{\theta} = \frac{\theta}{\theta(1-\theta)} + \frac{1-\theta}{\theta(1-\theta)} = \frac{\theta + (1-\theta)}{\theta(1-\theta)} = \frac{1}{\theta(1-\theta)} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the desired estimated standard error of our estimator, can be obtained by substituting the ML estimate  $\hat{\theta}_n = \bar{x}_n := n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i$  of the unknown  $\theta^*$  as follows:

$$\widehat{s}_{\theta_n}(\hat{\theta}_n) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{I_n(\hat{\theta}_n)}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n I_1(\hat{\theta}_n)}} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n \frac{1}{\hat{\theta}_n(1-\hat{\theta}_n)}}} = \sqrt{\frac{\hat{\theta}_n(1-\hat{\theta}_n)}{n}} = \sqrt{\frac{\bar{x}_n(1-\bar{x}_n)}{n}}.$$

(2) Using  $\widehat{s}_{\theta_n}(\hat{\theta}_n)$  we can construct an approximate 95% confidence interval  $C_n$  for  $\theta^*$ , due to the asymptotic normality of the ML estimator of  $\theta^*$ , as follows:

$$C_n = \hat{\theta}_n \pm 1.96 \sqrt{\frac{\hat{\theta}_n(1-\hat{\theta}_n)}{n}} = \bar{x}_n \pm 1.96 \sqrt{\frac{\bar{x}_n(1-\bar{x}_n)}{n}}$$

Recall that  $C_n$  is the realisation of a random set based on your observed samples or data  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ . Furthermore,  $C_n$ 's construction procedure ensures the engulfing of the unknown  $\theta^*$  with probability approaching 0.95 as the sample size  $n$  gets large.

**Example 221 ([Fisher Information of the Exponential Experiment])** Let us get our hands dirty with a continuous RV next. Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{IID}{\sim}$  Exponential( $\lambda^*$ ). We saw that the ML estimator of  $\lambda^* \in \mathbf{A} = (0, \infty)$  is  $\hat{\lambda}_n = 1/\bar{X}_n$  and its ML estimate is  $\hat{\lambda}_n = 1/\bar{x}_n$ , where  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  are our observed data.

(1) Let us obtain the Fisher Information  $I_n$  for this experiment to find the standard error:

$$\widehat{s}_{\theta_n}(\hat{\lambda}_n) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{I_n(\hat{\lambda}_n)}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n I_1(\hat{\lambda}_n)}}$$

and construct an approximate 95% confidence interval for  $\lambda^*$  using the asymptotic normality of its ML estimator  $\hat{\lambda}_n$ .

So, we need to first compute  $I_1(\theta)$ , the Fisher Information of one sample. Due to (7.59) and the fact that the Exponential( $\lambda^*$ ) distributed RV  $X$  is continuous with probability density function  $f(x; \lambda) = \lambda e^{-\lambda x}$ , for  $x \in \mathbb{X} := [0, \infty)$ , we have,

$$I_1(\theta) = - E_\theta \left( \frac{\partial^2 \log f(X; \theta)}{\partial \theta^2} \right) = - \int_{x \in \mathbb{X}=[0, \infty)} \left( \frac{\partial^2 \log(\lambda e^{-\lambda x})}{\partial \lambda^2} \right) \lambda e^{-\lambda x} dx$$

Let us compute the above integrand next.

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2 \log(\lambda e^{-\lambda x})}{\partial \lambda^2} &:= \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} (\log(\lambda e^{-\lambda x})) \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} (\log(\lambda) + \log(e^{-\lambda x})) \right) \\ &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} (\log(\lambda) - \lambda x) \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} (\lambda^{-1} - x) = -\lambda^{-2} - 0 = -\frac{1}{\lambda^2} \end{aligned}$$



The **mean** which characterises the central location of the random variable  $X$  is merely the expectation of the identity function  $g(x) = x$ :

$$\mathbb{E}(X) = \begin{cases} \sum_x xf(x) & \text{if } X \text{ is a discrete RV} \\ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} xf(x)dx & \text{if } X \text{ is a continuous RV} \end{cases}$$

Often, mean is denoted by  $\mu$ .

The **variance** which characterises the spread or the variability of the random variable  $X$  is also the expectation of the function  $g(x) = (x - \mathbb{E}(X))^2$ :

$$\mathbb{V}(X) = \mathbb{E}((X - \mathbb{E}(X))^2) = \begin{cases} \sum_x (x - \mathbb{E}(X))^2 f(x) & \text{if } X \text{ is a discrete RV} \\ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x - \mathbb{E}(X))^2 f(x) dx & \text{if } X \text{ is a continuous RV} \end{cases}$$

Often, variance is denoted by  $\sigma^2$ .

### INTUITIVELY, WHAT IS EXPECTATION?

Definition 32 gives expectation as a “weighted average” of the possible values. This is true but some intuitive idea of expectation is also helpful.

- Expectation is what you expect.

Consider tossing a fair coin. If it is heads you lose \$10. If it is tails you win \$10. What do you expect to win? Nothing. If  $X$  is the amount you win then

$$\mathbb{E}(X) = -10 \times \frac{1}{2} + 10 \times \frac{1}{2} = 0.$$

So what you expect (nothing) and the weighted average ( $\mathbb{E}(X) = 0$ ) agree.

- Expectation is a long run average.

Suppose you are able to repeat an experiment independently, over and over again. Each experiment produces one value  $x$  of a random variable  $X$ . If you take the average of the  $x$  values for a large number of trials, then this average converges to  $\mathbb{E}(X)$  as the number of trials grows. In fact, this is called the **law of large numbers**.

We can concretize the above two intuitive insights by the following two examples.

**Example 71 (Winnings on Average)** Let  $Y = r(X)$ . Then

$$\mathbb{E}(Y) = \mathbb{E}(r(X)) = \int r(x) dF(x).$$

Think of playing a game where we draw  $x \sim X$  and then I pay you  $y = r(x)$ . Then your average income is  $r(x)$  times the chance that  $X = x$ , summed (or integrated) over all values of  $x$ .

**Example 72 (Probability is an Expectation)** Let  $A$  be an event and let  $r(X) = \mathbf{1}_A(x)$ . Recall  $\mathbf{1}_A(x)$  is 1 if  $x \in A$  and  $\mathbf{1}_A(x) = 0$  if  $x \notin A$ . Then

$$\mathbb{E}(\mathbf{1}_A(X)) = \int_A \mathbf{1}_A(x) dF(x) = \int_A dF(x) = \mathbb{P}(X \in A) = \mathbb{P}(A) \quad (3.46)$$

Thus, probability is a special case of expectation. Recall our LTRF motivation for the definition of probability and make the connection.

2. The approximation holds even if we substitute the ML Estimate  $\hat{\theta}_n$  for  $\theta^*$  and use the estimated standard error  $\hat{s}\hat{e}_n$  instead of  $s\hat{e}_n$ . Let  $\hat{s}\hat{e}_n = \sqrt{1/I_n(\hat{\theta}_n)}$ . Then:

$$\frac{\hat{\theta}_n - \theta^*}{\hat{s}\hat{e}_n} \rightsquigarrow \text{Normal}(0, 1)$$

3. Using the fact that  $\hat{\theta}_n \rightsquigarrow \text{Normal}(\theta^*, \hat{s}\hat{e}_n^2)$ , we can construct the estimate of an approximate Normal-based  $1 - \alpha$  confidence interval as:

$$C_n = [\underline{C}_n, \bar{C}_n] = [\hat{\theta}_n - z_{\alpha/2} \hat{s}\hat{e}_n, \hat{\theta}_n + z_{\alpha/2} \hat{s}\hat{e}_n] = \hat{\theta}_n \pm z_{\alpha/2} \hat{s}\hat{e}_n$$

Now, let us do an example.

**Example 219 (MLE and Confidence Interval for the IID Poisson( $\lambda$ ) experiment)** Suppose the fixed parameter  $\lambda^* \in \mathbf{A} = (0, \infty)$  is unknown. Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Poisson}(\lambda^*)$ . We want to find the ML Estimate  $\hat{\lambda}_n$  of  $\lambda^*$  and produce a  $1 - \alpha$  confidence interval for  $\lambda^*$ .

The MLE can be obtained as follows:

The likelihood function is:

$$L(\lambda) := L(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n; \lambda) = \prod_{i=1}^n f(x_i; \lambda) = \prod_{i=1}^n e^{-\lambda} \frac{\lambda^{x_i}}{x_i!}$$

Hence, the log-likelihood function is:

$$\begin{aligned} \ell(\lambda) := \log(L(\lambda)) &= \log \left( \prod_{i=1}^n e^{-\lambda} \frac{\lambda^{x_i}}{x_i!} \right) = \sum_{i=1}^n \log \left( e^{-\lambda} \frac{\lambda^{x_i}}{x_i!} \right) = \sum_{i=1}^n (\log(e^{-\lambda}) + \log(\lambda^{x_i}) - \log(x_i!)) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n (-\lambda + x_i \log(\lambda) - \log(x_i!)) = \sum_{i=1}^n -\lambda + \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \log(\lambda) - \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i!) \\ &= n(-\lambda) + \log(\lambda) \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) - \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i!) \end{aligned}$$

Next, take the derivative of  $\ell(\lambda)$ :

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} \ell(\lambda) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} \left( n(-\lambda) + \log(\lambda) \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) - \sum_{i=1}^n \log(x_i!) \right) = n(-1) + \frac{1}{\lambda} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) + 0$$

and set it equal to 0 to solve for  $\lambda$ , as follows:

$$0 = n(-1) + \frac{1}{\lambda} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) + 0 \iff n = \frac{1}{\lambda} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) \iff \lambda = \frac{1}{n} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) = \bar{x}_n$$

Finally, the ML Estimator of  $\lambda^*$  is  $\hat{\lambda}_n = \bar{x}_n$  and the ML estimate is  $\hat{\lambda}_n = \bar{x}_n$ .

Now, we want an  $1 - \alpha$  confidence interval for  $\lambda^*$  using the  $\hat{s}\hat{e}_n \approx \sqrt{1/I_n(\hat{\lambda}_n)}$  that is based on the Fisher Information  $I_n(\lambda) = nI_1(\lambda)$  given in (7.57). We need  $I_1$  given in (7.59). Since  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda)$ , we have discrete RVs:

$$I_1 = - \sum_{x \in \mathbb{X}} \left( \frac{\partial^2 \log(f(x; \lambda))}{\partial \lambda^2} \right) f(x; \lambda) = - \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{\partial^2 \log(f(x; \lambda))}{\partial \lambda^2} \right) f(x; \lambda)$$

$$\mathbb{E}(X) = \sum_x x f(x) = \theta \times 1 = \theta, \quad V(X) = \mathbb{E}(X^2) - (\mathbb{E}(X))^2 = \theta^2 - \theta^2 = 0.$$

**Example 73** (Mean and variance of Point Mass( $\theta$ ) RV) Let  $X \sim \text{Point Mass}(\theta)$ . Then:

Thus, Point Mass( $\theta$ ) RV  $X$  is deterministic in the sense that every realization of  $X$  is exactly equal to  $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$ . We will see that this distribution plays a central limiting role in asymptotic statistics.

$$f(x; \theta) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x = \theta \\ 0 & \text{if } x \neq \theta \end{cases} \quad (3.48)$$

and the PMF is:

$$F(x; \theta) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \geq \theta \\ 0 & \text{if } x < \theta \end{cases} \quad (3.47)$$

**Model 12** (Point Mass( $\theta$ )) Given a specific point  $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$ , we say an RV  $X$  has point mass at  $\theta$  or is Point Mass( $\theta$ ) distributed if the DF is:

Consider the class of discrete RVs with distributions that place all probability mass on a single real number. This is the probability model for the deterministic real variable, which is often thought of as an unknown constant  $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Viewing a deterministic real variable as a random variable

The same ideas naturally extend, via multiple sums and integrals, to define the expectation of functions of  $\mathbb{R}^k$ -valued random variables with  $k > 2$ .

$$\text{Cov}(X, Y) := \mathbb{E}((X - \mathbb{E}(X))(Y - \mathbb{E}(Y))) = \mathbb{E}(XY) - \mathbb{E}(X)\mathbb{E}(Y)$$

If  $\mathbb{E}(X^2) < \infty$  and  $\mathbb{E}(Y^2) < \infty$  then  $\mathbb{E}(XY) > \infty$  and  $\mathbb{E}(|(X - \mathbb{E}(X))(Y - \mathbb{E}(Y))|) > \infty$ .

2. We need a new notion for the variance of two RVs.

When  $r = s = 1$ , we have  $\mathbb{E}(XY)$ , the expectation of the product of two RVs.

$$\mathbb{E}(XY)$$

1. Joint Moments

Some typical expectations for  $\mathbb{R}^2$ -valued random variables are:

$$\mathbb{E}(g(X, Y)) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x, y) f_{X,Y}(x, y) dx dy & \text{if } (X, Y) \text{ is a continuous RV} \\ \sum_{(x,y)} g(x, y) f_{X,Y}(x, y) & \text{if } (X, Y) \text{ is a discrete RV} \end{array} \right.$$

**Definition 33** The Expectation of a function  $g(X, Y)$  of the  $\mathbb{R}^2$ -valued RV  $(X, Y)$  is defined as:

In the case of a single random variable we saw that its expectation gives the population mean, the expected value of various functions of a  $\mathbb{R}^2$ -valued random variable, we can measure many interesting features of its joint distribution.

Expectations of functions of  $\mathbb{R}^2$ -valued random variables

$$se_n \approx \sqrt{1/I_n(\theta^*)} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{se_n}{\Theta_n - \theta^*} \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$$

Fisher Information at  $\theta^*$ , and the distribution of  $\Theta_n$  approaches that of the Normal( $\theta^*, se_n^2$ ). 1. The standard error  $se_n$  can be approximated by the side of a square whose area is the inverse distribution as the samples size  $n$  gets larger. In other terms:

Under appropriate regularity conditions, the following propositions are true:  
Let  $\Theta$  be the maximum likelihood estimator of  $\theta^* \in \Theta$  with standard error  $se_n = \sqrt{V_{\theta^*}(\Theta_n)}$ .  
**Proposition 140** (Asymptotic Normality of the MLE Estimator & Confidence Intervals)

2. The  $1 - \alpha$  confidence interval for  $\theta^*$ ,

and fixed parameter of interest  $\theta^* \in \Theta$ , and  
1. The standard error  $se_n(\Theta_n)$  of any maximum likelihood estimator  $\Theta_n$  of the possibly unknown

Next, we give a general method for obtaining:

and due to the  $E_\theta$  of the second-last term being 0 and that of the last term being  $I_1$  as per

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{f(x; \theta) f_{\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial x}}}{(\theta(x; \theta) f_{\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial x}})^2} &= \left( \frac{f(x; \theta) f_{\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial x}}}{(\theta(x; \theta) f_{\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial x}})^2} \right) - \left( \frac{(\theta(x; \theta) f_{\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial x}})^2}{(\theta(x; \theta) f_{\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial x}})^2} \right) \\ &= \left( \frac{(\theta(x; \theta) f_{\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial x}})^2}{(\theta(x; \theta) f_{\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial x}})^2} \right) \frac{\theta Q}{Q} = \left( ((\theta(x; \theta) f_{\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial x}})^2) \frac{\theta Q}{Q} \right) = \left( \frac{\theta Q}{Q} \right)^2 \end{aligned}$$

Note that (7.59) is due to taking expectation,  $E_\theta(\cdot)$ , of the LHS and RHS of the following equalities:

$$I_1(\theta) = -E_\theta \left( \frac{\partial^2 \log f(X; \theta)}{\partial \theta^2} \right) = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} - \int_{x \in X} \left( \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial \log f(x; \theta)} \right)^2 f(x; \theta) dx \quad \text{for continuous } X \\ - \sum_{x \in X} \left( \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial \log f(x; \theta)} \right)^2 f(x; \theta) \quad \text{for discrete } X \end{array} \right. \quad (7.59)$$

function:

If  $\log(f(x; \theta))$  is twice differentiable with respect to  $\theta$  and under further regularity conditions, we can also express Fisher Information as the negative of the expected curvature of the log likelihood

$$\begin{aligned} H(\theta) &:= V_\theta(S(X; \theta)) = E_\theta(S^2(X; \theta)) - (E_\theta(S(X; \theta)))^2 \\ &= E_\theta(S^2(X; \theta)) = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \int_{x \in X} \left( \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial \log(f(x; \theta))} \right)^2 f(x; \theta) dx \quad \text{for continuous } X \\ \sum_{x \in X} \left( \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial \log(f(x; \theta))} \right)^2 f(x; \theta) \quad \text{for discrete } X \end{array} \right. \end{aligned} \quad (7.58)$$

where  $I_1$  is the Fisher Information of just one of the RVs  $X_i$ , say for e.g.  $X$ :

$$I_n := V_\theta \left( \sum_{i=1}^n S(X_i; \theta) \right) = \sum_{i=1}^n V_\theta(S(X_i; \theta)) = n I_1(\theta), \quad (7.57)$$

The Fisher Information is simply the variance of the score function.

### 3.8.2 Properties of expectations

The following results, where  $a$  is a constant, may easily be proved using the properties of summations and integrals:

$$\boxed{\mathbb{E}(a) = a}$$

$$\boxed{\mathbb{E}(a g(X)) = a \mathbb{E}(g(X))}$$

$$\boxed{\mathbb{E}(g(X) + h(X)) = \mathbb{E}(g(X)) + \mathbb{E}(h(X))}$$

Note that here  $g(X)$  and  $h(X)$  are functions of the random variable  $X$ : e.g.  $g(X) = X^2$ .

Using these results we can obtain the following useful formula for variance:

$$\begin{aligned} V(X) &= \mathbb{E}((X - \mathbb{E}(X))^2) \\ &= \mathbb{E}(X^2 - 2X\mathbb{E}(X) + (\mathbb{E}(X))^2) \\ &= \mathbb{E}(X^2) - \mathbb{E}(2X\mathbb{E}(X)) + \mathbb{E}((\mathbb{E}(X))^2) \\ &= \mathbb{E}(X^2) - 2\mathbb{E}(X)\mathbb{E}(X) + (\mathbb{E}(X))^2 \\ &= \mathbb{E}(X^2) - 2(\mathbb{E}(X))^2 + (\mathbb{E}(X))^2 \\ &= \mathbb{E}(X^2) - (\mathbb{E}(X))^2 . \end{aligned}$$

That is,

$$\boxed{V(X) = \mathbb{E}(X^2) - (\mathbb{E}(X))^2}.$$

The above properties of expectations imply that for constants  $a$  and  $b$ ,

$$\boxed{V(aX + b) = a^2 V(X)} . \quad (3.49)$$

More generally, for random variables  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  and constants  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n$

- $\mathbb{E}\left(\sum_{i=1}^n a_i X_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \mathbb{E}(X_i) . \quad (3.50)$

- $V\left(\sum_{i=1}^n a_i X_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i^2 V(X_i)$ , provided  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  are independent .  $(3.51)$

- Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  be independent RVs, then

$$\mathbb{E}\left(\prod_{i=1}^n X_i\right) = \prod_{i=1}^n \mathbb{E}(X_i), \text{ provided } X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \text{ are independent .} \quad (3.52)$$

### 7.10 More Properties of the Maximum Likelihood Estimator

Next, we list some nice properties of the ML Estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  for the fixed and possibly unknown  $\theta^* \in \Theta$ .

1. The ML Estimator is asymptotically consistent, i.e.  $\hat{\Theta}_n \xrightarrow{P} \theta^*$ .
2. The ML Estimator is asymptotically normal, i.e.  $(\hat{\Theta}_n - \theta^*)/\hat{s}_{\Theta_n} \rightsquigarrow \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ .
3. The estimated standard error of the ML Estimator,  $\hat{s}_{\Theta_n}$ , can usually be computed analytically using the **Fisher Information**.
4. Because of the previous two properties, the  $1 - \alpha$  confidence interval can also be computed analytically as  $\hat{\Theta}_n \pm z_{\alpha/2} \hat{s}_{\Theta_n}$ .
5. The ML Estimator is **equivariant**, i.e.  $\hat{\psi}_n = g(\hat{\Theta}_n)$  is the ML Estimate of  $\psi^* = g(\theta^*)$ , for some smooth function  $g(\theta) = \psi : \Theta \rightarrow \Psi$ .
6. We can also obtain the estimated standard error of the estimator  $\hat{\Psi}_n$  of  $\psi^* \in \Psi$  via the **Delta Method**.
7. The ML Estimator is **asymptotically optimal** or **efficient**. This means that the MLE has the smallest variance among the well-behaved class of estimators as the sample size gets larger.
8. ML Estimator is close to the Bayes estimator (obtained in the Bayesian inferential paradigm).

### 7.11 Fisher Information

Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{IID}{\sim} f(X_1; \theta)$ . Here,  $f(X_1; \theta)$  is the probability density function (pdf) or the probability mass function (pmf) of the RV  $X_1$ . Since all RVs are identically distributed, we simply focus on  $X_1$  without loss of generality.

**Definition 139 (Fisher Information)** The **score function** of an RV  $X$  for which the density is parameterised by  $\theta$  is defined as:

$$\mathcal{S}(X; \theta) := \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log f(X; \theta), \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbb{E}_\theta(\mathcal{S}(X; \theta)) = 0 .$$

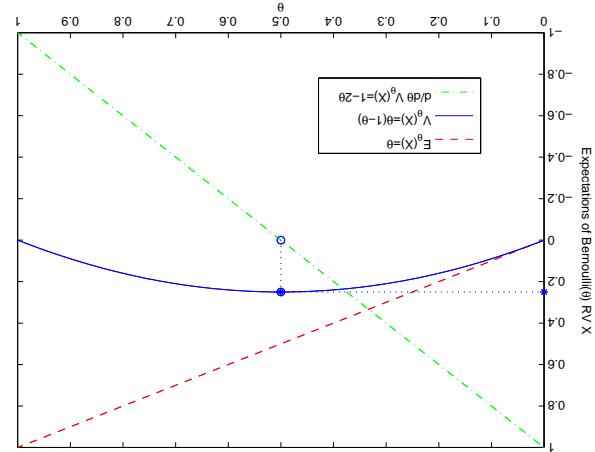
The expectation of the score function is 0 if  $X$  is distributed according to  $f(x; \theta)$  and under regularity conditions that allow for the interchange of differentiation and integration or summation, as shown below:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{E}_\theta(\mathcal{S}(X; \theta)) &= \mathbb{E}_\theta\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log f(X; \theta)\right) = \int \frac{\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} f(x; \theta)}{f(x; \theta)} dF(x; \theta) \\ &= \left\{ \sum_{x \in \mathbb{X}} \left( \frac{\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} f(x; \theta)}{f(x; \theta)} \right) f(x; \theta) \right\} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left( \sum_{x \in \mathbb{X}} f(x; \theta) \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}(1) = 0 \quad \text{for discrete } X \\ &= \left\{ \int \left( \frac{\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} f(x; \theta)}{f(x; \theta)} \right) f(x; \theta) dx \right\} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left( \int_{x \in \mathbb{X}} f(x; \theta) dx \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}(1) = 0 \quad \text{for continuous } X \end{aligned}$$

$$\max_{\theta \in [0,1]} V_\theta(X) = \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 - \frac{\theta}{1-\theta} \right) = \frac{1}{4}, \text{ since } V_\theta(X) \text{ is maximized at } \theta = \frac{1}{1-\theta}$$

$$V_\theta(X) := \frac{d\theta}{d\theta} V_\theta(X) = 1 - 2\theta = 0 \iff \theta = \frac{1}{2}, \quad V_\theta''(X) := \frac{d^2\theta}{d\theta^2} V_\theta(X) = -2 < 0,$$

Maximum of the variance  $V_\theta(X)$  is found by setting the derivative to zero, solving for  $\theta$  and showing the second derivative is locally negative, i.e.  $V_\theta''(X)$  is concave down:



Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV  $X$  as a function of the parameter  $\theta$ .

Figure 3.16: Mean ( $E_\theta(X)$ ), variance ( $V_\theta(X)$ ) and the rate of change of variance ( $\frac{d\theta}{d\theta} V_\theta(X)$ ) of a

$$E^\theta(X) = \theta \quad \text{and} \quad V^\theta(X) = E(X^2) - (E(X))^2 = \theta - \theta^2 = \theta(1-\theta).$$

$$\begin{aligned} E(X^2) &= \sum_{x=0}^1 x^2 f_x(0) = (x)(1-(1-\theta)) + (1^2)\theta = 0 + \theta, \\ V(X) &= E(X^2) - (E(X))^2 = \theta - \theta^2 = \theta(1-\theta). \end{aligned}$$

**Example 7.4** (Mean and variance of Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV) Let  $X \sim \text{Bernoulli}(\theta)$ . Then,  
Let us compute the mean and variance of our familiar RVs.

### 3.8.3 Expectation of Common Random Variables

```

>>> RayleighDensityMLE = 
>>> AlphaHat = 2.0052
>>> RayleighDensityMLE
AlphaHat=2.0052
AlphaHeights=[yLabel('Density'),yLabel('Heights')];
AlphaHeights=alpha*exp(-Heights/AlphaHat);%2/2)
plot(Heights,AlphaHeights,'r','LineWidth',2);
hold on;%superimposes the PDF at the MLE
AlphaHat=alpha*sum(Deeنهights)/Heights;%find the MLE
AlphaHeights=alpha*Heights;%get some heights for plotting
histogram(Deeنهights,1,[min(Deeنهights),max(Deeنهights)],'r','');%make a histogram
Heights=1.50,2.80,2.50,3.50,3.60,2.90,2.30];%data
RayleighDensityMLE.m

```

We use the following script file to compute the MLE at 10 and plot the PDF at  $\hat{\alpha}_{10}$  in Figure 7.10.

$$\hat{\alpha}_{10} = \sqrt{\frac{20}{1.50^2 + 2.80^2 + 2.50^2 + 3.20^2 + 1.90^2 + 4.10^2 + 3.60^2 + 2.60^2 + 2.90^2 + 2.30^2}} \approx 2$$

$$\hat{\alpha}_{10} = \sqrt{\frac{2 * 10}{\sum_{i=1}^{10} h_i^2}}$$

Therefore, the MLE estimate of the unknown  $\alpha$  is based on the basis of our 10 observations  $h_1, h_2, \dots, h_{10}$  of wave heights is

$$\begin{aligned} 2n\alpha - 1 - \alpha^{-3} \sum_{i=1}^{10} h_i^3 &\Rightarrow 2n\alpha - 1 = \alpha^{-3} \sum_{i=1}^{10} h_i^3 \\ 0 = \frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \alpha} (f(\alpha)) &\Rightarrow 0 = -2n\alpha^{-1} + \alpha^{-3} \sum_{i=1}^{10} h_i^3 \Rightarrow 2n\alpha^{-1} = \alpha^{-3} \sum_{i=1}^{10} h_i^3 \end{aligned}$$

Next, we set the derivative to 0, solve for  $\alpha$ , and set the solution equal to the MLE estimate  $\hat{\alpha}_{10}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} 0 = -2n\alpha^{-1} - \sum_{i=1}^{10} h_i^3 (-2\alpha^{-3}) &\Rightarrow -2n\alpha^{-1} + \alpha^{-3} \sum_{i=1}^{10} h_i^3 = \left( \left( \sum_{i=1}^{10} h_i^3 \right)^{-2} \alpha^{-2} \right) \frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \alpha} (f(h_i)) = \left( \left( \sum_{i=1}^{10} h_i^3 \right)^{-2} \alpha^{-2} \right) \frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \alpha} (f(\alpha)) \\ &\Rightarrow \left( \left( \sum_{i=1}^{10} h_i^3 \right)^{-2} \alpha^{-2} \right) \frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \alpha} (f(\alpha)) = \left( \left( \sum_{i=1}^{10} h_i^3 \right)^{-2} \alpha^{-2} \right) \frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \alpha} (f(h_i)) - \left( \left( \sum_{i=1}^{10} h_i^3 \right)^{-2} \alpha^{-2} \right) \frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \alpha} (f(h_i)) \end{aligned}$$

Now, let us take the derivative with respect to  $\alpha$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \ell(\alpha) := \log(L(h_1, h_2, \dots, h_n; \alpha)) &= \log \left( \prod_{i=1}^n f(h_i; \alpha) \right) = \log \left( \prod_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{\alpha^2}{h_i} e^{-\frac{\alpha^2}{h_i}} \right) \right) = \log \left( \prod_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{\alpha^2}{h_i} e^{-\frac{\alpha^2}{h_i}} \right) \right) - 2 \log(\alpha) - \frac{1}{2} (\ln/\alpha)^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n (\log(h_i) - 2n \log(\alpha) - \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{1}{2} h_i^2 \alpha^{-2}) \end{aligned}$$

We first obtain the log-likelihood function of  $\alpha$  for the data  $h_1, h_2, \dots, h_n$ ,  $\hat{\alpha}_{10} = \text{Rayleigh}(\alpha)$ .

The plot depicting these expectations as well as the rate of change of the variance are depicted in Figure 3.16. Note from this Figure that  $V_\theta(X)$  attains its maximum value of  $1/4$  at  $\theta = 0.5$  where  $\frac{d}{d\theta} V_\theta(X) = 0$ . Furthermore, we know that we don't have a minimum at  $\theta = 0.5$  since the second derivative  $V''_\theta(X) = -2$  is negative for any  $\theta \in [0, 1]$ . This confirms that  $V_\theta(X)$  is concave down and therefore we have a maximum of  $V_\theta(X)$  at  $\theta = 0.5$ . We will revisit this example when we employ a numerical approach called Newton-Raphson method to solve for the maximum of a differentiable function by setting its derivative equal to zero.

**Example 75 (Mean and variance of Uniform(0, 1) RV)** Let  $X \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1)$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} E(X) &= \int_{x=0}^1 x f(x) dx = \int_{x=0}^1 x \cdot 1 dx = \frac{1}{2} (x^2) \Big|_{x=0}^{x=1} = \frac{1}{2} (1 - 0) = \frac{1}{2}, \\ E(X^2) &= \int_{x=0}^1 x^2 f(x) dx = \int_{x=0}^1 x^2 \cdot 1 dx = \frac{1}{3} (x^3) \Big|_{x=0}^{x=1} = \frac{1}{3} (1 - 0) = \frac{1}{3}, \\ V(X) &= E(X^2) - (E(X))^2 = \frac{1}{3} - \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{12}. \end{aligned}$$

**Exercise 3.29 (Mean and variance of Uniform( $\theta_1, \theta_2$ ) RV)** Let  $X \sim \text{Uniform}(\theta_1, \theta_2)$  of Model 9. Derive expressions for  $E(X)$  and  $V(X)$  in terms of the parameters  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$ . Make sure that when  $\theta_2 = 1$  and  $\theta_1 = 0$  you recover the expectation and variance of the Uniform(0, 1) RV in Example 75.

**Example 76 (Expected Exponential of the Uniform(0, 1) RV)** Let  $X \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1)$  and  $Y = r(X) = e^X$ . Compute  $E(Y)$ .

We can simply apply the definition of  $E(r(X))$ , since  $Y = r(X)$ , is just a function of  $X$ , as follows:

$$E(Y) = \int_0^1 e^x f(x) dx = \int_0^1 e^x \cdot 1 dx = e - 1.$$

**Example 77 (Mean and variance of Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RV)** Show that the mean of an Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RV  $X$  is:

$$E_\lambda(X) = \int_0^\infty x f(x; \lambda) dx = \int_0^\infty x \lambda e^{-\lambda x} dx = \frac{1}{\lambda},$$

and the variance is:

$$V_\lambda(X) = \left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right)^2.$$

**Example 78 (Mean and variance of Geometric( $\theta$ ) RV)** Let  $X \sim \text{Geometric}(\theta)$  RV. Then,

$$E(X) = \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} x \theta (1 - \theta)^x = \theta \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} x (1 - \theta)^x$$

In order to simplify the RHS above, let us employ differentiation with respect to  $\theta$ :

$$\frac{-1}{\theta^2} = \frac{d}{d\theta} \left(\frac{1}{\theta}\right) = \frac{d}{d\theta} \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} (1 - \theta)^x = \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} -x(1 - \theta)^{x-1}$$

Multiplying the LHS and RHS above by  $-(1 - \theta)$  and substituting in  $E(X) = \theta \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} x (1 - \theta)^x$ , we get a much simpler expression for  $E(X)$ :

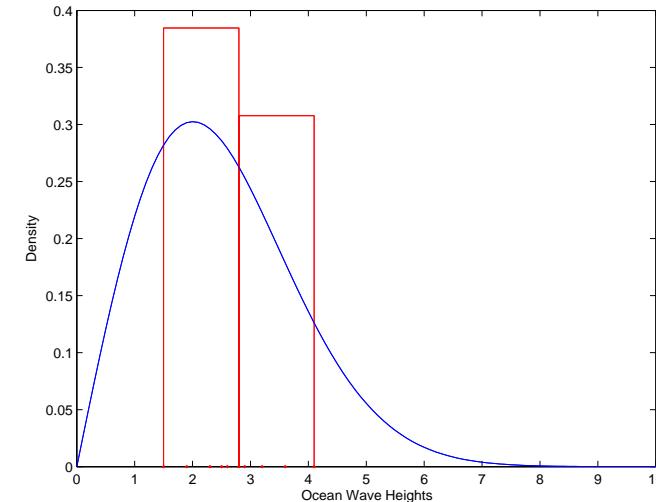
$$\frac{1 - \theta}{\theta^2} = \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} x(1 - \theta)^x \implies E(X) = \theta \left(\frac{1 - \theta}{\theta^2}\right) = \frac{1 - \theta}{\theta}.$$

```
histogram(sampleTimes,1,[min(sampleTimes),max(sampleTimes)],'m',2);
hold on; TIMES=[0.0001:0.01:max(sampleTimes)+20]; % points on support
plot(TIMES,MLE*exp(-MLE * TIMES ),'k-') % plot PDF at MLE to compare with histogram
% compare the empirical DF to the best fitted DF
subplot(1,3,3)
ECDF(sampleTimes,5,0,0,20); hold on
plot(TIMES,ExponentialCdf(TIMES,MLE),'b-')
ylabel('DF or empirical DF'); xlabel('support');
```

The script output the following in addition to the plot:

```
>> ExponentialMLEOrbiter
MLE = 0.1102
MeanEstimate = 9.0763
```

Figure 7.10: The ML fitted Rayleigh( $\hat{\alpha}_{10} = 2$ ) PDF and a histogram of the ocean wave heights.



**Example 218 (6.7, p. 275 of Ang & Tang)** The distribution of ocean wave heights,  $H$ , may be modeled with the Rayleigh( $\alpha$ ) RV with parameter  $\alpha$  and probability density function,

$$f(h; \alpha) = \frac{h}{\alpha^2} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}(h/\alpha)^2\right), \quad h \in \mathbb{H} := [0, \infty).$$

The parameter space for  $\alpha$  is  $\mathbb{A} = (0, \infty)$ . Suppose that the following measurements  $h_1, h_2, \dots, h_{10}$  of wave heights in meters were observed to be

$$1.50, 2.80, 2.50, 3.20, 1.90, 4.10, 3.60, 2.60, 2.90, 2.30,$$

respectively. Under the assumption that the 10 samples are IID realisations from a Rayleigh( $\alpha^*$ ) RV with a fixed and unknown parameter  $\alpha^*$ , find the ML estimate  $\hat{\alpha}_{10}$  of  $\alpha^*$ .

•

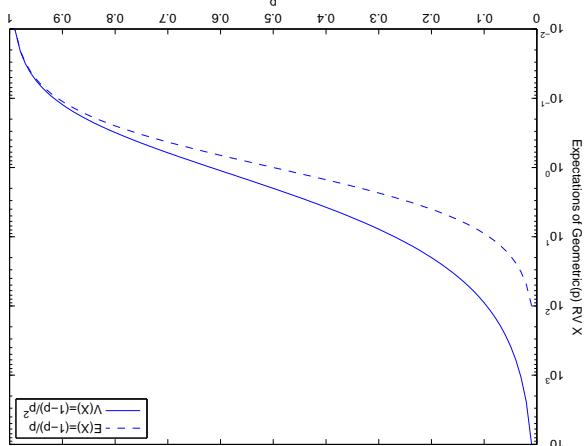


Figure 3.17 Mean and variance of a geometric(  $\theta$  ) RV  $X$  as a function of the parameter  $\theta$ .

$$\cdot \frac{z\theta}{\theta - 1} = (X)\Lambda$$

Similarly, it can be shown that

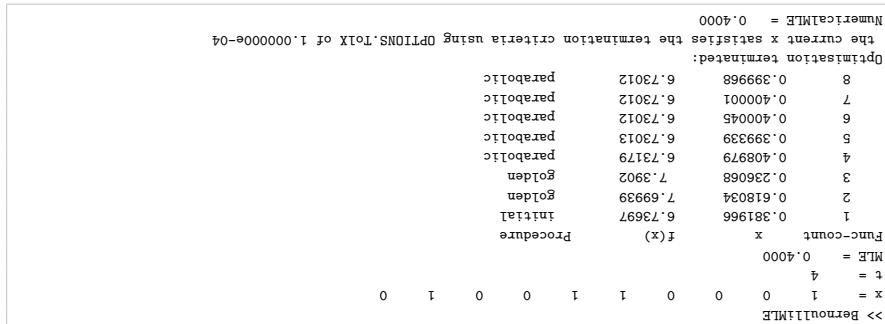
**Example 79** (Mean and variance of Binomial( $n, \theta$ )) Let  $X \sim \text{Binomial}(n, \theta)$ . Based on

However, this is a nontrivial sum to evaluate. Instead, we may use (3.50) and (3.51) by noting that  $X = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$ , where the  $\{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n\}$  iid Bernoulli( $\theta$ ),  $E(X_i) = \theta$  and  $V(X_i) = \theta(1-\theta)$ :

$$\cdot_{x-u}(\theta - 1)x\theta \binom{x}{u} x \sum_u^{0=x} = (\theta^u x)fx \sum_u^x = (\theta^u x)fp x \int = (X)\exists$$

```
% joshua Femmore's Data from 2007 on waiting times at Driftless Bust Stop
% The raw data -- the waiting times in minutes for each intersection
% at intersections = 0 to 11 9 25 6 10 10 8 16 4 1 3 21 3 8 ...
% colcetimes = 0 0 1 1 9 16 15 20 21 1 14 2 10 24 6 1 14 1 4 11 15 0 10 2 13 2 22 ...
% L = Log likelihood of data x as a function of parameter Lambda
% samplestimes = sample(LAMBDA,samplefun(L,LAMBDA));
% plot(LAMBDA,samplefun(L,LAMBDA));
% Now we will find the Maximum Likelihood Estimator by finding the maximizer of -L
% MLE = lambda*exp(-lambda) - sum(log(lambda)*exp(-lambda) * samplestimes));
% plot(1,MLE,1/MLE)
% plot([1,3,2],MLE,[1,300],MLE);
% subplot(1,3,2); % Plot a histogram estimate
% subplot(1,3,3); % Plot a histogram estimate
```

Labwork 217 (Numerical MLE of  $\alpha$  from n IID Exponentials( $\lambda$ ) RVs) Joshua Feinerman and Yuan Wang collected data on waiting times between buses at an Orbiter bus-stop close to campus and modeled the waiting times as IID Exponentials( $\lambda$ ) RVs (<http://www.math.centreby.ac.nz/~x.santandrian/courses/STAT218/projects/Stat218StudentProjects2007.pdf>). We can use their data sample times to find the MLE of  $\lambda$  under the assumption that the waiting times  $X_1, \dots, X_{122}$  are IID Exponentials( $\lambda$ ). We find the ML estimate  $\hat{\lambda}_{122} = 0.1102$  and thus the estimated mean waiting time is  $1/\hat{\lambda}_{122} = 9.073$  minutes. The estimated mean waiting time for a bus to arrive is well within the 10 minutes promised by the Orbiter bus company. The following



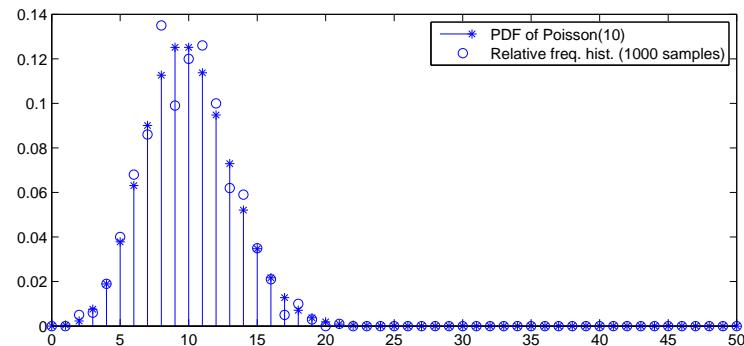
```
% Now we will find the MLE by fitting the minimum of -L
% negative log-likelihood function of parameter theta
negativeLogLikelihood(theta) = -log(theta) * t * (1-theta^(n-t));
% read help message
% you need to supply the function to be minimised and its search interval
% to see the iteration information in the material minitab
% Number of iterations = 10
% Maximum value = 1.0
```

since

$$\begin{aligned} E(X^2) &= \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} x^2 \frac{e^{-\lambda} \lambda^x}{x!} = \lambda e^{-\lambda} \sum_{x=1}^{\infty} \frac{x \lambda^{x-1}}{(x-1)!} = \lambda e^{-\lambda} \left( 1 + \frac{2\lambda}{1} + \frac{3\lambda^2}{2!} + \frac{4\lambda^3}{3!} + \dots \right) \\ &= \lambda e^{-\lambda} \left( \left( 1 + \frac{\lambda}{1} + \frac{\lambda^2}{2!} + \frac{\lambda^3}{3!} + \dots \right) + \left[ \frac{\lambda}{1} + \frac{2\lambda^2}{2!} + \frac{3\lambda^3}{3!} + \dots \right] \right) \\ &= \lambda e^{-\lambda} \left( (e^\lambda) + \lambda \left( 1 + \frac{2\lambda}{2!} + \frac{3\lambda^2}{3!} + \dots \right) \right) = \lambda e^{-\lambda} \left( e^\lambda + \lambda \left( 1 + \lambda + \frac{\lambda^2}{2!} + \dots \right) \right) \\ &= \lambda e^{-\lambda} (e^\lambda + \lambda e^\lambda) = \lambda e^{-\lambda} (e^\lambda + \lambda e^\lambda) = \lambda(1 + \lambda) = \lambda + \lambda^2 \end{aligned}$$

Note that Poisson( $\lambda$ ) distribution is one whose mean and variance are the same, namely  $\lambda$ .

Figure 3.18: PDF of  $X \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda = 10)$  and the relative frequency histogram based on 1000 samples from  $X$  according to Simulation 149.



The Poisson( $\lambda$ ) RV  $X$  is also related to the IID Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RV  $Y_1, Y_2, \dots$ :  $X$  is the number of occurrences, per unit time, of an instantaneous event whose inter-occurrence time is the IID Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RV. For example, the number of buses arriving at our bus-stop in the next minute, with exponentially distributed inter-arrival times, has a Poisson distribution.

**Example 81 (Mean and variance of Normal( $\mu, \sigma^2$ ) RV)** The location-scale family of RVs is indeed parameterised by its mean and variance, i.e., if  $X \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  where  $X = g(Z) = \sigma Z + \mu$  and  $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$  then  $E(X) = \mu$  and  $V(X) = \sigma^2$  follows directly from the properties of Expectations, provided  $E(Z) = 0$  and  $V(Z) = E(Z^2) - (E(Z))^2 = E(Z^2) - 1 = 1$ .

The mean of a Normal(0, 1) RV  $Z$  is:

$$E(Z) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} z \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}z^2\right) dz = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left[ -\exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}z^2\right) \right]_{-\infty}^{\infty} = 0,$$

and the variance is:

$$V(Z) = E(Z^2) - (E(Z))^2 = E(Z^2) - 0 = E(Z^2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} z^2 e^{-z^2/2} dz.$$

## 7.9 Practical Excursion in One-dimensional Optimisation

Numerically maximising a log-likelihood function of one parameter is a useful technique. This can be used for models with no analytically known MLE. A fairly large field of maths, called optimisation, exists for this sole purpose. Conventionally, in optimisation, one is interested in minimisation. Therefore, the basic algorithms are cast in the “find the minimiser and the minimum” of a target function  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . Since we are interested in maximising our target, which is the likelihood or log-likelihood function, say  $\log(L(x_1, \dots, x_n; \theta)) : \Theta \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , we will simply apply the standard optimisation algorithms directly to  $-\log(L(x_1, \dots, x_n; \theta)) : \Theta \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .

The algorithm implemented in `fminbnd` is based on the golden section search and an inverse parabolic interpolation, and attempts to find the minimum of a function of one variable within a given fixed interval. Briefly, the golden section search proceeds by successively **bracketing** the minimum of the target function within an acceptably small interval inside the given starting interval [see Section 8.2 of Forsythe, G. E., M. A. Malcolm, and C. B. Moler, 1977, *Computer Methods for Mathematical Computations*, Prentice-Hall]. MATLAB’s `fminbnd` also relies on Brent’s inverse parabolic interpolation [see Chapter 5 of Brent, Richard. P., 1973, *Algorithms for Minimization without Derivatives*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey]. Briefly, additional smoothness conditions are assumed for the target function to aid in a faster bracketing strategy through polynomial interpolations of past function evaluations. MATLAB’s `fminbnd` has several limitations, including:

- The likelihood function must be continuous.
- Only local MLE solutions, i.e. those inside the starting interval, are given.
- One needs to know or carefully guess the starting interval that contains the MLE.
- MATLAB’s `fminbnd` exhibits slow convergence when the solution is on a boundary of the starting interval.

**Labwork 216 (Coin-tossing experiment)** The following script was used to study the coin-tossing experiment in MATLAB. The plot of the log-likelihood function and the numerical optimisation of MLE are carried out using MATLAB’s built-in function `fminbnd` (See Figure 7.8).

```
BernoulliMLE.m
%
% To simulate n coin tosses, set theta=probability of heads and n
% Then draw n IID samples from Bernoulli(theta) RV
% theta=0.5; n=20; x=floor(rand(1,n) + theta);
% enter data from a real coin tossing experiment
x=[1 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0]; n=length(x);
t = sum(x); % statistic t is the sum of the x_i values
% display the outcomes and their sum
display(x)
display(t)

% Analytically MLE is t/n
MLE=t/n
% l is the log-likelihood of data x as a function of parameter theta
l=@(theta)log(theta ^ t * (1-theta)^(n-t));
ThetaS=[0:0.001:1]; % sample some values for theta

% plot the log-likelihood function and MLE in two scales
subplot(1,2,1);
plot(ThetaS,arrayfun(l,ThetaS),'m','LineWidth',2);
hold on; stem([MLE],[-89],'b--'); % plot MLE as a stem plot
subplot(1,2,2);
```

### 7.8.3 Moment Estimator (MLE)

$$f(x; \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k) = \begin{cases} \theta^x & \text{if } x \in [k] \\ 0 & \text{if } x \notin [k] = \{1, 2, \dots, k\}, \end{cases}$$

we say that an RV  $X$  is de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) distributed if its PMF is:

$$\nabla_{k-1} := \{(\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k) : \theta_1 \geq 0, \theta_2 \geq 0, \dots, \theta_k \geq 0, \sum_{i=1}^k \theta_i = 1\},$$

Simplex:

$$\text{Model 14 (de Moivre)}(\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k)$$

Given a specific point  $(\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k)$  in the unit  $k-1$ -

Next let us consider a natural generalization of the Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV with more than two outcomes but in the set  $\{1, 2, \dots, k\}$ .

Note that we consider symmetry of integral about the origin and take twice the integral over  $(0, \infty)$  above. Variance and higher moments cannot be defined when the expectation itself is undefined.

$$\int |x| dF(x) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\infty}^0 \frac{1+x^2}{x} dx = (x \tan^{-1}(x)) \Big|_0^{\infty} - \int_{\infty}^0 \tan^{-1}(x) dx = \infty. \quad (3.55)$$

gration by parts (set  $u = x$  and  $v = \tan^{-1}(x)$ ) does not exist, since:

**Example 82 (Mean of Cauchy RV)** The expectation of the Cauchy RV  $X$ , obtained via inte-

Note that the construction is valid even if we sample  $X$  uniformly from  $(0, \infty)$  and take its  $\tan(X)$ .

$$f_Y(y) = f_X(g_{-1}(y)) \left| \frac{dy}{dx} \right| = f_X(g_{-1}(y)) \left| \frac{dy}{d \tan^{-1}(y)} \right| \tan^{-1}(y) = \frac{1}{\pi} \left| \frac{1+y^2}{1-y^2} \right|$$

PDF  $f_Y(y)$  from the PDF  $f_X(x) = \frac{1}{\pi(1-x^2)}(x)$  as follows:

The Cauchy RV  $Y$  can be derived from a RV  $X \sim \text{Uniform}(-\pi/2, \pi/2)$  by the simple transformation  $Y = \tan(X)$  for the above construction. Since  $\tan(x)$  is one-to-one and monotone on the range of  $X$  given by  $(-\pi/2, \pi/2)$ , we can use the change of variable formula in Equation 3.38 to obtain the PDF  $f_Y(y)$  from the maximum likelihood estimate of  $\theta^*$  (you only need to do Steps 1–5

**Exercise 7.15 (MLE Exercises)** Assume that an independent and identically distributed sample,  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ , is drawn from the distribution of  $X$  with PDF  $f(x; \theta^*)$  for a fixed and unknown parameter  $\theta^*$ , and derive the maximum likelihood estimate of  $\theta^*$  (you only need to do Steps 1–5

**Steps of MLE** in Lecture Notes on pages 126–127). Consider the following PDFs:

[Hint: your  $x$ -axis is  $\theta$  with values in  $[0, 1]$ , the parameter space, and  $y$ -axis is  $L_n(\theta; x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = \prod_{i=1}^n f_X(x_i; \theta)$ , where  $f_X(x_i; \theta)$  is the PMF of Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV  $X_i$ ].

and its PDF is:

$$F(y) = \frac{1}{\pi} \tan^{-1}(y) + \frac{1}{2}. \quad (3.56)$$

Next, let us become familiar with an RV for which the expectation does not exist.

The first term after the first equality above equals 0 because the exponential goes to 0 much faster than  $z$  grows to  $\infty$ . The second term equals 1 because it is exactly the total probability integral of the PDF of the Normal(0, 1) RV.

Using integration by parts with  $u = z$ ,  $du = ze^{-z/2}$   $\Leftrightarrow du = 1, v = -e^{-z/2}$ ,  $\int du = u - \int du$

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} ze^{-z^2/2} dz = \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{1} \left( -ze^{-z^2/2} \Big|_{-\infty}^{\infty} + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-z^2/2} dz \right) = 0 + 1 = 1$$

Exercises 7.14 (Likelihoods of tiny Bernoulli trials) Find and plot the likelihood function of Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RVs:

the following observations  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  from the following IID sequence of Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RVs:

CHAPTE R 3. RANDOM VARIABLES

312

### CHAPTER 7. INFERENCE FOR STATISTICAL EXPERIMENTS

$$f(x; \theta) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ \frac{1}{2\pi} x^2 e^{-x/\theta} & \text{if } 0 < x < \infty \end{cases}$$

4. The parameter  $\theta$  is a real number in  $(0, \infty)$  and the PDF is given by

$$f(x; \theta) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ \frac{1}{\pi} x^{2-\theta} e^{-x/\theta} & \text{if } 0 < x < \infty \end{cases}$$

3. The parameter  $\theta$  is a real number in  $(0, \infty)$  and the PDF is given by

$$f(x; \theta) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ \frac{\theta}{\pi} x^{\theta-1} & \text{if } 0 < x < 1 \end{cases}$$

2. The parameter  $\theta$  is a real number in  $(0, \infty)$  and the PDF is given by

$$f(x; \theta) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ \theta x^{\theta-1} & \text{if } 0 < x < 1 \end{cases}$$

1. The parameter  $\theta$  is a real number in  $(0, \infty)$  and the PDF is given by

**Steps of MLE** in Lecture Notes on pages 126–127. Consider the following PDFs:

[Hint: your  $x$ -axis is  $\theta$  with values in  $[0, 1]$ , the parameter space, and  $y$ -axis is  $L_n(\theta; x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = \prod_{i=1}^n f_X(x_i; \theta)$ , where  $f_X(x_i; \theta)$  is the PMF of Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV  $X_i$ ].

8.  $(x_1, x_2, x_3) = (0, 0, 1)$

7.  $(x_1, x_2, x_3) = (1, 1, 0)$

6.  $(x_1, x_2) = (0, 1)$

5.  $(x_1, x_2) = (1, 0)$

4.  $(x_1, x_2) = (1, 1)$

3.  $(x_1, x_2) = (0, 0)$

2.  $(x_1) = (0)$

1.  $(x_1) = (1)$

The DF for de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV  $X$  is:

$$F(x; \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } -\infty < x < 1 \\ \theta_1 & \text{if } 1 \leq x < 2 \\ \theta_1 + \theta_2 & \text{if } 2 \leq x < 3 \\ \vdots & \\ \theta_1 + \theta_2 + \dots + \theta_{k-1} & \text{if } k-1 \leq x < k \\ \theta_1 + \theta_2 + \dots + \theta_{k-1} + \theta_k = 1 & \text{if } k \leq x < \infty \end{cases} \quad (3.56)$$

The de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV can be thought of as a probability model for ‘‘the outcome of rolling a polygonal cylindrical die with  $k$  rectangular faces that are marked with  $1, 2, \dots, k$ ’’. The parameters  $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$  specify how the die is loaded and may be idealised as specifying the cylinder’s centre of mass with respect to the respective faces. Thus, when  $\theta_1 = \theta_2 = \dots = \theta_k = 1/k$ , we have a probability model for the outcomes of a fair die.

**Mean and variance of de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV:** The not too useful expressions for the first two moments of  $X \sim \text{de Moivre}(\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k)$  are,

$$\mathbb{E}(X) = \sum_{x=1}^k x\theta(x) = \theta_1 + 2\theta_2 + \dots + k\theta_k, \text{ and}$$

$$\mathbb{V}(X) = \mathbb{E}(X^2) - (\mathbb{E}(X))^2 = (\theta_1 + 2^2\theta_2 + \dots + k^2\theta_k) - (\theta_1 + 2\theta_2 + \dots + k\theta_k)^2.$$

However, if  $X \sim \text{de Moivre}(1/k, 1/k, \dots, 1/k)$ , then the mean and variance for the fair  $k$ -faced die based on Faulhaber’s formula for  $\sum_{i=1}^k i^m$ , with  $m \in \{1, 2\}$ , are,

$$\mathbb{E}(X) = \frac{1}{k} (1 + 2 + \dots + k) = \frac{1}{k} \frac{k(k+1)}{2} = \frac{k+1}{2},$$

$$\mathbb{E}(X^2) = \frac{1}{k} (1^2 + 2^2 + \dots + k^2) = \frac{1}{k} \frac{k(k+1)(2k+1)}{6} = \frac{2k^2 + 3k + 1}{6},$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{V}(X) &= \mathbb{E}(X^2) - (\mathbb{E}(X))^2 = \frac{2k^2 + 3k + 1}{6} - \left(\frac{k+1}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{2k^2 + 3k + 1}{6} - \left(\frac{k^2 + 2k + 1}{4}\right) \\ &= \frac{8k^2 + 12k + 4 - 6k^2 - 12k - 6}{24} = \frac{2k^2 - 2}{24} = \frac{k^2 - 1}{12}. \end{aligned}$$

### 3.9 Exercises in Expectations of Random Variables

**Ex. 3.30** — Let  $X$  be the number of air conditioners a store sells each day, and assume that  $X$  has probability mass function  $f(10) = 0.1$ ,  $f(11) = 0.3$ ,  $f(12) = 0.4$ ,  $f(13) = 0.2$ .

1. Find the expected number of conditioners that the store sells each day.
2. If the profit per conditioner is \$55, what is the expected daily profit?

**Ex. 3.31** — A small petrol station is supplied with fuel every Saturday afternoon. Assume that its volume of sales  $X$ , in ten thousands of litres, has density

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 6x(1-x) & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

Determine the mean and variance of  $X$ .

Figure 7.8: Plots of the log likelihood  $\ell_n(\theta) = \log(L(1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0; \theta))$  as a function of the parameter  $\theta$  over the parameter space  $\Theta = [0, 1]$  and the MLE  $\hat{\theta}_{10}$  of 0.4 for the coin-tossing experiment shown in standard scale (left panel) and log scale for  $x$ -axis (right panel).

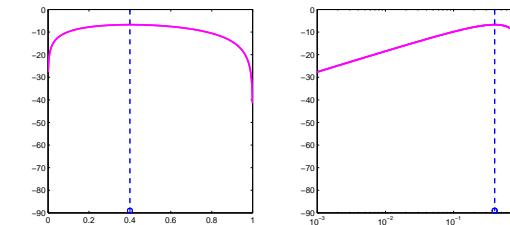
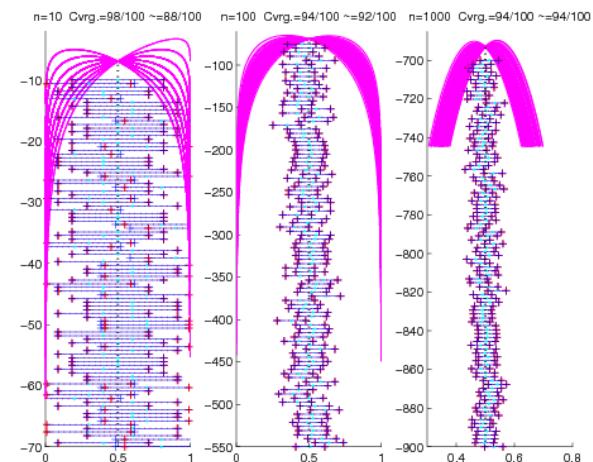


Figure 7.9: 100 realizations of 95% confidence intervals based on samples of size  $n = 10, 100$  and  $1000$  simulated from IID Bernoulli( $\theta^* = 0.5$ ) RVs. The MLE  $\hat{\theta}_n$  (cyan dot) and the log-likelihood function (magenta curve) for each of the 100 replications of the experiment for each sample size  $n$  are depicted. The approximate normal-based 95% confidence intervals with blue boundaries are based on the exact  $\widehat{\text{se}}_n = \sqrt{\theta^*(1-\theta^*)/n} = \sqrt{1/4} = 1/2$ , while those with red boundaries are based on the estimated  $\widehat{\text{se}}_n = \sqrt{\hat{\theta}_n(1-\hat{\theta}_n)/n} = \sqrt{\frac{\bar{x}_n(1-\bar{x}_n)}{n}}$ . The fraction of times the true parameter  $\theta^* = 0.5$  was contained by the exact and approximate confidence interval (known as *empirical coverage*) over the 100 replications of the simulation experiment for each of the three sample sizes are given by the numbers after  $\text{Cvrg.} =$  and  $\sim =$ , above each sub-plot, respectively.





### 3.10.1 $\mathbb{R}^2$ -valued Random Variables

We first focus on understanding  $(X, Y)$ , a bivariate R $\vec{V}$  or  $\mathbb{R}^2$ -valued RV that is obtained from a pair of discrete or continuous RVs. We then generalize to  $\mathbb{R}^m$ -valued RVs with  $m > 2$  in the next section.

**Definition 34 (JDF)** The joint distribution function (JDF) or joint cumulative distribution function (JCDF),  $F_{X,Y}(x, y) : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow [0, 1]$ , of the bivariate random vector  $(X, Y)$  is

$$\begin{aligned} F_{X,Y}(x, y) &= P(X \leq x \cap Y \leq y) = P(X \leq x, Y \leq y) \\ &= P(\{\omega : X(\omega) \leq x, Y(\omega) \leq y\}), \text{ for any } (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2, \end{aligned} \quad (3.57)$$

where the right-hand side represents the probability that the random vector  $(X, Y)$  takes on a value in  $\{(x', y') : x' \leq x, y' \leq y\}$ , the set of points in the plane that are south-west of the point  $(x, y)$ .

The JDF  $F_{X,Y}(x, y) : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  satisfies the following conditions to remain a probability:

1.  $0 \leq F_{X,Y}(x, y) \leq 1$
2.  $F_{X,Y}(x, y)$  is a non-decreasing function of both  $x$  and  $y$
3.  $F_{X,Y}(x, y) \rightarrow 1$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$  and  $y \rightarrow \infty$
4.  $F_{X,Y}(x, y) \rightarrow 0$  as  $x \rightarrow -\infty$  and  $y \rightarrow -\infty$

**Definition 35 (JPMF)** If  $(X, Y)$  is a discrete random vector that takes values in a discrete support set  $\mathcal{S}_{X,Y} = \{(x_i, y_j) : i = 1, 2, \dots, j = 1, 2, \dots\} \subset \mathbb{R}^2$  with probabilities  $p_{i,j} = P(X = x_i, Y = y_j) > 0$ , then its joint probability mass function (or JPMF) is:

$$f_{X,Y}(x_i, y_j) = P(X = x_i, Y = y_j) = \begin{cases} p_{i,j} & \text{if } (x_i, y_j) \in \mathcal{S}_{X,Y} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}. \quad (3.58)$$

Since  $P(\Omega) = 1$ ,  $\sum_{(x_i, y_j) \in \mathcal{S}_{X,Y}} f_{X,Y}(x_i, y_j) = 1$ .

From JPMF  $f_{X,Y}$  we can get the values of the JDF  $F_{X,Y}(x, y)$  and the probability of any event  $B$  by simply taking sums,

$$F_{X,Y}(x, y) = \sum_{x_i \leq x, y_j \leq y} f_{X,Y}(x_i, y_j), \quad P(B) = \sum_{(x_i, y_j) \in B \cap \mathcal{S}_{X,Y}} f_{X,Y}(x_i, y_j), \quad (3.59)$$

**Example 83** Let  $(X, Y)$  be a discrete bivariate R $\vec{V}$  with the following joint probability mass function (JPMF):

$$f_{X,Y}(x, y) := P(X = x, Y = y) = \begin{cases} 0.1 & \text{if } (x, y) = (0, 0) \\ 0.3 & \text{if } (x, y) = (0, 1) \\ 0.2 & \text{if } (x, y) = (1, 0) \\ 0.4 & \text{if } (x, y) = (1, 1) \\ 0.0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

```
hold on;
TIMEs=linspace(0,max(TimeDiff),100);
plot(TIMEs,MLELambdaHat*exp(-MLELambdaHat*TIMEs),'b.-')
axis([0 0.5 0 30]);
xlabel('Inter-EQ times in days'); ylabel('PDF');

subplot(1,3,3)
[x y]=ECDF([TimeDiff,0,0]); % get the coordinates for empirical DF
stairs(x,y,'r','LineWidth',1) % draw the empirical DF
hold on; plot(TIMEs,ExponentialCdf(TIMEs,MLELambdaHat),'b.-');% plot the DF at MLE
axis([0 0.5 0 1])
 xlabel('Inter-EQ times in days'); ylabel('DF'); legend('EDF','ML DF')
```

We first load the data in the text file `earthquakes.csv` into a matrix `EQ`. Using the `datenum` function in MATLAB we transform the time stamps into a number starting at zero. These transformed time stamps are in units of days. Then we find the times between consecutive events and estimate a histogram. We finally compute the ML estimate of  $\lambda^*$  and super-impose the PDF of the Exponential( $\hat{\lambda}_{6128} = 28.6694$ ) upon the histogram.

```
>> NZSEarthQuakesExponentialMLE
ans =
       6128         13
Earth Quakes in NZ between
18-Jan-2008 02:23:44 and 18-Aug-2008 19:29:29
SampleMean =    0.0349
MLELambdaHat =   28.6694
```

Thus, the average time between earth quakes is  $0.0349 * 24 * 60 = 50.2560$  minutes.

**Example 215 (ML Estimation for the IID Bernoulli( $\theta^*$ ) experiment)** Let us do maximum likelihood estimation for the coin-tossing experiment of Example 195 with likelihood derived in Example 210 to obtain the maximum likelihood estimate  $\hat{\theta}_n$  of the unknown parameter  $\theta^* \in \Theta = [0, 1]$  and the  $(1 - \alpha)$  confidence interval for it.

From Equation (7.56) the log likelihood function is

$$\ell_n(\theta) = \log(L_n(\theta)) = \log\left(\theta^{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i} (1 - \theta)^{n - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i}\right) = \left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i\right) \log(\theta) + \left(n - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i\right) \log(1 - \theta),$$

Next, we take the derivative with respect to the parameter  $\theta$ :

$$\frac{d}{d\theta} (\ell_n(\theta)) = \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) \log(\theta) \right) + \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( \left( n - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) \log(1 - \theta) \right) = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i}{\theta} - \frac{n - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i}{1 - \theta}.$$

Now, set  $\frac{d}{d\theta} \log(L_n(\theta)) = 0$ , solve for  $\theta$  and set the solution equal to  $\hat{\theta}_n$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{d\theta} (\ell_n(\theta)) = 0 &\iff \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i}{\theta} - \frac{n - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i}{1 - \theta} = 0 \iff \frac{1 - \theta}{\theta} = \frac{n - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i}{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i} \\ &\iff \frac{1}{\theta} - 1 = \frac{n}{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i} - 1 \quad \text{let } \boxed{\hat{\theta}_n = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i}{n}} \end{aligned}$$

$$P(B) = \int \int \int_B f_{X,Y}(x,y) dx dy \quad (3.61)$$

and

$$F_{X,Y}(x,y) = \int_y^{\infty} \int_x^{\infty} f_{X,Y}(u,v) du dv \quad (3.60)$$

From JPDF  $f_{X,Y}$  we can compute the JDF  $F_{X,Y}$  at any point  $(x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  and more generally we can compute the probability of any event  $B$ , that can be cast as a region in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ , by simply taking two-dimensional integrals:

For notational convenience, we sometimes suppress the subscripting when the random variables are clear from the context and write  $f(x,y)$  and  $F(x,y)$  instead of  $f_{X,Y}(x,y)$  and  $F_{X,Y}(x,y)$ , respectively.

For notational convenience, we sometimes suppress the subscripting when the random variables are clear from the context and write  $f(x,y)$  and  $F(x,y)$  instead of  $f_{X,Y}(x,y)$  and  $F_{X,Y}(x,y)$ , respectively.

$$f_{X,Y}(x,y) = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial y} F_{X,Y}(x,y).$$

$F_{X,Y}(x,y)$  is differentiable and its joint probability density function (JPDF) is given by:

**Definition 36 (JPDF)** We say  $(X,Y)$  is a continuous  $\mathbb{R}^2$ -valued random variable if its JDF

$$5. F_{X,Y}(-4,-1) = \sum_{\{(x,y):x \leq -4, y \leq -1\}} f_{X,Y}(x,y) = 0$$

$$4. F_{X,Y}(4,5) = \sum_{\{(x,y):x \leq 4, y \leq 5\}} f_{X,Y}(x,y) = f_{X,Y}(0,0) + f_{X,Y}(0,1) + f_{X,Y}(1,0) + f_{X,Y}(1,1) = 1$$

$$3. F_{X,Y}(3/2,1/2) = \sum_{\{(x,y):x \leq 3/2, y \leq 1/2\}} f_{X,Y}(x,y) = f_{X,Y}(0,0) + f_{X,Y}(1,0) = 0.1 + 0.2 = 0.3$$

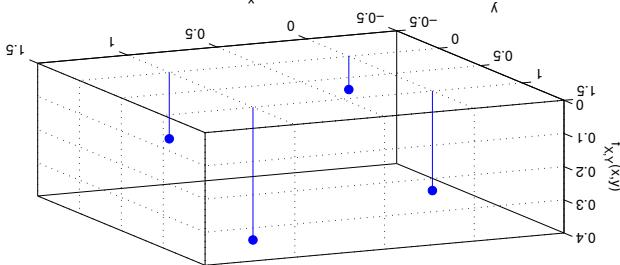
$$2. F_{X,Y}(1/2,1/2) = \sum_{\{(x,y):(0,0),(1,1)\}} f_{X,Y}(x,y) = f_{X,Y}(0,0) + f_{X,Y}(1,1) = 0.1 + 0.4$$

$$1. P(B) = \sum_{\{(x,y):(0,0),(1,1)\}} f_{X,Y}(x,y) = f_{X,Y}(0,0) + f_{X,Y}(1,1) = 0.1 + 0.4$$

From the above Table we can read for instance that the joint probability  $f_{X,Y}(0,0) = 0.1$ . Find  $P(B)$  for the event  $B = \{(0,0), (1,1)\}, F_{X,Y}(1/2,1/2), F_{X,Y}(3/2,1/2), F_{X,Y}(4,5)$  and  $F_{X,Y}(-4,-1)$ .

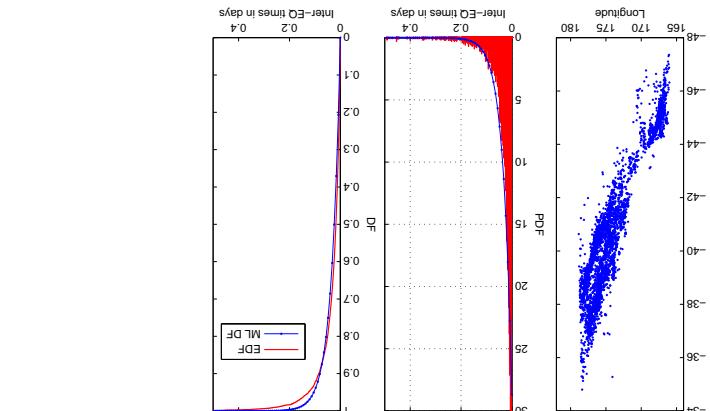
|                |       |     |     |
|----------------|-------|-----|-----|
|                | X = 1 | 0.2 | 0.4 |
| X = 0          | 0.1   | 0.2 | 0.3 |
| Y = 0    Y = 1 |       |     |     |

It is helpful to write down the JPDF  $f_{X,Y}(x,y)$  in a tabular form:



```
% Read help detainum -- converts time stamps into numbers in units of days
% Read an array of sorted time stamps of Eq events starting at 0
% disp(secret(datestr(Mind)),', and datestr(Maxd))% print Mind and Maxd as a date string
% disp(Earth quakes in NZ between % maximum dataenum
% Maxd=max(dataenum(Eq,:6:11));% maximum dataenum
% mind=min(dataenum(Eq,:6:11));% minimum dataenum
% disp(Earth quakes in NZ between % size of the matrix Eq
% size(Eq)% report the size of the matrix Eq
% Edg-dimred(earthquakes.csv',:,');% load the data in the matrix Eq
%%CUSP_ID,LAT,LONG,NZMG,NZMD,OZR_YER,OZR_MONTH,OZR_DAY,OZR_HOUR,OZR_MINUTE,OZR_SECOND,MAG,DEPTH
%%The columns in earthquakes.csv file have the following headings
%NZSEEarthquakeExplosionTimeline.m
%between earthquakes, we can compute the times
Labwork 214 (Inter-Earthquake Time Processing) To process the data to get the times
```

we can get probabilities of events and answer questions like: "What is the probability that there will be three earth quakes some where in NZ within the next hour?", etc.



**Figure 7.7:** Comparing the ExponentiaL ( $E_{128} = 28.6694$ ) PDF and DF with a histogram of 6128 empirical DF of the times (in units of days) between earth quakes in NZ. The epicentres of 6128

In particular, if  $\mathbb{B}_\delta(x, y)$  denotes a square of a small area  $\delta > 0$  that is centered at  $(x, y)$ , then the following approximate equality holds and improves as  $\delta \rightarrow 0$ :

$$\mathbb{P}((X, Y) \in \mathbb{B}_\delta(x, y)) \cong \delta f_{X,Y}(x, y). \quad (3.62)$$

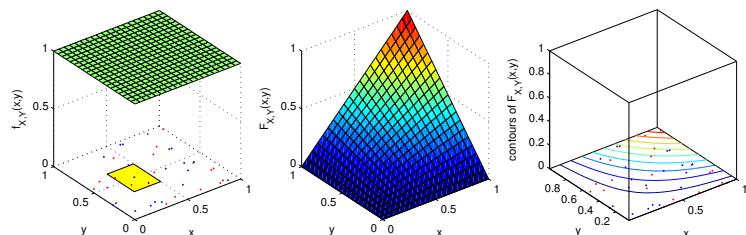
The JPDF satisfies the following two properties:

1. integrates to 1, i.e.,  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{X,Y}(x, y) dx dy = 1$
2. is a non-negative function, i.e.,  $f_{X,Y}(x, y) \geq 0$  for every  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ .

**Example 84** Let  $(X, Y)$  be a continuous R.V. that is uniformly distributed on the unit square  $[0, 1]^2 := [0, 1] \times [0, 1]$  with following JPDF:

$$f(x, y) = \mathbb{1}_{[0,1]^2}(x) \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } (x, y) \in [0, 1]^2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Find explicit expressions for the following: (1) DF  $F(x, y)$  for any  $(x, y) \in [0, 1]^2$ , (2)  $\mathbb{P}(X \leq 1/3, Y \leq 1/2)$ , (3)  $\mathbb{P}((X, Y) \in [1/4, 1/2] \times [1/3, 2/3])$ .



Let us begin to find the needed expressions.

1. Let  $(x, y) \in [0, 1]^2$  then by Equation (3.60):

$$F_{X,Y}(x, y) = \int_{-\infty}^y \int_{-\infty}^x f_{X,Y}(u, v) du dv = \int_0^y \int_0^x 1 du dv = \int_0^y [u]_{u=0}^x dv = \int_0^y x dv = [xv]_{v=0}^y = xy$$

2. We can obtain  $\mathbb{P}(X \leq 1/3, Y \leq 1/2)$  by evaluating  $F_{X,Y}$  at  $(1/3, 1/2)$ :

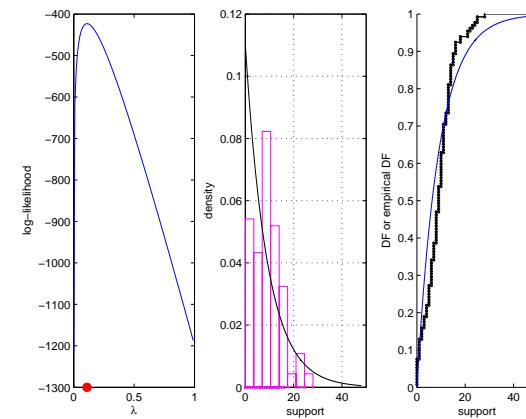
$$\mathbb{P}(X \leq 1/3, Y \leq 1/2) = F_{X,Y}(1/3, 1/2) = \frac{1}{3} \cdot \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{6}$$

We can also find  $\mathbb{P}(X \leq 1/3, Y \leq 1/2)$  by integrating the JPDF over the rectangular event  $A = \{X < 1/3, Y < 1/2\} \subset [0, 1]^2$  according to Equation (3.61). This amounts here to finding the area of  $A$ , we compute  $\mathbb{P}(A) = (1/3)(1/2) = 1/6$ .

3. We can find  $\mathbb{P}((X, Y) \in [1/4, 1/2] \times [1/3, 2/3])$  by integrating the JPDF over the rectangular event  $B = [1/4, 1/2] \times [1/3, 2/3]$  according to Equation (3.61):

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}((X, Y) \in [1/4, 1/2] \times [1/3, 2/3]) &= \int \int_B f_{X,Y}(x, y) dx dy = \int_{1/3}^{2/3} \int_{1/4}^{1/2} 1 dx dy \\ &= \int_{1/3}^{2/3} [x]_{1/4}^{1/2} dy = \int_{1/3}^{2/3} \left[ \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{4} \right] dy = \left( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{4} \right) [y]_{1/3}^{2/3} \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{4} \right) \left( \frac{2}{3} - \frac{1}{3} \right) = \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{1}{3} \right) = \frac{1}{12} \end{aligned}$$

Figure 7.6: Plot of  $\log(L(\lambda))$  as a function of the parameter  $\lambda$  and the MLE  $\hat{\lambda}_{132}$  of 0.1102 for Fenemore-Wang Orbiter Waiting Times Experiment from STAT 218 S2 2007. The density or PDF and the DF at the MLE of 0.1102 are compared with a histogram and the empirical DF.



The estimated mean waiting time for a bus to arrive is well within the 10 minutes promised by the Orbiter bus company. This data and its maximum likelihood analysis is presented visually in Figure 7.6.

The following script was used to generate the Figure 7.6: Notice how the exponential PDF  $f(x; \hat{\lambda}_{132} = 0.1102)$  and the DF  $F(x; \hat{\lambda}_{132} = 0.1102)$  based on the MLE fits with the histogram and the empirical DF, respectively.

**Example 213 (Waiting Times between Earth Quakes in NZ)** Once again from our work in Example 211 we can now easily obtain the maximum likelihood estimate of  $\lambda^*$  and the 95% confidence interval for it, under the assumption that the waiting times (in days) between the 6128 measurable earth-quakes in NZ from 18-Jan-2008 02:23:44 to 18-Aug-2008 19:29:29 are IID Exponential( $\lambda^*$ ) RVs as follows:

$$\hat{\lambda}_{6128} = 1/\bar{x}_{6128} = 1/0.0349 = 28.6694 \quad (28.6694 \pm 1.96 \times 28.6694/\sqrt{6128}) = (27.95, 29.39) ,$$

and thus the estimated mean time in days and minutes between earth quakes (somewhere in NZ over the first 8 months in 2008), as processed in Labwork 214, is

$$1/\hat{\lambda}_{6128} = \bar{x}_{6128} = 0.0349 \text{ days} = 0.0349 * 24 * 60 = 50.2560 \text{ minutes} .$$

This data and its maximum likelihood analysis is presented visually in Figure 7.7. The PDF and DF corresponding to the  $\hat{\lambda}_{6128}$  (blue curves in Figure 7.7) are the best fitting PDF and DF from the parametric family of PDFs in  $\{e^{-\lambda x} : \lambda \in (0, \infty)\}$  and DFs in  $\{1 - e^{-\lambda x} : \lambda \in (0, \infty)\}$  to the density histogram and the empirical distribution function given by the data, respectively. Clearly, there is room for improving beyond the model of IID Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RVs, but the fit with just one real-valued parameter is not too bad either. Finally, with the best fitting PDF  $28.6694e^{-28.6694x}$

$$1/X_{132} = 9.0758 \text{ minutes.}$$

and thus the estimated mean waiting time is

$$X_{132} = 1/X_{132} = 1/9.0758 = 0.1102 \quad (0.1102 \pm 1.96 \times 0.1102/\sqrt{132}) = (0.0914, 0.1290)$$

From our work in Example 211 we can now easily obtain the maximum likelihood estimate of  $\lambda^*$  and the 95% confidence interval for it, under the assumption that the waiting times  $X_1, \dots, X_{132}$  are IID Exponential( $\lambda^*$ ) RVs as follows:

```
%ans = 9.0758
ans = mean(orbitertimes)
ans = 9.0758

%The raw data --> the waiting times to nearest minute between bus stops at Bus Stop Stop By Bagay Street
%Joshua Feneimore and Yiran Wang collected data on waiting times between buses at an Orbiter bus-stops to campus. They collected a sample of size n = 132 with sample mean x̄₁₃₂ = 9.0758.

for the supposedly exponentially distributed waiting times at the on-campus Orbiter bus-stop.
Example 212 (Orbiter Waiting Times) Let us apply this MLE estimator of the rate parameter
observations  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ .  $\lambda^*$  Exponential( $\lambda^*$ ) is  $1/x_n$  and the MLE estimator  $\hat{\lambda}_n = 1/X_n$ .
Therefore, the MLE estimate  $\hat{\lambda}_n$  of the unknown rate parameter  $\lambda^*$  ∈ A on the basis of n IID observations  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  is  $\hat{\lambda}_n = 1/X_n$ .
```

Since we have worked "hard" to get the maximum likelihood estimate for a general IID model  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ ,  $\lambda^*$  Exponential( $\lambda^*$ ). Let us kill two birds with the same stone by applying it to two datasets:

2. Time between earthquakes in New Zealand over a few months.

1. Orbiter waiting times and

2. Time between earthquakes in New Zealand over a few months.

Since we have worked "hard" to get the maximum likelihood estimate for a general IID model  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ ,  $\lambda^*$  Exponential( $\lambda^*$ ). Let us kill two birds with the same stone by applying it to two datasets:

1. Orbiter waiting times and

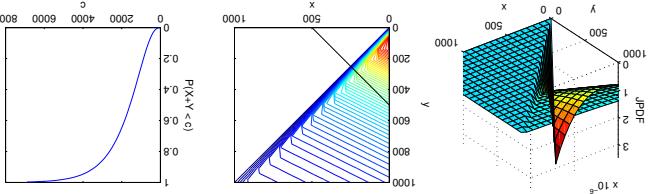
2. Time between earthquakes in New Zealand over a few months.

Now, let us find the estimated standard error:

$$\hat{\lambda}_n = \frac{1}{\bar{X}_n}$$

Since  $\lambda > 0$  and  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $-\lambda\chi^2_2 = -n/\lambda^2 < 0$ , so we have found the maximum likelihood estimate:

CHAPTER 7. INFERENCE FOR STATISTICAL EXPERIMENTS



Let us answer the questions.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

11.

12.

13.

14.

15.

16.

17.

18.

19.

20.

21.

22.

23.

24.

25.

26.

27.

28.

29.

30.

31.

32.

33.

34.

35.

36.

37.

38.

39.

40.

41.

42.

43.

44.

45.

46.

47.

48.

49.

50.

51.

52.

53.

54.

55.

56.

57.

58.

59.

60.

61.

62.

63.

64.

65.

66.

67.

68.

69.

70.

71.

72.

73.

74.

75.

76.

77.

78.

79.

80.

81.

82.

83.

84.

85.

86.

87.

88.

89.

90.

91.

92.

93.

94.

95.

96.

97.

98.

99.

100.

101.

102.

103.

104.

105.

106.

107.

108.

109.

110.

111.

112.

113.

114.

115.

116.

117.

118.

119.

120.

121.

122.

123.

124.

125.

126.

127.

128.

129.

130.

131.

132.

133.

134.

135.

136.

137.

138.

139.

140.

141.

142.

143.

144.

145.

146.

147.

148.

149.

150.

151.

152.

153.

154.

155.

156.

157.

158.

159.

160.

161.

162.

163.

164.

165.

166.

167.

168.

169.

170.

171.

172.

173.

174.

175.

176.

177.

178.

179.

180.

181.

182.

183.

184.

185.

186.

187.

188.

189.

190.

191.

192.

193.

194.

195.

196.

197.

198.

199.

200.

2.

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{y=-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{x=-\infty}^{\infty} f_{X,Y}(x,y) dx dy &= \int_{x=0}^{\infty} \int_{y=x}^{\infty} f_{X,Y}(x,y) dy dx \\
&= \int_{x=0}^{\infty} \int_{y=x}^{\infty} \frac{6}{10^6} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{1000}x - \frac{2}{1000}y\right) dy dx \\
&= \frac{6}{10^6} \int_{x=0}^{\infty} \left( \int_{y=x}^{\infty} \exp\left(-\frac{2}{1000}y\right) dy \right) \exp\left(-\frac{1}{1000}x\right) dx \\
&= \frac{6}{10^6} \int_{x=0}^{\infty} \left[ -\frac{1000}{2} \exp\left(-\frac{2}{1000}y\right) \right]_{y=x}^{\infty} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{1000}x\right) dx \\
&= \frac{6}{10^6} \int_{x=0}^{\infty} \left[ 0 + \frac{1000}{2} \exp\left(-\frac{2}{1000}x\right) \right] \exp\left(-\frac{1}{1000}x\right) dx \\
&= \frac{6}{10^6} \int_{x=0}^{\infty} \frac{1000}{2} \exp\left(-\frac{2}{1000}x - \frac{1}{1000}x\right) dx \\
&= \frac{6}{10^6} \frac{1000}{2} \left[ -\frac{1000}{3} \exp\left(-\frac{3}{1000}x\right) \right]_{x=0}^{\infty} \\
&= \frac{6}{10^6} \frac{1000}{2} \left[ 0 + \frac{1000}{3} \right] \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

3. First, identify the region with positive JPDF for the event  $(X \leq 400, Y \leq 800)$ 

$$\begin{aligned}
P(X \leq 400, Y \leq 800) &= \int_{x=0}^{400} \int_{y=x}^{800} f_{X,Y}(x,y) dy dx \\
&= \int_{x=0}^{400} \int_{y=x}^{800} \frac{6}{10^6} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{1000}x - \frac{2}{1000}y\right) dy dx \\
&= \frac{6}{10^6} \int_{x=0}^{400} \left[ -\frac{1000}{2} \exp\left(-\frac{2}{1000}y\right) \right]_{y=x}^{800} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{1000}x\right) dx \\
&= \frac{6}{10^6} \frac{1000}{2} \int_{x=0}^{400} \left( -\exp\left(-\frac{1600}{1000}x\right) + \exp\left(-\frac{2}{1000}x\right) \right) \exp\left(-\frac{1}{1000}x\right) dx \\
&= \frac{6}{10^6} \frac{1000}{2} \int_{x=0}^{400} \left( \exp\left(-\frac{3}{1000}x\right) - e^{-8/5} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{1000}x\right) \right) dx \\
&= \frac{6}{10^6} \frac{1000}{2} \left( \left( -\frac{1000}{3} \exp\left(-\frac{3}{1000}x\right) \right)_{x=0}^{400} - e^{-8/5} \left( -1000 \exp\left(-\frac{1}{1000}x\right) \right)_{x=0}^{400} \right) \\
&= \frac{6}{10^6} \frac{1000}{2} 1000 \left( \frac{1}{3} \left( 1 - e^{-6/5} \right) - e^{-8/5} \left( 1 - e^{-2/5} \right) \right) \\
&= 3 \left( \frac{1}{3} \left( 1 - e^{-6/5} \right) - e^{-8/5} \left( 1 - e^{-2/5} \right) \right) \\
&\approx 0.499 .
\end{aligned}$$

4. First, identify the region with positive JPDF for the event  $(X + Y \leq c)$ , say  $c = 500$  (but generally  $c$  can be any positive number). This is the triangular region at the intersection of the four half-planes:  $x > 0$ ,  $x < c$ ,  $y > x$  and  $y < c - x$ . (Draw picture here) Let's integrate

- Step 4: Check if this solution is indeed a maximum of  $\ell_n(\theta)$  by checking if:

$$\frac{d^2}{d\theta^2} (\ell_n(\theta)) < 0 .$$

- Step 5: If  $\frac{d^2}{d\theta^2} (\ell_n(\theta)) < 0$  then you have found the maximum likelihood estimate  $\hat{\theta}_n$ .

- Step 6: If you also want the  $(1 - \alpha)$  confidence interval then get it from

$$\hat{\theta}_n \pm z_{\alpha/2} \hat{s}_{\theta_n} , \text{ where } \hat{s}_{\theta_n} = \sqrt{\left( \left[ -\frac{d^2 \ell_n(\theta)}{d\theta^2} \right]_{\theta=\hat{\theta}_n} \right)^{-1}} .$$

Let us apply this method in some examples.

**Example 211 (Maximum likelihood estimation for IID Exponential( $\lambda^*$ ) trials)** Find (or derive) the maximum likelihood estimate  $\hat{\lambda}_n$  and the  $(1 - \alpha)$  confidence interval of the fixed and possibly unknown parameter  $\lambda^*$  for the IID experiment:

$$X_1, \dots, X_n \stackrel{IID}{\sim} \text{Exponential}(\lambda^*), \quad \lambda^* \in \mathbf{A} = (0, \infty) .$$

Note that  $\mathbf{A}$  is the parameter space.We first obtain the log-likelihood function  $\ell_n(\theta)$  given data  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\ell_n(\lambda) &:= \log(L(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n; \lambda)) = \log \left( \prod_{i=1}^n f_{X_i}(x_i; \lambda) \right) = \log \left( \prod_{i=1}^n \lambda e^{-\lambda x_i} \right) \\
&= \log \left( \lambda e^{-\lambda x_1} \cdot \lambda e^{-\lambda x_2} \cdots \lambda e^{-\lambda x_n} \right) = \log \left( \lambda^n e^{-\lambda \sum_{i=1}^n x_i} \right) = \log(\lambda^n) + \log \left( e^{-\lambda \sum_{i=1}^n x_i} \right) \\
&= \boxed{\log(\lambda^n) - \lambda \sum_{i=1}^n x_i}
\end{aligned}$$

Now, let us take the derivative with respect to  $\lambda$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{d\lambda} (\ell_n(\lambda)) &:= \frac{d}{d\lambda} \left( \log(\lambda^n) - \lambda \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) = \frac{d}{d\lambda} (\log(\lambda^n)) - \frac{d}{d\lambda} \left( \lambda \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) = \frac{1}{\lambda^n} \frac{d}{d\lambda} (\lambda^n) - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \\
&= \frac{1}{\lambda^n} n \lambda^{n-1} - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = \boxed{\frac{n}{\lambda} - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i} .
\end{aligned}$$

Next, we set the derivative to 0, solve for  $\lambda$ , and let the solution equal to the ML estimate  $\hat{\lambda}_n$ .

$$0 = \frac{d}{d\lambda} (\ell_n(\lambda)) \iff 0 = \frac{n}{\lambda} - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \iff \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = \frac{n}{\lambda} \iff \lambda = \frac{n}{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i} \quad \text{and let } \boxed{\hat{\lambda}_n = \frac{1}{\bar{x}_n}} .$$

Next, we find the second derivative and check if it is negative.

$$\frac{d^2}{d\lambda^2} (\ell_n(\lambda)) = \frac{d}{d\lambda} \left( \frac{d}{d\lambda} (\ell_n(\lambda)) \right) = \frac{d}{d\lambda} \left( \frac{n}{\lambda} - \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) = \boxed{-n\lambda^{-2}} .$$

|         |         |
|---------|---------|
| $X = 0$ | $Y = 1$ |
| $X = 0$ | $Y = 0$ |
| $X = 1$ | $Y = 1$ |

**Example 86** Obtain the marginal PMFs  $f_Y(y)$  and  $f_X(x)$  from the joint PMF  $f_{X,Y}(x,y)$  of the discrete R.V.'s in Example 83, just sum  $f_{X,Y}(x,y)$  over  $x$ 's and  $y$ 's (reported in a tabular form):

$$\left\{ \int_{-\infty}^x f(X, y) dy \quad \text{if } (X, Y) \text{ is a continuous RV} \right. \\ \left. \sum_x f(X, y) \quad \text{if } (X, Y) \text{ is a discrete RV} \right\} = f_Y(y)$$

and the marginal PDF or PMF of  $Y$  is defined by:

$$\left\{ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(X, Y) dY dX \quad \text{if } (X, Y) \text{ is a continuous RV} \right. \\ \left. \sum_{y=1}^{f(y)} \quad \text{if } (X, Y) \text{ is a discrete RV} \right\} = (x) X f$$

**Definition 37** (Marginal PDF or PMF) If the RV  $(X, Y)$  has joint PDF  $f_{X,Y}(x,y)$  as its joint PDF or joint PMF, then the marginal PDF or PMF of a random vector  $(X, Y)$  is defined by :

We can obtain  $P(X + Y < c)$  for several values of  $c$  using MATLAB and note that about 96% of requests are processed in less than 300 milliseconds or 3 seconds.

$$\begin{aligned}
&= 1 - \frac{4e^{-c/2000}}{c} + \frac{3e^{-c/500}}{500} = \\
&= 1 - \frac{e^{-c/2000}}{c} + \frac{3e^{-c/1000}}{1000} - \frac{3e^{-c/2000}}{2000} = \\
&= \frac{3}{1} \left( 1 - e^{-c/2000} \right) - \frac{e^{-c/1000}}{1000} \left( e^{c/2000} - 1 \right) = \\
&= \left( \frac{0=x}{x/c} \left[ \left( \frac{1000}{x} \right) dx \right] - \frac{0=x}{x/c} \left[ \left( \frac{0001}{x^2} \right) dx \right] \right) \varepsilon = \\
&\quad \left( \frac{0=x}{x/c} \left[ \left( \frac{0001}{x} \right) dx \right] - \left( \frac{0001}{x} \right) \right) \varepsilon = \\
&= xp \left( \frac{0001}{x} \right) dx \left[ \left( \frac{0001}{x^2} \right) dx \right] + \left( \frac{0001}{x^2} \right) dx \left[ \left( \frac{0001}{x} \right) \right] \varepsilon = \\
&= xp \left( x \frac{0001}{1} \right) dx \left[ \left( \frac{0001}{x^2} \right) dx \right] - \frac{0=x}{x/c} \int \frac{0001}{x^2} dx = \\
&= xp \left( x \frac{0001}{1} \right) dx \left[ \left( \frac{0001}{x^2} \right) dx \right] - \frac{0=x}{x/c} \int \frac{0001}{x^2} dx = \\
&= xp \#p \left( x \frac{0001}{1} \right) dx \left[ \left( \frac{0001}{x^2} \right) dx \right] - \frac{0=x}{x/c} \int \frac{0001}{x^2} dx = \\
&= xp \#p \left( \frac{0001}{1} - x \frac{0001}{1} \right) dx \left[ \frac{0001}{x^2} \right] - \frac{0=x}{x/c} \int \frac{0001}{x^2} dx = \\
&= xp \#p(\#_1 x) \cdot X' x f \left[ \frac{0001}{x^2} \right] - \frac{0=x}{x/c} \int \frac{0001}{x^2} dx = (\#_1 \lambda + X) d
\end{aligned}$$

the PDF over our triangular event as follows:

$$\cdot ((\theta)^u \mathcal{J}) \frac{\theta^p}{p}$$

- Step 2: Obtain the derivative of  $\ell_n(\theta)$  with respect to  $\theta$ :

$$\cdot \left( (\theta^{ux})^x X f \frac{\prod_{i=1}^t}{u} \right) \text{soI} = ((\theta^{ux} \cdots x_i \cdots x_t) u x \cdots x_i X f) \text{soI} = ((\theta^u T) \text{soI} = (\theta)^u \text{soI}$$

Note that if the model assumes that  $(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$  is jointly independent, i.e. we have an independent and identically distributed (IID) experiment, then  $f_{\mu}(\theta)$  simplifies further as

$$\cdot \quad ((\theta^u x^u; x^1, \dots, x^u) f) = \log((\theta^u T^u) f) = (\theta^u u) f$$

- Step 1: Find the expression for the log likelihood function:

the  $(1 - \alpha)$  confidence interval for  $\theta_*$ .

- the point estimate  $\hat{\theta}_n$  of the "true" parameter  $\theta_*$  and

$$\Theta \ni \theta \quad \left( \begin{matrix} x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \\ X^1, X^2, \dots, X^n \end{matrix} \right) \sim f_{X^1, X^2, \dots, X^n}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$$

which is modeled as a sample or realization from the random vector:

**Background:** We have observed data:

## Likelihood Estimation Method in Six Easy Steps

<sup>6</sup> The parameter space  $\Theta$  is bounded then  $\theta^*$  must not belong to the boundaries of  $\Theta$ .

every  $\theta$  and  $\vartheta$  in  $\Theta$ , if  $\theta \neq \vartheta$  then  $f_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n; \theta) \neq f_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n; \vartheta)$ .  
 at least for some  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{X}$ .

<sup>11</sup> The *Supra*  $\theta = \Theta$  — of course the probabilities do depend on  $\theta$  in a non-trivial manner for the outcome  $\theta$ .

so conditions hold.

emerges if  $\theta$  is a function of  $\Theta$  for simplest parametric family of models involving MLE product of dimension  $d = 1$  naturally generalize to an arbitrary, but finite, dimension  $d$ . The ideas in the  $Hessian$  ( $a \times d$  matrix of mixed partial derivatives) of  $u(\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_d)$ . The  $\theta$ 's are given by the normal distribution with mean vector  $\theta^*$  and variance-covariance matrix of standard errors given by  $(\text{se})_{ij} = \text{Cov}_{\theta^*}(\theta_i, \theta_j)$ , where  $\text{Cov}_{\theta^*}(A, B) = E[(A - \theta^*)(B - \theta^*)^T]$ .

From the above Table we can find:

$$\begin{aligned} f_X(x) &= P(X = x) = \sum_y f_{X,Y}(x,y) \\ &= f_{X,Y}(x,0) + f_{X,Y}(x,1) = \begin{cases} f_{X,Y}(0,0) + f_{X,Y}(0,1) = 0.1 + 0.3 = 0.4 & \text{if } x = 0 \\ f_{X,Y}(1,0) + f_{X,Y}(1,1) = 0.2 + 0.4 = 0.6 & \text{if } x = 1 \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

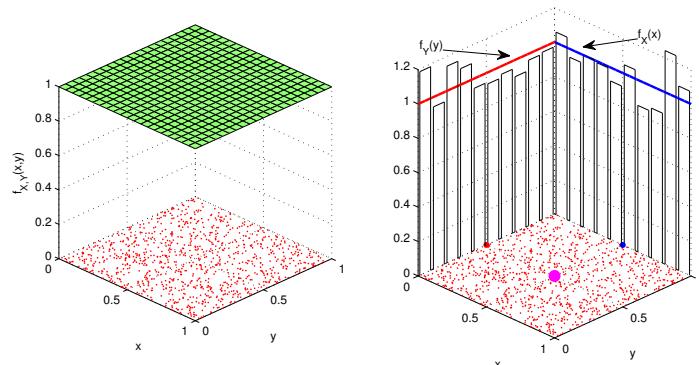
Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} f_Y(y) &= P(Y = y) = \sum_x f_{X,Y}(x,y) \\ &= f_{X,Y}(0,y) + f_{X,Y}(1,y) = \begin{cases} f_{X,Y}(0,0) + f_{X,Y}(1,0) = 0.1 + 0.2 = 0.3 & \text{if } y = 0 \\ f_{X,Y}(0,1) + f_{X,Y}(1,1) = 0.3 + 0.4 = 0.7 & \text{if } y = 1 \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

Just report the marginal probabilities as row and column sums of the JPDF table.

Thus marginal PMF gives us the probability of a specific RV, within a R $\vec{V}$ , taking a value irrespective of the value taken by the other RV in this R $\vec{V}$ .

**Example 87** Obtain the marginal PDFs  $f_Y(y)$  and  $f_X(x)$  from the joint PDF  $f_{X,Y}(x,y)$  of the continuous R $\vec{V}$  in Example 84 (the bivariate uniform R $\vec{V}$  on  $[0, 1]^2$ ).



Let us suppose  $(x, y) \in [0, 1]^2$  and note that  $f_{X,Y} = 0$  if  $(x, y) \notin [0, 1]^2$ . We can obtain marginal PMFs  $f_X(x)$  and  $f_Y(y)$  by integrating the JPDF  $f_{X,Y} = 1$  along  $y$  and  $x$ , respectively.

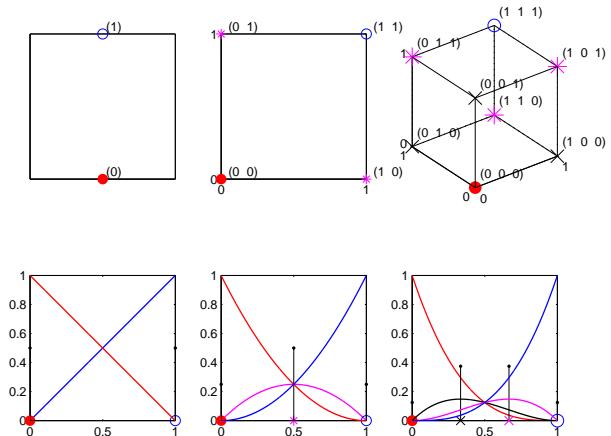
$$f_X(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{X,Y}(x,y) dy = \int_0^1 f_{X,Y}(x,y) dy = \int_0^1 1 dy = [y]_0^1 = 1 - 0 = 1$$

Similarly,

$$f_Y(y) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{X,Y}(x,y) dx = \int_0^1 f_{X,Y}(x,y) dx = \int_0^1 1 dx = [x]_0^1 = 1 - 0 = 1$$

We are seeing a histogram of the **marginal samples** and their marginal PDFs in the Figure.

Figure 7.5: Data Spaces  $\mathbb{X}_1 = \{0, 1\}$ ,  $\mathbb{X}_2 = \{0, 1\}^2$  and  $\mathbb{X}_3 = \{0, 1\}^3$  for one, two and three IID Bernoulli trials, respectively and the corresponding likelihood functions.



### Useful Properties of the Maximum Likelihood Estimator

1. The ML Estimator is *asymptotically consistent* (gives the “true”  $\theta^*$  as sample size  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ):

$$\hat{\Theta}_n \rightsquigarrow \text{Point Mass}(\theta^*)$$

2. The ML Estimator is asymptotically normal (has a normal distribution concentrating on  $\theta^*$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ):

$$\hat{\Theta}_n \rightsquigarrow \text{Normal}(\theta^*, (\hat{s}\hat{e}_n)^2)$$

or equivalently:

$$(\hat{\Theta}_n - \theta^*)/\hat{s}\hat{e}_n \rightsquigarrow \text{Normal}(0, 1)$$

where  $\hat{s}\hat{e}_n$  is the **estimated standard error**, i.e. the standard deviation of  $\hat{\Theta}_n$ , and it is given by the square-root of the inverse negative curvature of  $\ell_n(\theta)$  at  $\hat{\theta}_n$ :

$$\hat{s}\hat{e}_n = \sqrt{\left( \left[ -\frac{d^2 \ell_n(\theta)}{d\theta^2} \right]_{\theta=\hat{\theta}_n} \right)^{-1}}$$

3. Because of the previous two properties, the  $1 - \alpha$  confidence interval is:

$$\hat{\Theta}_n \pm z_{\alpha/2} \hat{s}\hat{e}_n$$

MLE is a general methodology for parameter estimation in an essentially arbitrary parameter space  $\Theta$  that is defining or indexing the laws in a parametric family of models, although we are only

$$P(Y > 2000) = 0.0475 + 0.0025 = 0.05$$

(try as a tutorial problem)

$$\begin{aligned} P(Y > 2000) &= \int_{2000}^{\infty} \left( \int_{\infty}^{y=2000} 6 \times 10^{-6} e^{-0.001x - 0.002y} dy \right) dx \\ &= \int_{2000}^{\infty} \left( \int_{\infty}^{y=2000} 6 \times 10^{-6} e^{-0.001x - 0.002y} dy \right) dx \end{aligned}$$

Alternatively, you can obtain  $P(Y > 2000)$  by directly integrating the joint PDF  $f_{X,Y}(x,y)$  over the appropriate region (but you may now have to integrate two pieces: rectangular infinite strip  $(x,y) : 0 < x < 2000, y > 2000$  and a triangular infinite piece  $(x,y) : y > x, y > 2000, x < 2000$ ). more involved but we get the same answer.

$$\begin{aligned} &= 0.05 \\ &= 6 \times 10^{-3} \left( \frac{e^{-0.002}}{e^{-0.003}} - \frac{e^{-0.003}}{e^{-0.003}} \right) \\ &= 6 \times 10^{-3} \left( \frac{e^{-0.002}}{e^{-0.003}} \right) - \left( \frac{e^{-0.003}}{e^{-0.003}} \right)^{2000} \\ &= 6 \times 10^{-3} \int_{2000}^{\infty} e^{-0.002y} dy - \int_{\infty}^{2000} e^{-0.003y} dy \\ &= \int_{\infty}^{2000} 6 \times 10^{-3} e^{-0.002y} (1 - e^{-0.001y}) dy \\ &= \int_{\infty}^{2000} f_Y(y) dy \end{aligned}$$

We have the marginal PDF of  $Y$  and from this we can obtain

$$\begin{aligned} L^1(\theta) &= L^1(x_1; \theta) = f_{X_1}(x_1; \theta) = \theta_0 (1 - \theta)^{n-1} = 1 - \theta \\ &= 6 \times 10^{-3} e^{-0.002y} (1 - e^{-0.001y}) \\ &= 6 \times 10^{-6} e^{-0.002y} \left( \frac{1 - e^{-0.001y}}{e^{-0.001y}} \right)^{1000} \\ &= 6 \times 10^{-6} e^{-0.002y} \left( \frac{e^{-0.001y}}{e^{-0.001y}} \right)^{1000} \\ &= 6 \times 10^{-6} e^{-0.002y} \int_{x=0}^{\infty} e^{-0.001x} dx \\ &= 6 \times 10^{-6} \int_{y=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-0.002y} \int_{x=0}^{\infty} e^{-0.001x} dx dy \\ &= \int_{y=-\infty}^{\infty} f_Y(y) dy \end{aligned}$$

First we need to obtain an expression for  $f_Y(y)$ . For  $y > 0$ ,  
Use  $f_Y(y)$  to compute the probability that  $Y$  exceeds 2000 milliseconds.

$$f_{X,Y}(x,y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{1000} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{1000}x - \frac{1}{2}y\right) & \text{if } x < 0, y < 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Example 88 Obtain the marginal PDF  $f_Y(y)$  from the joint PDF  $f_{X,Y}(x,y)$  of the continuous RV in Example 85 that gave the response times of a web server.  
Thus marginal PDF gives us the probability density of a specific RV in a RV, irrespective of the value taken by the other RV in this RV.

$$\Theta_n := \arg\max_{\theta \in \Theta} L_n(\theta)$$

is a monotone increasing function):

Equivalently, MLE is the value of  $\theta$  that maximizes the log-likelihood function (since  $\log = \ln$ )

$$\Theta_n := \arg\max_{\theta \in \Theta} L_n(\theta)$$

$\theta^*$  is the value of  $\theta$  that maximizes the likelihood function:  
Then the maximum likelihood estimator (MLE)  $\Theta_n$  of the fixed and possibly unknown parameter

$$(X_1, \dots, X_n) \sim f_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n}(x_1, \dots, x_n; \theta^*)$$

**Definition 137 (Maximum Likelihood Estimator (MLE))** Let the model for the data be

$$\begin{aligned} L_n(\theta) &:= L_n(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n; \theta) = f_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n; \theta) \\ &= \prod_{i=1}^n f_{X_i}^i(x_i; \theta) = (\theta^i)^{x_i} (1 - \theta)^{1-x_i} \end{aligned} \quad (7.56)$$

is obtained by multiplying the densities due to our IID assumption:  
Panel of Figure 7.5, where  $n \in \{1, 2, 3\}$ , then our likelihood function (see bottom panel of Figure 7.5).  
If we have  $n$  observations  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ , i.e. a vertex point of the unit hypercube  $\{0, 1\}^n$  (see top

$$L^1(\theta) = L^1(x_1; \theta) = f_{X_1}(x_1; \theta) = \theta_0 (1 - \theta)^{n-1} = 1 - \theta$$

If we only have one observation and it happens to be  $x_1 = 0$ , then our likelihood function is:

$$L^1(\theta) = L^1(x_1; \theta) = f_{X_1}(x_1; \theta) = \theta_0 (1 - \theta)^{n-1} = \theta (1 - \theta)_0 = \theta$$

If we only have one observation and it happens to be  $x_1 = 1$ , then our likelihood function is:  
the first observation.

Let us understand the likelihood function for one observation first. There are two possibilities for  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Ber}(0)$ , with PDF  $f_{X_i}(x_i; \theta) = \theta^{x_i} (1 - \theta)^{1-x_i}$ , for  $i \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .  
experiment:

$$L_n(\theta) := \log(L_n(\theta)) \quad (7.55)$$

The log-likelihood function is defined by:

$$L_n(\theta) := L_n(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n; \theta) = f_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n; \theta) \quad (7.54)$$

Then the likelihood function given by  $L_n(\theta)$  is merely the joint probability of the data, with the exception that we see it as a function of the parameter:  
 $f_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n; \theta)$  specified by parameter  $\theta \in \Theta$ . Let the observed data be  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ .

We have seen the notion of independence of two events in Definition 16 or of a sequence of events in Definition 17. Recall that independence amounts to having the probability of the joint occurrence of the events to be given by the product of the probabilities of each of the events.

We can use the definition of independence of two events to define the independence of two random variables using their distribution functions.

**Definition 38 (Independence of Two RVs)** Consider an  $\mathbb{R}^2$ -valued RV  $X := (X_1, X_2)$ . Then the  $\mathbb{R}$ -valued RVs  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are said to be independent or independently distributed if and only if

$$P(X_1 \leq x_1, X_2 \leq x_2) = P(X_1 \leq x_1) P(X_2 \leq x_2)$$

or equivalently,

$$F_{X_1, X_2}(x_1, x_2) = F_{X_1}(x_1) F_{X_2}(x_2),$$

for any pair of real numbers  $(x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ .

By the above definition, for **discrete** RVs  $X_1, X_2$  that are independent, the following equality is satisfied between the joint and marginal PMFs:

$$f_{X_1, X_2}(x_1, x_2) = P(X_1 = x_1, X_2 = x_2) = P(X_1 = x_1) P(X_2 = x_2) = f_{X_1}(x_1) f_{X_2}(x_2) \text{ for any } (x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2,$$

and for **continuous** RVs  $X_1, X_2$  that are independent, the following equality is satisfied between the joint and marginal PDFs:

$$f_{X_1, X_2}(x_1, x_2) = f_{X_1}(x_1) f_{X_2}(x_2) \text{ for any } (x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2.$$

In summary, two RVs  $X$  and  $Y$  are said to be **independent** if and only if for every  $(x, y)$

$$F_{X, Y}(x, y) = F_X(x) \times F_Y(y) \quad \text{or} \quad f_{X, Y}(x, y) = f_X(x) \times f_Y(y)$$

Let us confirm that our familiar experiment of tossing a fair coin twice independently when encoded by a pair of independent Bernoulli(1/2) RVs satisfies the above definition.

**Example 89 (Pair of independent Bernoulli(1/2) RVs)** Let  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  be a pair of independent Bernoulli(1/2) RVs each taking values in the set  $\{0, 1\}$  with the following tabulated probabilities. Verify that the JPMF  $f_{X_1, X_2}(x_1, x_2) = 1/4$  for each  $(x_1, x_2) \in \{0, 1\}^2$  is indeed given by the marginal PMF  $f_{X_i}(x_i) = 1/2$  for each  $i \in \{1, 2\}$  and each  $x_i \in \{0, 1\}$ .

|           | $X_2 = 0$ | $X_2 = 1$ |     |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----|
| $X_1 = 0$ | 1/4       | 1/4       | 1/2 |
| $X_1 = 1$ | 1/4       | 1/4       | 1/2 |
|           | 1/2       | 1/2       | 1   |

From the above Table we can read for instance that the *joint probability* that  $\mathbb{R}^2$ -valued RV  $(X_1, X_2)$  takes the value or realization  $(0, 0)$  is 1/4 from the first entry of the inner-most tabulated rectangle, i.e.,  $P((X_1, X_2) = (0, 0)) = 1/4$ , and that the *marginal probability* that the RV  $X_1$  takes the value or realization 0 is 1/2, i.e.,  $P(X_1 = 0) = 1/2$ . Clearly,  $1/4 = 1/2 \times 1/2$ , and so our familiar experiment when seen as an  $\mathbb{R}^2$ -valued RV is indeed composed of two independent  $\mathbb{R}$ -valued Bernoulli(1/2) RVs.

## 7.8 Parameter Estimation and Likelihood

Now that we have been introduced to point and set estimation of the population mean and the population proportion using the notion of convergence in distribution for sequences of RVs as well as concentration inequalities, we can begin to appreciate the art of estimation in a more general setting. Parameter estimation is the basic problem in statistical inference and machine learning. We will formalize the general estimation problem here.

As we have already seen, when estimating the population mean or population proportion, there are two basic types of estimators. In point estimation, as seen in Definition 119, we are interested in estimating a particular point of interest that is supposed to belong to a set of points. In (confidence) set estimation, we are interested in estimating a set with a particular form that has a specified probability of “trapping” the particular point of interest from a set of points. Here, a point should be interpreted as an element of a collection of elements from some space.

### 7.8.1 Point and Set Estimation – A General Likelihood Approach

**Point estimation** is any statistical methodology that provides one with a “single best guess” of some specific quantity of interest. Traditionally, we denote this **quantity of interest** as  $\theta^*$  and its **point estimate** as  $\hat{\theta}$  or  $\hat{\theta}_n$ . The subscript  $n$  in the point estimate  $\hat{\theta}_n$  emphasizes that our estimate is based on  $n$  observations or data points from a given statistical experiment to estimate  $\theta^*$ . This quantity of interest, which is usually unknown, can be:

- a **parameter**  $\theta^*$  which is an element of the **parameter space**  $\Theta$ , i.e.  $\theta^* \in \Theta$  such that  $\theta^*$  specifies the “law” of the observations (realizations or samples) of the RV  $(X_1, \dots, X_n)$  modeled by JPDF or JPMF  $f_{X_1, \dots, X_n}(x_1, \dots, x_n; \theta^*)$ , or
- a **regression function**  $\theta^* \in \Theta$ , where  $\Theta$  is a class of regression functions in a regression experiment with model:  $Y = \theta^*(X) + \epsilon$ , such that  $E(\epsilon) = 0$  and  $\theta^*$  specifies the “law” of pairs of observations  $\{(X_i, Y_i)\}_{i=1}^n$ , for e.g., fitting parameters in noisy ODE or PDEs from observed data — one can always do a **prediction** in a regression experiment, i.e. when you want to estimate  $Y_i$  given  $X_i$ , or
- a **classifier**  $\theta^* \in \Theta$ , i.e. a regression experiment with discrete  $Y = \theta^*(X) + \epsilon$ , for e.g. training an scrub-nurse robot to assist a human surgeon, or
- an **integral**  $\theta^* := \int_A h(x) dx \in \Theta$ . If  $\theta^*$  is finite, then  $\Theta = \mathbb{R}$ , for e.g.  $\theta^*$  could be the volume of a high-dimensional irregular polyhedron, a traffic congestion measure on a network of roadways, the expected profit from a new brew of beer, or the probability of an extreme event such as the collapse of a dam in the Southern Alps in the next 150 years.

**Set estimation** is any statistical methodology that provides one with a “best smallest set”, such as an interval, rectangle, ellipse, etc. that contains  $\theta^*$  with a high probability  $1 - \alpha$ .

Recall that a statistic is a RV or  $\mathbb{R}^V T(X)$  that maps every data point  $x$  in the data space  $\mathbb{X}$  with  $T(x) = t$  in its range  $\mathbb{T}$ , i.e.  $T(x) : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{T}$  (Definition 51). Next, we look at a specific class of estimators based on the likelihood of the data.

### 7.8.2 Likelihood

We take a look at **likelihood** — one of the most fundamental concepts in Statistics.

$$f_{X_1, X_2}(x_1, x_2) = \frac{u}{L} \mathbb{I}_{[0, u]}(x_1) \times \frac{u}{L} \mathbb{I}_{[0, u]}(x_2) = \frac{u^2}{L^2} \mathbb{I}_{[0, u] \times [0, u]}(x_1, x_2).$$

joint probability density function (JPDF) is:  
in the interval  $[0, L]$ . Hence assuming that the RVs  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are independent, we find that their the RV  $X_1$  is uniformly distributed in the interval  $[0, u]$ , while the RV  $X_2$  is uniformly distributed of Figure 3.19). Then the conditions of the "needle tossing at random" experiment are such that between the bottom point of the needle and the nearest line above this point (see sub-figure Let  $X_1$  be the angle between the needle and the direction of the rulings, and let  $X_2$  be the distance joint probability density function (JPDF) is:

*Solution:*

What is the probability that the needle intersects one of the parallel lines? Can you use repeated trials of this experiment to find an approximation to  $u$ ?

**Example 92 (Buffon's Needle Experiment to Physically Estimate  $\pi$ )** Suppose a needle is tossed at random onto a plane ruled with parallel lines a distance  $L$  apart. By a "needle" we mean a line segment of length  $l \leq L$ .

done in lectures...

**Example 91 (distance between random faults in a manufactured line)** Suppose two points are tossed independently and uniformly at random onto a line segment of unit length. What is the probability that the distance between the two points does not exceed a given length  $l$ ?

Now, let us take advantage of independent random variables and solve some problems.

We can compute  $f_X(x)$  and use the already computed  $f_Y(y)$  to mechanically check if the JPDF is the product of the marginal PDFs. But intuitively, we know that these RVs (connection time and authentication time) are dependent — one is strictly greater than the other. Also the JPDF has zero density when  $x > y$ , but the product of the marginal densities won't.

$$\begin{cases} 0 = f_X(x, y) = f_X(x) \times f_Y(y) = 0 \times 0 = 0 & \text{if } (x, y) \notin [0, 1]^2 \\ 1 = f_X(x, y) = f_X(x) \times f_Y(y) = 1 \times 1 = 1 & \text{if } (x, y) \in [0, 1]^2 \end{cases}$$

Are  $X$  and  $Y$  independent in the severer times RV from Example 85?

This can be shown by checking that the joint PDF is indeed equal to the product of the marginal PDFs of Uniform(0, 1) RVs as follows:

*Solution:*

**Example 90** Recall the  $\mathbb{R}^2$ -valued continuous RV  $(X, Y)$  of Example 84 that is uniformly distributed on the unit square  $[0, 1]^2$ . First show that  $X$  and  $Y$  independent. Then show that both  $X$  and  $Y$  are identically distributed according to the Uniform(0, 1) RV.

which is little to no evidence against the null hypothesis. Therefore, the data do not contradict Medel's theory of inheritance.

**p-value =  $P(T > 0.47) = 0.93$**

null hypothesis, the p-value is  
larger than  $\chi^2_{3, \alpha} = 7.815$ , we do not reject the null hypothesis. With  $T \sim \text{Chi-square}(3)$  under the Chi-square distribution with 3 degrees of freedom. Since the observed test statistic 0.47 is not For  $\alpha = 0.05$ , the  $\chi^2_{3, \alpha}$  value is 7.815 — this can be obtained numerically or from a table of null hypothesis, the p-value is

$$T = \sum_{j=1}^4 \frac{n\theta_j - n\theta_0 j^2}{(315 - 312.75)^2} = \frac{312.75}{(101 - 104.25)^2} + \frac{104.25}{(108 - 104.25)^2} + \frac{34.75}{(32 - 34.75)^2} = 0.47$$

Since  $n\theta_0, 1 = 556 \frac{9}{16} = 312.75$ ,  $n\theta_0, 2 = n\theta_0, 3 = 556 \frac{3}{16} = 104.25$ , and  $n\theta_0, 4 = 556 \frac{1}{16} = 34.75$ , the test statistic is:

Figure 3.19: Diagrams done on the board!

The event  $A$  that the needle intersects one of the parallel ruled lines occurs if and only if

$$X_2 \leq l \sin(X_1) ,$$

i.e., if and only if the corresponding point  $X := (X_1, X_2)$  falls in the region  $B$ , where  $B$  is part of the rectangle  $[0, \pi] \times [0, L]$  lying between the  $x_1$ -axis and the curve  $x_2 = \sin(x_1)$  (area under the curve in right-subfigure of Figure 3.19). Hence, we can integrate the JPDF to get the probability of the event  $A$  of interest:

$$P(A) = P((X_1, X_2) \in B) = \int_B \frac{dx_1 dx_2}{\pi L} = \frac{2l}{\pi L}$$

where,

$$l \int_0^\pi \pi \sin(x_1) dx_1 = l(-\cos(x_1))|_0^\pi = l(1 - (-1)) = l(1 + 1) = 2l ,$$

is the area of  $B$ .

Thus, if the needle is repeatedly tossed onto the ruled plane and  $n(A)$  is the number of times  $A$  occurs out of  $n$  trials, then the relative frequency of the event  $A$  should approach  $P(A)$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  (we will see this as the Law of Large Numbers in the sequel, but recall that this is also how we motivated the LTRF or long-term relative frequency idea of probability):

$$\frac{n(A)}{n} \rightarrow \frac{2l}{\pi L}$$

Hence, for large  $n$ ,

$$\frac{2l}{L} \frac{n}{n(A)}$$

should be a good approximation to  $\pi = 3.14\dots$ . This is indeed the case.

### 3.10.2 Conditional Random Variables

Often we will have a condition where one of the two random variables that make up a random vector  $(X_1, X_2)$  already occurs and takes a value. And we might want to compute the probability of the occurrence of the other random variable given this conditional information. For this all we need to do is extend the idea of conditional probabilities to  $\mathbb{R}^2$ -valued random variables as defined below.

**Definition 39 (Conditional PDF or PMF)** Let  $(X_1, X_2)$  be a discrete bivariate RV. The conditional PMF of  $X_1 | X_2 = x_2$ , where  $f_{X_2}(x_2) := P(X_2 = x_2) > 0$  is:

$$f_{X_1|X_2}(x_1|x_2) := P(X_1 = x_1 | X_2 = x_2) = \frac{P(X_1 = x_1, X_2 = x_2)}{P(X_2 = x_2)} = \frac{f_{X_1, X_2}(x_1, x_2)}{f_{X_2}(x_2)} .$$

**Model 29 (Chi-square( $k$ ) RV)** Given a parameter  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  called degrees of freedom, we say that  $V$  is a Chi-square( $k$ ) RV if its PDF is:

$$f(v; k) := \frac{v^{(k/2)-1} e^{-v/2}}{2^{k/2} \Gamma(k/2)} \mathbf{1}_{\{v \in \mathbb{R}: v > 0\}}(v)$$

Also,  $E(V) = k$  and  $V(V) = 2k$ .

We can use the **Pearson's Chi-Square test statistic**:

$$T := T(Y_1, \dots, Y_k) = \frac{(Y_1 - n\theta_1^*)^2}{n\theta_1^*} + \dots + \frac{(Y_k - n\theta_k^*)^2}{n\theta_k^*} \quad (7.53)$$

to test the null hypothesis  $H_0$  that may be formalised in three equivalent ways:

$$\begin{aligned} H_0 : X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n &\stackrel{IID}{\sim} \text{de Moivre}(\theta_1^*, \dots, \theta_k^*) \text{ RV} \\ \iff H_0 : Y := (Y_1, \dots, Y_k) &= \sum_{i=1}^n X_i \sim \text{Multinomial}(n, \theta_1^*, \dots, \theta_k^*) \text{ RV} \\ \iff H_0 : Y_1 &\stackrel{IND}{\sim} \text{Poisson}(n\theta_1) \text{ RV}, \dots, Y_k \stackrel{IND}{\sim} \text{Poisson}(n\theta_k) \text{ RV} \text{ given that } \sum_{i=1}^k Y_i = n \end{aligned}$$

We have seen that under  $H_0$ , the test statistic  $T \rightsquigarrow V \sim \text{Chi-square}(k-1)$ . Let  $t_{\text{obs}}$  be the observed value of the test statistic and let the upper alpha quantile be  $\chi_{k-1, \alpha}^2 := F^{[-1]}(1 - \alpha)$ , where  $F$  is the CDF of  $V \sim \text{Chi-square}(k-1)$ . Hence the test:

$$\boxed{\text{Reject } H_0 \text{ if } T > \chi_{k-1, \alpha}^2 \text{ is an asymptotically size } \alpha \text{ test and the p-value} = P(V > t_{\text{obs}}).}$$

Now, let us look at a concrete example of Pearson's Chi-Square test.

Gregor Johann Mendel (1822–1884) was a scientist and an abbot. Mendel gained posthumous recognition as the founder of the modern science of genetics. Though it has been known for millennia that crossbreeding of plants and animals could favour specific desirable traits, Mendel's pea plant experiments conducted between 1856 and 1863 was the first to empirically establish many of the rules of heredity. These rules are now known as the *laws of Mendelian inheritance*. Let's look at an experiment performed by Medel to test a null hypothesis on the rules of inheritance.

**Example 209 (Medel's Peas)** Mendel bred two varieties of peas. The first variety had round yellow seeds and the second one had wrinkled green seeds. The progeny of this breeding experiment were of four types: round yellow, wrinkled yellow, round green, and wrinkled green. Let us assume that the number of each type of progeny is a Multinomial( $n, \theta$ ) RV  $X$  with probability  $\theta = (\theta_1, \theta_2, \theta_3, \theta_4) \in \Delta^3$ . Mendel's theory of inheritance predicts that  $\theta = \theta_0$ ,

$$\theta_0 = (\theta_{0,1}, \theta_{0,2}, \theta_{0,3}, \theta_{0,4}) = \left( \frac{9}{16}, \frac{3}{16}, \frac{3}{16}, \frac{1}{16} \right)$$

He obtained  $n = 556$  progeny out of which he observed  $X = (315, 101, 108, 32)$ .

Here, we will test the null hypothesis  $H_0 : \theta = \theta_0$  versus  $H_1 : \theta \neq \theta_0$  using Pearson's Chi-Square test statistic (7.53).



1. What is conditional probability  $P(Y|Y' = 0)$  ?

|                                  |   |   |               |
|----------------------------------|---|---|---------------|
| $P(Y = y Y' = 0)$                | $= \frac{P(Y=y, Y'=0)}{P(Y'=0)}$            | $= \frac{P(\{\omega: Y(\omega)=y \cap Y'(\omega)=0\})}{P(\{\omega: Y'(\omega)=0\})}$  | $= ?$         |
| $P(Y = 0 Y' = 0)$                | $\frac{P(Y=0, Y'=0)}{P(Y'=0)}$              | $\frac{\frac{1}{8}}{\frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8}}$   | $\frac{1}{7}$ |
| $P(Y = 1 Y' = 0)$                | $\frac{P(Y=1, Y'=0)}{P(Y'=0)}$              | $\frac{\frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8}}{\frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8}}$                             | $\frac{3}{7}$ |
| $P(Y = 2 Y' = 0)$                | $\frac{P(Y=2, Y'=0)}{P(Y'=0)}$              | $\frac{\frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8}}{\frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8}}$               | $\frac{3}{7}$ |
| $P(Y = 3 Y' = 0)$                | $\frac{P(Y=3, Y'=0)}{P(Y'=0)}$              | $\frac{P(\emptyset)}{\frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8}}$  | $0$           |
| $P(Y \in \{0, 1, 2, 3\} Y' = 0)$ | $\frac{\sum_{y=0}^3 P(Y=y, Y'=0)}{P(Y'=0)}$ | $\frac{\frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8}}{\frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8}}$ | $1$           |

2. What is  $P(Y|Y' = 1)$  ?

$$P(Y = y|Y' = 1) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } y = 3 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

### 3.10.3 $\mathbb{R}^m$ -valued Random Variables

Consider the  $\vec{X}$  whose components are the RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m$ , i.e.,  $X := (X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m)$ , where  $m \geq 2$ . A particular realization of this RV is a point  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ . Now, let us extend the notions of JCDF, JPMF and JPDF to  $\mathbb{R}^m$ .

**Definition 40 (multivariate JDF)** The **joint distribution function (JDF)** or **joint cumulative distribution function (JCDF)**,  $F_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow [0, 1]$ , of the multivariate random vector  $(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m)$  is

$$\begin{aligned} F_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) &= P(X \leq x_1 \cap X_2 \leq x_2 \cap \dots \cap X_m \leq x_m) \\ &= P(X_1 \leq x_1, X_2 \leq x_2, \dots, X_m \leq x_m) \\ &= P(\{\omega : X_1(\omega) \leq x_1, X_2(\omega) \leq x_2, \dots, X_m(\omega) \leq x_m\}), \end{aligned} \quad (3.63)$$

for any  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) \in \mathbb{R}^m$ , where the right-hand side represents the probability that the random vector  $(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m)$  takes on a value in  $\{(x'_1, x'_2, \dots, x'_m) : x'_1 \leq x_1, x'_2 \leq x_2, \dots, x'_m \leq x_m\}$ , the set of points in  $\mathbb{R}^m$  that are less than the point  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m)$  in each coordinate  $1, 2, \dots, m$ .

The JDF  $F_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  satisfies the following conditions to remain a probability:

1.  $0 \leq F_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) \leq 1$
2.  $F_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m)$  is an increasing function of  $x_1, x_2, \dots$  and  $x_m$
3.  $F_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) \rightarrow 1$  as  $x_1 \rightarrow \infty, x_2 \rightarrow \infty, \dots$  and  $x_m \rightarrow \infty$

The support of the  $\vec{Y}$ , i.e. the set of possible realisations of  $y := (y_1, \dots, y_k)$  is:

$$\mathbb{Y} := \{(y_1, \dots, y_k) \in \mathbb{Z}_+^k : \sum_{i=1}^k y_i = n\}.$$

### Part 3: Conditional sum of Poisson trials

Here we consider an alternative formulation of the Multinomial( $n, \theta_1, \dots, \theta_k$ )  $\vec{Y}$ . Suppose,

$$Y_1 \sim \text{Poisson}(n\theta_1), Y_2 \sim \text{Poisson}(n\theta_2), \dots, Y_k \sim \text{Poisson}(n\theta_k),$$

and that  $Y_1, \dots, Y_k$  are independent. Recall from Model 6 that  $Y_i \sim \text{Poisson}(n\theta_i)$  means  $P(Y_i = y_i) = e^{-n\theta_i} (n\theta_i)^{y_i} / y_i!$  for  $y_i \in \{0, 1, \dots\}$ . Then, the joint probability probability of the  $\vec{Y} = (Y_1, \dots, Y_k)$  is the product of the independent Poisson probabilities:

$$\begin{aligned} P((Y_1, \dots, Y_k) = (y_1, \dots, y_k)) &:= P(Y_1 = y_1, \dots, Y_k = y_k) = \prod_{i=1}^k P(Y_i = y_i) = \prod_{i=1}^k \frac{e^{-n\theta_i} (n\theta_i)^{y_i}}{y_i!} \\ &= \frac{\prod_{i=1}^k e^{-n\theta_i} n^{y_i} \theta_i^{y_i}}{\prod_{i=1}^k y_i!} = \left( e^{-n \sum_{i=1}^k \theta_i} n^{\sum_{i=1}^k y_i} \prod_{i=1}^k \theta_i^{y_i} \right) \frac{1}{\prod_{i=1}^k y_i!} \\ &= \frac{e^{-n} n^n \prod_{i=1}^k \theta_i^{y_i}}{\prod_{i=1}^k y_i!}. \end{aligned}$$

Now, the probability that sum  $Y_1 + \dots + Y_k$  will equal  $n$  is obtained by summing over the probabilities of all  $(y_1, \dots, y_k) \in \mathbb{Y}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} P\left(\sum_{i=1}^k Y_i = n\right) &= \sum_{\substack{(y_1, \dots, y_k) \\ \in \mathbb{Y}}} P((Y_1, \dots, Y_k) = (y_1, \dots, y_k)) = \sum_{\substack{(y_1, \dots, y_k) \\ \in \mathbb{Y}}} \frac{e^{-n} n^n \prod_{i=1}^k \theta_i^{y_i}}{\prod_{i=1}^k y_i!} \\ &= e^{-n} n^n \frac{1}{n!} \underbrace{\left( \sum_{\substack{(y_1, \dots, y_k) \\ \in \mathbb{Y}}} \frac{n!}{\prod_{i=1}^k y_i!} \prod_{i=1}^k \theta_i^{y_i} \right)}_{= P(\vec{Y}=1)} = \frac{e^{-n} n^n}{n!}. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, the conditional probability that  $(Y_1, \dots, Y_k) = (y_1, \dots, y_k)$  given  $\sum_{i=1}^k Y_i = n$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} P\left((Y_1, \dots, Y_k) = (y_1, \dots, y_k) \mid \sum_{i=1}^k Y_i = n\right) &= \frac{P((Y_1, \dots, Y_k) = (y_1, \dots, y_k), \sum_{i=1}^k Y_i = n)}{P(\sum_{i=1}^k Y_i = n)} \\ &= \frac{P((Y_1, \dots, Y_k) = (y_1, \dots, y_k))}{P(\sum_{i=1}^k Y_i = n)} = \frac{e^{-n} n^n \prod_{i=1}^k \theta_i^{y_i}}{\prod_{i=1}^k y_i!} \frac{n!}{e^{-n} n^n} = \frac{n!}{y_1! y_2! \dots y_k!} \prod_{i=1}^k \theta_i^{y_i}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, we may also think of the random vector  $Y := (Y_1, \dots, Y_k) \sim \text{Multinomial}(n, \theta_1, \dots, \theta_k)$  as  $k$  independent Poisson random variables,  $Y_1 \sim \text{Poisson}(n\theta_1), \dots, Y_k \sim \text{Poisson}(n\theta_k)$ , that have been conditioned on their sum  $\sum_{i=1}^k Y_i$  being  $n$ .

### Part 4: The Normal approximation of the centred and scaled Poisson

Recall from Model 6 that the expectation and variance of a RV  $Y_i \sim \text{Poisson}(n\theta_i)$  are  $E(Y_i) = V(Y_i) = n\theta_i$ . Let  $Z_i$  be  $E(Y_i)$ -centred and  $\sqrt{V(Y_i)}$ -scaled  $Y_i$  and

$$Z_i := \frac{Y_i - E(Y_i)}{\sqrt{V(Y_i)}} = \frac{Y_i - n\theta_i}{\sqrt{n\theta_i}}.$$



for any distinct subset of indices  $\{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m\}$  of  $\{1, 2, \dots\}$ , the index set of the sequence of RVs and any sequence of real numbers  $x_{i_1}, x_{i_2}, \dots, x_{i_m}$ .

By the above definition, the sequence of **discrete** RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  taking values in an at most countable set  $\mathbb{D}$  are said to be independently distributed if for any distinct subset of indices  $\{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_k\}$  such that the corresponding RVs  $X_{i_1}, X_{i_2}, \dots, X_{i_k}$  exists as a distinct subset of our original sequence of RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  and for any elements  $x_{i_1}, x_{i_2}, \dots, x_{i_k}$  in  $\mathbb{D}$ , the following equality is satisfied:

$$P(X_{i_1} = x_{i_1}, X_{i_2} = x_{i_2}, \dots, X_{i_k} = x_{i_k}) = P(X_{i_1} = x_{i_1}) P(X_{i_2} = x_{i_2}) \cdots P(X_{i_k} = x_{i_k}),$$

or equivalently,

$$f_{X_{i_1}, X_{i_2}, \dots, X_{i_k}}(x_{i_1}, x_{i_2}, \dots, x_{i_k}) = f_{X_{i_1}}(x_{i_1}) f_{X_{i_2}}(x_{i_2}) \cdots f_{X_{i_k}}(x_{i_k}).$$

From Definition 43, we say  $m$  random variables  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m$  are jointly independent or mutually independent if and only if for every  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) \in \mathbb{R}^m$

$$F_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) = F_{X_1}(x_1) F_{X_2}(x_2) \cdots F_{X_m}(x_m), \quad (3.67)$$

$$f_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) = f_{X_1}(x_1) f_{X_2}(x_2) \cdots f_{X_m}(x_m). \quad (3.68)$$

**Proposition 44 (Conditional probability of independent sequence of RVs)** For an independent sequence of RVs  $\{X_1, X_2, \dots\}$ , we have

$$P(X_{i+1} \leq x_{i+1} | X_i \leq x_i, X_{i-1} \leq x_{i-1}, \dots, X_1 \leq x_1) = P(X_{i+1} \leq x_{i+1}) \quad (3.69)$$

**Proof:**

$$\begin{aligned} & P(X_{i+1} \leq x_{i+1} | X_i \leq x_i, X_{i-1} \leq x_{i-1}, \dots, X_1 \leq x_1) \\ &= \frac{P(X_{i+1} \leq x_{i+1}, X_i \leq x_i, X_{i-1} \leq x_{i-1}, \dots, X_1 \leq x_1)}{P(X_i \leq x_i, X_{i-1} \leq x_{i-1}, \dots, X_1 \leq x_1)} \\ &= \frac{P(X_{i+1} \leq x_{i+1}) P(X_i \leq x_i) P(X_{i-1} \leq x_{i-1}) \cdots P(X_1 \leq x_1)}{P(X_i \leq x_i) P(X_{i-1} \leq x_{i-1}) \cdots P(X_1 \leq x_1)} \\ &= P(X_{i+1} \leq x_{i+1}) \end{aligned}$$

Equation (3.69) simply says that the conditional distribution of the RV  $X_{i+1}$  given all previous RVs  $X_i, X_{i-1}, \dots, X_1$  is simply determined by the distribution of  $X_{i+1}$ .

**Example 95** If  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are independent random variables then what is their covariance  $\text{Cov}(X_1, X_2)$ ?

**Solution:**

We know for independent RVs from the properties of expectations that

$$E(X_1 X_2) = E(X_1) E(X_2)$$

From the formula for covariance

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Cov}(X_1, X_2) &= E(X_1 X_2) - E(X_1) E(X_2) \\ &= E(X_1) E(X_2) - E(X_1) E(X_2) \quad \text{due to independence} \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

**Remark 45** The converse is not true: two random variables that have zero covariance are not necessarily independent.

| Permutation  | $t$ | $P_0(T = t)$  |
|--------------|-----|---------------|
| (52, 54, 58) | 5   | $\frac{1}{6}$ |
| (54, 52, 58) | 5   | $\frac{1}{6}$ |
| (52, 58, 54) | 1   | $\frac{1}{6}$ |
| (58, 52, 54) | 1   | $\frac{1}{6}$ |
| (58, 54, 52) | 4   | $\frac{1}{6}$ |
| (54, 58, 52) | 4   | $\frac{1}{6}$ |

From the table, we get:

$$\text{p-value} = P_0(T \geq t_{\text{obs}}) = P_0(T \geq 5) = \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{6} = \frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{3} \cong 0.333.$$

Therefore, there is little to no evidence against  $H_0$ .

When the pooled sample size  $N = m + n$  gets large,  $N!$  would be too numerous to tabulate exhaustively. In this situation, we can use a Monte Carlo approximation of the p-value by generating a large number of random permutations of the data according to the following Steps:

Step 1: Compute the observed statistic  $t_{\text{obs}} := T(x_{\text{obs}})$  of data  $x_{\text{obs}} := (x_1, \dots, x_m, x_{m+1}, \dots, x_{m+n})$ .

Step 2: Randomly permute the data and compute the statistic again from the permuted data.

Step 3: Repeat Step 2  $B$  times and let  $t_1, \dots, t_B$  denote the resulting values ( $B$  is large, say 1000).

Step 4: The (Monte Carlo) approximate p-value is:

$$\frac{1}{B} \sum_{j=1}^B \mathbb{I}(t_j \geq t_{\text{obs}}).$$

Next we implement the above algorithm on the full data set of Guo and Chen obtained from coarse venus shells sampled from the two sides of the New Brighton pier.

**Labwork 208 (Approximate p-value of a permutation test of shell diameters)** Test the null hypothesis that the distribution of the diameters of coarse venus shells are the same on both sides of the New Brighton pier.

```
% this data was collected by Guo Yaozong and Chen Shun as part of their STAT 218 project 2007
% coarse venus shell diameters in mm from left side of New Brighton Pier
left=[52 54 60 60 54 47 57 58 61 57 50 60 60 62 44 55 58 55 60 59 63 51 61 62 61 60 61 65 ...
43 59 58 67 56 64 47 64 60 55 58 41 53 61 60 49 48 47 42 50 58 48 59 55 59 50 47 47 33 51 61 61 ...
52 62 64 64 47 58 58 61 50 55 47 39 59 64 63 63 62 64 61 50 62 61 65 62 66 60 59 58 60 59 61 ...
55 55 62 51 61 49 52 59 60 66 50 59 64 64 62 60 65 44 58 63];
% coarse venus shell diameters in mm from right side of New Brighton Pier
right=[58 54 60 55 56 44 60 52 57 58 61 66 56 59 49 48 69 66 49 72 49 50 59 59 66 62 ...
44 49 40 59 55 61 51 62 52 63 39 63 52 62 49 48 65 68 45 63 58 55 56 55 57 34 64 66 ...
54 65 61 56 57 59 58 62 58 40 43 62 59 64 64 65 59 64 63 65 62 61 47 59 63 44 43 ...
59 67 64 60 62 64 65 59 55 38 57 61 52 61 60 34 62 64 58 39 63 47 55 54 48 60 55 ...
60 65 41 61 59 65 50 64 60 48 51 68 52 51 61 57 49 51 62 63 59 62 54 59 46 64 49 61];
Tobs=abs(mean(left)-mean(right)); % observed test statistic
nleft=length(left); % sample size of the left-side data
nright=length(right); % sample size of the right-side data
ntotal=nleft+nright; % sample size of the pooled data
total=[left right]; % observed data -- ordered: left-side data followed by right-side data
B=10000; % number of bootstrap replicates
```



### 3.10.4 Some Common $\mathbb{R}^m$ -valued RVs

So far, we have treated our random vectors as random points in  $\mathbb{R}^m$  and not been explicit about whether they are row or column vectors. We need to be more explicit now in order to perform arithmetic operations and transformations with them.

Let  $X = (X_1, X_2, \dots, X_{m_X})$  be a  $\vec{X}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^{1 \times m_X}$ , i.e.,  $X$  is a random row vector with 1 row and  $m_X$  columns, with JCDF  $F_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_{m_X}}$  and JPDF  $f_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_{m_X}}$ . Similarly, let  $Y = (Y_1, Y_2, \dots, Y_{m_Y})$  be a  $\vec{Y}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^{1 \times m_Y}$ , i.e.,  $Y$  is a random row vector with 1 row and  $m_Y$  columns, with JCDF  $F_{Y_1, Y_2, \dots, Y_{m_Y}}$  and JPDF  $f_{Y_1, Y_2, \dots, Y_{m_Y}}$ . Let the JCDF of the random vectors  $X$  and  $Y$  together be  $F_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_{m_X}, Y_1, Y_2, \dots, Y_{m_Y}}$  and JPDF be  $f_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_{m_X}, Y_1, Y_2, \dots, Y_{m_Y}}$ .

#### Independent Random Vectors and their sums

The notion of mutual independence or joint independence of  $n$  random vectors is obtained similarly from ensuring the independence of any subset of the  $n$  vectors in terms of their JCDFs (JPMFs or JPDFs) being equal to the product of their marginal CDFs (PMFs or PDFs).

Thus, for a given  $m_X < \infty$  and  $m_Y < \infty$ , two **random vectors are independent** if and only if for any  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{m_X}) \in \mathbb{R}^{1 \times m_X}$  and any  $(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_{m_Y}) \in \mathbb{R}^{1 \times m_Y}$

$$\begin{aligned} F_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_{m_X}, Y_1, Y_2, \dots, Y_{m_Y}}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{m_X}, y_1, y_2, \dots, y_{m_Y}) \\ = F_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_{m_X}}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{m_X}) \times F_{Y_1, Y_2, \dots, Y_{m_Y}}(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_{m_Y}) \end{aligned}$$

or, equivalently

$$\begin{aligned} f_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_{m_X}, Y_1, Y_2, \dots, Y_{m_Y}}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{m_X}, y_1, y_2, \dots, y_{m_Y}) \\ = f_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_{m_X}}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{m_X}) \times f_{Y_1, Y_2, \dots, Y_{m_Y}}(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_{m_Y}) \end{aligned}$$

Let us consider the natural two-dimensional analogue of the Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV in the real plane  $\mathbb{R}^2 := (-\infty, \infty)^2 := (-\infty, \infty) \times (-\infty, \infty)$ . A natural possibility is to use the **ortho-normal basis vectors** in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ :

$$\boxed{e_1 := (1, 0), \quad e_2 := (0, 1)}.$$

Recall that vector addition and subtraction are done component-wise, i.e.  $(x_1, x_2) \pm (y_1, y_2) = (x_1 \pm y_1, x_2 \pm y_2)$ . We introduce a useful function called the indicator function of a set, say  $A$ .

$$\mathbf{1}_A(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \in A \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

$\mathbf{1}_A(x)$  returns 1 if  $x$  belongs to  $A$  and 0 otherwise.

**Example 97** Let us recall the geometry and arithmetic of vector addition in the plane.

1. What is  $(1, 0) + (1, 0)$ ,  $(1, 0) + (0, 1)$ ,  $(0, 1) + (0, 1)$ ?
2. What is the relationship between  $(1, 0)$ ,  $(0, 1)$  and  $(1, 1)$  geometrically?
3. How does the diagonal of the parallelogram relate the its two sides in the geometry of addition in the plane?
4. What is  $(1, 0) + (0, 1) + (1, 0)$ ?

**Proposition 135 (The p-value of a hypothesis test)** Suppose that the size  $\alpha$  test based on the test statistic  $T$  and critical value  $c_\alpha$  is of the form:

Reject  $H_0$  if and only if  $T := T((X_1, \dots, X_n)) > c_\alpha$ ,

then

$$\text{p-value} = \sup_{\theta \in \Theta_0} P_\theta(T((X_1, \dots, X_n)) \geq t := T((x_1, \dots, x_n))) ,$$

where,  $(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  is the observed data and  $t$  is the observed value of the test statistic  $T$ . In words, the p-value is the supreme probability under  $H_0$  of observing a value of the test statistic the same as or more extreme than what was actually observed.

Let us revisit the Orbiter waiting times example from the p-value perspective.

**Example 206 (p-value for the parametric Orbiter experiment)** Let the waiting times at our bus-stop be  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_{132} \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Exponential}(\lambda^*)$ . Consider the following testing problem:

$$H_0 : \lambda^* = \lambda_0 = \frac{1}{10} \quad \text{versus} \quad H_1 : \lambda^* \neq \lambda_0 .$$

We already saw that the Wald test statistic is:

$$W := W(X_1, \dots, X_n) = \frac{\widehat{\lambda}_n - \lambda_0}{\widehat{\text{se}}_n(\widehat{\lambda}_n)} = \frac{\frac{1}{\widehat{X}_n} - \lambda_0}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}\widehat{X}_n}} .$$

The observed test statistic is:

$$w = W(x_1, \dots, x_{132}) = \frac{\frac{1}{\widehat{X}_{132}} - \lambda_0}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{132}\widehat{X}_{132}}} = \frac{\frac{1}{9.0758} - \frac{1}{10}}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{132} \times 9.0758}} = 1.0618 .$$

Since,  $W \rightsquigarrow Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ , the p-value for this Wald test is:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{p-value} &= \sup_{\lambda \in \Lambda_0} P_\lambda(|W| > |w|) = \sup_{\lambda \in \{\lambda_0\}} P_\lambda(|W| > |w|) = P_{\lambda_0}(|W| > |w|) \\ &\rightarrow P(|Z| > |w|) = 2\Phi(-|w|) = 2\Phi(-|1.0618|) = 2 \times 0.1442 = 0.2884 . \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, there is little or no evidence against  $H_0$  that the mean waiting time under an IID Exponential model of inter-arrival times is exactly ten minutes.

### 7.7.5 Permutation Test for the equality of any two DFs

Permutation test is a non-parametric exact method for testing whether two distributions are the same. It is non-parametric because we do not impose any restrictions on the class of DFs that the unknown DF should belong to. It is exact because we do not have any asymptotic approximations involving sample size approaching infinity. So this test works for any sample size.

Formally, we suppose that:

$$X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} F^* \quad \text{and} \quad X_{m+1}, X_{m+2}, \dots, X_{m+n} \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} G^* ,$$

are two sets of independent samples. The possibly unknown DFs  $F^*, G^* \in \{\text{all DFs}\}$ . Now, consider the following hypothesis test:

$$H_0 : F^* = G^* \quad \text{versus} \quad H_1 : F^* \neq G^* .$$

context, this amounts to keeping track of the number of right and left turns made by the ball as it falls. In the Q-binomial context, this can be thought of keeping track of the number of Heads and Tails outcome of an IID sequence of  $n$  tosses of a coin with probability  $\theta$  of observing Heads. In the Q-binomial context, this is the underlying model and the bi in the Biomial( $n, \theta$ ) does refer to two in Latin. In fact, this is the underlying model as a Biomial( $n, \theta$ )  $\text{RV}_X = (Y, n - Y)$ . In

**Remark 46** We can write the Biomial( $n, \theta$ )  $\text{RV}_Y$  as a Biomial( $n, \theta$ )  $\text{RV}_X = (Y, n - Y)$ .

$$\mathbb{E}(\mathbf{X}) = \mathbb{E}((X_1, X_2)) = \sum_{\{(x_1, x_2) \in \{e_1, e_2\}\}} (x_1, x_2) f(x_1, x_2; \theta) = (1, \theta + (0, 1)(1 - \theta) = (\theta, 1 - \theta).$$

**Example 98** Let us find the Expectation of Bernoulli( $\theta$ )  $\text{RV}_m$  Model 15.

$$f(x; \theta) := P(X = x) = \begin{cases} \theta & \text{if } x = e_1 \\ 1 - \theta & \text{if } x = e_2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

realization  $x = (x_1, x_2)$  is:

set  $\{e_1, e_2\} \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ , i.e.  $x = (x_1, x_2) \in \{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$ . The PDF of the  $\text{RV}_X = (X_1, X_2)$  with  $X = (X_1, X_2)$  is a Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) random vector ( $\text{RV}$ ) if it has only two possible outcomes in the set  $\{(X_1, X_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2, \text{ i.e. } x = (x_1, x_2) \in \{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}\}$ .

**Model 15** (Bernoulli( $\theta$ )  $\text{RV}$ ) Given a parameter  $(\theta, 1 - \theta) \in \Delta^1$ , the unit 1-Simplex, we say that

$$(1, 0) + (0, 1) + (1, 0) = (1 + 0 + 1, 0 + 1 + 0) = (2, 1)$$

4.

its two sides

3. Generally, the diagonal of the parallelogram is the resultant or sum of the vectors representing

2.  $(1, 0)$  and  $(0, 1)$  are vectors for the two sides of unit square and  $(1, 1)$  is its diagonal.

$$(0, 1) + (0, 1) = (0 + 0, 1 + 1) = (0, 2)$$

$$(1, 0) + (0, 1) = (1 + 0, 0 + 1) = (1, 1)$$

$$(1, 0) + (1, 0) = (1 + 1, 0 + 0) = (2, 0)$$

1. addition is component-wise

The next proposition gives a convenient expression for the p-value for certain tests. Finally, it is important to realize that p-value is not the probability distribution of evidence scale is useful, i.e.  $\text{p-value} \neq P(H_0|x)$ , where  $x$  is the data. The following tabulation of evidence scale is useful.

2.  $H_0$  is false but the test has low power.

1.  $H_0$  is true.

If the evidence against  $H_0$  is strong then the p-value will be small. However, a large p-value is not strong evidence in favour of  $H_0$ . This is because a large p-value can occur for two reasons:

That is, the p-value is the smallest at which a size a test rejects the null hypothesis.

$$\text{p-value} := \inf\{\alpha : T(X) \in \mathbb{X}_{R, \alpha}\}.$$

region  $\mathbb{X}_{R, \alpha}$  and test statistic  $T$ . Then, Definition 134 (p-value) Suppose that for every  $\alpha \in (0, 1)$  we have a size  $a$  test with rejection

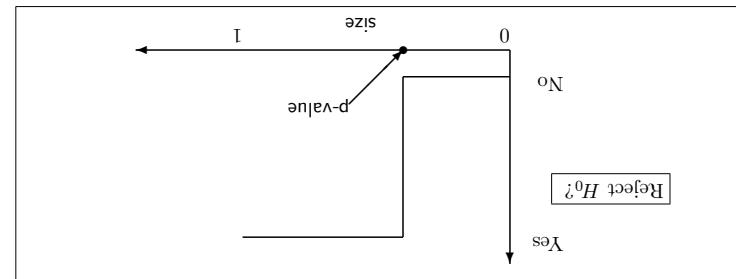


Figure 7.4: The smallest at which a size a test rejects the null hypothesis  $H_0$  is the p-value.

at which the test rejects  $H_0$  and we call this a the p-value of the test. The test rejects at size  $\alpha$  it will also reject at a larger size  $\alpha'$ . Therefore, there is a smallest size the test rejects at it will also ask whether the test rejects  $H_0$  for each size  $\alpha$ . Typically, it is desired to have a more informative decision than simply reporting "reject  $H_0$ " or "fail to reject  $H_0$ ". For instance, we could ask whether the test rejects  $H_0$  for each size  $\alpha$ . For each size  $\alpha$ , there is a size  $\alpha$  at which the test rejects  $H_0$  and we call this a the p-value of the test.

#### 7.7.4 p-values

| p-value range | evidence                            |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| (0, 0.1]      | little or no evidence against $H_0$ |
| (0.01, 0.05]  | very strong evidence against $H_0$  |
| (0.05, 0.1]   | strong evidence against $H_0$       |
| (0.1, 1]      | weak evidence against $H_0$         |

Table 7.3: Evidence scale against the null hypothesis in terms of the range of p-value.

drops through  $n$  levels of pegs where the probability of a right turn at each peg is independently and identically  $\theta$ . In other words, the  $\text{Binomial}(n, \theta)$   $\text{R}\vec{V}$  ( $Y, n - Y$ ) is the sum of  $n$  IID Bernoulli( $\theta$ )  $\text{R}\vec{V}$ s  $X_1 := (X_{1,1}, X_{1,2}), X_2 := (X_{2,1}, X_{2,2}), \dots, X_n := (X_{n,1}, X_{n,2})$ :

$$(Y, n - Y) = X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n = (X_{1,1}, X_{1,2}) + (X_{2,1}, X_{2,2}) + \dots + (X_{n,1}, X_{n,2})$$

**Exercise 3.36 (Random walk in the first Quadrant)** Consider an independent and identical random walk starting from  $(0,0)$  in the first quadrant where you go east, i.e., add  $(1,0)$  to your current position with probability  $\theta$ , and go north, i.e., add  $(0,1)$  to your current position with probability  $1 - \theta$ . Suppose you take  $n$  such IID steps according to the Bernoulli( $\theta$ )  $\text{R}\vec{V}$ . Answer the following questions:

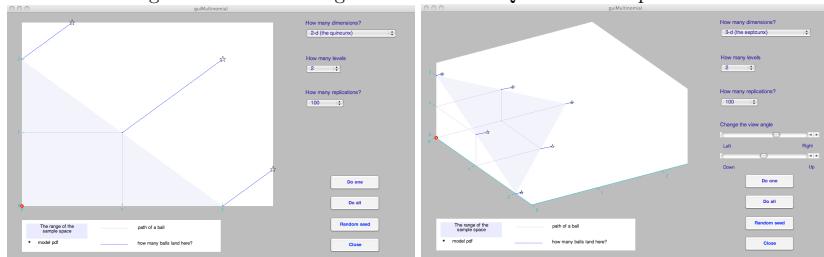
1. How does the number of paths that lead to a  $(x_1, x_2)$  with  $x_1 + x_2 = n$  relate to the binomial coefficient  $\binom{n}{x_1}$ ?
2. What is the probability of taking  $x_1$  steps east and  $x_2$  steps north?

**Exercise 3.37 (Random walks in the first Quadrant and Galton's Quincunx)** Compare the probability models for the Random walk in the first quadrant and Galton's Quincunx and explain how they are related.

**Labwork 99 (Quincunx Sampler Demo – Sum of  $n$  IID Bernoulli(1/2)  $\text{R}\vec{V}$ s)** Let us understand the Quincunx construction of the  $\text{Binomial}(n, 1/2)$   $\text{R}\vec{V} X$  as the sum of  $n$  independent and identical Bernoulli(1/2)  $\text{R}\vec{V}$ s by calling the interactive visual cognitive tool as follows:

```
>> guiMultinomial
```

Figure 3.20: Visual Cognitive Tool GUI: Quincunx & Septcunx.



We are now ready to extend the  $\text{Binomial}(n, \theta)$  RV or  $\text{R}\vec{V}$  to its multivariate version called the  $\text{Multinomial}(n, \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k)$   $\text{R}\vec{V}$ . We develop this  $\text{R}\vec{V}$  as the sum of  $n$  IID de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ )  $\text{R}\vec{V}$  that is defined next by extending de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV taking values in  $\{1, 2, \dots, k\}$  of Model 14 to its vector-valued cousin taking values in  $\{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_k\}$ , the ortho-normal basis vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^k$ .

$H_0$ : The average waiting time at an Orbiter bus stop is less than or equal to 10 minutes.

$H_1$ : The average waiting time at an Orbiter bus stop is more than 10 minutes.

We have observations of  $n = 132$  waiting times  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{132}$  at the Orbiter bus-stop with  $\bar{x}_{132} = 9.0758$ . Let us assume a parametric model, say,

$$X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Exponential}(\lambda^*)$$

with an unknown and fixed  $\lambda^* \in \Lambda = (0, \infty)$ . Since the parameter  $\lambda$  of an  $\text{Exponential}(\lambda)$  RV is the reciprocal of the mean waiting time, we can formalise the above hypothesis testing problem of  $H_0$  versus  $H_1$  as follows:

$$H_0 : \lambda^* \in \Lambda_0 = [1/10, \infty) \quad \text{versus} \quad H_1 : \lambda^* \in \Lambda_1 = (0, 1/10)$$

Consider the test:

Reject  $H_0$  if  $T > c$ .

where the test statistic  $T = \bar{X}_n$  and the rejection region is:

$$\mathbb{X}_R = \{(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) : T(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) > c\}.$$

Since the sum of  $n$  IID  $\text{Exponential}(\lambda)$  RVs is  $\text{Gamma}(\lambda, n)$  distributed, the power function is:

$$\begin{aligned} \beta(\lambda) &= P_\lambda(\bar{X}_n > c) = P_\lambda\left(\sum_{i=1}^n X_i > nc\right) = 1 - P_\lambda\left(\sum_{i=1}^n X_i \leq nc\right) \\ &= 1 - F(nc; \lambda, n) = 1 - \frac{1}{\Gamma(n)} \int_0^{\lambda nc} y^{n-1} \exp(-y) dy \\ &= 1 - \text{gammainc}(\lambda nc, n) \end{aligned}$$

Clearly,  $\beta(\lambda)$  is a decreasing function of  $\lambda$  as shown in Figure 7.3. Hence the size of the test as a function of the critical value  $c$  is:

$$\text{size} = \sup_{\lambda \in \Lambda_0} \beta(\lambda) = \sup_{\lambda \geq 1/10} \beta(\lambda) = \beta(1/10) = 1 - \text{gammainc}(132c/10, 132)$$

For a size  $\alpha = 0.05$  test we numerically solve for the critical value  $c$  that satisfies:

$$0.05 = 1 - \text{gammainc}(132c/10, 132)$$

by trial and error as follows:

```
>> lambda0=1/10
lambda0 = 0.1000
>> S=@(C)(1-gammainc(lambda0*n*C,n)); % size as a function of c
>> Cs=[10 11 11.474 12 13] % some critical values c
Cs = 10.0000 11.0000 11.4740 12.0000 13.0000
>> Size=arrayfun(S,Cs) % corresponding size
Size = 0.4884 0.1268 0.0499 0.0143 0.0007
```

Thus, we reject  $H_0$  when  $\bar{X}_n > 11.4740$  for a level  $\alpha = 0.05$  test. Since our observed test statistic  $\bar{x}_{132} = 9.0758 < 11.4740$  we fail to reject the null hypothesis that the mean waiting time is less than or equal to 10 minutes. Therefore, there is no evidence that the Orbiter bus company is violating its promise of an average waiting time of no more than 10 minutes.

$$f(y; n, \theta) := f(y; n, \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k) := P(Y = y; n, \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k) = \left( \frac{y_1}{n}, \frac{y_2}{n}, \dots, \frac{y_k}{n} \right)^T \prod_{i=1}^k \theta_i^{y_i}$$

has the PMF given by:

$$y := (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_k) \in \mathbb{Y} := \{(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_k) \in \mathbb{Z}_+^k : y_1 + y_2 + \dots + y_k = n\}$$

from the sum of  $n$  IID de Molivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RVs with realizations

**Model 17** (Multinomial( $n, \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV) We say that a RV  $Y := (Y_1, Y_2, \dots, Y_k)$  obtained

RV as defined below.

When we add  $n$  IID de Molivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RVs together, we get the Multinomial( $n, \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV as defined below.

Of course,  $\sum_{i=1}^k \theta_i = 1$ .

$$f(x; \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k) := P(X = x) = \begin{cases} \theta_1^{x_1} \theta_2^{x_2} \cdots \theta_k^{x_k} & \text{if } x = e_1 = (1, 0, \dots, 0) \in \mathbb{R}_+^k \\ \vdots & \text{if } x = e_2 = (0, 1, \dots, 0) \in \mathbb{R}_+^k \\ \theta_k^{x_k} & \text{if } x = e_k = (0, 0, \dots, 1) \in \mathbb{R}_+^k \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

normal basis vectors in  $\mathbb{R}_+^k$  is:

**Model 16** (de Molivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV) The PMF of the de Molivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV  $X := (X_1, X_2, \dots, X_k)$  taking value  $x := (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k) \in \{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_k\}$ , where the  $e_i$ 's are ortho-

normal basis vectors in  $\mathbb{R}_+^k$  is:

(a) Ten samples (b) Thousand samples

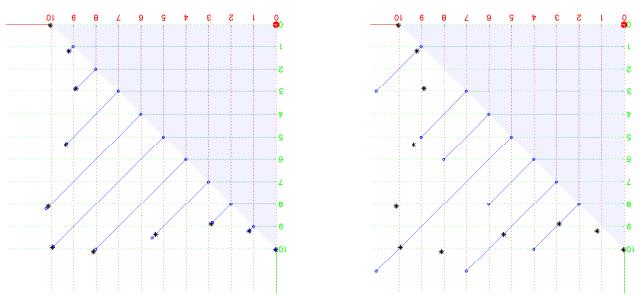


Figure 3.21: Quantiles on the Cartesian plane. Simulations of Binomial( $n = 10, \theta = 0.5$ ) RV as the x-coordinate of the ordered pair resulting from the quantitation of sample trajectories formed by the cumulative sum of  $n = 10$  IID Bernoulli( $\theta = 0.5$ ) random vectors over  $\{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$  with probabilities  $\{\theta, 1 - \theta\}$ , respectively. The blue lines and black asterisks perpendicular to and above the diagonal line, i.e. the line connecting  $(0, 10)$  and  $(10, 0)$ , are the density histogram of the samples and the PMF of our Binomial( $n = 10, \theta = 0.5$ ) RV, respectively.

Figure 3.21: Quantiles on the Cartesian plane. Simulations of Binomial( $n = 10, \theta = 0.5$ ) RV as

following null hypothesis  $H_0$ .  
**Example 205** (Testing the Mean Waiting Time at an Orbiter Bus-stop) Let us test the

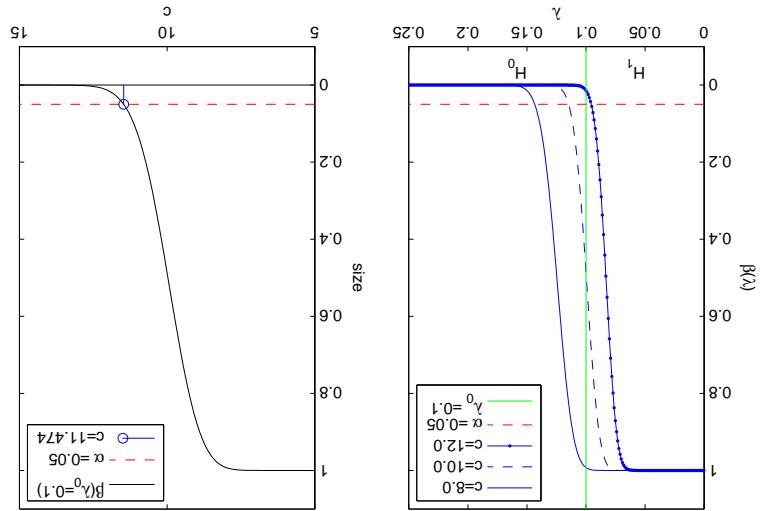


Figure 7.3: Plot of power function  $g(\alpha)$  for different values of the critical value  $c$  and the size  $\alpha$  as a function of the critical values.

Often, we are interested in a testing a composite hypothesis, i.e. one in which the null hypothesis is not a singleton set. We revisit the Orbiter waiting time problem from this perspective next.

Since the percentile-based 95% bootstrap confidence interval for the plug-in estimate of the correlation coefficient from Labwork 234 was  $[0.2346, 0.9296]$  and this interval does not contain 0, we can reject the null hypothesis that the correlation coefficient is 0 using a size  $\alpha = 0.05$  Wald test.

$$H_0: \theta^* = 0 \quad \text{versus} \quad H_1: \theta^* \neq 0, \quad \text{where} \quad \theta^* = \frac{\sqrt{\int (y - E(Y))^2 dF(y) \int (z - E(Z))^2 dF(z)}}{\int (y - E(Y))(z - E(Z)) dF(y, z)}$$

the true correlation coefficient  $\theta^*$  is 0.

Suppose we are interested in testing the null hypothesis that such that  $F^* \in \{\text{all bivariate } DF\}$ . We assumed that the bivariate data  $(Y_i, Z_i) \stackrel{iid}{\sim} F^*$ , and the GPA ( $Z_1, \dots, Z_{10}$ ) in Labwork 234. We estimated the correlation coefficient between the LAST scores ( $Y_1, \dots, Y_{10}$ ) of estimating the confidence interval for the correlation coefficient between the LAST scores ( $Y_1, \dots, Y_{10}$ ) and the GPA ( $Z_1, \dots, Z_{10}$ ) in Labwork 234. We assumed that the bivariate data  $(Y_i, Z_i) \stackrel{iid}{\sim} F^*$ , such that  $F^* \in \{\text{all bivariate } DF\}$ . Suppose we are interested in testing the null hypothesis that

We can use bootstrap-based confidence interval  $C_n$  in conjunction with Wald test as shown by the next example.

**Example 204** (Wald test of the bootstrapped correlation coefficient) Recall the problem

We can use bootstrap-based confidence interval  $C_n$  in conjunction with Wald test as shown by the next example.

where, the multinomial coefficient:

$$\binom{n}{y_1, y_2, \dots, y_k} := \frac{n!}{y_1! y_2! \cdots y_k!}.$$

Note that the marginal PMF of  $Y_j$  is Binomial( $n, \theta_j$ ) for any  $j = 1, 2, \dots, k$ .

We can visualize the Multinomial( $n, \theta_1, \theta_2, \theta_3$ ) process as a sum of  $n$  IID de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \theta_3$ ) R $\vec{V}$ s via a three dimensional extension of the Quincunx called the “Septcunx” and relate the number of paths that lead to a given trivariate sum  $(y_1, y_2, y_3)$  with  $\sum_{i=1}^3 y_i = n$  as the multinomial coefficient  $\frac{n!}{y_1! y_2! y_3!}$ . In the Septcunx, balls choose from one of three paths along  $e_1, e_2$  and  $e_3$  with probabilities  $\theta_1, \theta_2$  and  $\theta_3$ , respectively, in an IID manner at each of the  $n$  levels, before they collect at buckets placed at the integral points in the 3-simplex,  $\mathbb{Y} = \{(y_1, y_2, y_3) \in \mathbb{Z}_+^3 : \sum_{i=1}^3 y_i = n\}$ . Once again, we can visualize that the sum of  $n$  IID de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \theta_3$ ) R $\vec{V}$ s constitute the Multinomial( $n, \theta_1, \theta_2, \theta_3$ ) R $\vec{V}$ .

**Labwork 100 (Septcunx Sampler Demo – Sum of n IID de Moivre(1/3, 1/3, 1/3) R $\vec{V}$ s)** Let us understand the Septcunx construction of the Multinomial( $n, 1/3, 1/3, 1/3$ ) R $\vec{V}$ X as the sum of  $n$  independent and identical de Moivre( $1/3, 1/3, 1/3$ ) R $\vec{V}$ s by calling the interactive visual cognitive tool as follows:

```
>> guiMultinomial
```

Multinomial distributions are at the very foundations of various machine learning algorithms, including, filtering junk email, learning from large knowledge-based resources like www, Wikipedia, word-net, etc.

**Model 18** (Normal( $\mu, \Sigma$ ) R $\vec{V}$ ) The univariate Normal( $\mu, \sigma^2$ ) RV has two parameters,  $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $\sigma^2 \in (0, \infty)$ . In the multivariate version  $\mu \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times 1}$  is a column vector and  $\sigma^2$  is replaced by a matrix  $\Sigma$ . To begin, let

$$Z = \begin{pmatrix} Z_1 \\ Z_2 \\ \vdots \\ Z_m \end{pmatrix}$$

where,  $Z_1, Z_2, \dots, Z_m$  are jointly independent Normal( $0, 1$ ) RVs. Then the JPDF of  $Z$  is

$$f_Z(z) = f_{Z_1, Z_2, \dots, Z_m}(z_1, z_2, \dots, z_m) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{m/2}} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^m z_j^2\right) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{m/2}} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} z^T z\right)$$

We say that  $Z$  has a standard multivariate normal distribution and write  $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, I)$ , where it is understood that 0 represents the vector of  $m$  zeros and  $I$  is the  $m \times m$  identity matrix (with 1 along the diagonal entries and 0 on all off-diagonal entries).

More generally, a vector  $X$  has a multivariate normal distribution denoted by  $X \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, \Sigma)$ , if it has joint probability density function

$$f_X(x; \mu, \Sigma) = f_{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m; \mu, \Sigma) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{m/2} |\Sigma|^{1/2}} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} (x - \mu)^T \Sigma^{-1} (x - \mu)\right)$$

where  $|\Sigma|$  denotes the determinant of  $\Sigma$ ,  $\mu$  is a vector of length  $m$  and  $\Sigma$  is a  $m \times m$  symmetric, positive definite matrix. Setting  $\mu = 0$  and  $\Sigma = I$  gives back the standard multivariate normal R $\vec{V}$ .

Then, the Wald test based on the test statistic  $W$  is:

$$\text{Reject } H_0 \text{ when } |W| > z_{\alpha/2}, \text{ where } W := W((X_1, \dots, X_n)) = \frac{\hat{\Theta}_n((X_1, \dots, X_n)) - \theta_0}{\hat{s}\hat{e}_n}.$$

The rejection region for the Wald test is:

$$\mathbb{X}_R = \{x := (x_1, \dots, x_n) : |W(x_1, \dots, x_n)| > z_{\alpha/2}\}.$$

**Proposition 131 (Asymptotic size of a Wald test)** As the sample size  $n$  approaches infinity, the size of the Wald test approaches  $\alpha$ :

$$\text{size} := P_{\theta_0}(|W| > z_{\alpha/2}) \rightarrow \alpha.$$

**Proof:** Let  $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ . The size of the Wald test, i.e. the supreme power under  $H_0$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{size} &:= \sup_{\theta \in \Theta_0} \beta(\theta) := \sup_{\theta \in \{\theta_0\}} P_{\theta}(x \in \mathbb{X}_R) = P_{\theta_0}(x \in \mathbb{X}_R) \\ &= P_{\theta_0}(|W| > z_{\alpha/2}) = P_{\theta_0}\left(\frac{|\hat{\theta}_n - \theta_0|}{\hat{s}\hat{e}_n} > z_{\alpha/2}\right) \\ &\rightarrow P(|Z| > z_{\alpha/2}) \\ &= \alpha. \end{aligned}$$

Next, let us look at the power of the Wald test when the null hypothesis is false.

**Proposition 132 (Asymptotic power of a Wald test)** Suppose  $\theta^* \neq \theta_0$ . The power  $\beta(\theta^*)$ , which is the probability of correctly rejecting the null hypothesis, is approximately equal to:

$$\Phi\left(\frac{\theta_0 - \theta^*}{\hat{s}\hat{e}_n} - z_{\alpha/2}\right) + \left(1 - \Phi\left(\frac{\theta_0 - \theta^*}{\hat{s}\hat{e}_n} + z_{\alpha/2}\right)\right),$$

where,  $\Phi$  is the DF of  $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$  RV. Since  $\hat{s}\hat{e}_n \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow 0$  the power increase with sample size  $n$ . Also, the power increases when  $|\theta_0 - \theta^*|$  is large.

Now, let us make the connection between the size  $\alpha$  Wald test and the  $1 - \alpha$  confidence interval explicit.

**Proposition 133 (The size Wald test)** The size  $\alpha$  Wald test rejects:

$$H_0 : \theta^* = \theta_0 \text{ versus } H_1 : \theta^* \neq \theta_0 \text{ if and only if } \theta_0 \notin C_n := (\hat{\theta}_n - \hat{s}\hat{e}_n z_{\alpha/2}, \hat{\theta}_n + \hat{s}\hat{e}_n z_{\alpha/2}).$$

Therefore, testing the hypothesis is equivalent to verifying whether the null value  $\theta_0$  is in the confidence interval.

**Example 203 (Wald test for the mean waiting times at our Orbiter bus-stop)** Let us use the Wald test to attempt to reject the null hypothesis that the mean waiting time at our Orbiter bus-stop is 10 minutes under an IID Exponential( $\lambda^*$ ) model. Let  $\alpha = 0.05$  for this test. We can formulate this test as follows:

$$H_0 : \lambda^* = \lambda_0 = \frac{1}{10} \quad \text{versus} \quad H_1 : \lambda^* \neq \frac{1}{10}, \quad \text{where,} \quad X_1, \dots, X_{132} \stackrel{iid}{\sim} \text{Exponential}(\lambda^*).$$

Based on Example 221 and Labwork 222 we obtained the 95% confidence interval to be  $[0.0914, 0.1290]$ . Since our null value  $\lambda_0 = 0.1$  belongs to this confidence interval, we fail to reject the null hypothesis from a size  $\alpha = 0.05$  Wald test.

of dependence is *Markov dependence* that we will briefly see via a couple examples in Chapter 6. When a sequence of RVs are not independent they are said to be **dependent**. The simplest form

### 3.10.5 Dependent Random Variables

```

>>> [f, err] = mvncdf([5.0 5.0], [7.0 7.0], [6.49 5.07], [0.59 0.24; 0.24 0.26])
f = 0.3352
err = 1.0000e-08

```

Or find the probability (with numerical error tolerance) that the cylinders are within the rectangular specifications of  $6 \pm 1.0$  along  $x$  and  $y$  as follows:

```

>>> ans = 0.2615
>>> mvncdf([6.0 6.0], [6.49 5.07], [0.59 0.24; 0.24 0.26])
ans = 0.2615

```

We can use MATLAB to compute for instance the probability that a cylinder has length and girth below 6.0 cms as follows:

then the Normal( $\mu, \Sigma$ ) RV has JPDF, marginal PDFs and samples with frequency histograms as shown in Figure 3.23.

$$\Sigma = \begin{pmatrix} \text{Cov}(X, X) & \text{Cov}(X, Y) \\ \text{Cov}(Y, X) & \text{Cov}(Y, Y) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} V(X) & \text{Cov}(X, Y) \\ \text{Cov}(Y, X) & V(Y) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.24 & 0.26 \\ 0.26 & 0.59 \end{pmatrix}$$

covariance matrix

for the mean lengths and girths of cylindrical shafts from a manufacturing process with variance below 6.0 cms as follows:

$$\mu = \begin{pmatrix} \text{Length} \\ \text{Girth} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5.07 \\ 6.49 \end{pmatrix}$$

When we have a non-zero mean vector

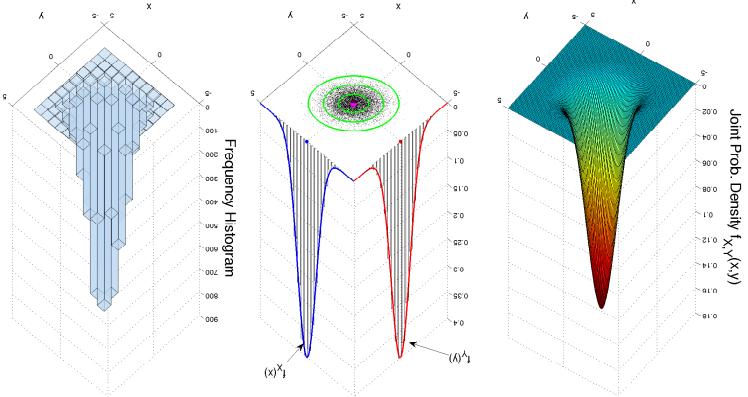


Figure 3.22: JPDF, Marginal PDFs and Frequency Histogram of Bivariate Standard Normal RV.

$$\theta^* = \theta_0, \quad \frac{\Theta_n - \theta_0}{\sqrt{n}} \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$$

Suppose that the null hypothesis is true and the estimator  $\Theta_n$  of  $\theta^* = \theta_0$  is asymptotically normal:

$$H_0: \theta^* = \theta_0 \quad \text{versus} \quad H_1: \theta^* \neq \theta_0$$

Consider testing:

$$X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{iid}{\sim} F(x_i; \theta^*)$$

and possibly unknown parameter  $\theta^* \in \Theta \subset \mathbb{R}$  in the parametric IID experiment:

**Definition 130 (The Wald Test)** Let  $\Theta_u$  be an asymptotically normal estimator of the fixed test. It can be used for testing simple hypotheses involving a scalar parameter.

The Wald test is based on a direct relationship between the  $1 - \alpha$  confidence interval and a size  $\alpha$

### 7.7.2 The Wald Test

We introduce some widely used tests next.

| $\Theta \subset \mathbb{R}_1$           | $H_0: \theta \leq \theta_0$ versus $H_1: \theta^* < \theta_0$   | One-sided Hypothesis Test |
|---|---|---------------------------|
| $\Theta \subset \mathbb{R}_1$           | $H_0: \theta \geq \theta_0$ versus $H_1: \theta^* > \theta_0$   | One-sided Hypothesis Test |
| $\Theta \subset \mathbb{R}_1$           | $H_0: \theta = \theta_0$ versus $H_1: \theta^* \neq \theta_0$   | Two-sided Hypotheses Test |
| $\Theta \subset \mathbb{R}_m, m \geq 1$ | $H_0: \theta^* = \theta_0$ versus $H_1: \theta^* \in \Theta_1$  | Composite Hypotheses Test |
| $\Theta \subset \mathbb{R}_m, m < 1$    | $H_0: \theta^* = \theta_0$ versus $H_1: \theta^* \neq \theta_0$ | Simple Hypotheses Test    |
| $\Theta$                                | $H_0$ versus $H_1$  | None-acute                |

Table 7.2: Some terminology in hypothesis testing.

Let us familiarize ourselves with some terminology in hypothesis testing next.

The size of a test is often denoted by  $\alpha$ . A test is said to have level  $\alpha$  if its size is less than or equal to  $\alpha$ .

So  $\beta(\theta)$  is the power of the test at the parameter value  $\theta$ , i.e. the probability of rejecting the null hypothesis when the null hypothesis is true:

The size of a test with rejection region  $\mathcal{X}^R$  is the supreme power under the null hypothesis, i.e. the supreme probability of rejecting the null hypothesis when the null hypothesis is true:

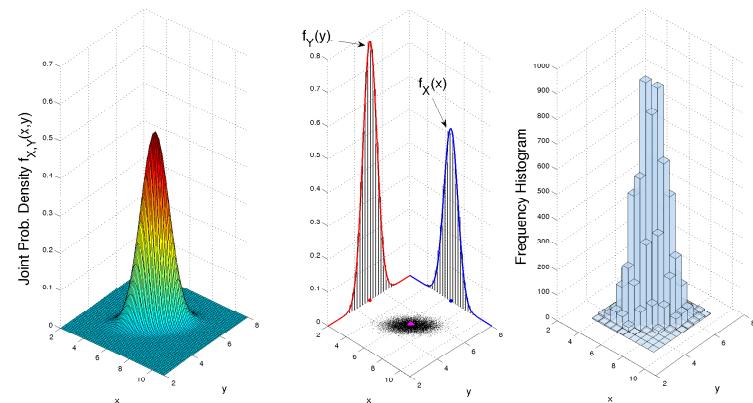
data  $x$ : sampled from the distribution specified by  $\theta$ , fails in  $\mathcal{X}^R$  and thereby leads to a rejection of the null hypothesis.

So  $\beta(\theta)$  is the power of the test at the parameter value  $\theta$ , i.e. the probability of rejecting the null hypothesis, i.e. the probability of observing data  $x$  under the alternative hypothesis  $\theta^*$  given that the null hypothesis is true.

| $H_1$ is True       | Type II Error | OK           |
|---------------------|---------------|--------------|
| $H_0$ is True       | OK            | Type I Error |
| Do not Reject $H_0$ | Reject $H_0$  | OK           |

Table 7.1: Outcomes of an hypothesis test.

Figure 3.23: JPDF, Marginal PDFs and Frequency Histogram of a Bivariate Normal R $\vec{V}$  for lengths of girths of cylindrical shafts in a manufacturing process (in cm).



### 3.11 Exercises in Multivariate Random Variables

**Ex. 3.38** — Find the probability that none of the three bulbs in a traffic signal, that are assumed to have independent life-times (i.e., the time during which they are operational), need to be replaced during the first 1200 hours of operation if the length of time before a single bulb needs to be replaced is a continuous random variable  $X$  with density

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 6(0.25 - (x - 1.5)^2) & 1 < x < 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

Note:  $X$  is measured in multiples of 1000 hours.

**Ex. 3.39** — Let  $(X, Y)$  be a continuous R $\vec{V}$  with joint probability density function (JPDF)

$$f_{X,Y}(x,y) = \begin{cases} a(x^2 + y) & \text{if } 0 < x < 1 \text{ and } 0 < y < 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

Find the following:

1. the normalizing constant  $a$  which will ensure  $P(\Omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{X,Y}(x,y) dx dy = 1$
2.  $f_X(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{X,Y}(x,y) dy$  called the marginal probability density function (MPDF) of  $X$
3.  $f_Y(y) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{X,Y}(x,y) dx$  called the marginal probability density function (MPDF) of  $Y$
4. Check if  $f_X(x)f_Y(y) = f_{X,Y}(x,y)$  for every  $(x,y)$  and decide whether  $X$  and  $Y$  are independent random variables. Hint:  $X$  and  $Y$  are said to be independent if  $f_X(x)f_Y(y) = f_{X,Y}(x,y)$  for every  $(x,y)$ .
5.  $F_{X,Y}(x,y)$ , the joint cumulative distribution function (JCDF) of  $(X, Y)$  for any  $(x,y) \in (0,1) \times (0,1)$
6. the probability that  $X > 0.5$  and  $Y < 0.6$ , i.e.,  $P(X > 0.5, Y < 0.6)$

## 7.7 Fundamentals of Hypothesis Testing

The subset of all posable hypotheses that remain falsifiable is the space of scientific hypotheses. Roughly, a falsifiable hypothesis is one for which a statistical experiment can be designed to produce data that an experimenter can use to falsify or reject it. In the statistical decision problem of hypothesis testing, we are interested in empirically falsifying a scientific hypothesis, i.e. we attempt to reject an hypothesis on the basis of empirical observations or data. Thus, hypothesis testing has its roots in the philosophy of science and is based on Karl Popper's falsifiability criterion for demarcating scientific hypotheses from the set of all posable hypotheses.

### 7.7.1 Introduction

Usually, the hypothesis we attempt to reject or falsify is called the null hypothesis or  $H_0$  and its complement is called the alternative hypothesis or  $H_1$ . For example, consider the following two hypotheses:

$H_0$ : The average waiting time at an Orbiter bus stop is less than or equal to 10 minutes.

$H_1$ : The average waiting time at an Orbiter bus stop is more than 10 minutes.

If the sample mean  $\bar{x}_n$  is much larger than 10 minutes then we may be inclined to reject the null hypothesis that the average waiting time is less than or equal to 10 minutes. We will learn to formally test hypotheses in the sequel.

Suppose we are interested in the following hypothesis test for the bus-stop problem:

$H_0$ : The average waiting time at an Orbiter bus stop is equal to 10 minutes.

$H_1$ : The average waiting time at an Orbiter bus stop is not 10 minutes.

Once again we can use the sample mean as the test statistic. Our procedure for rejecting this null hypothesis is different and is often called the Wald test.

More generally, suppose  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{iid}{\sim} F(x_1; \theta^*)$ , with an unknown and fixed  $\theta^* \in \Theta$ . Let us partition the parameter space  $\Theta$  into  $\Theta_0$ , the null parameter space, and  $\Theta_1$ , the alternative parameter space, ie,

$$\Theta_0 \cup \Theta_1 = \Theta, \quad \text{and} \quad \Theta_0 \cap \Theta_1 = \emptyset.$$

Then, we can formalise testing the null hypothesis versus the alternative as follows:

$$H_0 : \theta^* \in \Theta_0 \quad \text{versus} \quad H_1 : \theta^* \subset \Theta_1.$$

The basic idea involves finding an appropriate rejection region  $\mathbb{X}_R$  within the data space  $\mathbb{X}$  and rejecting  $H_0$  if the observed data  $x := (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  falls inside the rejection region  $\mathbb{X}_R$ ,

If  $x := (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{X}_R \subset \mathbb{X}$ , then reject  $H_0$ , else do not reject  $H_0$ .

Typically, the rejection region  $\mathbb{X}_R$  is of the form:

$$\mathbb{X}_R := \{x := (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) : T(x) > c\}$$

where,  $T$  is the test statistic and  $c$  is the critical value. Thus, the problem of finding  $\mathbb{X}_R$  boils down to that of finding  $T$  and  $c$  that are appropriate. Once the rejection region is defined, the possible outcomes of a hypothesis test are summarised in the following table.

**Definition 129 (Power, Size and Level of a Test)** The power function of a test with rejection region  $\mathbb{X}_R$  is

$$\beta(\theta) := P_\theta(x \in \mathbb{X}_R). \quad (7.51)$$

If  $X$  and  $Y$  are independent, what is their joint distribution function  $F_{X,Y}(x,y)$ ? [Hint: you need to express  $F_{X,Y}(x,y)$  for any  $(x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ .]

$$F_Y(y) = \begin{cases} 1 - \frac{1}{2}e^{-y} & \text{if } y \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } y < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$F_X(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \geq 2 \\ \frac{x}{2} & \text{if } 1 \leq x < 2 \\ 0 & \text{if } x < 1 \end{cases}$$

tions

**Ex. 3.44** — Consider two random variables (RVs)  $X$  and  $Y$  having marginal distribution func-

[Hint: Recall that  $\text{Cov}(X,Y) = E(XY) - E(X)E(Y)$ ]

$$f_{X,Y}(x,y) = \begin{cases} 0.2 & \text{if } (x,y) = (0,0) \\ 0.1 & \text{if } (x,y) = (1,1) \\ 0.1 & \text{if } (x,y) = (1,2) \\ 0.1 & \text{if } (x,y) = (2,1) \\ 0.1 & \text{if } (x,y) = (2,2) \\ 0.1 & \text{if } (x,y) = (3,2) \\ 0.4 & \text{if } (x,y) = (3,3) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

**Ex. 3.43** — Find the covariance for the discrete RV  $(X,Y)$  with joint probability mass function

squared, what is the variance of the thickness of the final product?

If the variances in thicknesses of the first, second and third layers are 25, 40 and 30 nanometers respectively,

**Ex. 3.42** — A semiconductor product consists of three layers that are fabricated independently.

Are  $X$  and  $Y$  independent?

$$f_{X,Y}(x,y) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ \frac{1}{4} & \text{if } (x,y) = (1,1) \\ \frac{1}{4} & \text{if } (x,y) = (0,1) \\ \frac{1}{4} & \text{if } (x,y) = (1,0) \\ \frac{1}{4} & \text{if } (x,y) = (0,0) \end{cases}$$

Let its joint probability mass function (JPMF) be:

$$S_{X,Y} = \{(0,0), (0,1), (1,0), (1,1)\}.$$

**Ex. 3.41** — Let  $(X,Y)$  be a discrete random vector (RV) with support:

$$Y = (X - \mu)^2$$

**Ex. 3.40** — Logs are milled to have a width of  $\mu$ . The actual width of a randomly selected item is  $X$ . If  $X$  is a Normal( $\mu, \sigma^2$ ) random variable then find the probability density function of the squared-error of the milling process,

10.  $\text{Cov}(X,Y) = E(XY) - E(X)E(Y)$ , the covariance of  $X$  and  $Y$ .

9.  $E(XY)$ , the expectation of  $XY$

8.  $E(Y)$ , the expectation of  $Y$  or the first moment of  $Y$

7.  $E(X)$ , the expectation of  $X$  or the first moment of  $X$

CHAPTE R 3. RANDOM VARIABLES

interval as small as we want by making the number of observations or sample size  $n$  as large as we can. Thus, we can make the width of the confidence interval after an additional 90 Bernoulli trials. This is much smaller than the width from a width of 0.6072 after 57 trials, which is considerably from 0.57 a width of 0.0990. Thus our confidence interval shrinks considerably from 0.5205 to 0.6195.

With a width of 0.6072, we will estimate  $\theta$  at 0.57 and confidence interval for  $\theta^*$  is 0.57 ± 0.0495 = [0.5205, 0.6195]. Tossing the same coin another 90 times, I discovered that a total of 57 trials landed as Heads. Thus with a width of 0.6072. When I increased the sample size  $n$  of the experiment from 10 to 100 by tossing the same coin another 90 times, I discovered that a total of 57 trials landed as Heads. Thus my point estimate estimate and confidence interval for  $\theta^*$  are:

$$C_{10} = 0.40 \pm 1.96 \sqrt{\frac{0.40(1-0.40)}{10}} = 0.40 \pm 0.3036 = [0.0964, 0.7036]$$

The normal-based confidence interval here with just  $n = 10$  samples. Nevertheless, we will compute a 95% normal-based confidence interval:

$$\theta_{10} = \Theta_{10}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{10}) = \Theta_{10}((1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0)) = \frac{1 + 0 + 0 + 0 + 1 + 1 + 0 + 0 + 1 + 0}{10} = 0.40.$$

$\Theta_n(\bar{X}_1, \bar{X}_2, \dots, \bar{X}_n) = n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$  of  $\theta^*$ . The point estimate of  $\theta$  was of Bernoulli outcomes ( $\text{Heads} \leftrightarrow 1$  and  $\text{Tails} \leftrightarrow 0$ ) being  $(1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0)$ . We estimated the confidence interval for the coin tossing experiment in Example 195 with the observed sequence of Bernoulli outcomes ( $\text{Heads} \leftrightarrow 1$  and  $\text{Tails} \leftrightarrow 0$ ) being 125 due to Proposition 125. We also saw that  $\Theta_n$  is an asymptotically consistent estimator of  $\theta^*$  due to

$$\theta_n \mp z_{\alpha/2} s_{\theta_n} = \theta_n \mp z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{\theta_n(1-\theta_n)}{n}} = \left[ \theta_n - \frac{z_{\alpha/2}}{\sqrt{n}}, \theta_n + \frac{z_{\alpha/2}}{\sqrt{n}} \right]$$

an asymptotically (for large sample size  $n$ ) approximation  $I - \alpha$  normal-based confidence interval is: By the central limit theorem,  $\Theta_n \sim \text{Normal}(\theta^*, s_{\theta_n})$ , i.e.,  $\Theta_n$  is asymptotically normal. Therefore,

$$s_{\theta_n} = \sqrt{\theta_n(1-\theta_n)/n}, \quad \text{where, } \theta_n = \Theta_n(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i.$$

Since  $\theta^*$  is unknown, we obtain the estimated standard error  $s_{\theta_n}$  from the point estimate  $\theta_n$  of  $\theta^*$  on the basis of  $n$  observed data points  $x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  of the experiment:

**Ex. 3.45** — Let  $(X, Y)$  be a continuous RV with joint probability density function (JPDF):

$$f_{X,Y}(x,y) = \begin{cases} e^{-x} & \text{if } x \in [0, \infty) \text{ and } y \in [2, 3] \\ 0 & \text{otherwise .} \end{cases}$$

Are  $X$  and  $Y$  independent?

**Ex. 3.46** — In an electronic assembly, let the RVs  $X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4$  denote the lifetimes of four components in hours. Suppose that the JPDF of these variables is

$$\begin{aligned} f_{X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4}(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) \\ = \begin{cases} 9 \times 10^{-12} e^{-0.001x_1 - 0.002x_2 - 0.0015x_3 - 0.003x_4} & \text{if } x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0, x_4 \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise .} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

What is the probability that the device operates for more than 1000 hours without any failures? [Hint: The requested probability is  $P(X_1 > 1000, X_2 > 1000, X_3 > 1000, X_4 > 1000)$  since each one of the four components of the device must not fail before 1000 hours.]

**Ex. 3.47** — Suppose the RVs  $Y_1, Y_2$  and  $Y_3$  represent the thickness in micrometers of a substrate, an active layer, and a coating layer of a chemical product. Assume  $Y_1, Y_2$  and  $Y_3$  are  $\text{Normal}(10000, 250^2)$ ,  $\text{Normal}(1000, 20^2)$  and  $\text{Normal}(80, 4^2)$  RVs, respectively. Further suppose that they are independent. The required specifications for the thickness of the substrate, active layer and coating layer are  $[9500, 10500]$ ,  $[950, 1050]$  and  $[75, 85]$ , respectively. What proportion of chemical products meets all thickness specifications? [Hint: this is just  $P(9500 < Y_1 < 10500, 950 < Y_2 < 1050, 75 < Y_3 < 85)$ ] Which one of the three thicknesses has the least probability of meeting specifications?

**Ex. 3.48** — Soft drink cans are filled by an automated filling machine. Assume the fill volumes of the cans are independent  $\text{Normal}(12.1, 0.01)$  RVs. What is the probability that the average volume of ten cans selected from this process is less than 12.01 fluid ounces?

**Ex. 3.49** — Let  $X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4$  be RVs that denote the number of bits received in a digital channel that are classified as *excellent*, *good*, *fair* and *poor*, respectively. In a transmission of 10 bits, what is the probability that 6 of the bits received are *excellent*, 2 are *good*, 2 are *fair* and none are *poor* under the assumption that the classification of bits are independent events and that the probabilities of each bit being *excellent*, *good*, *fair* and *poor* are 0.6, 0.3, 0.08 and 0.02, respectively. [Hint: Think of  $\text{Multinomial}(n = 10, \theta_1 = 0.6, \theta_2 = 0.3, \theta_3 = 0.08, \theta_4 = 0.02)$  as a model for bit classification in this digital channel.]

Let the RV  $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$  have DF  $\Phi$  and inverse DF  $\Phi^{-1}$ . Let:

$$z_{\alpha/2} = \Phi^{-1}(1 - (\alpha/2)), \quad \text{that is,} \quad P(Z > z_{\alpha/2}) = \alpha/2 \quad \text{and} \quad P(-z_{\alpha/2} < Z < z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha .$$

Then:

$$P_{\theta^*}(\theta^* \in C_n) = P\left(\theta^* \in [\hat{\Theta}_n - z_{\alpha/2}\hat{s}_{\theta^*}, \hat{\Theta}_n + z_{\alpha/2}\hat{s}_{\theta^*}]\right) \rightarrow 1 - \alpha .$$

Therefore:

$$C_n := [\underline{C}_n, \bar{C}_n] = [\hat{\Theta}_n - z_{\alpha/2}\hat{s}_{\theta^*}, \hat{\Theta}_n + z_{\alpha/2}\hat{s}_{\theta^*}]$$

is the  $1 - \alpha$  Normal-based asymptotic confidence interval that relies on the asymptotic normality of the estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  of  $\theta^* \in \Theta \subset \mathbb{R}$ .

**Proof:** Define the centralised and scaled estimator as  $Z_n := (\hat{\Theta}_n - \theta^*)/\hat{s}_{\theta^*}$ . By assumption,  $Z_n \rightsquigarrow Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} P_{\theta^*}(\theta^* \in C_n) &= P_{\theta^*}(\theta^* \in [\hat{\Theta}_n - z_{\alpha/2}\hat{s}_{\theta^*}, \hat{\Theta}_n + z_{\alpha/2}\hat{s}_{\theta^*}]) \\ &= P_{\theta^*}(\hat{\Theta}_n - z_{\alpha/2}\hat{s}_{\theta^*} \leq \theta^* \leq \hat{\Theta}_n + z_{\alpha/2}\hat{s}_{\theta^*}) \\ &= P_{\theta^*}(-z_{\alpha/2}\hat{s}_{\theta^*} \leq \hat{\Theta}_n - \theta^* \leq z_{\alpha/2}\hat{s}_{\theta^*}) \\ &= P_{\theta^*}\left(-z_{\alpha/2} \leq \frac{\hat{\Theta}_n - \theta^*}{\hat{s}_{\theta^*}} \leq z_{\alpha/2}\right) \\ &\rightarrow P_{\theta^*}(-z_{\alpha/2} \leq Z \leq z_{\alpha/2}) \\ &= 1 - \alpha \end{aligned}$$

Figure 7.2: Density and Confidence Interval of the Asymptotically Normal Point Estimator

For 95% confidence intervals,  $\alpha = 0.05$  and  $z_{\alpha/2} = z_{0.025} = 1.96 \approx 2$ . This leads to the **approximate 95% confidence interval** of  $\hat{\Theta}_n \pm 2\hat{s}_{\theta^*}$ , where  $\hat{\Theta}_n = \hat{\Theta}_n(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  and  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  are the data or observations of the RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ .

**Example 202 (Confidence interval for  $\theta^*$  from  $n$  Bernoulli( $\theta^*$ ) trials)** Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Bernoulli}(\theta^*)$  for some fixed but unknown parameter  $\theta^* \in \Theta = [0, 1]$ . Consider the following point estimator of  $\theta^*$ :

$$\hat{\Theta}_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)) = n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^n X_i .$$

That is, we take the sample mean of the  $n$  IID Bernoulli( $\theta^*$ ) trials to be our point estimator of  $\theta^* \in [0, 1]$ . Then, we already saw that **this estimator is unbiased**.

We already saw that the standard error  $s_{\theta^*}$  of this estimator is:

$$s_{\theta^*} = \sqrt{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)/n} .$$

**Proposition 48 (Moment & CF)** Let  $X$  be a random variable and  $\phi_X(t)$  be its CF. If  $E(X^k)$  exists and is finite, then  $\phi_X(t)$  is  $k$  times continuously differentiable and

$$E(X^k) = \frac{d^k}{dt^k} \phi_X(t)|_{t=0}$$

where  $\left[ \frac{d^k}{dt^k} \phi_X(t) \right]_{t=0}$  is the  $k$ -th derivative of  $\phi_X(t)$  with respect to  $t$ , evaluated at the point  $t = 0$ .

The characteristic function can be used to derive the moments of  $X$  due to the following nice relationship between the  $k$ -th moment of  $X$  and the  $k$ -th derivative of the CF of  $X$ :

**Proposition 126 (CLT based on Sample Variance)** Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, \tilde{X}_n$  and suppose  $E(X_1)$  and  $V(X_1)$  exists, then:

$$E(X^k) = \begin{cases} \int_x^{\infty} x^k f_X(x) dx & \text{if } X \text{ is a continuous RV} \\ \sum x^k f_X(x) & \text{if } X \text{ is a discrete RV} \end{cases}$$

Recall that the  $k$ -th moment of  $X$  is  $E(X^k)$  for any  $k \in \mathbb{N} : \{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$  is

### 3.12.1 Obtaining Moments from Characteristic Function

For a continuous RV,  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(-itx) f_X(x) dx$  is called the Fourier transform of  $f_X$ . This is the CF but with  $t$  replaced by  $-t$ . You will also encounter Fourier transforms when solving differential equations.

and the last two expected values are well-defined, because the sine and cosine functions are bounded by  $[-1, 1]$ .

$$\begin{aligned} &= E(\cos(tX)) + iE(\sin(tX)) \\ &= E(\cos(tX)) + E(\exp(itX)) \\ &\phi_X(t) = E(\exp(itX)) \end{aligned}$$

NOTE:  $\phi_X(t)$  exists for any  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ , because

is called the characteristic function of  $X$ .

**Definition 47 (Characteristic Function (CF))** Let  $X$  be a RV and  $\varphi_X(t) := \mathbb{E}[e^{itX}]$ . The function  $\varphi_X(t) : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  defined by

$$\varphi_X(t) = \mathbb{E}[\exp(itX)] = \begin{cases} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(itx) f_X(x) dx & \text{if } X \text{ is continuous RV} \\ \sum \exp(itx) f_X(x) & \text{if } X \text{ is discrete RV} \end{cases}$$

This CF is a powerful tool for analytical results involving random variables (more). The characteristic function (CF) of a random variable gives another way to specify its distribution. Thus CF is a powerful tool for analytical results involving random variables (more).

## 3.12 Characteristic Functions

$$\Theta_n \sim \text{Normal}(\theta^*, \sigma_{\Theta_n}^2)$$

**Proposition 128 (Normal-based Asymptotic Confidence Interval)** Suppose an estimator  $\Theta_n$  of parameter  $\theta^* \in \Theta$  is asymptotically normal.

That is,  $\Theta_n \sim \text{Normal}(\theta^*, \sigma_{\Theta_n}^2)$ . By a further estimation of  $\sigma_{\Theta_n} = \sqrt{V_{\theta^*}(\Theta_n)}$  by  $\sigma_{\Theta_n}$ , we can see

$$\frac{\Theta_n - \theta^*}{\sigma_{\Theta_n}} \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1).$$

The following property of an estimator makes it easy to obtain confidence intervals.

$$\frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}_n - E(X_1))}{S_n} \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1).$$

**Proposition 127 (Asymptotic Normality of Estimators)** An estimator  $\Theta_n$  of a fixed and pos-

provided  $n$  is not too small, for e.g.  $n \geq 30$ ,

The CLT says that if  $X_1, X_2, \dots, \tilde{X}_n$ :  $= \sqrt{n}(\bar{X}_n - E(X_1)) / \sqrt{V(X_1)}$  since we assumed knowledge of  $E(X_1)$  and  $V(X_1)$  using the sample standard deviation  $S_n$  of  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ , according to (3.79), estimate  $\sqrt{V(X_1)}$  using a Normal distribution  $X_n$  with mean  $\bar{X}_n$  using a Normal distribution, and still make probability statements about the sample mean  $\bar{X}_n$ , according to (3.79),  $\lambda^* = 5$ . However, in general, we may not know  $\sqrt{V(X_1)}$ . The next proposition says that we may distribute as Normal(0, 1). In Example 200, we knew  $\sqrt{V(X_1)}$  since we assumed knowledge of  $E(X_1)$  and  $V(X_1)$  using the sample standard deviation  $S_n$  of  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ , according to (3.79), estimate  $\sqrt{V(X_1)}$  using a Normal distribution  $X_n$  with mean  $\bar{X}_n$  using a Normal distribution, and still make probability statements about the sample mean  $\bar{X}_n$ , according to (3.79), provided  $n$  is not too small, for e.g.  $n \geq 30$ .

```
0.993790334674224
>> d1sp(Normal(2.5, 1))
>> format long
```

**Labwork 201** The numerical approximation of (2.5) was obtained via the call shown below to our erf-based NormalCDF function from 235. We could have also found it from a pre-computed Table for  $\Phi(x)$ .

To obtain the final number in this approximation, we need the following:

$$\begin{aligned} &= P(Z \leq 2.5) = \Phi(2.5) = \int_{-2.5}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left(-\frac{x^2}{2}\right) dx \approx 0.993790334674224. \\ &= P\left(Z < \frac{\sqrt{5}}{\sqrt{125(5.5 - 5)}}\right) \quad [\text{Since, } \lambda^* = 5 \text{ and } n = 125 \text{ in this Example}] \\ &\approx P\left(Z < \frac{\sqrt{5} - \lambda^*}{\sqrt{5(5 - \lambda^*)}}\right) \quad [\text{by CLT, and } E(X_1) = V(X_1) = \lambda^*] \\ P(\bar{X}_n < 5.5) &= P\left(\frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}_n - E(X_1))}{\sqrt{n(5.5 - \lambda^*)}} < \frac{\sqrt{V(X_1)}}{\sqrt{n(5.5 - \lambda^*)}}\right) \end{aligned}$$

of 5 errors per program. Using the CLT, we can approximate  $P(\bar{X}_n < 5.5)$ , for instance, as follows:

**Proof:** The proper proof is very messy so we just give a sketch of the ideas in the proof. Due to the linearity of the expectation (integral) and the derivative operators, we can change the order of operations:

$$\frac{d^k \varphi_X(t)}{dt^k} = \frac{d^k}{dt^k} E(\exp(itX)) = E\left(\frac{d^k}{dt^k} \exp(itX)\right) = E\left((it)^k \exp(itX)\right) = it^k E\left(X^k \exp(itX)\right)$$

The RHS evaluated at  $t = 0$  is

$$\left[\frac{d^k \varphi_X(t)}{dt^k}\right]_{t=0} = \left[it^k E\left(X^k \exp(itX)\right)\right]_{t=0} = it^k E\left(X^k\right)$$

This completes the sketch of the proof.

The above Theorem gives us the relationship between the moments and the derivatives of the CF if we already know that the moment exists. When one wants to compute a moment of a random variable, what we need is the following Theorem.

**Proposition 49 (Moments from CF.)** Let  $X$  be a random variable and  $\varphi_X(t)$  be its CF. If  $\varphi_X(t)$  is  $k$  times differentiable at the point  $t = 0$ , then

1. if  $k$  is even, the  $n$ -th moment of  $X$  exists and is finite for any  $0 \leq n \leq k$ ;
2. if  $k$  is odd, the  $n$ -th moment of  $X$  exists and is finite for any  $0 \leq n \leq k - 1$ .

In both cases,

$$E(X^k) = \frac{1}{i^k} \left[ \frac{d^k \varphi_X(t)}{dt^k} \right]_{t=0}. \quad (3.71)$$

where  $\left[\frac{d^k \varphi_X(t)}{dt^k}\right]_{t=0}$  is the  $k$ -th derivative of  $\varphi_X(t)$  with respect to  $t$ , evaluated at the point  $t = 0$ .

**Proof:** For proof see e.g., Ushakov, N. G. (1999) Selected topics in characteristic functions, VSP (p. 39).

**Example 101** Let  $X$  be the Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV. Find the CF of  $X$ . Then use CF to find  $E(X)$ ,  $E(X^2)$  and from this obtain the variance  $V(X) = E(X^2) - (E(X))^2$ .

Solution:

#### Part 1

Recall the PMF for this discrete RV with parameter  $\theta \in (0, 1)$  is

$$f_X(x; \theta) = \begin{cases} \theta & \text{if } x = 1 \\ 1 - \theta & \text{if } x = 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Let's first find the CF of  $X$

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_X(t) &= E(\exp(itX)) = \sum_x \exp(itx) f_X(x; \theta) \quad \text{By Defn. in Equation (3.70)} \\ &= \exp(it \times 0)(1 - \theta) + \exp(it \times 1)\theta = \exp(0)(1 - \theta) + \exp(it)\theta = 1 - \theta + \theta \exp(it) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 199 (Asymptotic consistency of our Estimator of  $\theta^*$ )** Consider the sample mean estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n := \bar{X}_n$  of  $\theta^*$ , from  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Bernoulli}(\theta^*)$ . Since  $\text{bias}_n(\hat{\Theta}_n) = 0$  for any  $n$  and  $\text{se}_n = \sqrt{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)/n} \rightarrow 0$ , as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , by Proposition 125,  $\hat{\Theta}_n \xrightarrow{P} \theta^*$ . That is  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  is an **asymptotically consistent estimator** of  $\theta^*$ .

#### 7.6.4 Confidence Set Estimation

As we saw in Section 7.6.2, the point estimate  $\hat{\theta}_n$  is a “single best guess” of the fixed and possibly unknown parameter  $\theta^* \in \Theta$ . However, if we wanted to make a statement about our confidence in an estimation procedure, then one possibility is to produce subsets from the parameter space  $\Theta$  called **confidence sets** that “engulf”  $\theta^*$  with a probability of at least  $1 - \alpha$ .

Formally, an  $1 - \alpha$  **confidence interval** for the parameter  $\theta^* \in \Theta \subset \mathbb{R}$ , based on  $n$  observations or data points  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ , is an interval  $C_n$  that is a function of the data:

$$C_n := [\underline{C}_n, \bar{C}_n] = [\underline{C}_n(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n), \bar{C}_n(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)],$$

such that:

$$P_{\theta^*}(\theta^* \in C_n := [\underline{C}_n, \bar{C}_n]) \geq 1 - \alpha.$$

Note that the confidence interval  $C_n := [\underline{C}_n, \bar{C}_n]$  is a two-dimensional RV or a random vector in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  that depends on the two statistics  $\underline{C}_n(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$  and  $\bar{C}_n(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$ , as well as  $\theta^*$ , which in turn determines the distribution of the data  $(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$ . In words,  $C_n$  engulfs the true parameter  $\theta^* \in \Theta$  with a probability of at least  $1 - \alpha$ . We call  $1 - \alpha$  as the **coverage** of the confidence interval  $C_n$ .

Formally, a  $1 - \alpha$  **confidence set**  $C_n$  for a vector-valued  $\theta^* \in \Theta \subset \mathbb{R}^k$  is any subset of  $\Theta$  such that  $P_{\theta^*}(\theta^* \in C_n) \geq 1 - \alpha$ . The typical forms taken by  $C_n$  are  $k$ -dimensional boxes or hyper-cuboids, hyper-ellipsoids and subsets defined by inequalities involving level sets of some estimator of  $\theta^*$ .

Typically, we take  $\alpha = 0.05$  because we are interested in the  $1 - \alpha = 0.95$  or 95% confidence interval/set  $C_n \subset \Theta$  of  $\theta^* \in \Theta$  from an estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  of  $\theta^*$ .

Let us look at an example that makes use of the CLT next (Exercise in Prob. Theor.I).

**Example 200 (Errors in computer code (Wasserman03, p. 78))** Suppose the collection of RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  model the number of errors in  $n$  computer programs named  $1, 2, \dots, n$ , respectively. Suppose that the RV  $X_i$  modelling the number of errors in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  program is the  $\text{Poisson}(\lambda^* = 5)$  for any  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Also suppose that they are independently distributed. In short, we suppose that:

$$X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Poisson}(\lambda^* = 5).$$

Suppose we have  $n = 125$  programs and want to make a probability statement about  $\bar{X}_n$  which is the average number of errors per program out of these 125 programs. Since  $E(X_i) = \lambda^* = 5$  and  $V(X_i) = \lambda^* = 5$ , we may want to know how often our sample mean  $\bar{X}_{125}$  differs from the expectation



Let us differentiate the CF to get moments using Equation (3.71) (CF has to be once and twice differentiable at  $t = 0$  to get the first and second moments).

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dt}\varphi_X(t) &= \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\lambda}{\lambda - it}\right) = \lambda\left(-1 \times (\lambda - it)^{-2} \times \frac{d}{dt}(\lambda - it)\right) \\ &= \lambda\left(\frac{-1}{(\lambda - it)^2} \times (-i)\right) = \frac{\lambda i}{(\lambda - it)^2}\end{aligned}$$

We get  $E(X)$  by evaluating  $\frac{d}{dt}\varphi_X(t)$  at  $t = 0$  and dividing by  $i$  according to Equation (3.71) as follows:

$$E(X) = \frac{1}{i} \left[ \frac{d}{dt}\varphi_X(t) \right]_{t=0} = \frac{1}{i} \left[ \frac{\lambda i}{(\lambda - it)^2} \right]_{t=0} = \frac{1}{i} \left( \frac{\lambda i}{\lambda^2} \right) = \frac{1}{i} \left( \frac{i}{\lambda} \right) = \frac{1}{\lambda}$$

Let's pause and see if this makes sense.... Yes, because the expected value of  $\text{Exponential}(\lambda)$  RV is indeed  $1/\lambda$  (recall from when we introduced this RV).

Similarly from Equation (3.71) we can get  $E(X^2)$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}E(X^2) &= \frac{1}{i^2} \left[ \frac{d^2}{dt^2}\varphi_X(t) \right]_{t=0} = \frac{1}{i^2} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \frac{d}{dt}\varphi_X(t) \right]_{t=0} = \frac{1}{i^2} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\lambda i}{(\lambda - it)^2} \right]_{t=0} \\ &= \frac{1}{i^2} \left[ \lambda i \times \frac{d}{dt}(\lambda - it)^{-2} \right]_{t=0} = \frac{1}{i^2} \left[ \lambda i \left( -2(\lambda - it)^{-3} \frac{d}{dt}(\lambda - it) \right) \right]_{t=0} \\ &= \frac{1}{i^2} \left[ \lambda i (-2(\lambda - it)^{-3} \times (-i)) \right]_{t=0} = \frac{1}{i^2} \left[ \frac{2\lambda i^2}{(\lambda - it)^3} \right]_{t=0} = \frac{1}{i^2} \left( \frac{2\lambda i^2}{\lambda^3} \right) = \frac{2}{\lambda^2}.\end{aligned}$$

Finally, from the first and second moments we can get the variance as follows:

$$V(X) = E(X^2) - (E(X))^2 = \frac{2}{\lambda^2} - \left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right)^2 = \frac{2}{\lambda^2} - \frac{1}{\lambda^2} = \frac{2-1}{\lambda^2} = \frac{1}{\lambda^2}.$$

Let's check that this is what we had as variance for the  $\text{Exponential}(\lambda)$  RV when we first introduced it and directly computed using integrals for definition of expectation.

Characteristic functions can be used to characterize the distribution of a random variable.

Two RVs  $X$  and  $Y$  have the same DFs , i.e.,  $F_X(x) = F_Y(x)$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , if and only if they have the same characteristic functions, i.e.  $\varphi_X(t) = \varphi_Y(t)$  for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  (for proof see Resnick, S. I. (1999) A Probability Path, Birkhauser).

Thus, if we can show that two RVs have the same CF then we know they are the same. This can be much more challenging or impossible to do directly with their DFs.

Let  $Z$  be  $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$ , the standard normal RV. We can find the CF for  $Z$  using couple of tricks as follows

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi_Z(t) &= E(e^{itZ}) \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{itz} f_Z(z) dz = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{itz} e^{-z^2/2} dz = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{itz - z^2/2} dz \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-(t^2 + (z-it)^2)/2} dz = e^{-t^2/2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-(z-it)^2/2} dz \\ &= e^{-t^2/2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-y^2/2} dy \quad \text{substituting } y = z - it, dy = dz \\ &= e^{-t^2/2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sqrt{2\pi} \quad \text{using the normalizing constant in PDF of } \text{Normal}(0, 1) \text{ RV} \\ &= e^{-t^2/2}\end{aligned}$$

**Example 197 (Bias of our Estimator of  $\theta^*$ )** Consider the sample mean estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n := \bar{X}_n$  of  $\theta^*$ , from  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Bernoulli}(\theta^*)$ . That is, we take the sample mean of the  $n$  IID Bernoulli( $\theta^*$ ) trials to be our point estimator of  $\theta^* \in [0, 1]$ . Then, **this estimator is unbiased** since:

$$E_{\theta^*}(\hat{\Theta}_n) = E_{\theta^*} \left( n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^n X_i \right) = n^{-1} E_{\theta^*} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n X_i \right) = n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^n E_{\theta^*}(X_i) = n^{-1} n \theta^* = \theta^*.$$

**Definition 121 (Standard Error of a Point Estimator)** The standard deviation of the point estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  of  $\theta^* \in \Theta$  is called the **standard error**:

$$\boxed{\text{se}_n = \text{se}_n(\hat{\Theta}_n) = \sqrt{V_{\theta^*}(\hat{\Theta}_n)} = \sqrt{\int_{\mathbb{X}_n} (\hat{\Theta}_n(x) - E_{\theta^*}(\hat{\Theta}_n))^2 dF(x; \theta^*)}} \quad (7.46)$$

Since the variance of the sampling distribution of the point estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  depends on the fixed and possibly unknown  $\theta^*$ , as emphasised by  $V_{\theta^*}$  in (7.46), the  $\text{se}_n$  is also a possibly unknown quantity and may itself be estimated from the data. The estimated standard error, denoted by  $\hat{\text{se}}_n$ , is calculated by replacing  $V_{\theta^*}(\hat{\Theta}_n)$  in (7.46) with its appropriate estimate.

**Example 198 (Standard Error of our Estimator of  $\theta^*$ )** Consider the sample mean estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n := \bar{X}_n$  of  $\theta^*$ , from  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Bernoulli}(\theta^*)$ . Observe that the statistic:

$$T_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)) := n \hat{\Theta}_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)) = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$$

is the  $\text{Binomial}(n, \theta^*)$  RV. The standard error  $\text{se}_n$  of this estimator is:

$$\text{se}_n = \sqrt{V_{\theta^*}(\hat{\Theta}_n)} = \sqrt{V_{\theta^*} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{X_i}{n} \right)} = \sqrt{\left( \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{1}{n^2} V_{\theta^*}(X_i) \right)} = \sqrt{\frac{n}{n^2} V_{\theta^*}(X_i)} = \sqrt{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)/n}.$$

Another reasonable property of an estimator is that it converge to the “true” parameter  $\theta^*$  – here “true” means the supposedly fixed and possibly unknown  $\theta^*$ , as we gather more and more IID data from a  $\theta^*$ -specified DF  $F(x; \theta^*)$ . This property is stated precisely next.

**Definition 122 (Asymptotic Consistency of a Point Estimator)** A point estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  of  $\theta^* \in \Theta$  is said to be **asymptotically consistent** if:

$$\boxed{\hat{\Theta}_n \xrightarrow{P} \theta^*} \quad \text{i.e., for any real } \epsilon > 0, \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(|\hat{\Theta}_n - \theta^*| > \epsilon) = 0.$$

**Definition 123 (Mean Squared Error (MSE) of a Point Estimator)** Often, the quality of a point estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  of  $\theta^* \in \Theta$  is assessed by the **mean squared error** or  $\text{MSE}_n$  defined by:

$$\boxed{\text{MSE}_n = \text{MSE}_n(\hat{\Theta}_n) := E_{\theta^*} ((\hat{\Theta}_n - \theta^*)^2) = \int_{\mathbb{X}} (\hat{\Theta}_n(x) - \theta^*)^2 dF(x; \theta^*)} \quad (7.47)$$

The following proposition shows a simple relationship between the mean square error, bias and variance of an estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  of  $\theta^*$ .

$$u(\vartheta\partial_\theta + \theta - 1) = (\vartheta\partial_\theta + \theta - 1) \prod_{\mu}^{I=\ell} = (\vartheta)^{u_X} \phi \prod_{\mu}^{I=\ell} = (\vartheta)^{u_X} \phi \cdots (\vartheta)^{e_X} \phi \times (\vartheta)^{r_X} \phi = (\vartheta)^{\chi} \phi$$

Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  be independent Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RVs with CF  $(1 - \theta + \theta e^t)$  then  $Y = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$  is the Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) RV and by Eqn. (3.74) with  $a_1 = a_2 = \dots = 1$ , we get solution:

Find the CF of the Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) RV  $Y$ .

- the Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) RV  $Y$  is the sum of  $n$  independent Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RVs (from Probability Course) Eqn. (3.74)

**Example 104** Using the following three facts:

$$(3.7.4) \quad \cdot (t^u v)^{\tau} X \not\models = (t^{uv})^u X \not\models \times \cdots \times (t^{uv})^{\varepsilon} X \not\models \times (t^{uv})^{\tau} X \not\models = (t) \not\models$$

A generalization of (3.73) is the following: If  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  are independent RVs and  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n$  are some constants, then the CDF of the linear combination  $Y = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i X_i$  is

$$\begin{aligned} &= e^{\mu t - \sigma \frac{(\mu - \sigma)^2}{2}} = \\ &= e^{\mu t - \sigma \frac{(\mu - \sigma)^2}{2}}, \quad \text{since } \varphi_Z(t) = e^{-t\frac{\mu-\sigma^2}{2}} = \\ &= \exp(\mu t + \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2 t^2), \quad \text{since } \varphi_Z(t) = \varphi_{Z'}(t) \end{aligned}$$

### Solution:

**Example 103** Let  $Y$  be a  $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  RV. Recall that  $Y$  is a linear transformation of  $Z$ , i.e.,  $Y = \mu + \sigma Z$  where  $Z$  is a  $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$  RV. Using Equations (3.72) and (3.73) find the CF of  $Y$ .

$$(pq)x\phi(pq)dx\phi = ((Xpq)dx\phi)E(pq)dx\phi = ((Xpq)dx\phi)(pq)dx\phi E = \\ ((Xpq + pq)dx\phi)E = (((Xq + p)q)dx\phi)E = ((\lambda q)dx\phi)E = (\lambda) x\phi$$

**Proof:** This is easy to prove using the definition of CFT as follows:

$$(\exists \cdot \exists) \boxed{(\forall q) X \phi(\forall x \phi = (\exists t) \forall \phi}$$

where  $a$  and  $b$  are two constant real numbers and  $b \neq 0$ . Then the CF of  $Y$  is

$$Xq + v = \lambda$$

Let  $X$  be a RV with CF  $\phi_X(t)$ . Let  $Y$  be a linear transformation of  $X$

$$(3.72) \quad \boxed{z/\tau^{\alpha} = (\tau)^Z \phi}$$

Thus the CF of the standard normal RV  $Z$  is

677

We say that the estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  is unbiased if  $\text{bias}(\hat{\Theta}_n) = 0$  or if  $E^*(\hat{\Theta}_n) = \theta^*$  for every  $n$ . If  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \text{bias}(\hat{\Theta}_n) = 0$ , we say that the estimator is asymptotically unbiased.

$$\text{bias}_n = \text{bias}_n(\Theta_n) := \int_{\Theta^n} \theta - (\theta; x) dP(x) \Theta^n \int = \int_{\Theta^n} \theta - (\theta; x) dP(x) \Theta^n \int$$

**Definition 12.0 (Bias of a Point Estimator)** The bias<sub>n</sub> of an estimator  $\hat{\theta}_n$  of  $\theta^*$  is:

Given that an estimator is merely a function from the data space to the parameter space, we need choose only the best estimators available. Recall that a point estimator  $\hat{\theta}_n$ , being a statistic or sample distribution over  $\Theta$ , is called the **sampled distribution** of  $\hat{\theta}_n$ . Note that the sampling distribution not only depends on the statistics  $\hat{\theta}_n = \hat{\theta}_n(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$ , but also on  $\theta^*$  which in turn determines the distribution of the IID data vector  $(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$ . The following definitions are useful for selecting better estimators from some lot of them.

### 7.6.3 Some Properties of Point Estimators

**Labwork 19c (Benchmarking/CS/1) Computer Experiment** Simulate the thousands of ID samples from a Bernoulli( $\theta = 38/75$ ) RV and store this data in an array called **Sample**. Use your student ID to initialize the random sample. Now, pretend that you don't know the true  $\theta$  and estimate  $\theta$ , using our estimator  $\hat{\theta} = \bar{X}_n$ . Plot the data array **Sample** for each sample size  $n = 1, 2, \dots, 1000$ . Plot the one thousand estimates  $\hat{\theta}_1, \hat{\theta}_2, \dots, \hat{\theta}_{1000}$  as a function of the corresponding sample size.

$$\theta^{10} = \Theta^{10}((x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{10})) = \Theta^{10}((1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0))$$

For the coin tossing experiment I just performed ( $n = 10$  times), the point estimate of the unknown variable  $\theta$  is:

$${}^u\underline{X}:={}^iX\sum_{\substack{I=1 \\ u}}^1 \frac{u}{I} = {}^u\Theta=:(({}^uX^1,\dots,X^2),{}^uX)$$

**Example 1.95** Consider the experiment  $(X_1, \dots, X_n) \sim \text{Bernoulli}(p^{**})$ . I tossed a coin that has an unknown probability  $\theta^*$  of landing Heads independently and identically 10 times in a row. Four of my outcomes were Heads and the remaining six were Tails, with the actual sequence of Bernoulli outcomes  $(\text{Heads} \leftrightarrow 1 \text{ and Tails} \leftrightarrow 0)$  being  $(1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0)$ . I would like to estimate the probability  $\theta^*$  of observing Heads using the natural estimator  $\Theta_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n))$  of  $\theta^*$ :

The typical situation for us involves point estimation of  $\theta$ .  $\Theta$  on the basis of one realization  $x \in X^n \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  of an identically distributed (IID) random vector  $X = (X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$ , such that  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{iid}}{\sim} X_1$  and the DF of  $X_1$  is  $F(x_1; \theta^*)$ , i.e. the distribution of the IID RVs,  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ , is parameterized by  $\theta^* \in \Theta$ .

**Example 105** Let  $Z_1$  and  $Z_2$  be independent Normal(0, 1) RVs.

1. Use Eqn. (3.74) to find the CF of  $Z_1 + Z_2$ .
2. From the CF of  $Z_1 + Z_2$  identify what RV it is.
3. Use Eqn. (3.74) to find the CF of  $2Z_1$ .
4. From the CF of  $2Z_1$  identify what RV it is.
5. Try to understand the difference between the distributions of  $Z_1 + Z_2$  and  $2Z_1$  inspite of  $Z_1$  and  $Z_2$  having the same distribution.

Hint: from lectures we know that  $\varphi_X(t) = e^{\mu t - (\sigma^2 t^2)/2}$  for a Normal( $\mu, \sigma^2$ ) RV  $X$ .

Solution:

1. By Eqn. (3.74) we just multiply the characteristic functions of  $Z_1$  and  $Z_2$ , both of which are  $e^{-t^2/2}$ ,

$$\varphi_{Z_1+Z_2}(t) = \varphi_{Z_1}(t) \times \varphi_{Z_2}(t) = e^{-t^2/2} \times e^{-t^2/2} = e^{-2t^2/2} = e^{-t^2}.$$

2. The CF of  $Z_1 + Z_2$  is that of the Normal( $\mu, \sigma^2$ ) RV with  $\mu = 0$  and  $\sigma^2 = 2$ . Thus  $Z_1 + Z_2$  is the Normal(0, 2) RV with mean parameter  $\mu = 0$  and variance parameter  $\sigma^2 = 2$ .

3. We can again use Eqn. (3.74) to find the CF of  $2Z_1$  as follows

$$\varphi_{2Z_1} = \varphi_{Z_1}(2t) = e^{-2^2 t^2/2}.$$

4. The CF of  $2Z_1$  is that of the Normal( $\mu, \sigma^2$ ) RV with  $\mu = 0$  and  $\sigma^2 = 2^2 = 4$ . Thus  $2Z_1$  is the Normal(0, 4) RV with mean parameter  $\mu = 0$  and variance parameter  $\sigma^2 = 4$ .

5.  $2Z_1$  has a bigger variance from multiplying the standard normal RV by 2 while  $Z_1 + Z_2$  has a smaller variance from adding two independent standard normal RVs. Thus, the result of adding the same RV twice does not have the same distribution as that of multiplying it by 2.

In other words  $2 \times Z$  is not equal to  $Z + Z$  in terms of its probability distribution!

### 3.12.2 Moment Generating Function

Moment generating functions are special cases of characteristic functions and we won't be explicitly using them here as it is more convenient to work in the complex plane.

## 3.13 Exercises in Characteristic Functions

**Ex. 3.50** — Let  $X$  be a discrete random variable (RV) with probability mass function (PMF)

$$f_X(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{3} & \text{if } x = 0 \\ \frac{1}{3} & \text{if } x = 1 \\ \frac{1}{3} & \text{if } x = 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

## 7.6 Fundamentals of Estimation

### 7.6.1 Introduction

Now that we have been introduced to two notions of convergence for RV sequences, we can begin to appreciate the basic limit theorems used in statistical inference. The problem of estimation is of fundamental importance in statistical inference and learning. We will formalise the general estimation problem here. There are two basic types of estimation. In point estimation we are interested in estimating a particular point of interest that is supposed to belong to a set of points. In (confidence) set estimation, we are interested in estimating a set with a particular form that has a specified probability of “trapping” the particular point of interest from a set of points. Here, a point should be interpreted as an element of a collection of elements from some space.

### 7.6.2 Point Estimation

**Point estimation** is any statistical methodology that provides one with a “single best guess” of some specific quantity of interest. Traditionally, we denote this **quantity of interest** as  $\theta^*$  and its **point estimate** as  $\hat{\theta}$  or  $\hat{\theta}_n$ . The subscript  $n$  in the point estimate  $\hat{\theta}_n$  emphasises that our estimate is based on  $n$  observations or data points from a given statistical experiment to estimate  $\theta^*$ . This quantity of interest, which is usually unknown, can be:

- an **integral**  $\vartheta^* := \int_A h(x) dx \in \Theta$ . If  $\vartheta^*$  is finite, then  $\Theta = \mathbb{R}$ , or
- a **parameter**  $\theta^*$  which is an element of the **parameter space**  $\Theta$ , denoted  $\theta^* \in \Theta$ ,
- a **distribution function (DF)**  $F^* \in \mathbb{F} :=$  the set of all DFs
- a **density function (pdf)**  $f \in \{ \text{not too wiggly Sobolev functions} \}$ , or
- a **regression function**  $g^* \in \mathbb{G}$ , where  $\mathbb{G}$  is a class of regression functions in a regression experiment with model:  $Y = g^*(X) + \epsilon$ , such that  $E(\epsilon) = 0$ , from pairs of observations  $\{(X_i, Y_i)\}_{i=1}^n$ ,
- a **classifier**  $g^* \in \mathbb{G}$ , i.e. a regression experiment with discrete  $Y = g^*(X) + \epsilon$ , or
- a **prediction** in a regression experiment, i.e. when you want to estimate  $Y_i$  given  $X_i$ .

Recall that a statistic is an RV  $T(X)$  that maps every data point  $x$  in the data space  $\mathbb{X}$  with  $T(x) = t$  in its range  $\mathbb{T}$ , i.e.  $T(x) : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{T}$  (Definition 51). Next, we look at a specific class of statistics whose range is the parameter space  $\Theta$ .

**Definition 119 (Point Estimator)** A **point estimator**  $\hat{\Theta}$  of some fixed and possibly unknown  $\theta^* \in \Theta$  is a statistic that associates each data point  $x \in \mathbb{X}$  with an estimate  $\hat{\Theta}(x) = \hat{\theta} \in \Theta$ ,

$$\boxed{\hat{\Theta} := \hat{\Theta}(x) = \hat{\theta} : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \Theta}.$$

If our data point  $x := (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  is an  $n$ -vector or a point in the  $n$ -dimensional real space, i.e.  $x := (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{X}_n \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ , then we emphasise the dimension  $n$  in our point estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  of  $\theta^* \in \Theta$ .

$$\boxed{\hat{\Theta}_n := \hat{\Theta}_n(x := (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)) = \hat{\theta}_n : \mathbb{X}_n \rightarrow \Theta, \quad \mathbb{X}_n \subset \mathbb{R}^n}.$$

The realisation of the RV  $X$  when an experiment is performed once and it yields a specific  $w \in \Omega$ , the data  $X(w) = x \in \mathbb{X}$  is the corresponding realisation of the RV  $X$ .  
is, when the experiment is performed once and it yields a specific  $w \in \Omega$ , the data  $X(w) = x \in \mathbb{X}$ .

$$X(w) : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{X}.$$

space  $\mathbb{X}$ :  
random vector  $X = (X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$ , i.e. a vector of random variables] taking values in the data space  $\Omega$  [Often, the sample space is also denoted by  $\Omega$ . Formally,  $X$  is a random variable [or a Definition 50 (Data) The function  $X$  measures the outcome  $w$  of an experiment with sample

### 3.14.1 Data and Statistics

## 3.14 Statistics

RV it is.  
CF of  $-Z$ , the RV obtained from  $Z$  by simply switching its sign. From the CF of  $-Z$  identify what  $g_Y(t) = e^{at}\phi_X(bt)$  and that  $\phi_Z(t) = e^{-t^2/2}$  if  $Z$  is the Normal(0, 1) RV. Using these facts find the Ex. 3.55 — Recall from lecture that if  $Y = a + bX$  for some constants  $a$  and  $b$  with  $b \neq 0$  then

Ex. 3.54 — Let  $X$  be a Poisson( $\lambda$ ) RV and  $Y$  be another Poisson( $\mu$ ) RV. Suppose  $X$  and  $Y$  are independent. Use Eqn. (3.4) to first find the CF of the RV  $W = X + Y$ . From the CF of  $W$  try to identify what RV it is.

2. Find the variance of  $X$  using its CF.

1. Find the CF of  $X$ .

Hint: the power series of  $e^a = \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \frac{a^x}{x!}$ .

$$f_X(x; \lambda) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ \frac{\lambda^x}{x!} e^{-\lambda} & \text{if } x \in \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\} \end{cases}$$

Ex. 3.53 — Recall that the Poisson( $\lambda$ ) RV has the following PMF

Find the CF of  $X$ .

$$f_X(x; a, b) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ \frac{b^x}{x!} & \text{if } x \in [a, b] \end{cases}$$

Ex. 3.52 — Let  $X$  be the Uniform( $a, b$ ) RV with the following probability density function (PDF)

2. Using the CF find  $E(X)$ .

1. Find the CF of  $X$ . Hint: the sum of the infinite geometric series  $\sum_{x=0}^{\infty} a^x x = \frac{1-a}{1-a}$ .

$$f_X(x; \theta) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ \theta(1-\theta)^x & \text{if } x \in \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\} \end{cases}$$

Ex. 3.51 — Recall that the Geometric( $\theta$ ) RV  $X$  has the following PMF

2. Using the CF find  $V(X)$ , the variance of  $X$ . Hint:  $V(X) = E(X^2) - (E(X))^2$

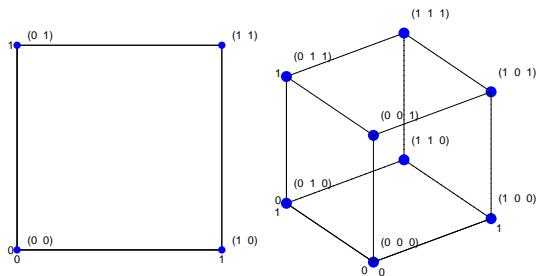
1. Find the characteristic function (CF) of  $X$

b Suppose the staff said that they budget constraints mean that the largest sample they can obtain is 120 people. They make another survey with that sample size and find  $\hat{p} = 0.6$ . In order to please the mayor they report a margin of error of 0.02. What is the asymptotic confidence level of this interval?

a Find a 90% (asymptotic) confidence interval for the proportion of people 18 or over who know the mayor's name. In calculating the interval, please also give the margin of error.

**Exercise 7.13** A simple random sample of 200 people aged 18 or over is taken in a large city to see how many of them know the name of the mayor. It turns out that 118 could correctly give her name.

Figure 3.24: Sample Space, Random Variable, Realisation, Data, and Data Space.

Figure 3.25: Data Spaces  $\mathbb{X} = \{0, 1\}^2$  and  $\mathbb{X} = \{0, 1\}^3$  for two and three Bernoulli trials, respectively.

**Example 106 (Tossing a coin  $n$  times)** For some given parameter  $\theta \in \Theta := [0, 1]$ , consider  $n$  IID Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) trials, i.e.  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{iid}}{\sim} \text{Bernoulli}(\theta)$ . Then the random vector  $X = (X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$ , which takes values in the data space  $\mathbb{X} = \{0, 1\}^n := \{(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) : x_i \in \{0, 1\}, i = 1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , made up of vertices of the  $n$ -dimensional hyper-cube, measures the outcomes of this experiment. A particular realisation of  $X$ , upon performance of this experiment, is the observation, data or data vector  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ . For instance, if we observed  $n - 1$  tails and 1 heads, in that order, then our data vector  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n) = (0, 0, \dots, 0, 1)$ .

**Definition 51 (Statistic)** A statistic  $T$  is any function of the data:

$$T(x) : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{T}.$$

Thus, a statistic  $T$  is also an RV that takes values in the space  $\mathbb{T}$ . When  $x \in \mathbb{X}$  is the realisation of an experiment, we let  $T(x) = t$  denote the corresponding realisation of the statistic  $T$ . Sometimes we use  $T_n(X)$  and  $\mathbb{T}_n$  to emphasise that  $X$  is an  $n$ -dimensional random vector, i.e.  $\mathbb{X} \subset \mathbb{R}^n$

**Classwork 107 (Is data a statistic?)** Is the RV  $X$ , for which the realisation is the observed

then we have  $P(\cdot) = EP_*(\cdot)$  where the expected value refers to  $Y$ . Select  $\varepsilon > 0$ ; from (7.42) we have on an event  $A_{n_0}$  (concerning only  $Y$ ) where  $P(Y \notin A_{n_0}) \rightarrow 0$

$$1 - \varepsilon \leq \hat{n}/n_0 \leq 1 + \varepsilon$$

hence for  $Y \in A_{n_0}$

$$\hat{n} \geq n_0(1 - \varepsilon) \text{ and } \hat{n} \leq n_0(1 + \varepsilon).$$

In this case

$$\frac{\sqrt{\hat{n}}m^*}{\sqrt{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)}} \leq \frac{\sqrt{n_0m^*}}{\sqrt{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)}} \sqrt{(1 + \varepsilon)} = z_\alpha \sqrt{(1 + \varepsilon)}$$

by (7.40). Let  $B_{n_0}$  be the event in (7.44), then, if  $\mathbf{1}_{\{Y \in A_{n_0}\}}$  denotes the indicator of the event  $\{Y \in A_{n_0}\}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} P(B_{n_0}) &= EP_*(B_{n_0}) = E \mathbf{1}_{\{Y \in A_{n_0}\}} P_*(B_{n_0}) + E \mathbf{1}_{\{Y \notin A_{n_0}\}} P_*(B_{n_0}) \\ &\leq E \mathbf{1}_{\{Y \in A_{n_0}\}} P_*(B_{n_0}) + E \mathbf{1}_{\{Y \notin A_{n_0}\}} \\ &= E \mathbf{1}_{\{Y \in A_{n_0}\}} P_*(B_{n_0}) + P(Y \notin A_{n_0}) \\ &\leq E \mathbf{1}_{\{Y \in A_{n_0}\}} P_* \left( \frac{\hat{\Theta}_{\hat{n}} - \theta^*}{\sqrt{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)}/\sqrt{\hat{n}}} \leq z_\alpha \sqrt{(1 + \varepsilon)} \right) + P(Y \notin A_{n_0}). \end{aligned}$$

If  $Y$  is fixed then  $\hat{n}$  is also fixed and on the event  $Y \in A_{n_0}$  we have  $\hat{n} \geq n_0(1 - \varepsilon)$ . Thus  $\hat{n}$  is large and the CLT will hold, so for large  $n_0$  we will have

$$P_* \left( \frac{\hat{\Theta}_{\hat{n}} - \theta^*}{\sqrt{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)}/\sqrt{\hat{n}}} \leq z_\alpha \sqrt{(1 + \varepsilon)} \right) \leq P(Z \leq z_\alpha \sqrt{(1 + \varepsilon)}) + \varepsilon.$$

Here the right side does not depend on  $Y$ . Collecting these results we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} P(B_{n_0}) &\leq E \mathbf{1}_{\{Y \in A_{n_0}\}} (P(Z \leq z_\alpha \sqrt{(1 + \varepsilon)}) + \varepsilon) + P(Y \notin A_{n_0}) \\ &\leq P(Z \leq z_\alpha \sqrt{(1 + \varepsilon)}) + \varepsilon + P(Y \notin A_{n_0}) \\ &\leq P(Z \leq z_\alpha \sqrt{(1 + \varepsilon)}) + 2\varepsilon \end{aligned}$$

since  $P(Y \notin A_{n_0}) \leq \varepsilon$  for sufficiently large  $n_0$ . Since  $\varepsilon > 0$  was arbitrary, we obtain

$$\limsup P(\hat{\Theta}_{\hat{n}} - \theta^* \geq m^*) = \limsup P(B_{n_0}) \leq P(Z \leq z_\alpha) = \alpha$$

For the other term in (7.43) we obtain analogously

$$\limsup P(\hat{\Theta}_{\hat{n}} - \theta^* \leq -m^*) \leq \alpha.$$

hence

$$\liminf P(\hat{\Theta}_{\hat{n}} - m^* \leq \theta^* \leq \hat{\Theta}_{\hat{n}} + m^*) \geq 1 - 2\alpha = C.$$

**Remark 118** In the proof we did not use the condition that  $n_1$  is only a fraction of  $n_0$  (i.e.  $n_1(m^*)^2 \rightarrow 0$ ) but this condition would play a role if  $Y_1, \dots, Y_{n_1}$  is the first part of the larger sample  $X_1, \dots, X_{\hat{n}}$ .

$$V(\underline{X}^u) = \frac{u}{1} \sum_{i=1}^u V(X^i) = \frac{u}{1} \sum_{i=1}^u \Lambda(X^i) = \frac{u}{1} \Lambda(\underline{X}^u) = \frac{u}{1} \Lambda(X^1). \quad (3.77)$$

Finally, if the original sequence of RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  is **independently and identically distributed** with the same variance ( $V(X_i)$  by convention) then:

$$V(\underline{X}^u) = \left( \frac{u}{1} \right)^2 \Lambda \left( \sum_{i=1}^u V(X^i) \right) \quad [\text{by property (3.51)}]$$

Furthermore, if the original sequence of RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  is **independently distributed** then:

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{u}{1} \sum_{i=1}^u V(X^i) \right) &= \\ \Lambda \left( \sum_{i=1}^u V(X^i) \right) &= \end{aligned} \quad [\text{by property (3.49)}] \quad [\text{by definition (3.75)}]$$

Similarly, we can show that:

$$E(\underline{X}^u) = \frac{u}{1} \sum_{i=1}^u E(X^i) = \frac{u}{1} u E(X^1) = E(X^1). \quad (3.76)$$

the same expectation, by convention  $E(X^1)$ , then:

Furthermore, if every  $X^i$  in the original sequence of RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  is **identically distributed** with

$$\begin{aligned} E(\underline{X}^u) &= \\ E\left(\sum_{i=1}^u X^i\right) &= \end{aligned} \quad [\text{by definition (3.50)}] \quad [\text{by property (3.50)}]$$

Note that the expectation and variance of  $\underline{X}^u$  are:

$$\underline{X}^u(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_u) \quad \text{as } \underline{x}^u.$$

and its realization

$$\underline{X}^u(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_u) \quad \text{as } \underline{X}^u.$$

For brevity, we write

$$T^u(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_u) = \underline{X}^u(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_u) =: \frac{u}{1} \sum_{i=1}^u X^i. \quad (3.75)$$

**Definition 52 (Sample Mean)** From a given a sequence of RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ , we may obtain another RV called the  $n$ -samples mean or simply the sample mean:

**Population moments.** The corresponding population moments are  $E(X^1)$  and  $V(X^1)$ , respectively.

Next, we define two important statistics called the **sample mean** and **sample variance**. Since they are obtained from the sample data, they are called **sample moments**, as opposed to the

good reason to believe that  $n/n_0 \rightarrow p$ , i.e. we want  $n_1/n \rightarrow 0$  (here  $n$  is random). Since there is no good reason to believe that  $n/n_0 \rightarrow p$ , we should subtract  $n_1/n_0 \rightarrow 0$ . But  $n_0$  is determined by  $m^*$  via (7.41), so we are led to consider small desired margins of error:  $m^* \rightarrow 0$ . The requirement to the size  $n$  of our "actual" sample, i.e. we write  $n_1/n \rightarrow 0$  (in view of (7.41)).

data  $X(\omega) = x$ , a statistic? In other words, is the data a statistic? Hint: consider the identity

$$\text{map } T(x) = x : \mathbb{X} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{X}.$$

Now  $\Theta^u$  is from a sample of random size  $u$  but the  $i$  is independent of this sample since it is based on  $Y = (Y_1, \dots, Y_{n_1}, \dots)$ . Now by  $P^*$  we will write probabilities for fixed  $Y$  (conditional on  $Y$ ):

$$\begin{aligned} &\cdot \left( \frac{(*\theta - 1) * \theta / (*\theta - 1)}{\sqrt{n_0}} \right)^u \geq \frac{u}{*\theta - 1} \\ &= \left( \frac{u}{*\theta - 1} \right)^u \end{aligned} \quad (7.44)$$

Now

$$\begin{aligned} &= 1 - P(*\theta - 1 \leq \underline{\Theta}^u) \\ &= P(\underline{\Theta}^u > m^*) \end{aligned} \quad (7.43)$$

Consider the coverage probability:

By Slutsky's theorem (Theorem 114) it suffices to show that  $\underline{\Theta}^u \rightarrow p^*$ . By the LLN, this is implied by our condition  $n_1 \rightarrow \infty$ .

indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{\theta * (1 - \theta)}{\underline{\Theta}^u(1 - \underline{\Theta}^u)}. \\ &= \frac{\theta * (1 - \theta)}{\underline{\Theta}^u(1 - \underline{\Theta}^u)(\frac{m^*}{\sqrt{n_0}})^2} \\ &= \frac{n_0}{\underline{\Theta}^u(1 - \underline{\Theta}^u)(\frac{m^*}{\sqrt{n_0}})^2} \end{aligned}$$

**Proof:** For the proof, we may take  $n_0$  as our basic index tending to infinity ( $n_0 \rightarrow 0$  is equivalent to  $m^* \rightarrow 0$ ). First we show that

$$\frac{n_0}{\underline{\Theta}^u} \rightarrow p \text{ as } n_0 \rightarrow 0. \quad (7.42)$$

**Proposition 117** Suppose independent Bernoulli observations  $X_1, \dots, X_{n_1}$  and  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_{n_0}$  with law Bernoulli( $\theta^*$ ) where  $\theta^* \in (0, 1)$  is unknown. Suppose  $n_1 \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $m^* \rightarrow 0$  and  $n_1(m^*)^2 \rightarrow 0$ . Then the confidence interval  $[\underline{\Theta}^u - m^*, \underline{\Theta}^u + m^*]$  given by Algorithm 7.5.4 maintains asymptotic level

To summarize: we will consider the Algorithm 7.5.4 in a setting where  $m^* \rightarrow 0$ ,  $n_1 \rightarrow \infty$ , and  $n_1(m^*)^2 \rightarrow 0$  (the third requirement means that  $n_1$  tends to infinity slower than  $(m^*)^2$  tends to zero).

**Remark 116** When  $n_1$  is only a fraction of  $n_0$  then the following modification of the Algorithm does not change the essence: let  $X_1, \dots, X_{n_1}$  be the first part of the larger sample  $X_1, \dots, X_{n_0}$ . This is how one might proceed in practice, but to show rigorously that this method also works is slightly more involved, though not different in principle from our proof below.

is the following modification of the Algorithm 7.5.4 in a setting where  $m^* \rightarrow 0$ ,  $n_1 \rightarrow \infty$ , and  $n_1(n_0 - n_1) \rightarrow 0$  will equivalently be expressed as  $n_1(m^*)^2 \rightarrow 0$  (in view of (7.41)).

**Labwork 108 (Sample mean)** After initializing the fundamental sampler, we draw five samples and then obtain the sample mean using the MATLAB function `mean`. In the following, we will reuse the samples stored in the array `XsFromUni01Twstr101`.

```
>> rand('twister',101); % initialise the fundamental Uniform(0,1) sampler
>> XsFromUni01Twstr101=rand(1,5); % simulate n=5 IID samples from Uniform(0,1) RV
>> SampleMean=mean(XsFromUni01Twstr101);% find sample mean
>> disp(XsFromUni01Twstr101); % The data-points x_1,x_2,x_3,x_4,x_5 are:
   0.5164    0.5707    0.0285    0.1715    0.6853
>> disp(SampleMean); % The Sample mean is :
   0.3945
```

We can thus use `mean` to obtain the sample mean  $\bar{x}_n$  of  $n$  sample points  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ .

We may also obtain the sample mean using the `sum` function and a division by sample size:

```
>> sum(XsFromUni01Twstr101) % take the sum of the elements of the XsFromUni01Twstr101 array
ans = 1.9723
>> sum(XsFromUni01Twstr101) / 5 % divide the sum by the sample size 5
ans = 0.3945
```

We can also obtain the sample mean via matrix product or multiplication as follows:

```
>> size(XsFromUni01Twstr101) % size(SomeArray) gives the size or dimensions of the arrar SomeArray
ans = 1 5
>> ones(5,1) % here ones(5,1) is an array of 1's with size or dimension 5 X 1
ans =
  1
  1
  1
  1
  1
>> XsFromUni01Twstr101 * ones(5,1) % multiplying an 1 X 5 matrix with a 5 X 1 matrix of Ones
ans = 1.9723
>> XsFromUni01Twstr101 * (ones(5,1) * 1/5) % multiplying an 1 X 5 matrix with a 5 X 1 matrix of 1/5 's
ans = 0.3945
```

**Definition 53 (Sample Variance & Standard Deviation)** From a given a sequence of random variables  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ , we may obtain another statistic called the  $n$ -samples variance or simply the sample variance :

$$T_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)) = S_n^2((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)) := \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n)^2. \quad (3.78)$$

For brevity, we write  $S_n^2((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n))$  as  $S_n^2$  and its realisation  $S_n^2((x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n))$  as  $s_n^2$ .

Sample standard deviation is simply the square root of sample variance:

$$S_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)) = \sqrt{S_n^2((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n))} \quad (3.79)$$

For brevity, we write  $S_n((X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n))$  as  $S_n$  and its realisation  $S_n((x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n))$  as  $s_n$ .

Once again, if  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} X_1$ , the expectation of the sample variance is:

$$E(S_n^2) = V(X_1).$$

then it is easy to determine a sample size that a given margin of error  $m^*$  is guaranteed:

$$n = \left(\frac{z_\alpha}{2m^*}\right)^2 \quad (7.39)$$

is obtained by solving (7.38) for  $n$ .

If we prefer the standard interval, and try to determine  $n$  for achieving a given margin of error, we are faced with the problem that  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  is not available before we have obtained the sample of that size. Indeed setting  $m = m^*$  in (7.37) and solving for  $n$  gives

$$n = \hat{\Theta}_n(1 - \hat{\Theta}_n) \left(\frac{z_\alpha}{m^*}\right)^2.$$

An obvious idea is to use an initial guess of  $\theta^*$ , or conduct a pilot study with sample size  $n_1$  and obtain an initial estimate  $\hat{\Theta}_{(1)}$  from there. Then determine the final sample size from

$$\hat{n} = \hat{\Theta}_{(1)}(1 - \hat{\Theta}_{(1)}) \left(\frac{z_\alpha}{m^*}\right)^2$$

### Two stage method

To achieve a given margin of error  $m^*$  (for fixed confidence level C):

(1) Sample  $n_1$  data  $Y_1, \dots, Y_{n_1}$  (all IID Bernoulli Bernoulli( $\theta^*$ )), obtain the corresponding sample proportion  $\hat{\Theta}_{(1)}$  and use it to determine an estimated sample size  $\hat{n}$  by

$$\hat{n} = \hat{\Theta}_{(1)}(1 - \hat{\Theta}_{(1)}) \left(\frac{z_\alpha}{m^*}\right)^2.$$

(2) Take another sample  $X_1, \dots, X_{\hat{n}}$  (all IID Bernoulli Bernoulli( $\theta^*$ )), independent of the first one, of size  $\hat{n}$ , obtain the sample proportion  $\hat{\Theta}_{\hat{n}}$  and use it for a confidence interval  $[\hat{\Theta}_{\hat{n}} - m^*, \hat{\Theta}_{\hat{n}} + m^*]$ .

The method is well founded heuristically. Can we show that it works, i.e. that asymptotic confidence level  $C$  is maintained ?

Consider an "ideal sample size"  $n_0$  which would guarantee the margin of error  $m^*$  if  $\theta^*$  were known:

$$m^* = z_\alpha \sqrt{\frac{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)}{n_0}}. \quad (7.40)$$

i.e.

$$n_0 = \theta^*(1 - \theta^*) \left(\frac{z_\alpha}{m^*}\right)^2. \quad (7.41)$$

This is a sample size we cannot use, but if we could use it, then the interval  $[\hat{\Theta}_{n_0} - m^*, \hat{\Theta}_{n_0} + m^*]$  would surely have asymptotic confidence level  $C$ . Of course if we know  $\theta^*$  then there is no need for a confidence interval anymore. But consideration of such "unavailable" methods is frequently useful<sup>3</sup>.

In what follows we will assume firstly, that the sample size for the pilot study  $n_1$  tends to infinity, so that we have a more and more accurate  $\hat{\Theta}_{(1)}$ . On the other hand, we want  $n_1$  to be small compared

<sup>3</sup>Such unavailable choices are sometimes called "of oracle type" since they are only available if an oracle tells us the truth, i.e. gives the true  $\theta^*$  here.

A **functional** is merely a function of another function. Thus,  $T(F)$  : {All DFs}  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbb{T}$ , being a map or function from the space of DFs to its range  $\mathbb{T}$ , is a functional. Some specific examples of functions we have already seen include:

$$(3.8) \quad F_{[-l]}(b) := \inf \{x : F(x) < b\}, \quad \text{for some } b \in [0, 1].$$

**Definition 55** (Inverse DF or Quantile Function) Let  $X$  be an RV with DF. The inverse DF or quantile function is:

Therefore, we can use `sort` to obtain our order statistics  $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}, \dots, x^{(n)}$  from  $n$  sample points  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ .

```

>>> dsp(SortedsfromMolitwst101); % display the sorted statistics
>>> SortedsfromMolitwst101=sort(SortedfromMolitwst101); % sort data
>>> SortedsfromMolitwst101=[0.6863 0.7115 0.7825 0.5707 0.5161];
>>> dss(PerformanceMolitwst101); % display the sample points

```

Labwork 110 (Order statistics and sorting) The order statistics for the five samples stored in *X5FromData101* from Labwork 108 can be computed using sort as follows:

Without going into the details of how to sort the data in ascending order to obtain the order statistics (an elementary topic of an Introductory Computer Science course), we simply use MATLAB's `sort` to obtain the order statistics, as illustrated in the following example.

**Definition 54 (Order Statistics)** Suppose  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  are  $F$ , where  $F$  is the DF from the set of all DFs over the real line. Then, the  $n$ -sample order statistics  $X^{(1)}, X^{(2)}, \dots, X^{(n)}$  is:

$$X^{(1)}(x) = x^{(1)}, X^{(2)}(x) = x^{(2)}, \dots, X^{(n)}(x) = x^{(n)}. \quad (3.80)$$

For brevity, we write  $X^{(m)}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  as  $X^{(m)}$  and its realisation  $X^{(m)}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  as  $x^{(m)}$ .

It is important to bear in mind that the statistics such as sample mean and sample variance are random variables and have an underlying distribution.

```

<> disp(xPerformance101); % The data-points x1,x-2,x-3,x-4,x-5 are
<> disp(xPerformance101); % The data-points x1,x-2,x-3,x-4,x-5 are
<> 0.5149 0.5707 0.0285 0.1115 0.6853
<> disp(xPerformance101); % The data-points x1,x-2,x-3,x-4,x-5 are
<> disp(xPerformance101); % The data-points x1,x-2,x-3,x-4,x-5 are
<> 0.0785
<> disp(Sample101); % Find sample variance
<> Samplestd=std(xPerformance101);% Find sample standard deviation
<> disp(Samplevar); % The sample variance is:
<> 0.2802
<> disp(Samplestd) % The sample standard deviation is:

```

Labwork 109 (**Sample variance and sample standard deviation**) We can compute the same variance and sample standard deviation for the five samples stored in the array `XsFromUnit101TWS101`.

CHAPTER 3. RANDOM VARIABLES

$$(7.38) \quad \frac{u}{\tau} \nabla v z = mu$$

If we use the conservative margin of error

The conflict clearly appears with the quantity  $z_{\alpha}$ : if  $C \leftarrow 1$  then  $\alpha = (1 - C)/2 \leftarrow 0$  and hence  $z_{\alpha} \rightarrow \infty$ , and as a consequence the margin of error  $m$  also tends to infinity. For small margin of error at fixed sample size  $n$  we would have to decrease  $z_{\alpha}$ , thus increase  $\alpha$  and decrease  $C$ . However the sample size  $n$  also influences the margin of error  $m$ : in fact  $m$  is proportional to  $1/\sqrt{n}$ . Thus both high  $C$  and small  $m$  can easily be achieved if we let  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , but sample size usually is a cost

**Aim of certainty:** The confidence level  $C$  should be as high as possible, i.e., close to one, since it can be interpreted as the "reliability" of the interval.

**Aim of precision:** The width should be as small as possible, in order to accurately “pinpoint” the unknown value  $\theta$ .

There are two conflicting aims:

$$(\mathcal{L}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{L}) \quad \frac{u}{(u_{\Theta} - 1)^u_{\Theta}} \Bigg|^{vz} = u$$

The standard confidence interval has width  $2m$ , where the margin of error is

### Sample size determination

**Exercise 7.12** Suppose you toss a possibly biased coin 123 times and observe 118 heads. Assuming IID Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) trials where  $\theta$  is the probability of coming up heads, obtain a confidence interval based on the CLT with asymptotic level 95% for the unknown  $\theta$ .

is a confidence interval for  $\theta_*$  of asymptotic level  $C \equiv 1 - 2\alpha$ .

$$\frac{u}{(1-\Theta)^u \Theta} \Bigg|_{\Theta}^{vz} = m + m^u - m^u \Theta$$

**Proposition 113** Suppose  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  are independent Bernoulli observations with  $X_i \sim \text{Bernoulli}(\theta)$ . Suppose  $\theta \in (0, 1)$  is unknown and we want to find out its value. Let the point estimator  $\hat{\theta}_n$  of  $\theta$  be the sample proportion and let  $z_\alpha$  be the upper  $\alpha$ -quantile of  $Z$  for some  $0 < \alpha < 1/2$ . Then

i.e., (7.35) is established and thereby proving the following proposition.

$$C = (^v_*z \gtrdot Z \gtrdot {}^v z -) D \leftarrow \left( {}^v_*z \gtrdot {}^u L \gtrdot {}^v z - \right) D$$

Analogously to Lemma (109) (replace  $L_n$  there by  $L'_n$ ) it now follows that

$$Z \leftrightarrow \frac{u\wedge /(^u\Theta - 1)^u\Theta}{*_\theta - ^u\Theta} =: {}^u\mathcal{L}$$

An application of Lemma (113) to (136) gives

1. The **mean** of RV  $X \sim F$  is a function of the DF  $F$ :

$$T(F) = E(X) = \int x dF(x).$$

2. The **variance** of RV  $X \sim F$  is a function of the DF  $F$ :

$$T(F) = E(X - E(X))^2 = \int (x - E(X))^2 dF(x).$$

3. The **value of DF at a given  $x \in \mathbb{R}$**  of RV  $X \sim F$  is also a function of DF  $F$ :

$$T(F) = F(x).$$

Other functionals of  $F$  that depend on the quantile function  $F^{[-1]}$  are:

1. The  $q^{\text{th}}$  **quantile** of RV  $X \sim F$ :

$$T(F) = F^{[-1]}(q) \quad \text{where } q \in [0, 1].$$

2. The **first quartile** or the  $0.25^{\text{th}}$  **quantile** of the RV  $X \sim F$ :

$$T(F) = F^{[-1]}(0.25).$$

3. The **median** or the **second quartile** or the  $0.50^{\text{th}}$  **quantile** of the RV  $X \sim F$ :

$$T(F) = F^{[-1]}(0.50).$$

4. The **third quartile** or the  $0.75^{\text{th}}$  **quantile** of the RV  $X \sim F$ :

$$T(F) = F^{[-1]}(0.75).$$

**Definition 56 (Empirical Distribution Function (EDF or ECDF))** Suppose we have  $n$  IID RVs,  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} F$ , where  $F$  is a DF from the set of all DFs over the real line. Then, the  $n$ -sample empirical distribution function (EDF or ECDF) is the discrete distribution function  $\hat{F}_n$  that puts a probability mass of  $1/n$  at each sample or data point  $x_i$ :

$$\hat{F}_n(x) = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n \mathbf{1}(X_i \leq x)}{n}, \quad \text{where} \quad \mathbf{1}(X_i \leq x) := \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x_i \leq x \\ 0 & \text{if } x_i > x \end{cases} \quad (3.82)$$

**Labwork 111 (Plot of empirical CDF)** Let us plot the ECDF for the five samples drawn from the  $\text{Uniform}(0, 1)$  RV in Labwork 108 using the MATLAB function ECDF. Let us super-impose the samples and the true DF as depicted in Figure 3.26 with the following script:

---

```
xs = -1:0.01:2; % vector xs from -1 to 2 with increment .05 for x values
% get the [0,1] uniform DF or cdf of xs in vector cdf
cdf=zeros(size(xs));% initialise cdf as zero
indices = find(xs>=1); cdf(indices) = 1; % set cdf as 1 when xs >= 1
indices = find(xs>=0 & xs<=1); cdf(indices)=xs(indices); % cdf=xs when 0 <= xs <= 1
plot(xs,cdf,'r') % plot the DF
hold on; title('Uniform [0,1] DF and ECDF'); xlabel('x'); axis([-0.2 1.2 -0.2 1.2])
x=[0.5164, 0.5707, 0.0285, 0.1715, 0.6853]; % five samples
plot(x,zeros(1,5), 'r+', 'LineWidth',2, 'MarkerSize',10) % plot the data as red + marks
hold on; grid on; % turn on grid
ECDF(x,.1,.6);% ECDF (type help ECDF) plot is extended to left and right by .2 and .4, respectively.
```

---

On the other hand, once  $t$  is fixed, in view of convergence in probability to 0 of  $|Y_n|$ , one can find  $m_2$  such that for all  $n \geq m_2$

$$P(|Y_n| \geq \varepsilon/t) \leq \delta.$$

In view of (7.34) we have for all  $n \geq m = \max(m_1, m_2)$

$$P(|X_n Y_n| \geq \varepsilon) \leq 4\delta.$$

Since  $\delta > 0$  was arbitrary, the result is proved.

We need an auxiliary result which despite its simplicity is still frequently cited as a "Theorem".

**Proposition 114 (Slutsky's theorem).** Suppose a sequence of random variables  $X_n$  converges in probability to a value  $x$  ( $X_n \rightarrow_P x$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ). Suppose  $f$  is a real valued function defined in a neighborhood of  $x$  and continuous there. Then

$$f(X_n) \rightarrow_P f(x), \quad n \rightarrow \infty.$$

**Proof:** Consider an arbitrary  $\varepsilon > 0$ . Select  $\delta > 0$  small enough such that  $(x - \delta, x + \delta)$  is contained in the neighborhood of  $x$  where  $f$  is defined and also fulfilling the condition that  $|t - x| \leq \delta$  implies  $|f(t) - f(x)| \leq \varepsilon$  (by continuity of  $f$  such a  $\delta$  can be found). Then the event  $|f(X_n) - f(x)| > \varepsilon$  implies  $|X_n - x| > \delta$  and hence

$$P(|f(X_n) - f(x)| > \varepsilon) \leq P(|X_n - x| > \delta).$$

Since the latter probability tends to 0 as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , we also have

$$P(|f(X_n) - f(x_0)| > \varepsilon) \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty$$

and since  $\varepsilon$  was arbitrary, the result is proved.

### Asymptotic confidence level

With these results we are now able to prove that the standard asymptotic confidence interval for the unknown population proportion  $\theta^*$  has indeed asymptotic level  $C$ , i.e. prove relation (7.25):

$$P\left(-z_\alpha \leq \frac{\hat{\Theta}_n - \theta^*}{\sqrt{\hat{\Theta}_n(1 - \hat{\Theta}_n)/\sqrt{n}}} \leq z_\alpha\right) \rightarrow C \quad (7.35)$$

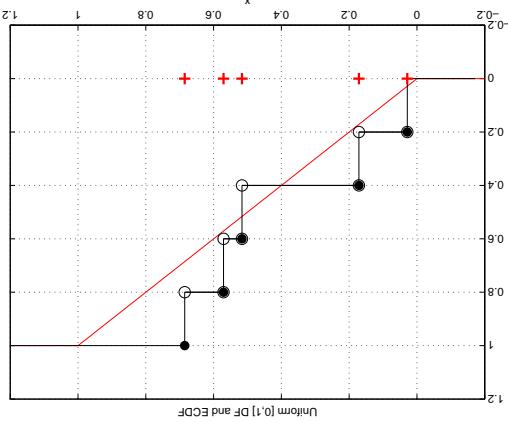
for  $\alpha = (1 - C)/2$ . As already noted we have

$$\frac{\hat{\Theta}_n - \theta^*}{\sqrt{\hat{\Theta}_n(1 - \hat{\Theta}_n)/\sqrt{n}}} = T_n \cdot \sqrt{\frac{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)}{\hat{\Theta}_n(1 - \hat{\Theta}_n)}} \quad (7.36)$$

where  $T_n \rightsquigarrow Z$ , and  $T_n$  is the "correctly standardized" sample proportion  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  (as in (7.20)). The function  $f(\theta^*) := \theta^*(1 - \theta^*)$  is continuous in a neighborhood of every  $\theta^* \in (0, 1)$ ; by Slutsky's theorem we have  $\hat{\Theta}_n(1 - \hat{\Theta}_n) \rightarrow_P \theta^*(1 - \theta^*)$ . A repeated application of Slutsky's theorem now gives

$$\frac{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)}{\hat{\Theta}_n(1 - \hat{\Theta}_n)} \rightarrow_P 1, \quad \sqrt{\frac{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)}{\hat{\Theta}_n(1 - \hat{\Theta}_n)}} \rightarrow_P 1.$$

Figure 3.26: Plot of the DF of  $\text{Uniform}(0,1)$ , five IID samples from it, and the ECDF  $F_n$  for these five data points  $x = (x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5) = (0.5164, 0.5707, 0.0285, 0.1715, 0.6853)$  that jumps by  $1/5 = 0.20$  at each of the five samples.



(3.83)

By replacing  $q$  in this definition of the  $q$ th sample quantile by 0.25, 0.5 or 0.75, we obtain the first, second (sample median) or third sample quartile, respectively.

$$T(F_n) = F_{[1]}(q) := \inf\{x : F_{[1]}(x) \geq q\}.$$

(statistical functional):

Definition 57 ( $q$ th Sample Quantile) For some  $q \in [0, 1]$  and  $n$  IID RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{iid}}{\sim} F$ , we can obtain the ECDF  $F_n$  using (3.82). The  $q$ th sample quantile is defined as the statistic

LAB function `qthSampleQuantile` to find the  $q$ th sample quantile of two simulated data arrays:

Labwork 112 (The  $q$ th Sample Quantile) Use the implementation of Algorithm 1 as the LAB

maximum is given by  $F_{[1]}(1)$  and the sample median is given by  $F_{[1]}(0.5)$ , etc.

Thus, the sample minimum of the data points  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  is given by  $F_{[1]}(0)$ , the sample

$$F_{[1]}(q) = (1 - q)x^{(i+1)} + qx^{(i+2)}, \quad \text{where}, \quad i = \lfloor (n-1)q \rfloor \quad \text{and} \quad q = (n-1)q - \lfloor (n-1)q \rfloor.$$

of the  $n$  data points  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ , using the formula:

The  $q$ th sample quantile,  $F_{[1]}(q)$ , is found by interpolation from the order statistics  $(x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}, \dots, x^{(n)})$  on the basis of their order statistics  $(x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}, \dots, x^{(n)})$ .

The following algorithm can be used to obtain the  $q$ th sample quantile of  $n$  IID samples  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$

on the basis of their order statistics  $(x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}, \dots, x^{(n)})$ .

Proof. Let  $\epsilon > 0$ , and  $q > 0$  be arbitrary and given. Suppose  $|X_n| \geq \epsilon$ . Then, for every  $t > 0$ ,

either  $\{|X_n| < t\}$ , or if that is not the case, then  $|X_n| \leq t$  and hence  $|X_n| \geq \epsilon/t$ . Hence,

$$P(|X_n| \geq \epsilon) \leq P(|X_n| < t) + P(|X_n| \geq \epsilon/t).$$

Then for all  $n \geq m_1(t)$

$$1 - F_0(t) \leq \delta, \quad F_0(-t) \leq \delta.$$

Select now  $t$  large enough such that

$$P(|X_n| < t) \leq 1 - F_0(t) + F_0(-t) + \delta$$

all  $n \geq m_1$

Since  $F_n$  converges to  $F_0$  at both points  $t, -t$ , we find  $m_1 = m_1(t)$  (depending on  $t$ ) such that for

$$\leq 1 - F_n(t) + F_n(-t).$$

$$P(|X_n| < t) = 1 - P(X_n \leq t) + P(X_n > -t)$$

$t <$

Let again  $F_n$  be the distribution function of  $X_n$  and  $F$  be the respective d.f. of  $X$ . Now for every

$$P(|X_n| \geq \epsilon) \leq P(|X_n| < t) + P(|X_n| \geq \epsilon/t). \quad (7.34)$$

either  $\{|X_n| < t\}$ , or if that is not the case, then  $|X_n| \leq t$  and hence  $|X_n| \geq \epsilon/t$ . Hence,

Proof. Let  $\epsilon > 0$ , and  $q > 0$  be arbitrary and given. Suppose  $|X_n| \geq \epsilon$ . Then, for every  $t > 0$ ,

$$X_n \rightarrow p.$$

Lemma 113 Under the assumptions of Lemma 112, we have

and since  $\delta$  was also arbitrary, the result follows.

$$F(t) - 3\delta \leq P(X_n + Y_n \leq t) \leq F(t) + 3\delta$$

so that for  $n$  large enough

$$\begin{aligned} F(t - \epsilon) &\leq F(t) - \delta \\ F(t + \epsilon) &\leq F(t) + \delta \end{aligned}$$

Since  $F$  is continuous at  $t$ , and  $\epsilon$  was arbitrary, we can select  $\epsilon$  such that

$$F(t - \epsilon) - 2\delta \leq P(X_n + Y_n \leq t) \leq F(t + \epsilon) + 2\delta$$

Taking  $m = \max(m_1, m_2)$  and collecting (7.32), (7.33), we obtain for  $n \geq m$

$$P(X_n + Y_n \leq t) \geq F(t - \epsilon) - 2\delta. \quad (7.33)$$

Using again the two limits for the probabilities on the right, for every  $\delta > 0$  we can find  $m_2$  such

$$P(X_n + Y_n \leq t) \geq P(X_n \leq t - \epsilon) - P(|X_n| < \epsilon).$$

Consequently

$$\begin{aligned} P(X_n + Y_n \leq t) &\geq P(X_n \leq t - \epsilon) - P(|X_n| < \epsilon) \\ &\geq P(\{X_n \leq t\} \cup \{|X_n| \leq \epsilon\}) + P(|X_n| < \epsilon) \\ &\geq P(\{X_n \leq t\} \cup \{|\epsilon - X_n| \leq \epsilon\}) + P(|X_n| < \epsilon) \\ &\geq P(X_n \leq t - \epsilon) + P(|\epsilon - X_n| \leq \epsilon) - P(|X_n| < \epsilon) \end{aligned}$$

$$P(X_n \leq t - \epsilon) =$$

Now take the same  $\epsilon > 0$ ; we have

**Algorithm 1**  $q^{\text{th}}$  Sample Quantile of Order Statistics

---

1: *input:*

1.  $q$  in the  $q^{\text{th}}$  sample quantile, i.e. the argument  $q$  of  $\hat{F}_n^{[-1]}(q)$ ,
2. order statistic  $(x_{(1)}, x_{(2)}, \dots, x_{(n)})$ , i.e. the sorted  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ , where  $n > 0$ .

2: *output:*  $\hat{F}_n^{[-1]}(q)$ , the  $q^{\text{th}}$  sample quantile

3:  $i \leftarrow \lfloor (n-1)q \rfloor$

4:  $\delta \leftarrow (n-1)q - i$

5: **if**  $i = n-1$  **then**

6:    $\hat{F}_n^{[-1]}(q) \leftarrow x_{(i+1)}$

7: **else**

8:    $\hat{F}_n^{[-1]}(q) \leftarrow (1-\delta)x_{(i+1)} + \delta x_{(i+2)}$

9: **end if**

10: *return:*  $\hat{F}_n^{[-1]}(q)$

---

```

>> disp(SortedXsFromUni01Twstr101)
  0.0285   0.1715   0.5164   0.5707   0.6853
>> rand('twister',420);
>> SortedXs=sort(rand(1,7));
>> disp(SortedXs)
  0.1089   0.2670   0.3156   0.3525   0.4530   0.6297   0.8682
>> for q=[0, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 1.0]
    disp([q, qthSampleQuantile(q,SortedXsFromUni01Twstr101) ...
           qthSampleQuantile(q,SortedXs)])
  end
      0   0.0285   0.1089
  0.2500   0.1715   0.2913
  0.5000   0.5164   0.3525
  0.7500   0.5707   0.5414
  1.0000   0.6853   0.8682

```

**3.14.2 Univariate Data**

A **histogram** is a graphical representation of the frequency with which elements of a data array:

$$x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n),$$

of real numbers fall within each of the  $m$  intervals or **bins** of some **interval partition**:

$$b := (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_m) := ([\underline{b}_1, \bar{b}_1], [\underline{b}_2, \bar{b}_2], \dots, [\underline{b}_m, \bar{b}_m])$$

of the **data range** of  $x$  given by the closed interval:

$$\mathcal{R}(x) := [\min\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}, \max\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}].$$

Elements of this partition  $b$  are called **bins**, their mid-points are called **bin centres**:

$$c := (c_1, c_2, \dots, c_m) := ((\underline{b}_1 + \bar{b}_1)/2, (\underline{b}_2 + \bar{b}_2)/2, \dots, (\underline{b}_m + \bar{b}_m)/2)$$

and their overlapping boundaries, i.e.  $\bar{b}_i = \underline{b}_{i+1}$  for  $1 \leq i < m$ , are called **bin edges**:

$$d := (d_1, d_2, \dots, d_{m+1}) := (b_1, b_2, \dots, \underline{b}_{m-1}, b_m, \bar{b}_m).$$

**Exercise 7.11** Suppose you toss a possibly biased coin 25 times and observe 18 heads. Assuming IID Bernoulli( $\theta^*$ ) trials where  $\theta^*$  is the probability of coming up heads, obtain exact confidence intervals for the unknown  $\theta^*$  with confidence level  $C$  of at least 95% using exact sample size via: (a) Chebyshev's inequality and (b) Hoeffding's inequality.

**Some technical convergence results**

In order to establish the result for the asymptotic coverage probability of the standard confidence interval for  $\theta^*$  (i. e. in order to show (7.25)) some results about convergence in law and in probability are needed. Recall that a continuous random variable is one with a continuous distribution function  $P(X \leq t)$ . The claim that a RV  $X$  has a continuous distribution (or law) means that  $X$  has a continuous distribution function  $P(X \leq t)$ .

**Lemma 112** Suppose  $X_n$  is a sequence of RV which converges in distribution to a continuous RV  $X$ :

$$X_n \rightsquigarrow X$$

and let  $Y_n$  be a sequence of RV which converges in probability to 0:

$$Y_n \rightarrow_p 0.$$

Then

$$X_n + Y_n \rightsquigarrow X.$$

Note that no independence assumptions were made.

**Proof:** Let  $F_n$  be the distribution function of  $X_n$  and  $F$  be the respective d.f. of  $X$ . Convergence in distribution means that

$$P(X_n \leq t) = F_n(t) \rightarrow F(t)$$

for every continuity point of the limit d.f.  $F$ . We assumed that  $F$  is continuous, so it means convergence for every  $t$ . Now for  $\varepsilon > 0$

$$P(X_n + Y_n \leq t) =$$

$$= P(\{X_n + Y_n \leq t\} \cap \{|Y_n| \leq \varepsilon\}) + P(\{X_n + Y_n \leq t\} \cap \{|Y_n| > \varepsilon\}). \quad (7.31)$$

The first term on the right is

$$\begin{aligned} P(\{X_n \leq t - Y_n\} \cap \{|Y_n| \leq \varepsilon\}) &\leq P(\{X_n \leq t + \varepsilon\} \cap \{|Y_n| \leq \varepsilon\}) \\ &\leq P(X_n \leq t + \varepsilon). \end{aligned}$$

For this upper bound we have

$$P(X_n \leq t + \varepsilon) \rightarrow F(t + \varepsilon) \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

The second term in (7.31) is

$$P(\{X_n + Y_n \leq t\} \cap \{|Y_n| > \varepsilon\}) \leq P(|Y_n| > \varepsilon) \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

Hence for every  $\delta > 0$  we can find  $m_1$  such that for all  $n \geq m_1$

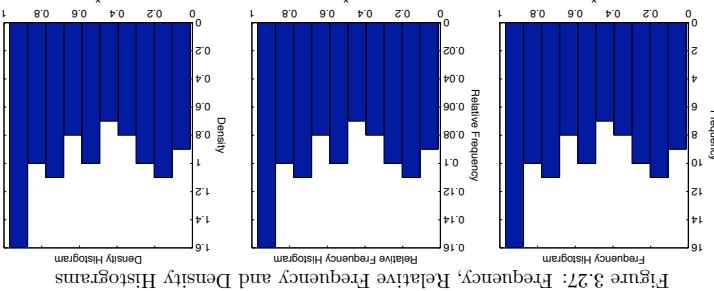
$$P(X_n + Y_n \leq t) \leq F(t + \varepsilon) + 2\delta. \quad (7.32)$$

```

>>> rand(5,100); % Generate 100 PRNs
>>> histc(x,100); % What bins does x fall into?
>>> [fS,Cs] = histc(x); % Cs is the bin centres and fS is the frequencies of data set x
>>> bar(Fs,Cs); % Create a histogram plot of the last argument i.e the width value for immediate bars -- help bar
>>> bar(Fs,Cs,1); % Create a relative frequency histogram
>>> bar(Fs,Cs/sum(Fs),1); % Create a density histogram (area of bars sum to 1)
>>> sum(Fs/(0.1*100),1) % Create a density histogram (area does sum to 1)
>>> ans = 1

```

**Labwork 113** Histograms with specified number of bins for univariate data (Figure 3.27) Let us use samples from the read(*"twister", 5489*) as our data set *x* and plot various histograms. Let us use *hist* function (read *"help hist"*) to make a default histogram with ten bins. Then we can make three types of histograms as shown in Figure 3.27 as follows:



Given a partition  $b$ , a **frequency histogram** is the histogram:

$$((q_1, h_1), (q_2, h_2), \dots, (q_m, h_m))$$

where  $h_k := \#\{x_i : x_i \in q_k\}$

a **relative frequency histogram** is the histogram:

$$((q_1, h_1), (q_2, h_2), \dots, (q_m, h_m))$$

where  $h_k := \#\{x_i : x_i \in q_k\} / n$

and a **density histogram** is the histogram:

$$((q_1, h_1), (q_2, h_2), \dots, (q_m, h_m))$$

where  $h_k := (w_k(n) - w_{k-1}(n)) \# \{x_i : x_i \in q_k\}$

Thus,  $h_k$ , the height of the  $k$ -th bin, is some function  $g$  of the number of data points that fall in the bin  $b_k$ . Formally, a histogram is a sequence of ordered pairs:

possible: frequency histogram, relative frequency histogram and density histogram. Typically, three types of histograms are possible: given a set of bins along with their corresponding widths  $w_i = b_i - b_{i-1}$ , three types of histograms are possible: frequency histogram  $f(x)$  or some superstatistic  $\kappa(x)$ , or some range  $\kappa(x)$ .

Next we prove (7.30) by specializing (7.28) to the Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) RV  $S_n = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$ , where  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{iid}{\sim}$  Bernoulli( $\theta$ ), in terms of the sample mean as the point estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n = \bar{X}_n = S_n/n$ , as originally proved by Chernoff (1952) and Okamoto (1958):

Similarly, we can also show that

$$P((E(S^u) - S^u) < t) \leq e^{-2t^2 / \sum_{i=1}^n (b_i - a_i)^2}$$

$$g_{/\bar{e}}(\mathbf{i}^{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{-}\mathbf{i}^{\mathbf{q}})\mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{q}}\prod_{u_i}^{1=\mathbf{z}}\mathbf{i}^{\mathbf{s}}\mathbf{-}\mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{q}}\supseteq(\mathbf{i}\prec(({}^uS)\mathbf{E}-{}^uS))\,\mathbf{d}$$

Now, we can just plug-in the above upper-bound  $\epsilon^{(1-a)/a}$ , specialized to each  $X$ , that is bounded between  $a$ , and  $b$ , directly into (7.29) of Chernoff's bounding method to derive Hoeffding's inequality.

$$8/\zeta^{(n-q)}\zeta^s \bar{\theta} > (X^s \theta) \mathbb{E} \quad \iff \quad \frac{8}{\zeta^{(n-q)}\zeta^s} = \frac{8}{\zeta^n} > (n) \theta$$

$$\phi'' \leq \frac{1}{4}$$

Now,  $\phi^* = p(1-p)$ , being the familiar quadratic, is maximised by setting

$$\begin{aligned}
 0 &= (n)_r \phi \quad \Longleftarrow \quad \frac{1 - c + ce_n}{ce_n} - \frac{1 - c + ce_n}{ce_n} = (n)_r \phi \\
 0 &= (0)_r ce + c - 1) \phi + 0 \cdot c - = (0) \phi
 \end{aligned}$$

$$[n, n] \phi_{\frac{2}{z}} + (0) \phi n + (0) \phi = (n) \phi$$

To minimise the upper-bound let's express  $\phi(u)$  in a Taylor's series with remainder term:

$$(n)\phi^\partial = (v-q)s c s^{-\partial} \left( (v-q) + ce^{s\partial} - 1 \right) > (X^s)^\partial \Xi$$

(and define  $\phi(n) := -cn + \log(1 + ce - c)$ )

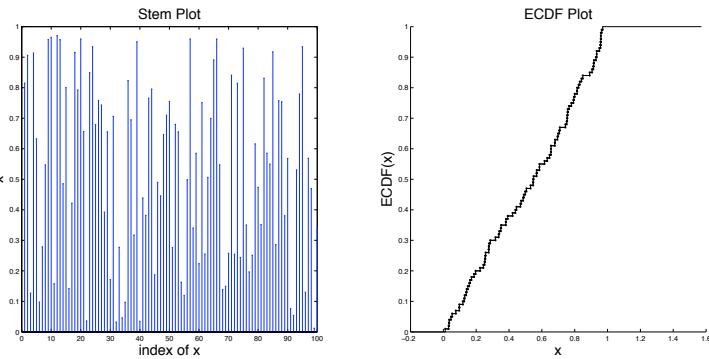
691

Try making a density histogram with 1000 samples from `rand` with 15 bins. You can specify the number of bins by adding an extra argument to `hist`, for e.g. `[Fs, Cs] = hist(x, 15)` will produce 15 bins of equal width over the data range  $\mathcal{R}(x)$ .

**Labwork 114 (Stem plots and ECDF plots for univariate data)** We can also visualise the 100 data points in the array `x` using stem plot and ECDF plot as shown in Figure 3.28 as follows:

```
>> rand('twister',5489);
>> x=rand(1,100); % produce 100 samples with rand
>> stem(x,'.') % make a stem plot of the 100 data points in x (the option '.' gives solid circles for x)
>>% ECDF (type help ECDF) plot is extended to left and right by .2 and .6, respectively
>>% (second parameter 6 makes the dots in the plot smaller).
>> ECDF(x,.2,.6);
```

Figure 3.28: Frequency, Relative Frequency and Density Histograms



We can also visually summarise univariate data using the **box plot** or **box-whisker plot** available in the Stats Toolbox of MATLAB. These family of plots display a set of sample quantiles, typically they are include, the median, the first and third quartiles and the minimum and maximum values of our data array `x`.

### 3.14.3 Bivariate Data

By bivariate data array `x` we mean a  $2 \times n$  matrix of real numbers or equivalently  $n$  ordered pairs of points  $(x_{1,i}, x_{2,i})$  as  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . The most elementary visualisation of these  $n$  ordered pairs is in orthogonal Cartesian co-ordinates. Such plots are termed 2D **scatter plots** in statistics.

**Labwork 115 (Visualising bivariate data)** Let us generate a  $2 \times 5$  array representing samples of 5 ordered pairs sampled uniformly at random over the unit square  $[0, 1] \times [0, 1]$ . We can make 2D scatter plot as shown in Figure 3.29 as follows:

```
>> rand('twister',5489);
>> x=rand(2,5)% create a sequence of 5 ordered pairs uniformly from unit square [0,1]X[0,1]
x =
    0.8147    0.1270    0.6324    0.2785    0.9575
```

**Idea 110 (Chernoff's bounding method)** By Markov's inequality, if  $s$  is an arbitrary positive real number, then for any RV  $X$ , and any  $t > 0$ :

$$P(X \geq t) = P(e^{sX} \geq e^{st}) \leq \frac{E(e^{sX})}{e^{st}}$$

The idea in Chernoff's bounding method is to find  $s > 0$  that minimises the upper-bound, i.e., the RHS of the above equation, to make it as small as possible. In the case of a sum of independent RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  given by  $S_n = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$ :

$$\begin{aligned} P(S_n - E(S_n) \geq t) &\leq e^{-st} E\left(\exp\left(s \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - E(X_i))\right)\right) \\ &= e^{-st} \prod_{i=1}^n E\left(e^{s(X_i - E(X_i))}\right), \quad \text{by independence.} \end{aligned} \quad (7.29)$$

Thus, the problem of finding better bounds than that given by Chebychev's inequality boils down to finding a good upper-bound for  $E(e^{s(X_i - E(X_i))})$ , i.e., the moment generating function of each of the random variables  $X_i - E(X_i)$ . There are many ways to do this and the most simple approach is due to Hoeffding in 1963 as shown next.

**Proposition 111 (Hoeffding's ≠)** Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  be independent bounded RVs such that  $P(Z_i \in [a_i, b_i]) = 1$  for each  $i \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . Let  $S_n = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$ . Then for any  $t > 0$ , we have

$$P(|S_n - E(S_n)| \geq t) \leq 2 \exp\left(-\frac{2t^2}{\sum_{i=1}^n (b_i - a_i)^2}\right) \quad (7.30)$$

**Proof:** The core of proving Hoeffding's inequality is the following upper bound: if  $X$  is a RV with  $E(X) = 0$  and  $a \leq X \leq b$ , then

$$E(e^{sX}) \leq e^{(s^2(b-a)^2)/8}$$

The above upper-bound is derived from the convexity of the exponential function:

$$e^{sx} \leq \frac{x-a}{b-a} e^{sb} + \frac{b-x}{b-a} e^{sa}, \quad \text{for } a \leq x \leq b$$

Draw  $e^{sx}$  on y-axis as a function of  $x$  along x-axis and the line from  $e^{sa}$  to  $e^{sb}$  for the upper-bound as  $x$  goes from  $a$  to  $b$ .

Thus, taking expectations on both sides of the above inequality

$$\begin{aligned} E(e^{sX}) &\leq E\left(\frac{X-a}{b-a} e^{sb} + \frac{b-X}{b-a} e^{sa}\right) \\ &= \frac{b}{b-a} e^{sa} - \frac{a}{b-a} e^{sb}, \quad \text{because } E(X) = 0 \\ &= \left(1 - c + ce^{s(b-a)}\right) e^{-cs(b-a)}, \quad \text{where, } c = \frac{-a}{b-a}. \end{aligned}$$

Repeating the visualisation below with a larger array, say `x=rand(3,1000)`, and use the `rotate` 3D feature in the figure window to visually explore the samples in the unit cube. Do they seem to be uniformly distributed inside the unit cube?

```

x = rand(3,5); % create a sequence of 5 ordered triplets uniformly from unit cube [0,1]^3
% x(1,:)=0.1270 0.0975 0.9575 0.4596 0.8003
% x(2,:)=0.908 0.6524 0.4690 0.9649 0.9527
% x(3,:)=0.8147 0.9134 0.2785 0.9649 0.9527
% x(4,:)=0.968 0.6240 0.4956 0.9649 0.9527
% x(5,:)=0.908 0.6240 0.4956 0.9649 0.9527
% x-axis labels; y-axis labels; z-axis labels to x,y and z axes
% plot(x(1,:),x(2,:),x(3,:),'*','MarkerSize',15) % makes same figure as before but shorter to write
% plot3(x(1,:),x(2,:),x(3,:),'*','MarkerSize',15)
% plot3(x(1,:),x(2,:),x(3,:),'Marker','*','Color','red')
% plot3(x(1,:),x(2,:),x(3,:),'Marker','*','Color','blue')
% colorbar in red green blue values and marker control marker type, line-style
% a more interesting one with options that control plot with marker 'x'
% plot3(x(1,:),x(2,:),x(3,:),'x','MarkerSize',30) scatter plot with marker 'x'
% xlabel('twister',5489);
% xlabel('twister',5489);

```

Labwork 116 (Visualising trivariate data) We can make 3D scatter plots as shown in Fig-  
we 3.30 follows:

Trivariate data is more difficult to visualise on paper but playing around with the rotate 3D feature in MATLAB's figure window can help bring a lot more perspective.

### 3.14.4 Trivariate Data

There are several other techniques for visualising bivariate data, including, 2D histograms, surface plots, heat plots, and we will encounter some of them in the sequel.

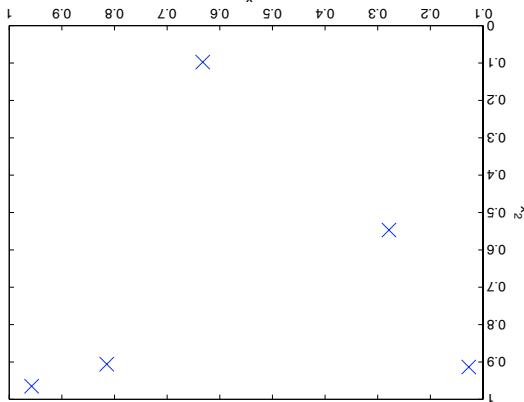


Figure 3.29: 2D Scatter Plot

```

set C = 1-1/4nm^2 and solve for m, which gives m = \sqrt{\frac{4n(1-C)}{1}} and for the interval [\theta_n - m, \theta_n + m]
P(|\Theta_n - \theta_*| \leq m) \leq \frac{nm^2}{1 - \theta_*} \leq \frac{4nm^2}{1}
c) Exact Chebyshev's confidence interval with coverage probability at least C: We use Chebyshev's inequality applied to the sample proportion (with V(\Theta_n) = \theta_*(1-\theta_*)/n)

```

Next we prove Hoeffding's inequality using the following simple idea of Chernoff:

Normal tail, which is not exact but asymptotic, is more commonly used.

This interval is also nonasymptotic (i.e., has exact coverage probability  $C$  for any  $n$ ) and is narrower than the one derived from the Chebyshev inequality. Nevertheless the interval derived from the normal tail, which is not exact but asymptotic, is more commonly used.

$$m = \sqrt{-\log((1-C)/2)} = \sqrt{\frac{2n}{\log(1/\alpha)}}.$$

and solve for  $m$ , which gives

$$C = 1 - 2 \exp(-2nm^2)$$

so that if we desire a confidence interval with level  $C$ , we set

$$(7.28)$$

$$P(|\Theta_n - \theta_*| \leq m) \leq 2 \exp(-2nm^2)$$

Inequality of (7.30) in Proposition 111, applied to the the sample proportion  $\Theta_n$  gives for any  $m > 0$  sample proportion there is a much better inequality available than that of Chebyshev: Hoeffding's sample proportion is the solution of  $P(Z < x) = a$ , and from what we discussed above about the normal distribution is the solution of  $1/2x^2 = a$  and the

Remark: this inequality was used to derive the conservative method of building a confidence interval for the population proportion.

$$\theta(1-\theta) \leq \frac{1}{4}.$$

Exercise 7.10 Show that for any  $\theta$  with  $0 < \theta < 1$

$C \rightarrow 1$ .  
Exercise 7.9 Use Mill's inequality to formally show that (7.27) tends to infinity as  $a \rightarrow 0$  (i.e., as

2.28 and for  $C = 0.99$  the ratio 3.88.  
From the table it can be seen that for  $C = 0.95$  we have  $z_\alpha = 1.96$ ; then the above ratio is large. This is clear from the fact that the numerator is the solution of  $1/2x^2 = a$  and the denominator is the solution of  $P(Z < x) = a$ , and from what we discussed above about the normal distribution is the solution of  $1/2x^2 = a$  and the

but their ratio with the conservative (asymptotic) margin of error  $z_\alpha \sqrt{a/n}$ ; we notice that both are of order  $1/\sqrt{n}$ , preferable to an asymptotic confidence interval. But the margin of error  $z_\alpha \sqrt{a/n}$  is we compare it to an asymptotic confidence interval, and in that sense it is This interval has nonasymptotic (or exact) coverage probability at least  $C$ , and in that sense it is

a confidence statement

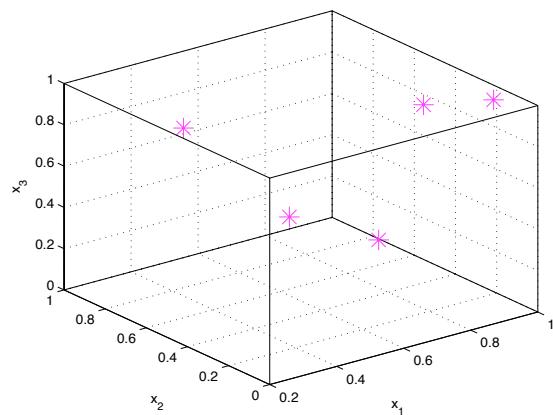
set  $C = 1-1/4nm^2$  and solve for  $m$ , which gives  $m = \sqrt{\frac{4n(1-C)}{1}}$  and for the interval  $[\theta_n - m, \theta_n + m]$

$$P(|\Theta_n - \theta_*| \leq m) \leq \frac{nm^2}{1 - \theta_*} \leq \frac{4nm^2}{1}$$

Chebyshev's inequality applied to the sample proportion (with  $V(\Theta_n) = \theta_*(1-\theta_*)/n$ )

c) Exact Chebyshev's confidence interval with coverage probability at least  $C$ : We use

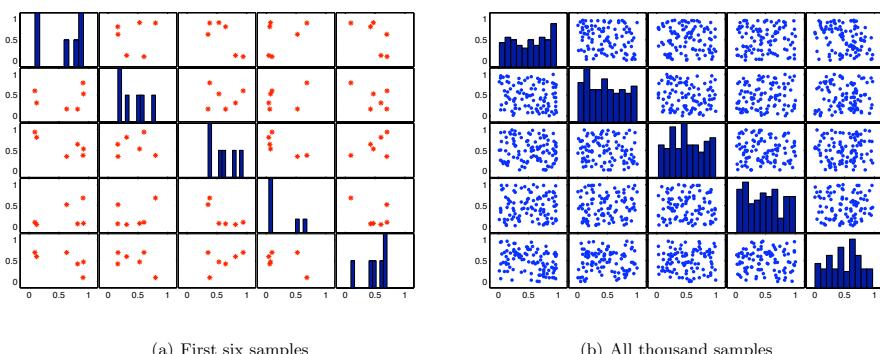
Figure 3.30: 3D Scatter Plot



There are several other techniques for visualising trivariate data, including, iso-surface plots, moving surface or heat plots, and you will encounter some of them in the future.

### 3.14.5 Multivariate Data

For high-dimensional data in  $d$ -dimensional space  $\mathbb{R}^d$  with  $d \geq 3$  you have to look at several lower dimensional projections of the data. We can simultaneously look at 2D scatter plots for every pair of co-ordinates  $\{(i, j) \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}^2 : i \neq j\}$  and at histograms for every co-ordinate  $i \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}$  of the  $n$  data points in  $\mathbb{R}^d$ . Such a set of low-dimensional projections can be conveniently represented in a  $d \times d$  matrix of plots called a **matrix plot**.

Figure 3.31: Plot Matrix of uniformly generated data in  $[0, 1]^5$ 

a). **Standard Confidence Interval of asymptotic level  $C$ :** We can use  $\hat{\theta}_n$  as a point estimate for the unknown  $\theta^*$  in the interval bounds, i.e. we set

$$m = z_\alpha \sqrt{\frac{\hat{\theta}_n(1 - \hat{\theta}_n)}{n}}$$

use the interval

$$[\hat{\theta}_n - m, \hat{\theta}_n + m] \quad (7.24)$$

as an approximate confidence interval of level  $C$ . Indeed  $\hat{\theta}_n$  is a reasonable estimate of  $\theta^*$  since  $\hat{\theta}_n \rightarrow_p \theta^*$  by the LLN and also  $E \hat{\theta}_n = \theta^*$  (i.e.,  $\hat{\theta}_n$  is an *unbiased estimator*). But then we must establish a convergence result as in (7.23), more precisely

$$\begin{aligned} & P(\hat{\theta}_n - m \leq \theta^* \leq \hat{\theta}_n + m) \\ &= P\left(-z_\alpha \leq \frac{\hat{\theta}_n - \theta^*}{\sqrt{\hat{\theta}_n(1 - \hat{\theta}_n)/\sqrt{n}}} \leq z_\alpha\right) \rightarrow C. \end{aligned} \quad (7.25)$$

That should be possible, given that

$$\frac{\hat{\theta}_n - \theta^*}{\sqrt{\hat{\theta}_n(1 - \hat{\theta}_n)/\sqrt{n}}} = T_n \cdot \sqrt{\frac{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)}{\hat{\theta}_n(1 - \hat{\theta}_n)}} \quad (7.26)$$

and the fact that  $\hat{\theta}_n \rightarrow_p \theta^*$ , hence  $\theta^*/\hat{\theta}_n \rightarrow_p 1$ . Below we will establish (7.25), showing that the interval (7.24) is an approximate confidence interval of level  $C$  for  $\theta^*$ . A common synonym for “approximate as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ” is “asymptotic”; the interval (7.24) is in fact the **standard confidence interval of asymptotic level  $C$**  for the population proportion. The bound  $m$  in the interval  $[\hat{\theta}_n - m, \hat{\theta}_n + m]$  is called the *margin of error*; the width of the interval is  $2m$ .

b) **Conservative confidence interval of asymptotic level  $C$ :** We use the inequality

$$\theta^*(1 - \theta^*) \leq \frac{1}{4}$$

(Exercise !) to replace  $\sqrt{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)}$  by  $1/2$  in (7.23) and thus we work with a wider interval around  $\hat{\theta}_n$  which increases coverage probability of  $\theta^*$ , and thus should also have asymptotic coverage probability *at least*  $C$ . In more detail: set  $m = z_\alpha/2\sqrt{n}$ ; since  $\sqrt{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)} \leq 1/2$ , we have  $z_\alpha \sqrt{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)}/\sqrt{n} \leq m$  and hence

$$\begin{aligned} & P(\hat{\theta}_n - m \leq \theta^* \leq \hat{\theta}_n + m) \\ &\geq P\left(\hat{\theta}_n - z_\alpha \sqrt{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)}/\sqrt{n} \leq \theta^* \leq \hat{\theta}_n + z_\alpha \sqrt{\theta^*(1 - \theta^*)}/\sqrt{n}\right) \rightarrow C. \end{aligned}$$

hence

$$\liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} P\left(\hat{\theta}_n - z_\alpha \frac{1}{2\sqrt{n}} \leq \theta^* \leq \hat{\theta}_n + z_\alpha \frac{1}{2\sqrt{n}}\right) \geq C. \quad (7.26)$$

So there is also an asymptotic coverage probability of at least  $C$ . This method is known as the **conservative method** for an asymptotic confidence interval of level  $C$ . The conservative margin of error is  $m = z_\alpha/2\sqrt{n}$ .

**Labwork 117** Let us make matrix plots from a uniformly generated sequence of 100 points in 3D unit cube  $[0, 1]^3$  as shown in Figure 3.31.

We immediately obtain a confidence interval for  $\mu$ , by treating  $X_1$  as "one nominal observation" with mean  $\bar{x}$  and variance  $s^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sigma^2$ . We need only apply the previous Proposition 107 setting the standard deviation  $\tau = s/\sqrt{n}$ :

Let us return to the case of  $n$  IID Bernoulli observations  $X_1, \dots, X_n$ ,  $X_i \sim \text{Bernoulli}(\theta^*)$  where  $\theta^* \in \Theta = (0, 1)$  is unknown. Our goal is to construct a confidence interval of level  $C$  for the unknown population proportion  $\theta^*$ . The starting point is the normal approximation for the point estimator  $\hat{\theta}$ , based on the sample proportion:

$$C = (vz \gtrdot Z \gtrdot v_z) d \leftarrow \left( \begin{matrix} v_z \gtrdot \\ \frac{u \wedge (*\theta - 1) * \theta \wedge}{*\theta - u * \Theta} \end{matrix} \right) d$$

(the distribution function of  $T$  may have a jump at  $t$  but its size tends to 0 as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ) Indeed

$$(\mathcal{E}\mathcal{Z}, \mathcal{L}) \quad \quad \mathcal{O} \leftarrow \left( u \wedge /_{(*\theta - 1) * \theta} \wedge v + u \Theta \supseteq _{* \theta} \supseteq u \wedge /_{(*\theta - 1) * \theta} \wedge v - u \Theta \right) \text{d} =$$

are several methods to overcome this difficulty as shown below.

been done for this data already for you and saved as NZ20110222earthquakes.csv in the CSMatlabscripts directory.

2. Open the file in a simple text editor such as Note Pad in Windows or one of the following editors in OS X, Unix, Solaris, Linux/GNU variants such as Ubuntu, SUSE, etc; vi, vim, emacs, etc. The first three and last two lines of this file look as follows:

**Labwork 118** Let us go through the process one step at a time using Method A.

Let us focus on the data of earth quakes that heavily damaged Chistichurch on February 22 2011. This data can be fetched from the URL <http://magma.geonet.org.nz/resources/quakesearch/>. Method A and loaded into MATLAB for exploratory data analysis as done in Labwork 118.

### 3.14.7 Geological Data

In this we want to inspect it for inconsistencies, missing values and replace them with null values in MATLAB that stand for missing data. Finally, we can visually explore, transform and compute statistical experiments [John W. Tukey, *Exploratory Data Analysis*, Addison-Wesley, New York, 1977].

**Method B:** Automatically download directly from your MATLAB session.

ability with real-world data. The first step is to obtain the data. Often, publicly-funded institutions allow the public to access their databases. Such data can be fetched from appropriate URLs in one of the two following ways:

### 3.14.6 Loading and Exploring Real-world Data

**Proposition 108** Suppose independent observations  $X_1, \dots, X_n$ , with  $X_i \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ . Let  $\bar{X}$  be the sample mean and  $\sigma$  be the standard deviation. Then  $\bar{X} - \sigma/\sqrt{n}, \bar{X} + \sigma/\sqrt{n}$  is a confidence interval for  $\mu$  of level  $C = 1 - 2\alpha$ .

```
CUSP_ID,LAT,LONG,NZMGE,NZMGN,ORI_YEAR,ORI_MONTH,ORI_DAY,ORI_HOUR,ORI_MINUTE,ORI_SECOND,MAG,DEPTH
3481751,-43.55432,172.68898,2484890,5739375,2011,2,22,0,0,31.27814,3.79,5.8559,
3481760,-43.56579,172.70621,2486287,5738106,2011,2,22,0,0,43.70276,3.76,5.4045,
.
.
.
3469114,-43.58007,172.67126,2483470,5736509,2011,2,22,23,28,11.1014,3.117,3,
3469122,-43.55949,172.70396,2486103,5738805,2011,2,22,23,50,1.06171,3.136,12,
```

The thirteen columns correspond to fairly self-descriptive features of each measured earth quake given in the first line or row. They will become clear in the sequel. Note that the comma character (',') separates each unit or measurement or description in any CSV file.

3. The next set of commands show you how to load, manipulate and visually explore this data.

```
%> Load the data from the comma delimited text file 'NZ20110222earthquakes.csv' with
%> the following column IDs
%> CUSP_ID,LAT,LONG,NZMGE,NZMGN,ORI_YEAR,ORI_MONTH,ORI_DAY,ORI_HOUR,ORI_MINUTE,ORI_SECOND,MAG,DEPTH
%> Using MATLAB's dlmread command we can assign the data as a matrix to EQ;
%> note that the option 1,0 to dlmread skips first row of column descriptors
%
%> the variable EQall is about to be assigned the data as a matrix
EQall = dlmread('NZ20110222earthquakes.csv', ',', 1, 0);
size(EQall) % report the dimensions or size of the matrix EQall
ans =
    145    14
```

4. In order to understand the syntax in detail get help from MATLAB !

```
>> help dlmread
DLMREAD Read ASCII delimited file.
.
.
.
```

5. When there are units in the CSV file that can't be converted to floating-point numbers, it is customary to load them as a *NaN* or *Not-a-Number* value in MATLAB . So, let's check if there are any rows with *NaN* values and remove them from our analysis. Note that this is not the only way to deal with missing data! After that let's remove any locations outside Christchurch and its suburbs (we can find the latitude and longitude bounds from online resources easily) and finally view the 4-tuples of (latitude, longitude, magnitude, depth) for each measured earth quake in Christchurch on February 22 of 2011 as a scatter plot shown in Figure 3.32 (the axes labels were subsequently added from clicking <Edit> and <Figure Properties...> tabs of the output Figure Window).

```
>> EQall(any(isnan(EQall),2),:) = [] %Remove any rows containing NaNs from the matrix EQall
>> % report the size of EQall and see if it is different from before we removed any NaN containing rows
>> size(EQall)
ans =
    145    14
>> % remove locations outside Chch and assign it to a new variable called EQ
>> EQ = EQall(-43.75<EQall(:,2) & EQall(:,2)<-43.45 ...
& 172.45<EQall(:,3) & EQall(:,3)<172.9 & EQall(:,12)>3, :);
>> % now report the size of the earthquakes in Christchurch in variable EQ
>> size(EQ)
ans =
    124    14
>> % assign the four variables of interest
```

Recall the second part of the 68-95-99.7% rule: there it was claimed that  $P(|Z| \leq 2) \approx 95\%$ ; we just found the corresponding quantile more accurately: it is not 2 but 1.96.

The idea of the confidence interval for the unknown mean  $\mu$  can easily be extended to the case where we observe (one)  $X \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  provided  $\sigma^2$  is known. Let  $C$  be the confidence level and  $\alpha = (1 - C)/2$ ; then  $(X - \mu)/\sigma \sim Z$  and

$$\begin{aligned} C &= P(|Z| \leq z_\alpha) = P\left(\left|\frac{X - \mu}{\sigma}\right| \leq z_\alpha\right) \\ &= P(|X - \mu| \leq \sigma z_\alpha) = P([X - \sigma z_\alpha, X + \sigma z_\alpha] \ni \mu). \end{aligned}$$

**Proposition 107** Suppose a RV  $X \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  is observed where  $\mu$  is unknown and  $\sigma > 0$  is known. Let  $z_\alpha$  be the upper  $\alpha$ -quantile of  $Z$  for some  $0 < \alpha < 1/2$ . Then for  $C = 1 - 2\alpha$ .

$$P([X - \sigma z_\alpha, X + \sigma z_\alpha] \ni \mu) = C,$$

which means that for any observed value  $X = x$ , the interval  $[x - \sigma z_\alpha, x + \sigma z_\alpha]$  is a confidence interval for  $\mu$  of level  $C$ .

In what follows, we will generally abbreviate the statement: “*for any observed value  $X = x$ , the interval  $[x - \sigma z_\alpha, x + \sigma z_\alpha]$  is a confidence interval for ..*” by: “*the interval  $[X - \sigma z_\alpha, X + \sigma z_\alpha]$  is a confidence interval for ....*”

**Parameters and statistical inference.** We assumed initially that we observe  $X \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, 1)$  (or equivalently an  $X$  with  $\mathcal{L}(X) = \text{Normal}(\mu, 1)$ ) where the mean  $\mu$  is unknown. In that context  $\mu$  is called a *parameter* of the distribution of  $X$ . Constructing a confidence interval for  $\mu$  is an example of *statistical inference* regarding a parameter. Other examples of inference are hypothesis tests (about a parameter) and estimation of a parameter, also called *point estimation*. In point estimation one just gives a “reasonable guess” of a parameter. Note that if  $X \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, 1)$ , then  $X$  itself is a reasonable guess of  $\mu$ , i.e. a point estimate. In contrast, a confidence interval gives a range and an attached probability statement; a confidence interval is also called an *interval estimate*. In the case  $X \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ , both  $\mu$  and  $\sigma^2$  may be parameters; above we assumed  $\sigma$  “known”, i.e. we constructed a confidence interval which made use of  $\sigma$  (namely  $[X - \sigma z_\alpha, X + \sigma z_\alpha]$ ). When  $\sigma$  is unknown, this interval is not available.

**The case of  $n$  IID normal observations.** The model of *one* normal observation  $X$  appears artificial; it may strike one as a situation with very little data indeed. Consider instead the case of independent observations  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  all with law  $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ , and as above assume  $\mu$  is unknown while  $\sigma$  is known. To construct a confidence interval for  $\mu$ , one may choose to take the sample mean  $\bar{X}_n$  first and then build an interval estimate using information about the law of  $\bar{X}_n$ . Indeed we have from basic properties of the normal law

$$\bar{X}_n \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, n^{-1}\sigma^2)$$

(this follows from the fact that the sum of independent normals is normal, and a mean and variance computation). As a reminder, let's compute the variance:

$$\begin{aligned} V(\bar{X}_n) &= V\left(n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^n X_i\right) = n^{-2} V\left(\sum_{i=1}^n X_i\right) = (\text{by independence}) n^{-2} \sum_{i=1}^n V(X_i) \\ &= n^{-2} \sum_{i=1}^n \sigma^2 = n^{-1}\sigma^2. \end{aligned}$$



```
NZEQChCch20110222EDA.m
%% Load the data from the comma delimited text file 'NZ20110222earthquakes.csv'
% using the script M-file NZEQChCch20110222.m
NZEQChCch20110222
%% working with time stamps is tricky
%% time is encoded by columns 6 through 11
%% as origin of earthquake in year, month, day, hour, minute, sec:
%% ORI_YEAR,ORI_MONTH,ORI_DAY,ORI_HOUR,ORI_MINUTE,ORI_SECOND
%% datenum is Matlab's date encoding function see help datenum
TimeData=datenum(EQ(:,6:11)); % assign origin times of earth quakes in datenum coordinates
MaxD=max(TimeData); % get the latest time of observation in the data
MinD=min(TimeData); % get the earliest time of observation in the data
datestr(MinD) % nice way to conver to calendar time!
datestr(MaxD) % ditto

% recall that there four variables were assigned in NZEQChCch20110222.m
% LatData=EQ(:,2); LonData=EQ(:,3); MagData=EQ(:,12); DepData=EQ(:,13);

%clear any existing Figure windows
clf
plot(TimeData,MagData,'o-') % plot origin time against magnitude of each earth quake

figure % tell matlab you are about to make another figure
plotmatrix([LatData,LonData,MagData,DepData],'r.');

figure % tell matlab you are about to make another figure
scatter(LonData,LatData,'.') % plot the LONGitude Vs. LATtitude

figure % tell matlab you are about to make another figure
% relative frequency histogram of magnitudes from 0 to 12 on Richter Scale with 15 bins
hist(MagData,15)
%max(MagData)

figure % tell matlab you are about to make another figure
semilogx(DepData,MagData,'.') % see the depth in log scale

%%%%%
% more advanced topic - uncomment and read help if bored
%tri = delaunay(LatData,LonData);
%triplot(tri,LatData,LonData,DepData);
```

### Geostatistical exploratory data analysis with Google Earth

A global search at <http://neic.usgs.gov/cgi-bin/epic/epic.cgi> with the following parameters:

Date Range: 2011 2 22 to 2011 2 22  
Catalog: USGS/NEIC (PDE-Q)

produced 43 earth quakes world-wide, including those in Christchurch as shown in Figure 3.33. One can do a lot more than a mere visualisation with the USGS/NEIC database of earth-quakes world-wide, the freely available Google earth software bundle <http://www.google.com/earth/index.html> and the freely available MATLAB package googleearth from [http://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral/fx\\_files/12954/4/content/googleearth/html/html\\_product\\_page.html](http://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral/fx_files/12954/4/content/googleearth/html/html_product_page.html).

### 3.14.8 Metereological Data

New Zealand's meteorological service NIWA provides weather data under its TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR ACCESS TO DATA (See [http://cliflo.niwa.co.nz/doc/terms\\_print.html](http://cliflo.niwa.co.nz/doc/terms_print.html)).

which for  $t = 1$  gives 1 (i.e. it is trivial), for  $t = 2$  it gives 0.25 and for  $t = 3$  it gives  $1/9 = 0.11$ . For the standard normal we obtain the corresponding  $P(|Z| > t)$  from the table (or approximately from the  $3\sigma$ -rule) as 0.3155 for  $t = 1$ , 0.0456 for  $t = 2$  and 0.0026 for  $t = 3$ . Thus the normal tail decreases much faster than  $1/t^2$ , the upper bound from the Chebyshev inequality. This is not surprising in view of the form of the normal density: we have

$$P(|Z| > t) = 2 \int_t^\infty \varphi(u) du = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_t^\infty \exp(-u^2/2) du$$

and we would expect that the integral decreases with a similarly fast rate as the density  $\varphi$  itself, as the lower bound  $t$  tends to infinity. This is made precise by the following result.

**Proposition 106** (Mill's inequality) Let  $\mathcal{L}(Z) = \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ . Then

$$P(|Z| > t) \leq \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{1}{t} \exp(-t^2/2). \quad (7.18)$$

**Proof:** Observe that  $u/t \geq 1$  for  $u \geq t$ , hence

$$\begin{aligned} P(|Z| > t) &\leq \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{1}{t} \int_t^\infty u \exp(-u^2/2) du \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{1}{t} \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \int_t^x u \exp(-u^2/2) du \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{1}{t} \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} [-\exp(-u^2/2)]_t^x \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{1}{t} \exp(-t^2/2). \end{aligned}$$

Suppose again that  $S_n = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$  where  $X_i$  are IID Bernoulli  $Bernoulli(p)$ . The Chebyshev inequality gives for a tail probability

$$P\left(\left|\frac{S_n - np}{\sqrt{np(1-p)}}\right| > t\right) \leq 1/t^2$$

and it is *exact* (holds for every  $n$ ). In contrast, the normal tail estimate holds only as a limiting result for large  $n$ , i.e.  $P(|\cdot| > t) \rightarrow P(|Z| > t)$ . But then the upper bound on  $P(|\cdot| > t)$  suggested is much smaller than the one of Chebyshev's inequality, as shown by Mill's inequality. Obviously, for applications a choice is to be made. Probability estimates which hold only as limits for  $n \rightarrow \infty$  are called *asymptotic*. Much of the basic statistical methods to be discussed (confidence intervals, tests) are asymptotic in this sense, based on an assumption that  $n$  is large enough.

**Exercise 7.8** Show that Mill's inequality is sharp in the following sense: as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , the ratio of the left and right sides of (7.18) tends to one. A common notation for this is:

$$P(|Z| > t) \sim \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{1}{t} \exp(-t^2/2) \text{ as } t \rightarrow \infty$$

where the symbol " $\sim$ " applied to two functions  $g(t), h(t)$  means that  $g(t)/h(t) \rightarrow 1$  as  $t$  tends to a limit ( $t \rightarrow \infty$  in our case).

Automagic downloadings of the data by My Method B can be done if the data provider allows automated queries. It can be accomplished by writing a basic C#File that reads for instance.

Paul Brownwers has a basic C#File that reads for instance.

CHCH aerocrib station. It is assumed that days without readings would not be listed. The data doesn't go back much before 1944.

Figure 3.34 is obtained by the script file RationalisticCache.myscript and following the comments:

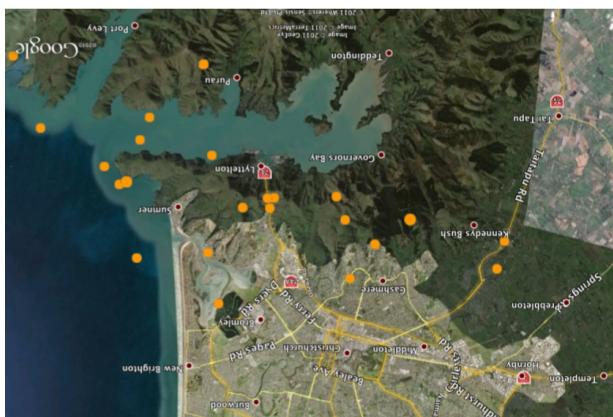


Figure 3.33: Google Earth Visualisation of the earth quakes

Daily Rainfalls in Christchurch

We will explore some data of rainfall and temperatures from NIMA.

```
%>> AminF11Statisticch
ans = 24312
[24312x1 double]
[24312x1 int32]
[24312x1 double]
2
LastDayOfData = 20100721
FirstDayOfData = 1930802
%>> How to download data from an URL directly without having to manually
%>> fill out forms
%>> AminF11Statisticch
%>> First make a string of the date you want details)
textDate = urlread([http://www.math.csiro.au/help/api/cf11to/ratmat1.php?];
textDate = [textDate;char(10)];
textDate = strrep(textDate,'<','<<');
textDate = strrep(textDate,'>','>>');
textDate = strrep(textDate,'&','&#xA;');

%>> AminF11Statisticch
%>> find the size of the matrix
size(C) % find the size of the matrix
```

**Labwork 120** Understand how Figure 3.34 is obtained by the script file `RainfallStatistics.m` by typing and following the comments:

Automagic downloadings of the data by My Method B can be done if the data provider allows automated queries. It can be accomplished by **curl** and **jq**.

Paul Brunwers has a basic C#**IHttp** dataprovider on <http://www.math.cantebury.ac.nz/php/lib/CHCHArchiveData.php>. This returns the date and rainfall in millimetres as measured from the base station. It is assumed that days without readings would not be listed. The data is returned in JSON format.

Daily Rainfalls in Christchurch

Below we are plotting the normal density with mean  $\mu = 5$  and standard deviation  $\sigma = 5$ .

Drawing the normal curve

262

SL

L91

**Labwork 120** Understand how Figure 3.34 is obtained by the script file `RainfallStatistics.m` by typing and following the comments:

Automagic downloadings of the data by My Method B can be done if the data provider allows automated queries. It can be accomplished by **curl** and **instacache**.

Paul Brunwers has a basic C#**IHttp** dataprovider on <http://www.math.cantebury.ac.nz/php/lib/CHCHArchiveData.php>. This returns the date and rainfall in millimetres as measured from the base station. It is assumed that days without readings would not be listed. The data is returned in JSON format.

Daily Rainfalls in Christchurch

We see that at  $x = 0$  the curve changes concavity, i.e., left of 0 it is convex (downward bent) and right of 0 it is concave (upward bent). Such a point is called an **inflection point**. We see that at  $x = 10$  there is another inflection point, and both inflection points are one standard deviation away from the mean. We will show that this is a general feature of any normal distribution.

$$\begin{aligned} \cdot (1 - \frac{x}{c}) \cdot (\gamma) \phi &= \\ (\bar{c}/\gamma t - x) dx \ominus \frac{\frac{\bar{c}}{\gamma} \wedge}{1} &= (\gamma) \eta \phi \\ \cdot (\bar{c}/\gamma t - x) dx \ominus \frac{\frac{\bar{c}}{\gamma} \wedge}{1} &= (\gamma) \eta \phi \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathcal{L}\Gamma\mathcal{L}) & \quad \left( \frac{\varrho}{n! - x} \right) \mu \not\propto \frac{\varrho^{\varrho}}{1} = (x)_\mu f \\ & \quad \cdot \left( \frac{\varrho}{n! - x} \right) \nu \not\propto \frac{\varrho^{\varrho}}{1} = (x)_\nu f \end{aligned}$$

where  $\phi(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp(-t^2/2)$  is the density of  $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$ . Now

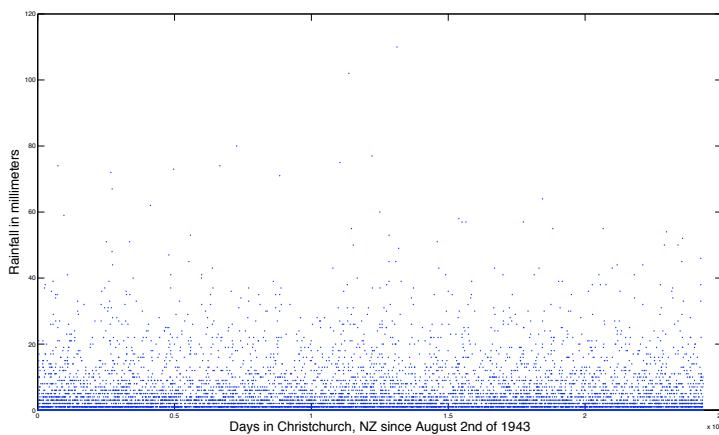
$$\left( \frac{\varrho}{\eta - x} \right) \phi \frac{\varrho}{1} = (x)f$$

A tail estimate for a RV  $X$  is an estimate for the probability  $P(|X| > t)$ . We may compare the tail estimates obtained from the standard normal  $Z$  with those from the Chebyshev inequality. The latter tells us that for any RV  $X$  with  $E X = 0$  and  $V(X) = 1$  and any  $t > 0$

## Chebyshev's inequality and the normal tail

$$\begin{aligned} \cdot \left( t - \frac{1}{\epsilon} \right) \cdot \phi &= \\ \left( t - \frac{1}{\epsilon} \right) dx \otimes \frac{\sqrt{2} \wedge \lambda}{1} &= (t)_n \sigma \\ \left( t - \frac{1}{\epsilon} \right) dx \otimes \frac{\sqrt{2} \wedge \lambda}{1} &= (t)_n \sigma \\ \left( t - \frac{1}{\epsilon} \right) dx \otimes \frac{\sqrt{2} \wedge \lambda}{1} &= (t)_n \sigma \end{aligned}$$

Figure 3.34: Daily rainfalls in Christchurch since March 27 2010



### Daily Temperatures in Christchurch

**Labwork 121** Understand how Figure 3.35 is being generated by following the comments in the script file ChchTempsLoad.m by typing:

```
>> ChchTempsLoad
```

---

```
ChchTempsLoad.m
%% Load the data from the comma delimited text file 'NIWACliFloChchAeroClubStationTemps.txt',
%% with the following column IDs
%% Max_min: Daily Temperature in Christchurch New Zealand
%% Stationate(NZST),Tmax(C),Period(Hrs),Tmin(C),Period(Hrs),Tgmin(C),Period(Hrs),Tmean(C),RHmean(%),Period(Hrs)

% the matrix T is about to be assigned the data as a matrix; the option [27,1,20904,5] to
% specify the upper-left and lower-right corners of an imaginary rectangle
% over the text file 'NIWACliFloChchAeroClubStationTemps.txt'.
% here we start from line number 27 and end at the last line number 20904
% and we read only columns NZST,Tmax(C),Period(Hrs),Tmin(C),Period(Hrs)

T = dlmread('NIWACliFloChchAeroClubStationTemps.txt','',[27,1,20904,5]);
% just keep column 1,2 and 4 named NZST,Tmax(C),Period(Hrs),Tmin(C),
% i.e. date in YYYYMMDD foramt, maximum temperature, minimum temperature
T = T(:,[1,2,4]); % just pull the time
% print size before removing missig data rows are removed
size(T) % report the dimensions or size of the matrix T

% This file has a lot of missing data points and they were replaced with
% NaN values - see the file for various manipulations that were done to the
% raw text file from NIWA (Copyright NIWA 2011 Subject to NIWA's Terms and
% Conditions. See: http://cliflo.niwa.co.nz/pls/niwpl/doc/terms.html)
T(any(isnan(T),2),:) = [];% Remove any rows containing NaNs from a matrix

size(T) % if the matrix has a different size now then the data-less days now!
```

**Reverse lookup and quantiles.** It is often of interest to find a value of  $z$  which matches a certain probability, say  $\alpha$  ( $0 < \alpha < 1$ ), such that, if  $X$  is a RV

$$P(X \geq z) = \alpha.$$

In this case we write  $z = z_\alpha$  and call this the **upper  $\alpha$ -quantile** of the distribution of  $X$ . Note that if  $X$  is  $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  then  $z_\alpha$  is uniquely defined: the equation

$$\int_z^\infty \varphi_{\mu, \sigma^2}(t) dt = \alpha$$

has a unique solution in  $z$ , since the left side is continuous, strictly monotone decreasing in  $z$  and ranges between 0 and 1. Here  $\varphi_{\mu, \sigma^2}(t) = \varphi((t - \mu)/\sigma)/\sigma$  is the density of  $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ ; since this density is strictly positive everywhere, we find

$$\frac{d}{dz} \int_z^\infty \varphi_{\mu, \sigma^2}(t) dt = -\varphi_{\mu, \sigma^2}(z) < 0$$

and indeed  $P(X \geq z)$  is strictly decreasing in  $z$ . For  $\alpha = 0.25$  the  $z_\alpha$  called the **upper quartile** of the distribution; for  $\alpha = 0.75$  the  $z_\alpha$  called the **lower quartile**. For  $\alpha = 0.5$  we obtain the **median** of distribution of  $X$ ; for  $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  it coincides with the mean  $\mu$ . We can also define **lower  $\alpha$ -quantiles** by solving  $P(X \leq z) = \alpha$  for  $z$ .

**Example 194** Suppose that Verbal SAT test scores  $X$  are described by a normal curve, for which the mean is 500 and the standard deviation is 100. A student's score is better than 75% of all the scores. What is the student's score?

**Solution.** We are asked the upper 25%-quantile (or 0.25-quantile, or the upper quartile) of  $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  with  $\mu = 500$  and  $\sigma = 100$ . Call this  $s$  now, i.e.  $s$  is the student's score. We must have

$$P(X \geq s) = 0.25$$

hence

$$P(X \leq s) = 0.75 = P\left(\frac{X - \mu}{\sigma} \leq \frac{s - \mu}{\sigma}\right) = P\left(Z \leq \frac{s - \mu}{\sigma}\right).$$

Let  $s^* = (s - \mu)/\sigma$ , then

$$P(Z \leq s^*) = 0.75$$

i.e.  $s^* = z_{1/4}$  is the upper quartile of  $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$ . By “reverse lookup” in the  $Z$ -table, we find the two closest to 0.75 entries (probabilities) to be 0.7486 and 0.7517, corresponding to  $z$ -values 0.67 and 0.68 respectively (i.e.  $P(Z \leq 0.67) = 0.7486$ ). A common method now is to interpolate between these two values of  $z$ , which would give us  $z_{1/4}^* = s^* = 0.675$ . This gives a value for  $s$

$$s = \sigma s^* + \mu = 67.5 + 500 = 567.5.$$

The method can be summarized: if  $z_\alpha$  denotes the  $\alpha$ -quantile of  $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$  and  $x_\alpha^*$  denotes the  $\alpha$ -quantile of  $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  then  $x_\alpha^* = \sigma z_\alpha + \mu$

```

% clear all current figures
clf % clear all current figures

% Before Last date in this data, i.e., March 27 2011 in Christchurch NZ
H265Days = (Date-365:end,2);
% H265Days = H265Days-H265Days(:); % assyin the maximum fluctuation, i.e., max-min
plot(H265Days,'x*'); % plot daily high or minimum temperature = Tmax - Tmin
hold on; % hold the figure so that we can overlay more plots on it
plot(365:365Days,'x*'); % plot daily high or minimum temperature = Tmax - Tmin
plot(365:365Days,'g*'); % plot daily fluctuation = Tmax - Tmin
% filter for running means
H265Days = filter(ones(1,windowsSize)/windowsSize,1,365Days);
% WeeklyHighs = filter(ones(1,windowsSize)/windowsSize,1,365Days);
% WeeklyLows = filter(ones(1,windowsSize)/windowsSize,1,365Days);
% Plot(WeeklyHighs,x,-);
% Plot(WeeklyLows,x,-);
% xlabel('Number of days since March 27 2011 in Christchurch, NZ','FontSize',20)
% ylabel('Temperature in Celsius','FontSize',20)
% plot(WeeklyPlots,'g*-');
% Create Legend
setMLeg = legend('Max','Min','Locality Low','Locality High','Weekly High','Weekly Low',...
    '% set the limits or boundary on the x-axis of the plots
    % turn off holding so we stop overlayering new plots on this figure
    % Xlim([0 365]), % set the limits or boundary on the x-axis of the plots
    % setMLeg, FontSize,20);
% Create Legend

```

The last two equalities give two ways of looking up  $P(Z \geq z)$  in the table. The second equality derives from the symmetry of the normal density: since  $\phi(t) = \phi(-t)$ , we have

$$P(Z \geq z) = P(Z < -z) = 1 - P(Z \leq -z)$$

(since for a continuous RV having a density,  $P(Z = z) = 0$ ),

$$P(Z > z) = P(Z \leq -z)$$

Useful rules to find other normal probabilities are

out example we have  $s = 0.03$ , so we go to the column headed "0.03" and find  $P(Z \leq 2.73) = 0.9968$ .

probabilities  $P(Z \leq 2.7 + s)$  for  $x = 0.00, \dots, 0.09$ , i.e. for values of the second decimal place. In decimal place, i.e. 2.7, one of the two columns headed "z". To the right of 2.73 you find all the values of the second decimal place. Thus, look up the value of  $z$  without the second

Consider a positive value of  $z$ , e.g.  $z = 2.75$ . First, look up the value of  $z$  without the second

Figure 3.35: Daily temperatures in Christchurch for one year since March 27 2010

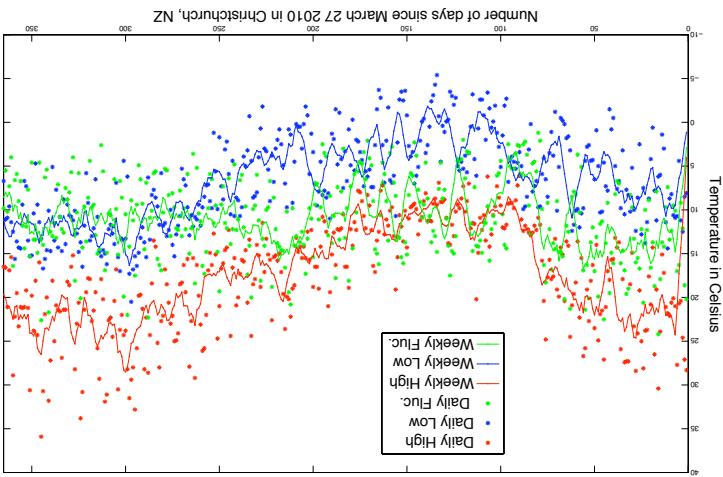


Figure 3.35: Daily temperatures in Christchurch for one year since March 27 2010

The **68-95-99.7 rule** (De Moivre, 1733). In a normal model  $Normal(\mu, \sigma^2)$ , about 68% of the values fall within one standard deviation of the mean, about 95% of the values fall within two standard deviations of the mean, and about 99.7% of the values fall within three standard deviations of the mean.

The table begins at  $z = -3.9$  and ends at  $z = 3.9$ , for which the probabilities are given as 0.0000  
 $\text{Pr}(Z < z) = \Phi(z)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} P(Z \leq 1) - P(Z \leq -1) &= 0.8413 - 0.1586 = 0.6845, \\ P(Z \leq 2) - P(Z \leq -2) &= 0.9772 - 0.0228 = 0.9544, \\ P(Z \leq 3) - P(Z \leq -3) &= 0.9987 - 0.0013 = 0.9974. \end{aligned}$$

The rule (as an approximation statement) is confirmed.

For  $k = 1, 2, 3$  we find

$$\begin{aligned} \cdot(\varphi - \overline{\sigma} Z)D - (\varphi \overline{\sigma} Z)D &= \\ (\varphi \overline{\sigma} Z \overline{\sigma} \varphi -)D = \left( \varphi \overline{\sigma} \frac{\varphi}{\pi' - X} \overline{\sigma} \varphi - \right)D &= (\varphi \varphi + \pi' \overline{\sigma} X \overline{\sigma} \varphi - \pi')D \end{aligned}$$

The last part (99.7 part) is also called the  $\sigma_0$ -rule. Let us verify these claims, using the  $Z$ -table.

The **68-95-99.7 rule** (De Moivre, 1733). In a normal model  $Normal(\mu, \sigma^2)$ , about 99.7% of the values fall within three standard deviations of the mean, and about 99.7% of the values fall within three standard deviations of the mean.

$$\text{Pr}(Z \leq z) = \int_{-\infty}^z \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-t^2/2} dt$$

The first two equations give two ways of looking up  $F(z \geq z)$  in the table. The derivatives from the symmetry of the normal density: since  $\varphi(t) = \varphi(-t)$ , we have

$$(z \geq Z) P = P(Z = z)$$

since for a continuous RV having a density,  $P(Z = z) = 0$

### 3.14.9 Textual Data

Processing and analysing textual data to make a decision is another important computational statistical experiment. An obvious example is machine translation and a less obvious one is exploratory data analysis of the textual content of

- a large document
  - twitter messages within an online social network of interest
  - etc.

An interesting document with a current affairs projection is the Joint Operating Environment 2010 Report by the US Department of Defense. This document was downloaded from [http://www.jfcom.mil/newslink/storyarchive/2010/JOE\\_2010\\_o.pdf](http://www.jfcom.mil/newslink/storyarchive/2010/JOE_2010_o.pdf). The first paragraph of this 74 page document (JOE 2010 Report) reads:

**ABOUT THIS STUDY** The Joint Operating Environment is intended to inform joint concept development and experimentation throughout the Department of Defense. It provides a perspective on future trends, shocks, contexts, and implications for future joint force commanders and other leaders and professionals in the national security field. This document is speculative in nature and does not suppose to predict what will happen in the next twenty-five years. Rather, it is intended to serve as a starting point for discussions about the future security environment at the operational level of war. Inquiries about the Joint Operating Environment should be directed to USJFCOM Public Affairs, 1562 Mitscher Avenue, Suite 200, Norfolk, VA 23551-2488 (757) 836-6555.

Distribution Statement A: Approved for Public Release

Figure 3.36: Wordle of JOE 2010



We can try to produce a statistic of this document by recording the frequency of words in its textual content. Then we can produce a “word histogram” or “word cloud” to explore the document visually at one of the coarsest possible resolutions of the textual content in the JOE 2010 Report. The “word cloud” shown in Figure 3.36 was produced by Phillip Wilson using *wordle* from <http://www.wordle.net/>. A description from the wordle URL says:

Wordle is a toy for generating word clouds from text that you provide. The clouds give greater prominence to words that appear more frequently in the source text. You can tweak your clouds with different fonts, layouts, and color schemes. The images you create with Wordle are yours to use however you like. You can print them out, or save them to the Wordle gallery to share with your friends.

Since

$$\begin{aligned} z(a) - 1/2\sigma &= \frac{a - \mu}{\sigma} - \frac{1}{2\sigma} = \frac{a - 1/2 - \mu}{\sigma} = z(a - 1/2) \\ z(a) + 1/2\sigma &= z(a + 1/2), \end{aligned}$$

we may write (7.14) as

$$\text{P}(X = a) \approx \int_{z(a-1/2)}^{z(a+1/2)} \varphi(t) dt. \quad (7.15)$$

The principle of using (7.15) for individual binomial probabilities is known as the *correction for continuity*. It implies that, for  $P(a \leq X \leq b)$ , we now use an approximation

$$P(a \leq X \leq b) \approx \int_{z(a-1/2)}^{z(b+1/2)} \varphi(t) dt \quad (7.16)$$

rather than (7.13). This corrected method is now consistent in itself, that is, the left side splits up into 11 individual probabilities  $P(X = k)$ :

$$P(a \leq X \leq b) = \sum_{k=0}^{10} P(X = a+k),$$

and similarly the right side in (7.16) splits into 11 integrals over small pieces of length  $1/\sigma$ .

Whether we use the continuity correction or not, the individual binomial probabilities will be small for large  $n$ : for some  $t^*$

$$\begin{aligned} P(X = a) &\approx \int_{z(a)-1/2\sigma}^{z(a)+1/2\sigma} \varphi(t) dt = \frac{1}{\sigma} \varphi(t^*) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{np(1-p)}} \varphi(t^*) \\ &\leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi p(1-p)}}, \end{aligned}$$

for some  $t^*$  with  $z(a) - 1/2\sigma < t^* < z(a) + 1/2\sigma$ , and in view of

$$\varphi(t^*) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp(-t^*/2) \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}.$$

Thus the individual binomial probabilities will decrease like  $1/\sqrt{n}$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  at most (or will be even smaller).

## The normal table and quantiles

The so-called Z-table gives the areas under the standard normal curve

$$P(Z \leq z) = \int_{-\infty}^z \varphi(t) dt$$

It is well known that the normal integral

\int\_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-x^2/2} dx = \sqrt{\pi}

$$\int_{-\infty}^z \varphi(t) dt = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^z \exp(-t^2/2) dt$$

does not have an explicit analytic solution. Hence the necessity to use a numerically computed table; statistical software has these values stored (or sometimes computes them).

$(z(a) - 1/2\sigma, z(a) + 1/2\sigma)$ , so that we now use

$(z(a), z(a) + 1/\sigma)$ , by integration over a symmetric interval around  $z(a)$  having the same length:

This can be corrected by replacing the approximation (7.12), that is, integration over the interval

$$P(X = a) \approx \int_{z(a)+1/\sigma}^{z(a)-1/2\sigma} \phi(t) dt. \quad (7.14)$$

intervals of length  $1/\sigma$ . So there is a slight inconsistency in our method.

and noting  $z(a) + 10/\sigma = z(b)$ , we note that the interval  $(z(a), z(b))$  contains only 10 of the small

so we have 11 individual probabilities to approximate. On the other hand, our original approxima-

$$P(a \leq X \leq b) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} P(X = a+k)$$

piece of size  $1/\sigma$ . Extending this reasoning to all integers between  $a = 20$  and  $b = 30$ , we obtain

$$P(X = a) \approx \int_{z(a)+1/\sigma}^{z(a)} \phi(t) dt. \quad (7.12)$$

for  $a = 20$ , so that it turns out that we approximate an individual probability  $P(X = a)$  for a

$$P(a < X \leq b) - P(a+1 \leq X \leq b) = P(X = a)$$

makes the difference

$$= P\left(\frac{a}{a-\mu} \leq Z \leq \frac{a}{a-\mu} + \frac{\sigma}{1}\right).$$

$$P\left(\frac{a}{a-\mu} \leq Z \leq \frac{b}{b-\mu}\right) - P\left(\frac{a+1}{a+1-\mu} \leq Z \leq \frac{b}{b-\mu}\right)$$

instead of  $\frac{a}{a-\mu}$ ; the difference can be described by

$$P(a+1 \leq X \leq b) \approx P\left(\frac{a}{a+1-\mu} \leq Z \leq \frac{b}{b-\mu}\right)$$

The approximate probability is then

$$\frac{a+1-\mu}{a+1-\mu} = \frac{21-20}{1} = \frac{\sigma}{\sigma} = \frac{1}{4} = 0.25.$$

since  $X$  is a binomial RV, taking only integer values. By the reasoning above, we find the Z-score

$$P(a < X \leq b)$$

with  $a = 20$ ,  $b = 30$  or equivalently, for an approximation to

$$P(a+1 \leq X \leq b)$$

by "between 21 and 30 questions correct", that is, we are asking for the approximate probability

Suppose that in the last example, we substitute question (b) "between 20 and 30 questions correct"

"between 21 and 30 questions correct", that is, we are asking for the approximate probability

### 3.14.10 Machine Sensor Data

Instrumentation of modern machines, such as planes, robots and cars allow the sensors in the honours thesis or summer project or any other document that fascinates your interest by using word form <http://www.worldwide.net/>. This is just for fun. Produce a "word cloud" of your

### Chaotic Time Series of a Double Pendulum

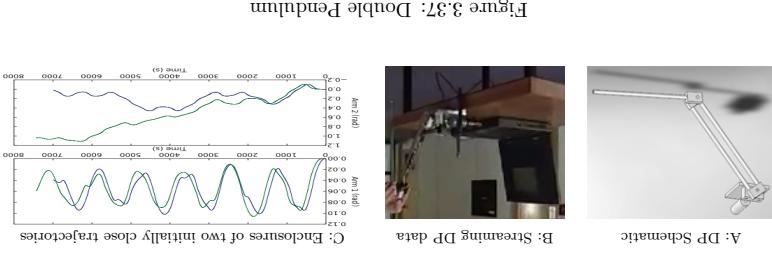


Figure 3.37: Double Pendulum

Sensors called optical encoders have been attached to the top end of each arm of a chaotic double pendulum in order to obtain the angular position of each arm through time as shown in Figure 3.37. Time series of the angular position of each arm are almost the same at the initial time of release. Note how quickly the two trajectories diverge! System with such a sensitivity to initial conditions are said to be chaotic.

Figure 3.37(C) using time series data of trajectory 1 and trajectory 2 linked from the bottom of the ac.nz/.x.santadi.in/lmse/double-pendulum/. Then use MATLAB to generate a plot similar to details about the design and fabrication of the double pendulum at <http://www.math.centrebury.ac.nz/~x.santadi.in/lmse/double-pendulum/>.

**Labwork 123 (A Challenging Task)** Try this if you are interested. Read any of the needed

### 3.15 Exercises in Statistics

**Ex. 3.56** — What is the sample mean and sample variance of the following dataset:

1, 3, 2, 1, 2, 3, 3

A value  $\lambda = 50$  gives

[done in Lecture 5 - get/read notes to draw by hand here.]

showing a nearly perfect fit again, as an illustration of the CLT in action for sums of Poisson variables.

**Labwork 193** Write a MATLAB script to visualise the above figures drawn in lectures and algorithmically as well as visually understand *the success / failure rule* with **law of rare events** or Poisson approximation.

You need to use `gammaln` in MATLAB for  $\log_e(\Gamma)$  function and use laws of exponents and logarithms for the factorial term in the PDF of Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) and Poisson( $\lambda$ ) RVs with large  $n$ .

#### An example for use of normal approximation of the binomial

**Exercise 7.6** A multiple-choice examination has 100 questions, each with five possible answers of which only one is correct. Suppose a student just guesses at all the answers.

- (a) What is the probability that he or she gets exactly 2 out of the first 5 questions correct?
- (b) What is approximately the probability that he or she gets between 20 and 30 questions correct on the entire test?

**Exercise 7.7** Suppose the probability of having blue eyes is 0.15 for any given person in the U.S.. The town of Springfield, USA recently experienced economic downturn and most people lost their jobs. There are only 60 people now in Springfield. Suppose the residents of Springfield are all unrelated as they are immigrants arriving from all over the U.S., and therefore have eye colors that are independent of each other.

- a) Find the expected number of people with blue eyes in Springfield, USA.
- b) Find the variance and standard deviation of the number of blue-eyed people in Springfield, USA.
- c) Use either the Normal or Poisson approximation to the Binomial, whichever is most appropriate via the success / failure condition, to calculate the probability that there are between 20 and 25 blue-eyed residents of Springfield, USA. You may leave your answer as a simplified expression instead of a numerical value.

# Simulation

anyone who considers statistical methods of producing random digits is, of course,  
in a state of sin." — John von Neumann (1951)

#### 4.1 Physical Random Number Generators

Let's look at the New Zealand LOTO draws at <http://lotto.nzpages.co.nz/statistics>.  
The first and convincing evidence that all forty numbers {1, 2, ..., 39, 40} seem to be drawn uniformly at random. The British lottery information at <http://understandingmaturity.org/node/39> shows how often each of the 49 numbers came up in the first 1240 draws. Are these draws really random? We will answer these questions in the sequel (see <http://understandingmaturity.org/node/40> if you can't wait).

## 4.2 Pseudo-Random Number Generators

Our probability model and the elementary continuous Uniform(0, 1) RV are built from the abstract concept of a random variable over a probability triple. A direct implementation of these ideas on a computer program is not possible. In practice, random variables are typically simulated by deterministic methods of algorithms. Such algorithms generate sequences of numbers whose behavior is statistically indistinguishable from a truly random sequence. In computation statistics, simulation realizations from a given RV is usually done in two distinct steps. First, sequences of numbers that imitate independent and identically distributed (IID) Uniform(0, 1) RVs are generated. Second, appropriate transformations are made to these imitations of IID Uniform(0, 1) random variables in order to imitate IID random variables from other random distributions.

where  $\approx$  means “closeness in distribution”, with a rigorous meaning (7.11).

$$\text{Poisson}(n) \approx \text{Normal}(n, n) \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty$$

Therefore a CLT holds for the normalized  $S_n$ ; recall that expectation and variance of Poisson( $\lambda$ ) are both  $\lambda$ : if  $Z(\lambda) = \text{Poisson}(\lambda)$  then  $E Z(\lambda) = \lambda$ ,  $V(Z(\lambda)) = \lambda$ ; hence

$$\text{Poisson}(n) = \mathcal{C}(S^n, S^n, \underbrace{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n}_{\text{iid}}, \mathcal{C}(X_i) = \text{Poisson}(1)).$$

As a consequence, we can represent Poisson( $n$ ) as the law of a sum of IID RV's, each with Law

**Example 1.3** (Sum of independent Poisson RVs is a Poisson RV) Suppose  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  are independent RVs with  $E(X_i) = \text{Poisson}(t_i)$ ,  $\mathcal{L}(X_i) = \text{Poisson}(u_i)$  where  $t_i, u_i > 0$ . Then  $\mathcal{L}(X + Y) = \text{Poisson}(n + t)$ .

CHAPTER 7. INFERENCE FOR STATISTICAL EXPERIMENTS 256

In the following chapters, we focus on transforming IID Uniform(0, 1) variates to other non-uniform variates. In this chapter, we focus on the art of imitating IID Uniform(0, 1) variates using simple deterministic rules.

#### 4.2.1 Linear Congruential Generators

The following procedure introduced by D. H. Lehmer in 1949 [*Proc. 2nd Symp. on Large-Scale Digital Calculating Machinery, Harvard Univ. Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1951, 141–146*] gives the simplest popular PRNG that can be useful in many statistical situations if used wisely.

---

##### Algorithm 2 Linear Congruential Generator (LCG)

---

1: *input:* five suitable integers:

1.  $m$ , the modulus;  $0 < m$
2.  $a$ , the multiplier;  $0 \leq a < m$
3.  $c$ , the increment;  $0 \leq c < m$
4.  $x_0$ , the seed;  $0 \leq x_0 < m$
5.  $n$ , the number of desired pseudo-random numbers

2: *output:*  $(x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1})$ , the linear congruential sequence of length  $n$

3: **for**  $i = 1$  to  $n - 1$  **do**

4:    $x_i \leftarrow (ax_{i-1} + c) \bmod m$

5: **end for**

6: *return:*  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$

---

In order to implement LCGs we need to be able to do high precision exact integer arithmetic in MATLAB. We employ the Module vpi to implement variable precision integer arithmetic. You need to download this module for the next Labwork.

**Labwork 124 (Generic Linear Congruential Sequence)** Let us implement Algorithm 2 in MATLAB as follows.

---

```
function x = LinConGen(m,a,c,x0,n)
% Returns the linear congruential sequence
% Needs variable precision integer arithmetic in MATLAB!!!
% Usage: x = LinConGen(m,a,c,x0,n)
% Tested:
% Knuth3.3.4Table1.Line1: LinConGen(100000001,23,0,01234,10)
% Knuth3.3.4Table1.Line5: LinConGen(256,137,0,01234,10)
% Knuth3.3.4Table1.Line20: LinConGen(2147483647,48271,0,0123456,10)
% Knuth3.3.4Table1.Line21: LinConGen(2147483399,40692,0,0123456,10)

x=zeros(1,n); % initialize an array of zeros
X=vpi(x0); % X is a variable precision integer seed
x(1) = double(X); % convert to double
A=vpi(a); M=vpi(m); C=vpi(c); % A,M,C as variable precision integers
for i = 2:n % loop to generate the Linear congruential sequence
    % the linear congruential operation in variable precision integer
    % arithmetic
    % comment out the next ';' to get integer output
    X=mod(A * X + C, M);

```

---

i.e. it is a product of  $k$  factors each of which tends to 1, hence  $\frac{n!}{(n-k)!n^k} \rightarrow 1$ . For the 4th factor in (7.9) we obviously have

$$\frac{1}{(1 - \lambda/n)^k} \rightarrow 1.$$

For the 5th factor in (7.9) we have

$$\left(1 - \frac{\lambda}{n}\right)^n \rightarrow \exp(-\lambda)$$

which proves that

$$p_{n,k} \rightarrow \frac{1}{k!} \cdot \lambda^k \cdot \exp(-\lambda)$$

as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , for a fixed  $k$ .

We have established the Poisson approximation to Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) if  $n\theta = \lambda$  exactly; a slight modification gives the result when  $\theta = \theta_n$  depends on  $n$  in such a way that  $n\theta_n \rightarrow \lambda$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . This result is sometimes called the **law of small numbers** because it is the probability distribution of the number of occurrences of an event that happens rarely but has very many opportunities to happen. Another name is **law of rare events**.

Analogously to what we did for the binomial distribution, for visualization purposes we will interpolate the probability function by a smooth function

$$h(x) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(x+1)} \cdot \lambda^x \cdot \exp(-\lambda).$$

Then  $h(x)$  represents the Poisson law Poisson( $\lambda$ ) in the following sense:

$$h(k) = \frac{1}{k!} \cdot \lambda^k \cdot \exp(-\lambda), k = 0, 1, \dots$$

Set as before  $n = 600$ , and consider the binomial Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) for  $\theta = 1/200$ ; then our appropriate  $\lambda$  is  $\lambda = 3$ . The picture below is analogous to the last figure, where the dotted line now represents the Poisson law Poisson(3) instead of the normal law Normal( $\mu, \sigma^2$ ) with mean  $\mu = n\theta$  and variance  $n\theta(1 - \theta)$ .

[done in Lecture 5 - get/read notes to draw by hand here.]

We see a visually perfect approximation of the binomial law by the Poisson law. Here both laws are discrete (concentrated on the integers  $0, 1, \dots$ ) and the picture represents a continuous interpolation.

The success/failure rule thus can be explained by the Poisson approximation, in the sense that the *Poisson approximation contradicts the normal for small  $\lambda = n\theta$* . In the requirement  $\lambda \geq 10$ , the 10 is a limit chosen by convention; in the figures we saw that at least for  $\lambda = 3$ , the Poisson and the normal curves are visually different. Can we argue that for  $\lambda \geq 10$ , the Poisson and the normal approximation are not in contradiction? For that we have to observe that Poisson( $\lambda$ ) approximates a normal distribution as  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$ .



Since  $f$  maps a the finite set  $\{1, 2, \dots, m-1\}$  into itself, such systems are bound to have a repeating cycle of numbers called the **period**. In Labwork 124, the generator `LinConGen(13,12,11,10,12)` has period  $(10, 1)$  of length 2, the generator `LinConGen(13,10,9,8,12)` has period  $(8, 11, 2, 3, 0, 9)$  of length 6 and the generator `LinConGen(256,137,0,123,257)` has a period of length 32. All these generators have a non-maximal period length less than their modulus  $m$ . A good generator should have a maximal period of  $m$ . Let us try to implement a generator with a maximal period of  $m = 256$ .

The period of a general LCG is at most  $m$ , and for some choices of  $a$  the period can be much less than  $m$  as shown in the examples considered earlier. The LCG will have a full period if and only if:

1.  $c$  and  $m$  are relatively prime,
2.  $a - 1$  is divisible by all prime factors of  $m$ ,
3.  $a - 1$  is a multiple of 4 if  $m$  is a multiple of 4

**Labwork 126 (LCG with maximal period length of 256)** Consider the linear congruential sequence with  $(m, a, c, x_0, n) = (256, 137, 123, 13, 256)$ . First check that these parameters do indeed satisfy the three condition above and therefore can produce the maximal period length of only  $m = 256$ . Modify the input parameter to `LinConGen` and repeat Labwork 125 in order to first produce a sequence of length 257. Do you see that the period is of maximal length of 256 as opposed to the generator of Labwork 125? Next produce a Figure to visualise the sequence as done in Figure 4.1.

A useful sequence should clearly have a relatively long period, say at least  $2^{30}$ . Therefore, the **modulus  $m$  has to be rather large** because the **period** cannot have more than  $m$  elements. Moreover, the quality of pseudo-random numbers of a LCG is extremely sensitive to the choice of  $m$ ,  $a$  and  $c$  even if the maximal period is attained. The next example illustrates this point.

**Labwork 127 (The infamous RANDU)** RANDU is an infamous LCG, which has been used since the 1960s. It is widely considered to be one of the most ill-conceived random number generators designed. Notably, it fails the **spectral test** badly for dimensions greater than 2. The following commands help visualise the sequence of first 5001/3 triplets  $(x_i, x_{i+1}, x_{i+2})$  seeded from  $x_0 = 1$  (Figure 4.2). Read `help reshape` and `help plot3`.

```
>> x=reshape( (LinConGen(2147483648,65539,0,1,5001)./ 2147483648) ,3,[]);
>> plot3(x(1,:),x(2,:),x(3,:),'.'
```

**Labwork 128 (Fishman20 and Lecuyer21 LCGs)** The following two LCGs are recommended in Knuth's Art of Computer Programming, vol. 2, for generating pseudo-random numbers for simple simulation tasks.

```
>> LinConGen(2147483647,48271,0,08787458,10) ./ 2147483647
ans = 0.0041 0.5239 0.0755 0.7624 0.6496 0.0769 0.9030 0.4259 0.9948 0.8868

>> LinConGen(2147483399,40692,0,01234567,10) ./ 2147483399
ans = 0.0006 0.3934 0.4117 0.7893 0.3913 0.6942 0.6790 0.3337 0.2192 0.1883
```

by multiplying by  $\sigma = \sqrt{n\theta(1-\theta)}$  and then adding  $\mu = n\theta$  we would infer  $S_n$  that should be approximately

$$S_n \approx \sqrt{n\theta(1-\theta)}Z + n\theta \quad (7.8)$$

where  $\mathcal{L}(\sigma Z + \mu) = \text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ . But here we should be cautious as to the meaning of the sign “ $\approx$ ”: in (7.8) both the left side and the right side depend on  $n$ , so we do not have a limit relation. Nevertheless it is common in statistics to state the normal approximation to the binomial as

$$S_n \approx \text{Normal}(n\theta, n\theta(1-\theta)).$$

This is correct if we understand it to mean the CLT (7.7). When we plot the distributions  $\text{Binomial}(n, \theta)$  and  $\text{Normal}(n\theta, n\theta(1-\theta))$ , we make certain scale transforms anyway, e.g. we look at the distributions around their expectation, on the scale of the standard deviation. This amounts to standardization, and what we see is in fact the CLT (7.7).

Moreover (7.8) can be made rigorous by introducing a certain distance for distributions and then claiming that the distance between  $\mathcal{L}(S_n)$  and  $\text{Normal}(n\theta, n\theta(1-\theta))$  tends to zero; we will not elaborate this here.

### 7.5.3 The success / failure rule

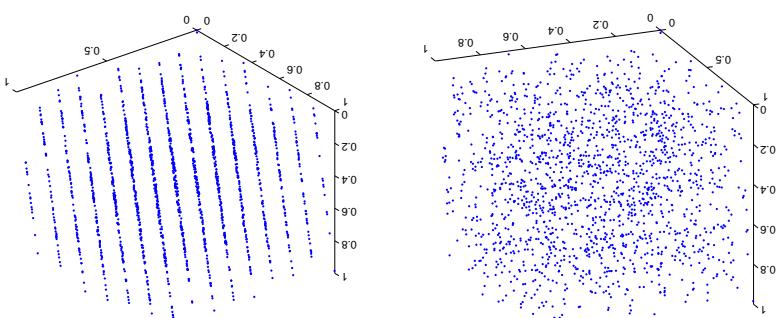
In applied statistics one finds a rule which limits the applicability of the normal approximation to the binomial  $\text{Binomial}(n, \theta)$ : it is required that both  $n\theta \geq 10$  and  $n(1-\theta) \geq 10$ . This is called the “success / failure rule” since  $n\theta$  is the expected number of successes:  $E S_n = n\theta$  and  $n(1-\theta)$  is the expected number of “failures”:  $E(n - S_n) = n(1-\theta)$ . This rule is based on the fact that the CLT “breaks down” for small values of  $\theta$ . More precisely, when  $\theta$  is small, a larger  $n$  is needed to make the normal approximation good; for large enough  $n$  a small  $\theta$  can always be compensated. For an illustration, select  $\theta = 1/200$  and again  $n = 600$ ; then  $n\theta = 3$  and the success / failure rule is violated. The plot of  $b_n(k)$  is as follows:

[done in Lecture 3 - get/read notes to draw by hand here.]

Next we will look at this distribution around  $\mu = n\theta$ , i.e.  $\mu = 3$  in the range of three standard deviations, i. e.  $3\sigma$  where  $\sigma = \sqrt{n\theta(1-\theta)}$ , thus  $\sigma = 1.73$ . Thus  $3 \cdot \sigma = 5.2 \approx 5$  and we select a range of  $x$  from 0 to  $3 + 5 = 10$ .

[done in Lecture 3 - get/read notes to draw by hand here.]

Figure 4-2: The LOG called RANDU with  $(m, a, c) = (2^{14}, 43698, 65539, 0)$  has strong correlation between three consecutive points as:  $x_{i+2} = 6x_{i+1} - 9x_i$ . The two plots are showing  $(x_i, x_{i+1}, x_{i+2})$



from two different view points.

between three consecutive points.

Figure 4-2: The LOG called RANDU with  $(m, a, c) = (2^{14}, 43698, 65539, 0)$  has strong correlation between three consecutive points as:  $x_{i+2} = 6x_{i+1} - 9x_i$ . The two plots are showing  $(x_i, x_{i+1}, x_{i+2})$

The number of random numbers  $n$  should be most be about  $m/1000$  in order to avoid the influence of the number of random numbers  $n$  on the result of the simulation. This is because the number of random numbers  $n$  should be adopted after the consumption of every few million pseudo-random numbers.

The LCGs are the least sophisticated type of PRNGs. They are easier to understand but are not recommended for intensive simulation purposes. The next section briefly introduces a more sophisticated PRNG we will be using in this course. Moreover our implementation of LCGs using the variable precision integer package is extremely slow in MATLAB and is only of pedagogical interest.

M.2.2 Generalized Feedback Shift Register and the "Merenne Twister" PRNG

Let us learn to implement the MATLAB function that generates PRNs. In MATLAB the function `rand` produces a deterministic PRN sequence. First, read help `rand`. We can generate PRNs as follows.

The following generator termed **twister** in MATLAB is recommended for use in simulation. It has extremely long periods, low correlation and passes most statistical tests (the Diehard statistical tests). The **twister** random number generator of Makoto Matsumoto and Takuji Nishimura is a variant of the twisted generalized feedback shift register algorithm, and is known as the "Mersenne Twister" generator [Matsumoto and Nishimura, Mersenne Twister: A 623-dimensionally equidistributed uniform pseudorandom number generator, ACM Transactions on Modeling and Computation Simulation, Vol. 8, No. 1 (Jan. 1998), Pages 3-30]. It has a Mersenne prime period of  $2^{19937} - 1$  (about 16000) and is **equi-distributed** in 623 dimensions. The words of state per generator and is comparable in speed to the generators. The recommended default seed is 5489. See <http://www.math.sci.hiroshima-u.ac.jp/~mat/MT/emt.html> and details.

bilities, is:

Labwork 129 (Calling PRNG in MATLAB) In MATLAB rand is basic PRNG command.

$$Z \leftrightarrow \frac{(\theta - 1)\theta u}{\theta u - uS} \wedge$$

In this resampling, we plotted the metropolitan probability histogram of the sum  $S_n$  against the density of the normal distribution  $\text{Normal}(u, \sigma^2) = \text{Normal}(u\theta, u\theta(1-\theta))$ . The fact since the CLT says that the standardized sum  $\frac{S_n - u\theta}{\sqrt{u\theta(1-\theta)}}$  is approximately standard normal:

[done in Lecture 3 - get/read notes to draw by hand here.]

is the standard normal density  $\phi(t)$ . The density  $f(x)$  is plotted in (red) dots over the previous

$$\phi(t) = \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{1} \exp(-t^2/2)$$

where

The curve is visually indistinguishable from a normal density. For a comparison we plot the normal density with expectation  $\mu = 200$  and standard deviation  $\sigma = 11.55$ , i.e. the function

[done in Lecture 3 - get/read notes to draw by hand here.]

Let us look at this picture around the expected value  $n\theta = 600/3 = 200$  in the range of three standard deviations. The standard deviation is  $\sigma = \sqrt{n} \cdot \sqrt{1-\theta} = 11.55$ , thus  $3\sigma = 34.65 \approx 35$  and we take a range of  $x$  from 165 to 235.

[done in Lecture 3 - get/read notes to draw by hand here.]

CHAPTER 7. INFERENCE FOR STATISTICAL EXPERIMENTS 252

```
>> rand(1,10) % generate a 1 X 10 array of PRNs
ans =
0.8147 0.9058 0.1270 0.9134 0.6324 0.0975 0.2785 0.5469 0.9575 0.9649
>> rand(1,10) % generate another 1 X 10 array of PRNs
ans =
0.1576 0.9706 0.9572 0.4854 0.8003 0.1419 0.4218 0.9157 0.7922 0.9595
>> rand('twister',5489) % reset the PRNG to default state Mersenne Twister with seed=5489
>> rand(1,10) % reproduce the first array
ans =
0.8147 0.9058 0.1270 0.9134 0.6324 0.0975 0.2785 0.5469 0.9575 0.9649
>> rand(1,10) % reproduce the second array
ans =
0.1576 0.9706 0.9572 0.4854 0.8003 0.1419 0.4218 0.9157 0.7922 0.9595
```

In general, you can use any seed value to initiate your PRNG. You may use the `clock` command to set the seed:

```
>> SeedFromClock=sum(100*clock); % save the seed from clock
>> rand('twister',SeedFromClock) % initialize the PRNG
>> rand(1,10)
ans =
0.3696 0.3974 0.6428 0.6651 0.6961 0.7311 0.8982 0.6656 0.6991 0.8606
>> rand(2,10)
ans =
0.3432 0.9511 0.3477 0.1007 0.8880 0.0853 0.6067 0.6976 0.4756 0.1523
0.5827 0.5685 0.0125 0.1555 0.5551 0.8994 0.2502 0.5955 0.5960 0.5700
>> rand('twister',SeedFromClock) % initialize the PRNG to same SeedFromClock
>> rand(1,10)
ans =
0.3696 0.3974 0.6428 0.6651 0.6961 0.7311 0.8982 0.6656 0.6991 0.8606
```

**Labwork 130 (3D plots of triplets generated by the “Mersenne Twister”)** Try to find any correlation between triplets generated by the “Mersenne Twister” by rotating the 3D plot generated by the following code:

```
>> rand('twister',1234)
>> x=rand(3,2000); % store PRNs in a 3X2000 matrix named x
>> plot3(x(1,:),x(2,:),x(3,:),'.'')
```

Compare this with the 3D plot of triplets from RANDU of Labwork 127. Which of these two PRNGs do you think is “more random” looking? and why?

Change the seed value to the recommended default by the authors and look at the point cloud (in red) relative to the previous point cloud (in blue). Rotate the plots to visualise from multiple angles. Are they still random looking?

```
>> rand('twister',1234)% same seed as before
>> x=rand(3,2000); % store PRNs in a 3X2000 matrix named x
>> rand('twister',5489)% the recommended default seed
>> y=rand(3,2000);% store PRNs seeded by 5489 in a 3X2000 matrix named y
>> plot3(x(1,:),x(2,:),x(3,:),'b.') % plot triplets as blue dots
>> hold on;
>> plot3(y(1,:),y(2,:),y(3,:),'r.') % plot triplets as red dots
```

Here  $S_n$  has the binomial law  $\text{Binomial}(n, \theta)$ . The form (7.6) of the CLT is also called the **De Moivre- Laplace theorem**; historically it was the first version of the CLT (De Moivre (1733) for  $\theta = 1/2$ , Laplace (1812) for  $0 < \theta < 1$ ). We see that the left side of (7.6) is just the standardized sum  $S_n$ , by calculating its first two moments:

$$\begin{aligned} E S_n &= \sum_{i=1}^n E X_i = n\theta, \\ V(S_n) &= \sum_{i=1}^n V(X_i) = n\theta(1-\theta). \end{aligned}$$

Recall that standardizing a RV  $Y$  means subtracting its expectation  $E Y$  and then dividing by the standard deviation  $SD(Y) = \sqrt{\text{Var}(Y)}$  so that the standardized expression

$$\frac{Y - E Y}{SD(Y)}$$

has mean 0 and variance 1. Hence the verbal summary of the CLT: “the standardized sum of IID RV’s is approximately standard normal”. Of course standardizing the sum  $S_n = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$  yields the same result as standardizing the sample mean  $\bar{X}_n$ :

$$\begin{aligned} E S_n &= n E \bar{X}_n \text{ and } V(S_n) = n^2 V(\bar{X}_n), \text{ hence} \\ \frac{S_n - E S_n}{SD(S_n)} &= \frac{\bar{X}_n - E \bar{X}_n}{SD(\bar{X}_n)} \end{aligned}$$

so it is also true that “the standardized (sample) mean of IID RV’s is ...”.

### A visualization of the De Moivre-Laplace central limit theorem

Let  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  be independent identically distributed random variables having the Bernoulli law  $\text{Binomial}(1, \theta)$  with probability of success  $\theta$ . Recall that  $S_n = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$  then has the binomial law  $\text{Binomial}(n, \theta)$  with probabilities

$$P(Y = k) = \frac{n!}{k! \cdot (n-k)!} \cdot \theta^k (1-\theta)^{n-k}.$$

To plot these probabilities we use the Gamma-function  $\Gamma(x)$  which is defined for all  $x > 0$ . and which has the property that for integers  $k$

$$\Gamma(k+1) = k!$$

Thus we are able to plot a continuous function for all  $x$  in a range, and we obtain a visualization of the factorial and derived expressions. We let  $x$  be the continuous variable taking the place of  $k = 0, 1, \dots, n$ .

Define a function

$$b_n(x) = \frac{\Gamma(n+1)}{\Gamma(x+1) \cdot \Gamma(n-x+1)} \cdot \theta^x \cdot (1-\theta)^{n-x}$$

Here  $b_n(x)$  represents the binomial law  $\text{Binomial}(n, \theta)$  in the following sense:

$$b_n(k) = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} \theta^k (1-\theta)^{n-k}, \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, n.$$

Then,  $F_{[-1]}(U)$  has the distribution function  $F$ , provided  $U$  is a Uniform(0, 1) RV. Recall  $\text{inf}(A)$  or infimum of a set  $A$  of real numbers is the greatest lower bound of every element of  $A$ .

$$F_{[-1]}(u) := \inf\{x : F(x) = u\}.$$

with density  $f$ , and let its inverse  $F_{[-1]} : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be:

**Proposition 58 (Inversion sampler)** Let  $F(x) := \int_x^\infty f(y) dy : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow [0, 1]$  be a continuous DF

### 4.3.1 Inversion Sampler for Continuous Random Variables

We may return to these careful treatments later on.  
Both these assumptions are, in fact, not true and require a more careful treatment of the subject.

2. real arithmetic can be performed exactly in a computer.

1. independent samples from the Uniform(0, 1) RV can be generated, and

Next, we simulate or generate samples from other RVs by making the following two assumptions:

The Uniform(0, 1) RV of Model 7 forms the foundation for random variable generation and simulation. This is appropriately called the fundamental model or experiment, since every other experiment can be obtained from this one.

That is, the number of successes in  $n$  independent Bernoulli trials (with the same probability of success).

### 4.3 Simulation of non-Uniform(0, 1) Random Variables

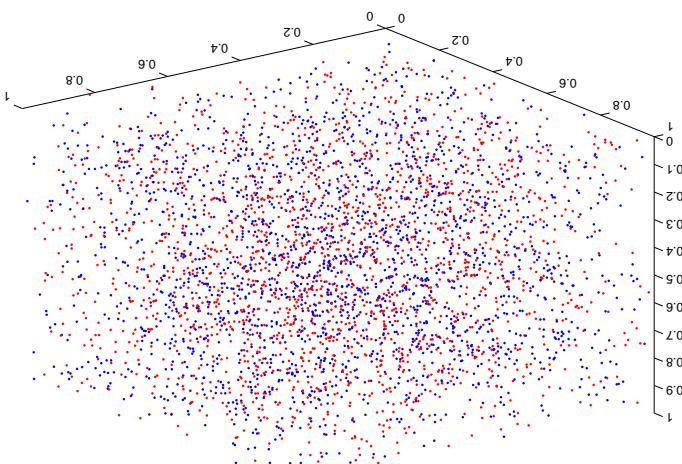


Figure 4.3: Triplet point clouds from the “Mersenne Twister” with two different seeds (see Lab-work 130). .

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{\sqrt{n\theta(1-\theta)}}{S_n - n\theta} \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1) \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty. \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{\theta(1-\theta)}}{\Theta_n - \theta} \sqrt{\Theta_n} \end{aligned} \quad (7.6)$$

$$\Theta_n = \underline{X}_n = n - \sum_{i=1}^n X_i = n - S_n,$$

of the binomial law. Indeed let  $S_n = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i$ ; we may write

the  $k$  positions among  $n$ -tuples of  $(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  of 0's and 1's having exactly  $k$ 's is  $\binom{n}{k}$ —choose

$$\begin{aligned} &= \theta^k (1-\theta)^{n-k} \binom{n}{k} \\ &= \theta^k (1-\theta)^{n-k} \cdot \#(x_1, \dots, x_n) \\ &= \theta^k (1-\theta)^{n-k} \sum_{x_1, \dots, x_n: \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = k} \#(x_1, \dots, x_n) \\ &= P\left(\sum_{i=1}^n X_i = k\right) \end{aligned}$$

where  $\sum_{i=1}^n x_i$  is the number of 1's among  $x_1, \dots, x_n$ , i.e. the number of successes. Thus

$$P(X_1 = x_1, \dots, X_n = x_n) = \theta(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i) (1-\theta)^{n-(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i)}$$

**Proof:** [Proof of (7.5)] Let  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  be an arbitrary collection of 0's and 1's. We have seen above

Bernoulli trials (with the same probability of success), i.e. of 1. Thus the binomial law is the distribution of the number of successes in  $n$  independent Bernoulli law has two parameters— $n$ , the number of trials, and  $\theta$ , the probability of “success”, i.e. of 1.

$$P(S_n = k) = \theta^k (1-\theta)^{n-k}, \quad k = 0, \dots, n. \quad (7.5)$$

Recall the definition of the binomial distribution: if  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  are IID Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) probability function of Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) is then the distribution of the sum  $S_n = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$  is the binomial distribution Binomial( $n, \theta$ ). The

### Normal approximation for the binomial distribution

for certain  $\mu, \sigma$  where  $\sigma > 0$ . Show that  $Y_n \rightarrow \mu$ .

$$Y_n - \mu \xrightarrow{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \text{Normal}(0, 1) \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty$$

that a sequence of RVs  $Y_n$  satisfies the LLN. More precisely, assume

In [D] the CLT is proved under the assumption that  $\text{Exp}(tX) < \infty$  for  $t \in (-t_0, t_0)$  and some  $t_0 > 0$ . For a Bernoulli  $X$  this is trivially fulfilled since  $X \leq 1$  and hence  $\text{Exp}(tX) \leq \text{Exp}(t)$ . Since Normal(0, 1) =  $\mathcal{L}(Z)$ , and for Bernoulli's this specializes to (7.3).

**Proof:** The “one-line proof” of the proposition is due to the following equalities:

$$P(F^{[-1]}(U) \leq x) = P(\inf\{y : F(y) = U\} \leq x) = P(U \leq F(x)) = F(x), \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

This yields the inversion sampler or the inverse (C)DF sampler, where we (i) generate  $u \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1)$  and (ii) return  $x = F^{[-1]}(u)$ , as formalised by the following algorithm.

---

**Algorithm 3** Inversion Sampler or Inverse (C)DF Sampler

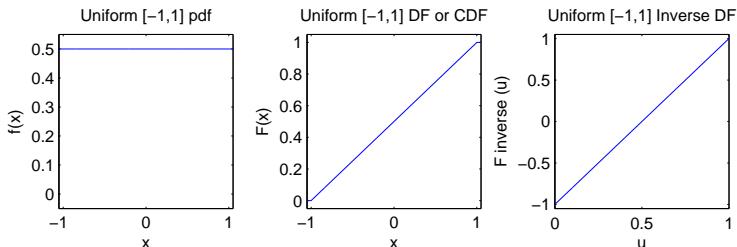
---

- 1: *input*: (1)  $F^{[-1]}(x)$ , inverse of the DF of the target RV  $X$ , (2) the fundamental sampler
  - 2: *initialise*: set the seed, if any, for the fundamental sampler
  - 3: *output*: a sample from  $X$  distributed according to  $F$
  - 4: *draw*  $u \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1)$
  - 5: *return*:  $x = F^{[-1]}(u)$
- 

This algorithm emphasises the fundamental sampler’s availability in an *input* step, and its set-up needs in an *initialise* step. In the following sections, we will not mention these universal steps; they will be taken for granted. The direct applicability of Algorithm 3 is limited to univariate densities for which the inverse of the cumulative distribution function is explicitly known. The next section will consider some examples.

Recall the  $\text{Uniform}(\theta_1, \theta_2)$  RV of Model 9 with the following PDF, DF and inverse DF. Let us simulate from it using the inversion sampler.

Figure 4.4: A plot of the PDF, DF or CDF and inverse DF of the  $\text{Uniform}(-1, 1)$  RV  $X$ .



**Simulation 131** ( $\text{Uniform}(\theta_1, \theta_2)$ ) To simulate from  $\text{Uniform}(\theta_1, \theta_2)$  RV  $X$  using the Inversion Sampler, we first need to find  $F^{[-1]}(u)$  by solving for  $x$  in terms of  $u = F(x; \theta_1, \theta_2)$ :

$$u = \frac{x - \theta_1}{\theta_2 - \theta_1} \iff x = (\theta_2 - \theta_1)u + \theta_1 \iff F^{[-1]}(u; \theta_1, \theta_2) = \theta_1 + (\theta_2 - \theta_1)u$$

Here is a simple implementation of the Inversion Sampler for the  $\text{Uniform}(\theta_1, \theta_2)$  RV in MATLAB :

```
>> rand('twister',786); % initialise the fundamental sampler for Uniform(0,1)
>> theta1=-1; theta2=1; % declare values for parameters theta1 and theta2
>> u=rand; % rand is the Fundamental Sampler and u is a sample from it
>> x=theta1+(theta2-theta1)*u; % sample from Uniform(-1,1) RV
>> disp(x); % display the sample from Uniform[-1,,1] RV
0.5134
```

**Normal approximation and the Central Limit Theorem (CLT)**

Let us state the Central Limit Theorem, following [D], p. 228.

**Proposition 102** Suppose  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  are IID RV’s and have  $E X_i = \mu$  and  $V(X_i) = \sigma^2$  with  $0 < \sigma^2 < \infty$ . Then as  $n \rightarrow \infty$

$$P\left(\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \leq x\right) \rightarrow P(Z \leq x) \text{ for all } x$$

where  $Z$  denotes a random variable with the standard normal distribution.

Specialized to IID Bernoulli RV’s  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  with law  $\text{Bernoulli}(\theta)$ , this says

$$\sqrt{n} \frac{(\hat{\theta}_n - \theta)}{\sqrt{\theta(1-\theta)}} \rightsquigarrow \text{Normal}(0, 1) \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty. \quad (7.3)$$

Here  $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$  is the *standard normal distribution* (or standard Gaussian distribution) and  $\rightsquigarrow$  denotes *convergence in distribution* (or in law) of a RV  $A$  random variable  $Z$  has the standard normal distribution if

$$P(Z \leq z) = \Phi(z) = \int_{-\infty}^z \varphi(t) dt$$

where  $\Phi$  is the *standard normal distribution function*, defined in terms of the *standard normal density*

$$\varphi(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp(-t^2/2).$$

Thus we have a number of symbols associated with the standard normal distribution:  $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$  is the distribution itself,  $Z$  is a common symbol for a RV having that law, i.e.  $\mathcal{L}(Z) = \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ ;  $\Phi$  is the distribution function  $\Phi(t) = P(Z \leq t)$  and  $\varphi$  is the density. The *general normal* (or Gaussian) distribution with mean  $\mu$  and variance  $\sigma^2$  is denoted by  $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ ; it is defined as

$$\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2) := \mathcal{L}(\mu + \sigma Z).$$

The convergence stated in the CLT is a special case of *convergence in distribution*.

**Definition 103** A sequence of RV’s  $Y_n$  converges in distribution (or in law) to a RV  $Y$ , written

$$Y_n \rightsquigarrow Y \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty$$

if

$$P(Y_n \leq z) \rightarrow P(Y \leq z) \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty \quad (7.4)$$

for every point of continuity  $z$  of the distribution function of  $Y$ .

Since for a standard normal  $Z$  the distribution function is  $\Phi$  which is continuous everywhere, in the case of the CLT we simply have (7.4) for every  $z$ , and the CLT as stated above indeed gives a convergence in distribution. Other ways of writing a convergence in law (in distribution) are

$$\mathcal{L}(Y_n) \rightsquigarrow \mathcal{L}(Y) \text{ or } Y_n \rightsquigarrow \mathcal{L}(Y)$$

which is justified since convergence in distribution is a statement about the laws (or distribution functions) of  $Y_n$  and  $Y$ . Thus in the case of the CLT we may write

$$\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \rightsquigarrow \text{Normal}(0, 1) \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty$$

Recall the Exponentiaital( $\lambda$ ) RV of Model 8. Let us simulate from it using the inversion sampler.

$[0, \infty) = \{x : x \geq 0, x \in \mathbb{R}\}$  to model the waiting time for a bus at a bus stop.

Let us consider the problem of simulating from an Exponentiaital( $\lambda$ ) RV with realizations in  $\mathbb{R}^+$ .

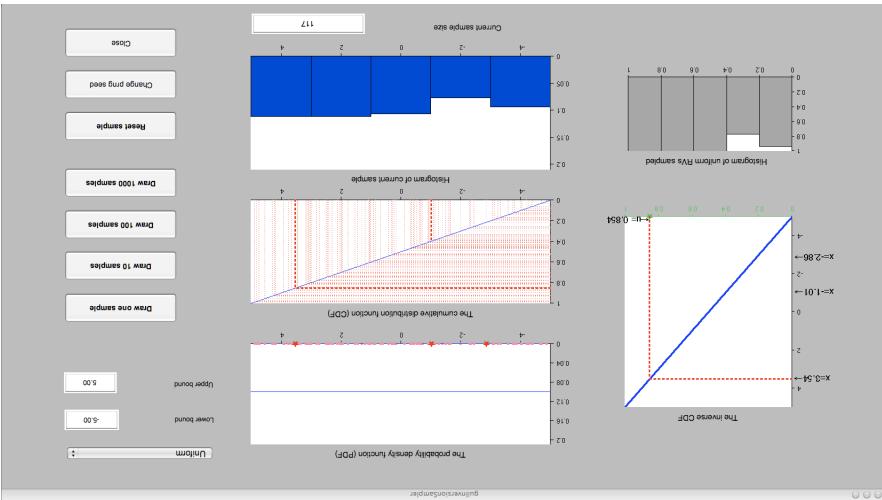


Figure 4.5: Visual Cognitive Tool GUI: Inversion Sampling from  $X \sim \text{Uniform}(-5, 5)$ .

The `ML-HI-GaussianSampler.m` will bring a graphical user interface (GUI) as shown in Figure 4.5. The default target distribution is  $\text{Uniform}(-5, 5)$ . Now repeatedly push the “Draw one sample” button several times and comprehend the simulation process. You can press “Draw 100 samples” to really comprehend the inversion sampler in action after 100 samples are drawn and depicted in the density histogram of the accumulated samples. Next try changing the numbers in the “Lower bound” and “Upper bound” boxes in order to alter the parameters  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  of  $\text{Uniform}(\theta_1, \theta_2)$  RV.

Labwork 132 [Inversion Sampler Demo – Uniform(-5,5)] Let us comprehend the inversion sampler by calling the interactive visual cognitive tool built by Jennifer Harlow under a grant from University of Canterbury’s Centre for Teaching and Learning (UCTL).

```
>>> gaussianSampler

```

It is just as easy to draw  $n$  IID samples from  $\text{Uniform}(\theta_1, \theta_2)$  RV  $X$  by transforming  $n$  IID samples from the  $\text{Uniform}(0, 1)$  RV as follows:

To understand what the assumption of a finite variance means, it is instructive to find an example of a RV having  $E|X| < \infty$  but with infinite variance.

Throughout we will use  $[D]$  for the reference: Durrett, R., *The Essentials of Probability*, Duxbury Press, 1994.

$$P(|Y - EY| \geq t) = P(|Y - EY|^2 \geq t^2) \leq \frac{E|Y - EY|^2}{t^2} = \frac{V(Y)}{t^2}.$$

Setting  $X = |Y - EY|^2$  we obtain

$$P(X \geq u) \leq \frac{n}{EY}.$$

Thus we obtain Markov's inequality

$$EY = E\mathbf{1}_{\{X < u\}} + E\mathbf{1}_{\{X \geq u\}} \geq E\mathbf{1}_{\{X \geq u\}} = u\mathbf{P}(X \geq u).$$

**Proof:** [Proof of Chebyshev's inequality (7.2)] Let  $X$  be a nonnegative RV ( $X \geq 0$ ) with finite expectation:  $EY < \infty$ . Let  $\mathbf{1}_A$  be the indicator function of an event  $A$ . Then for  $u > 0$

$$P(|X_n - \mu| \geq \epsilon) \leq \frac{n\epsilon^2}{V(X)} \longrightarrow 0.$$

This easily yields a proof of the weak LLN under an additional assumption  $V(X_i) = \sigma^2 < \infty$ : note that  $V(X_n) = \sigma^2/n$  so that

$$P(|Y - EY| \geq t) \leq \frac{\sigma^2}{V(Y)}. \quad (7.2)$$

$Y$  is an RV with finite variance  $\sigma^2$  then for any  $t > 0$  The general proof is not given in [D], but is argued under an additional assumption that the IID  $X_i$  have a finite variance. In this case the LLN follows from Chebyshev's inequality ([D], p. 222): if

$$P(|X_n - \mu| \geq \epsilon) \longrightarrow 0.$$

In other words: for every  $\epsilon < 0$

$$\underline{X}_n \longrightarrow \mu$$

**Proposition 101 (Weak Law of Large Numbers)** Suppose  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  are IID RV's and have  $E|X_i| < \infty$ . Let  $\mu = EY$ . Then as  $n \rightarrow \infty$

or Proof via CFs in Probability Theory I earlier. But we recall here from scratch for reinforcement learning of your learning.

The law of large numbers (LLN) holds under a general assumption that  $E|X_i| < \infty$ , see [D], p. 223.

Proof of Chebyshev's inequality ([D]) follows from Chebyshev's inequality ([D], p. 223).

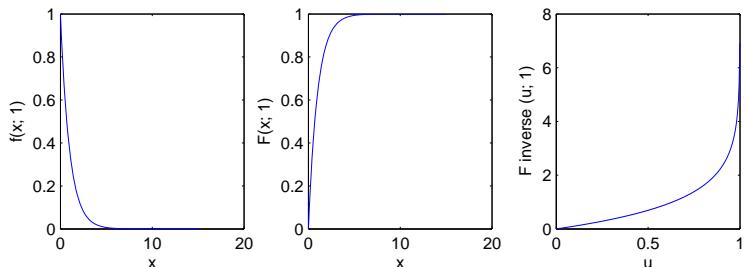
Chebyshev's inequality and the Law of Large Numbers (LLN)

The same correspondence exists on the population level:  $EY = \theta$  where  $\theta$  may be called the “sample proportion/population proportion” is widely used in statistics.

Population:  $X$  may be the outcome of a random experiment like a coin throw. Still the terminology population proportion. To repeat it,  $X$  may not actually be the result of selecting from some population.  $\theta$  may be the outcome of a random experiment like a coin throw. Still the terminology population proportion exists on the population level:  $EY = \theta$  where  $\theta$  may be called the

$$\underline{X}_n = \theta_n.$$

portion  $\theta_n$ . Thus for Bernoulli RV's  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  we have

Figure 4.6: The PDF  $f$ , DF  $F$ , and inverse DF  $F^{-1}$  of the Exponential( $\lambda = 1.0$ ) RV.

**Simulation 133** (Exponential( $\lambda$ )) For a given  $\lambda > 0$ , an Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RV has the following PDF  $f$ , DF  $F$  and inverse DF  $F^{-1}$ :

$$f(x; \lambda) = \lambda e^{-\lambda x} \quad F(x; \lambda) = 1 - e^{-\lambda x} \quad F^{-1}(u; \lambda) = -\frac{1}{\lambda} \log_e(1-u) \quad (4.1)$$

We write the natural logarithm  $\log_e$  as  $\log$  for notational simplicity. An implementation of the Inversion Sampler for Exponential( $\lambda$ ) as a function in the M-file:

```
function x = ExpInvCDF(u,lambda);
% Return the Inverse CDF of Exponential(lambda) RV X
% Call Syntax: x = ExpInvCDF(u,lambda);
%           or ExpInvCDF(u,lambda);
% Input    : lambda = rate parameter,
%           u = array of numbers in [0,1]
% Output   : x
x=-(1/lambda) * log(1-u);
```

We can simply call the function to draw a sample from, say the Exponential( $\lambda = 1.0$ ) RV by:

```
lambda=1.0; % some value for lambda
u=rand; % rand is the Fundamental Sampler
ExpInvCDF(u,lambda) % sample from Exponential(1) RV via function in ExpInvCDF.m
```

Because of the following (recall Example 65):

$$U \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1) \implies -U \sim \text{Uniform}(-1, 0) \implies 1 - U \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1),$$

we could save a subtraction operation in the above algorithm by replacing  $-(1/\lambda) * \log(1-u)$  by  $-(1/\lambda) * \log(u)$ . Recall that the transformation of  $U \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1)$  by  $X = -(1/\lambda) \log(U)$  is exactly how we defined  $X$  as the Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RV in Model 8. This is implemented as the following function.

```
function x = ExpInvSam(u,lambda);
% Return the Inverse CDF based Sample from Exponential(lambda) RV X
% Call Syntax: x = ExpInvSam(u,lambda);
%           or ExpInvSam(u,lambda);
% Input    : lambda = rate parameter,
%           u = array of numbers in [0,1] from Uniform[0,1] RV
% Output   : x
x=-(1/lambda) * log(u);
```

( $P(Y = \mu) = 1$ ). The law, or probability distribution, of  $Y$  is called the *degenerate law concentrated at  $\mu$*  or the Point Mass( $\mu$ ) RV; it has distribution function

$$G_\mu(x) = P(Y \leq x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x < \mu \\ 1, & x \geq \mu. \end{cases}$$

Show that as  $n \rightarrow \infty$

$$X_n \rightsquigarrow Y \text{ if and only if } X_n \xrightarrow{P} \mu,$$

i.e. convergence in distribution to the degenerate law means convergence in probability to  $\mu$ . For these convergence notions, see Definition (103) ( regarding  $\rightsquigarrow$  ), and the well known convergence in probability:  $X_n \xrightarrow{P} \mu$  if  $P(|X_n - \mu| \geq \varepsilon) \rightarrow 0$  for every  $\varepsilon > 0$ .

**Moments of the Bernoulli distribution.** Suppose that  $X$  has the Bernoulli law  $\text{Bernoulli}(\theta)$ . A notation we will frequently use is

$$\mathcal{L}(X) = \text{Bernoulli}(\theta).$$

Here " $\mathcal{L}(X)$ " means "the law of the RV  $X$ ", where the law is a short word for the distribution (derived from "probability law", an older term for "distribution"). Now it is easy to see, with the shorter notation for expectations without the  $(\cdot)$  for convenience, that

$$\begin{aligned} E(X) &= E X = 0 \cdot (1-\theta) + 1 \cdot \theta = \theta, \\ E(X^2) &= E X^2 = 0^2 \cdot (1-\theta) + 1^2 \cdot \theta = \theta \end{aligned}$$

and hence

$$V(X) = E X^2 - (E X)^2 = \theta - \theta^2 = \theta(1-\theta).$$

**The law of large numbers.** Specialized to our case of IID Bernoulli's it gives

$$\bar{X}_n = n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^n X_i \xrightarrow{\theta} E X = \theta$$

where  $\xrightarrow{\theta}$  (or equivalently  $\xrightarrow{P}$ ) denotes convergence in probability. Here  $\bar{X}_n$  is the arithmetic mean of  $X_1, \dots, X_n$ , also called the **sample mean**. Recall that convergence in probability  $\bar{X}_n \xrightarrow{P} \theta$  means: for every  $\varepsilon > 0$

$$P(|\bar{X}_n - \theta| > \varepsilon) \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

Here  $\theta = E X$  may be also be called "**population mean**". This derives from the fact that in many examples other than coin throw, a Bernoulli RV  $X$  is obtained from randomly selecting an individual from a large population. For instance, we might select a random individual from the U.S. population and observe whether it is a smoker or nonsmoker. Provided our selection is "truly random", we obtain a Bernoulli distribution  $\text{Bernoulli}(\theta)$  where  $\theta$  is the proportion of smokers in the population at large. By this reasoning, we often identify a random variable  $X$  with a "population" and its expectation and variance  $E X, V(X)$  with the population mean and variance. Thus there is a correspondence between sample mean  $\bar{X}_n$  and population mean  $E X$  etc. Of course there are many random variables occurring in practice which do not arise from "selecting from a population", for example a coin throw, hitting a target when shooting, getting rain on a hike etc.,

**Population proportion and sample proportion.** For Bernoulli RV's  $X_1, \dots, X_n$ , the sample mean  $\bar{X}_n$  may be identified with the *sample proportion of 1's*. Indeed

$$\bar{X}_n = n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^n X_i = \frac{\# \text{ of 1's in the sample } X_1, \dots, X_n}{n}$$

```

>>> randn('twister',1973), % initialize the fundamental sampler
>>> % score T realizations of 5 IID draws from exponential(1.0) RV in array a
>>> a = -1./lambda * log(rand(5,T)); disp(a);
0.727   0.3262  1.249   0.4786  0.3774  0.0394
1.2698  0.4401  1.6745  1.4571  0.1786  0.4738
0.727   0.3262  1.249   0.4786  0.3774  0.0394
1.2698  0.4401  1.6745  1.4571  0.1786  0.4738
3.3690

```

It is straightforward to do replicate experiments. Consider the experiment of drawing five independent samples from the Exponential( $\lambda = 1.0$ ) RV. Suppose we want to repeat or replicate this experiment seven times and find the sum of the five outcomes in each of these replicates. Then we may do the following:

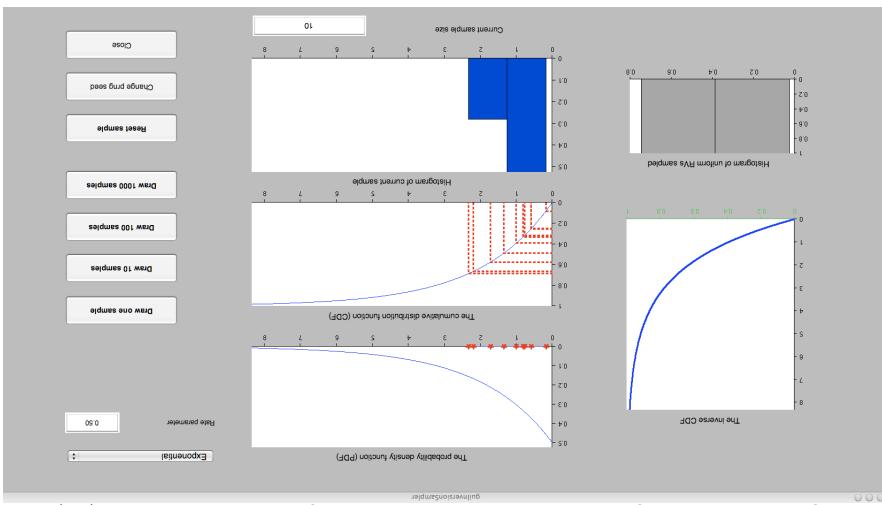


Figure 4.7: Visual Cognitive Toolkit GUI. Illustration Sampled from  $X \sim \text{Exponentita}(0.5)$ .

[<< zurück](#) [Universitätsansammlung](#)

**Exponentiation**:  $\text{expone}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$  (version sample Demo - Exponentiation(0,3)) let us understand the inversion

```

>>> rand((twister, 46678), % initialize the fundamental sampler
>>> lambda=1.0, % declare Lambda
>>> samples=5, % pass an array of 5 uniform(0,1) samples from rand
>>> disp(x); % display the Exponentia1(1.0) distributed samples
0.945 2.596 0.941 1.9015 1.3973

```

CHAPTER 4. SIMULATION

**Exercise 1.2** (Convergence in distribution and probability to point mass RV) Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  be a sequence of RVs and  $\mu$  be a real number. Let  $Y$  be a RV taking value  $\mu$  with probability one

Show that independence of  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  implies independence of any subset  $X_{i_1}, \dots, X_{i_k}$  where  $\{i_1, \dots, i_k\}$  is an arbitrary subset of size  $k$  of the indices  $\{1, \dots, n\}$ , and  $2 \leq k < n$ .

$$\cdot (^?x = ^?X) \mathbf{d} \coprod_{\substack{? \\ u}}^{! ?} = (^ux = {}^uX) \cdots (^1x = {}^1X) \mathbf{d}$$

**Exercise 7.1** (**Subsets of independent RVs**) Suppose that  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  is a set of RV's all having the same finite range of possible values:  $\mathbb{X} = \{S_1, \dots, S_m\}$ , i.e. we have  $X_i \in \mathbb{X}$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . Define independentence of  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  by the property: for all  $n$ -tuples  $(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{X}^n$  we have

$$({}^ix={}^u\overline{\lhd})-u(\theta-1)({}^ix={}^u\overline{\lhd})\theta=({}^ux={}^uX\cdots{}^1x={}^1X)\in$$

$$x \sum_{i=1}^n = y$$

where  $k$  is the number of 1's in the  $n$ -tuple  $x_1, \dots, x_n$ . Note that we may write

$$y_{-u}(\theta - 1)y\theta = (^ux = ^uX) \text{d} \prod_{i=1}^{I=u} = (^ux = ^uX \cdots ^1x = ^1X) c$$

Throwing a coin  $n$  times, our Bernoulli RV's  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  are not only independent but also identically distributed. This means that all  $X_i$ 's, considered "alone" (i.e. in their marginal distribution) have the same distribution  $\text{Bernoulli}(\theta)$ . Such an array of RV's is often called **independent and identically distributed**, abbreviated IID. The case of observed IID RV's  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  the IID assumption means: if  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  is any sequence of 0's and 1's then

$$\cdot (^?x = ^?X) \mathbf{d} \coprod^{! = ?} = (^ux = ^uX \cdot \dots \cdot !x = !X) \mathbf{d}$$

(all from  $\mathbb{X}$ ) we require the dependence of  $n$  on the variables  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  is denoted analogously, where for any set of values  $x_1, \dots, x_n$

$x_1 \equiv x_1, x_2 \equiv x_2$ ,  $P(Y_1 \equiv 1 | X_1 \equiv x_1, X_2 \equiv x_2)$

possible values:  $\mathbb{X} = \{\xi_1, \dots, \xi_m\}$ . Then independence means that they have a joint distribution, suppose also that both  $A_1, A_2$  have the same finite range of

Although Probability Theory I is a pre-requisite for Intermediate Theory I, we will review the concepts again as everyone may not have met the pre-requisites at the level needed for the sequel. In the process we will use slightly different notational conventions as these are more common in mathematics statistics.

### 7.5.2 Review of underlying probability concepts

```

0.4204 0.1219 2.2182 3.6692 0.9654 0.0093 1.7126
2.1427 0.1281 0.8500 1.4065 0.1160 0.1324 0.2635
0.6620 1.1729 0.6301 0.6375 0.3793 0.6525 0.8330
>> %sum up the outcomes of the sequence of 5 draws in each replicate
>> s=sum(a); disp(s);
5.2216 2.1856 6.6378 7.6490 2.0168 1.3073 7.9990

```

**Labwork 135 (Next seven buses at your bus-stop)** Consider the problem of modelling the arrival of buses at a bus stop. Suppose that the time between arrivals is an  $\text{Exponential}(\lambda = 0.1)$  RV  $X$  with a mean inter-arrival time of  $1/\lambda = 10$  minutes. Suppose you go to your bus stop and zero a stop-watch. Simulate the times of arrival for the next seven buses as indicated by your stop-watch. Seed the fundamental sampler by your Student ID (eg. if your ID is 11424620 then type `rand('twister', 11424620)`; just before the simulation). Hand in the code with the arrival times of the next seven buses at your ID-seeded bus stop.

The support of the  $\text{Exponential}(\lambda)$  RV is  $\mathbb{R}_+ := [0, \infty)$ . Let us consider a RV built by mirroring the  $\text{Exponential}(\lambda)$  RV about the origin with the entire real line as its support.

**Model 19 (Laplace( $\lambda$ ) or Double Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RV)** If a RV  $X$  is equally likely to be either positive or negative with an exponential density, then the Laplace( $\lambda$ ) or Double Exponential( $\lambda$ ) RV, with the rate parameter  $\lambda > 0, \lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ , may be used to model it. The density function for the Laplace( $\lambda$ ) RV given by  $f(x; \lambda)$  is

$$f(x; \lambda) = \frac{\lambda}{2} e^{-\lambda|x|} = \begin{cases} \frac{\lambda}{2} e^{\lambda x} & \text{if } x < 0 \\ \frac{\lambda}{2} e^{-\lambda x} & \text{if } x \geq 0 \end{cases}. \quad (4.2)$$

Let us define the sign of a real number  $x$  by

$$\text{sign}(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x > 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \\ -1 & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}.$$

Then, the DF of the Laplace( $\lambda$ ) RV  $X$  is

$$F(x; \lambda) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(y; \lambda) dy = \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \text{sign}(x) \left( 1 - e^{-\lambda|x|} \right) \right), \quad (4.3)$$

and its inverse DF is

$$F^{[-1]}(u; \lambda) = -\frac{1}{\lambda} \text{sign} \left( u - \frac{1}{2} \right) \log \left( 1 - 2 \left| u - \frac{1}{2} \right| \right), \quad u \in [0, 1] \quad (4.4)$$

**Mean and Variance of Laplace( $\lambda$ ) RV  $X$ :** Show that the mean of a Laplace( $\lambda$ ) RV  $X$  is

$$\mathbb{E}(X) = \int_0^\infty x f(x; \lambda) dx = \int_0^\infty x \frac{\lambda}{2} e^{-\lambda|x|} dx = 0,$$

and the variance is

$$\text{V}(X) = \left( \frac{1}{\lambda} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{1}{\lambda} \right)^2 = 2 \left( \frac{1}{\lambda} \right)^2.$$

Note that the mean is 0 due to the symmetry of the density about 0 and the variance is twice that of the  $\text{Exponential}(\lambda)$  RV.

## 7.5 Statistics for Bernoulli Trials (Inference for Proportions)

### 7.5.1 Testing biasedness of a coin

Suppose we have a coin where  $\theta$  is the probability of coming up with Heads and  $1 - \theta$  is the probability of coming up with Tails. Here  $\theta$  is a number between 0 and 1. The coin is fair (unbiased) if  $\theta = 1/2$ ; otherwise it is a biased coin. Throwing a coin constitutes a **Bernoulli trial** if we identify Heads with the number 1 and Tails with 0. The random variable  $X$  symbolizing the outcome of this experiment is a **Bernoulli random variable**. Thus we have

$$\mathbb{P}(X = 0) = 1 - \theta, \quad \mathbb{P}(X = 1) = \theta, \quad 0 < \theta < 1.$$

Generally we abbreviate “random variable” by RV.

Recall that the distribution of a discrete RV is the entirety of its possible values  $x_1, x_2, \dots$  along with the associated probabilities  $\theta_i = \mathbb{P}(X = x_i)$ . The **Bernoulli distribution**  $\text{Bernoulli}(\theta)$  is by definition the distribution of  $X$ , i.e. the possible values are 0 and 1 and the associated probabilities are  $1 - \theta$  and  $\theta$ .

How can we test whether a given coin is biased or not? Obviously we should throw the coin repeatedly and compare the number of Heads with the number of Tails. If we throw the coin  $n$  times, this provides us with  $n$  independent Bernoulli trials, symbolized by independent Bernoulli random variables  $X_1, \dots, X_n$ .

**First example of a hypothesis test.** To phrase the biasedness question in statistical terms, introduce two hypotheses:

$$\begin{aligned} H_0 &: \theta = 1/2 \text{ null hypothesis} \\ H_1 &: \theta \neq 1/2 \text{ alternative hypothesis} \end{aligned}$$

To test if the null hypothesis is true, we throw the coin  $n$  times and let  $X_i = 1$  if Heads comes up on the  $i$ th trial and 0 otherwise, so that  $\bar{X}_n$  is the fraction of times Heads comes up in the first  $n$  trials. The test is specified by giving a critical region  $\mathcal{C}_n$  so that we reject  $H_0$  (that is, decide  $H_0$  is incorrect) when  $\bar{X}_n \in \mathcal{C}_n$ . One possible choice in this case is

$$\mathcal{C}_n = \left\{ x : \left| x - \frac{1}{2} \right| > 1/\sqrt{n} \right\}.$$

This choice is motivated by the fact that if  $H_0$  is true then using the central limit theorem ( $Z$  is a standard normal variable), with  $\theta = 1/2$

$$\mathbb{P}(\bar{X}_n \in \mathcal{C}_n) = \mathbb{P}\left(\left| \frac{\bar{X}_n - \theta}{\sqrt{\theta(1-\theta)/n}} \right| \geq 2\right) \approx \mathbb{P}(|Z| \geq 2) = 0.05. \quad (7.1)$$

and  $2\sqrt{\frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2}} = 1$ . Rejecting  $H_0$  when it is true is called a **type I error**. In this test we have set the type I error to be 5%.

```

x=(1/lambda)*sign(u-0.5) * log(1-2*abs(u-0.5));
%
% Output : an 1D array x of IID samples from Laplace(lambda) RV
% u = an 1D array x of IID samples from Uniform(0,1) RV
%
% Input : lambda = rate parameter > 0,
%
% or LaplaceInvCDF(u,lambda);
%
% Call Syntax: x = LaplaceInvCDF(u,lambda);
%
function x = LaplaceInvCDF(u,lambda);

```

**Simulation 137 (Laplace(λ))** Here is an implementation of an inversion sampler to draw IID samples from a Laplace(λ) RV  $X$  by transforming IID samples from the Uniform(0,1) RV  $U$ :

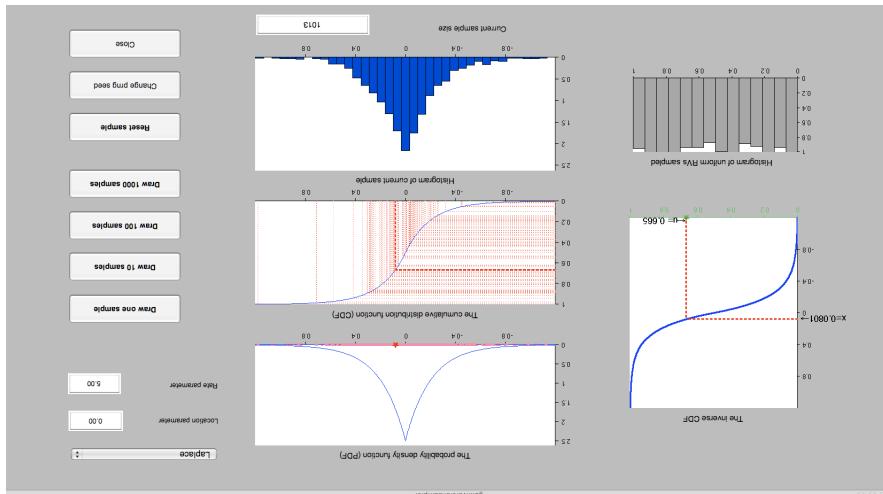


Figure 4.8: Visual Cognitive Tool GUI: Inversion Sampling from  $X \sim \text{Laplace}(5)$ .

in (4.2) with an additional location parameter  $\mu$ . Although our formulation of Laplace( $\lambda$ ) implicitly had a location parameter of 0.00, we can easily introduce a location parameter  $\mu$  into the PDF. With a pencil and paper try to rewrite the PDF to alter the number in the “Location parameter” box from 0.00 to some thing else, say 10.00. Next try changing the numbers in the “Rate parameter” box from 5.00 to 1.00 in order to alter the parameter  $\lambda$  of Laplace( $\lambda$ ) RV. If you are more adventurous of the generated samples. You can also press “Draw 1000 samples” and see the density histogram of the simulation process. Let us also press “Draw one sample” button several times and comprehend Laplace(5). Now repeatedly push the “Draw one sample” button several times and compare and try to change from the default target distribution Uniform(-5,5) to

The ML-file `guitlerversionsampler.m` will bring a graphical user interface (GUI) as shown in Figure 4.8. Using the drop-down menu “File → Inversion Sampler” as shown in Figure 4.8, write the following code in MATLAB:

```

>> guilterversionsampler

```

**Labwork 136 (Rejection Sampler Demo – Laplace(5))** Let us comprehend the rejection sam-

pling process for typical estimation, hypothesis testing and prediction problems with associated action spaces for maximum Likelihood, Empirical Risk Minimisation where risk is expectation of specific loss functions, etc.) and algorithms (including optimisation (Stochastic) Newton/gradient-descent, principles (Maximum Likelihood, Empirical Risk Minimisation) with association of specific action spaces for typical estimation, hypothesis testing and prediction problems with associated

etc.). Write down the Table from lectures 1 & 2 giving examples of decision problems, procedures and loss functions, etc.), and algorithms (including optimisation (Stochastic) Newton/gradient-descent,

We can simply call the function to draw a sample from, say the Laplace( $\lambda = 1.0$ ) RV by

```
>> lambda=1.0; % some value for lambda
>> rand('twister',6567); % initialize the fundamental sampler
>> u=rand(1,5); % draw 5 IID samples from Uniform(0,1) RV
>> disp(u); % display the samples in u
0.6487 0.9003 0.3481 0.6524 0.8152

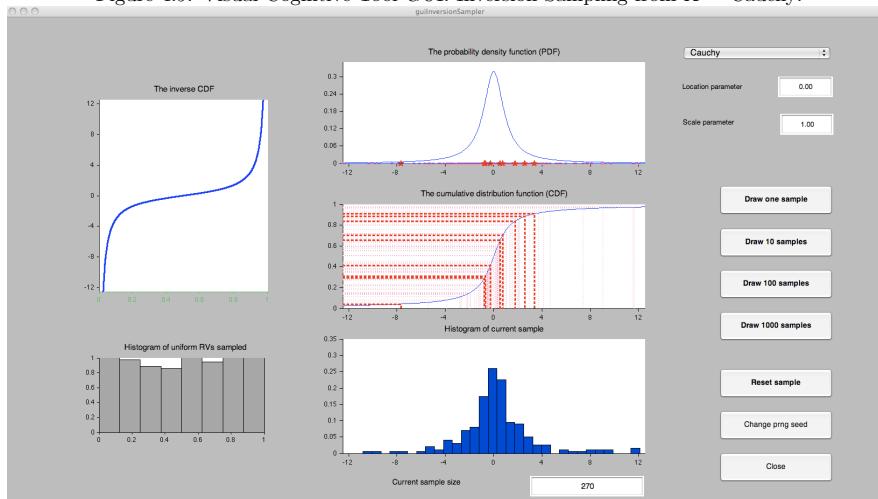
>> x=LaplaceInvCDF(u,lambda); % draw 5 samples from Laplace(1) RV using inverse CDF
>> disp(x); % display the samples
0.3530 1.6127 -0.3621 0.3637 0.9953
```

**Labwork 138 (Inversion Sampler Demo – Cauchy)** Let us comprehend the inversion sampler by calling the interactive visual cognitive tool:

```
>> guiInversionSampler
```

The M-file `guiInversionSampler.m` will bring a graphical user interface (GUI) as shown in Figure 4.9. Using the drop-down menu change from the default target distribution Uniform( $-5, 5$ ) to Cauchy RV of Model 13. Now repeatedly push the “Draw one sample” button several times and comprehend the simulation process. You can also press “Draw 10 samples” several times and see the density histogram of the generated samples. Next try changing the numbers in the “Scale parameter” and “Location Parameter” boxes from the default values of 1.00 and 0.00, respectively. Although our formulation of Cauchy RV is also called *Standard Cauchy* as it implicitly had a location parameter of 0.00 and scale parameter of 1. With a pencil and paper (in conjunction with a wikipedia search if you have to) try to rewrite the PDF in (3.53) with an additional location parameter  $\mu$  and scale parameter  $\sigma$ .

Figure 4.9: Visual Cognitive Tool GUI: Inversion Sampling from  $X \sim \text{Cauchy}$ .



**Experiment 27 (All DFs)** The ‘pick a number from the Real line in an arbitrary way’ experiment is the following family of distribution functions (DFs) :

$$\mathbb{P} = \{ F(x; F) : F \text{ is a DF} \} = \Theta$$

where, the DF  $F(x; F)$  is indexed or parameterized by itself. Thus, the parameter space

$$\Theta = \mathbb{P} = \{\text{all DFs}\}$$

is the infinite dimensional space of **All DFs** ”.

Next we consider a **nonparametric** experiment involving continuous RVs.

**Experiment 28 (Sobolev Densities)** The ‘pick a number from the Real line in some reasonable way’ experiment is the following family of densities (pdfs) :

$$\mathbb{P} = \left\{ f(x; f) : \int (f''(x))^2 < \infty \right\} = \Theta$$

where, the density  $f(x; f)$  is indexed by itself. Thus, the parameter space  $\Theta = \mathbb{P}$  is the infinite dimensional **Sobolev space** of “not too wiggly functions”.

### 7.3 Typical Decision Problems with Experiments

Some of the concrete problems involving experiments include:

- **Simulation:** Often it is necessary to simulate a RV with some specific distribution to gain insight into its features or simulate whole systems such as the air-traffic queues at ‘London Heathrow’ to make better management decisions.
- **Estimation:**
  1. **Parametric Estimation:** Using samples from some unknown DF  $F$  parameterized by some unknown  $\theta$ , we can estimate  $\theta$  from a statistic  $T_n$  called the estimator of  $\theta$  using one of several methods (maximum likelihood, moment estimation, or parametric bootstrap).
  2. **Nonparametric Estimation of the DF:** Based on  $n$  IID observations from an unknown DF  $F$ , we can estimate it under the general assumption that  $F \in \{\text{all DFs}\}$ .
  3. **Confidence Sets:** We can obtain a  $1 - \alpha$  confidence set for the point estimates, of the unknown parameter  $\theta \in \Theta$  or the unknown DF  $F \in \{\text{all DFs}\}$
- **Hypothesis Testing:** Based on observations from some DF  $F$  that is hypothesized to belong to a subset  $\Theta_0$  of  $\Theta$  called the space of null hypotheses, we will learn to test (attempt to reject) the falsifiable null hypothesis that  $F \in \Theta_0 \subset \Theta$ .
- ...

Recall the Point Mass( $\theta$ ) RV. Formally, we can simulate from it trivially as follows.

```

    >>> theta=0.5; Reps=100000; n=1000; hist(sum(floor(rand(n,Reps)+theta))/n,30)
    >>> theta=0.5; Reps=100000; n=100; hist(sum(floor(rand(n,Reps)+theta))/n,20)
    >>> theta=0.5; Reps=100000; n=10; hist(sum(floor(rand(n,Reps)+theta))/n,10)
    >>> theta=0.5; Reps=100000; n=1; hist(sum(floor(rand(1,Reps)+theta))/n,1)

```

Again, it is straightforward to do replicate experiments, e.g. to demonstrate the Central Limit Theorem for a sequence of  $n$  IID Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) trials.

```

<<< theta= 0.3; % set theta to 0.3
x = floor(rnd(1,10)+theta); % generate random integer less than or equal to y
y = floor(x - fLOOR(y)) is the largest integer less than or equal to y
z = rand(1,10); % z is the sample size
n = zeros(1,z); % n is the outcome of the simulation
for i=1:z
    n(i) = sum(ceil(theta+rand(1,10))-1);
end
n % display the outcomes of the simulation

```

**Simulation 140** (Bernoulli( $\theta$ )) Consider the problem of simulating from a Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV based on an input from a Uniform(0, 1) RV. Recall that  $[x]$  (called the floor of  $x$ ) is the largest integer that is smaller than or equal to  $x$ , e.g.  $[3.8] = 3$ . Using the floor function, we can simulate a Bernoulli( $\theta$ ) RV  $X$  as follows:

$$(x \succ X)D =: (x)F = ((x)F \succ \Omega)D = (x \succ (\Omega)_{[I-]}F)D$$

**Proof:** The proof is a consequence of the following qualities:

If  $U \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1)$ , then  $F_{[-1]}(U)$  has the DF  $F$ , i.e.,  $F_{[-1]}(U) \sim F \sim X$ .  
 $F_{[-1]}(n) := \inf\{x \in [a, b] : F(x) \geq n, 0 \leq n \leq 1\}$ .

be over some real interval  $[a, b]$  and let its inverse  $D_F$  be defined as follows:

**Proposition 59** (Inversion sampler with compact support) Let the support of the RV  $X$

or discrete DF using the inversion sampler. We need to define the inverse more carefully here.

#### 4.3.2 Inverstion Sampler for Discrete Random Variables

```

>>> disp(1*(1,6));
% initialize the fundamental sample
>>> rand(1,6);
% initialize the samples from uniform(0,1) RV
>>> disp(1*(1,6));
% draw 5 IID samples from uniform(0,1)
>>> disp(x);
% draw 5 samples from Standard cauchy RV using inverse CDF
>>> disp(x);
% draw 5 samples from Standard cauchy RV using inverse CDF
>>> disp(x);
% draw 5 samples from uniform(0,1)
>>> disp(1*(1,6));
% initialize the samples in u
>>> disp(1*(1,6));
% draw 5 samples in u
>>> disp(x);
% draw 5 samples in x
>>> disp(x);
% draw 5 samples in x
>>> disp(x);
% draw 5 samples in x

```

**Simulation 139** (Cauchy) We can draw  $n$  IID samples from the Cauchy RV  $X$  by transforming  $U$  using the inverse DF as follows:

CHAPTER 4. SIMULATION

Figure 7.1: Geometry of the  $\Theta$ 's for de Moivre's Experiments with  $k \in \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$

An experiment with infinite dimensional parameter space  $\Theta$  is said to be **nonparametric**; next we consider the nonparametric case.

The  $k - 1$ -dimensional parameter space  $\Theta$  is the  $k$ -Simplex  $\Delta^k$ . This as an exhaustive, experimenter thought of as “the outcome of rolling a convex polyhedral die with  $k$  faces and an arbitrary center since all possible densities over the finite set  $[k] = \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$  are being considered that can be of mass specified by the  $\theta_i$ ’s.”

$$f(x; \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k) = \theta^x, \quad x \in \{1, 2, \dots, k\}.$$

where,  $f(x; \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k)$  is any PMF such that

$$\{f(x; \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k) : (\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k) \in \Delta^k\} =$$

**Experiment 26** (de Molitive[k]) The following family of densities (PMFs) is experiment in the following family of densities (PMFs) :

Note that we can use the PDF's or the DF's to specify the family  $\mathbb{P}$  of an experiment. When an experiment can be parameterized by finitely many parameters it is said to a **parametric** experiment. A parametric family  $\mathbb{P}$  of experiments is defined as follows. Let  $\mathcal{X}$  be a parameter space, being a point, is zero-dimensional. The next example is also parametric and involves  $(k - 1)$ -dimensional families of discrete RVs.

where,  $F(x; a)$  is given in (3.47). The one dimensional parameter space or index set for this experiment is  $\Theta = \mathbb{R}$ , the entire real line.

$$\{ \mathbb{R} \ni v : (v : x) \in F \} = \emptyset$$

**Experiment 25 (Point Mass)** The deterministic choose a specific real number experiment

where,  $f(x|\theta)$  is given in (3.13). The one dimensional parameter space or index set for this exper-

$$\{ [1, 0] \ni \theta : (\theta \cdot x) f \} =$$

**Experiment 24 (Bernoulli)** The tosses 1 times, experiment is the following family of densities

**Simulation 141** (Point Mass( $\theta$ )) Let us simulate a sample from the Point Mass( $\theta$ ) RV  $X$ . Since this RV produces the same realisation  $\theta$  we can implement it via the following M-file:

```
function x = Sim1PointMass(u,theta)
% Returns one sample from the Point Mass(theta) RV X
% Call Syntax: x = Sim1PointMass(u,theta);
% Input      : u = one uniform random number eg. rand()
%                  theta = a real number (scalar)
% Output     : x = sample from X
x=theta;
```

Here is call to the function.

```
>> Sim1PointMass(rand(),2)
ans =
2
>> % we can use arrayfun to apply Sim1PointMass to any array of Uniform(0,1) samples
>> arrayfun(@(u)(Sim1PointMass(u,17)),rand(2,10))
ans =
17    17    17    17    17    17    17    17    17    17
17    17    17    17    17    17    17    17    17    17
```

Note that it is not necessary to have input IID samples from Uniform(0, 1) RV via `rand` in order to draw samples from the Point Mass( $\theta$ ) RV. For instance, an input matrix of zeros can do the job:

```
>> arrayfun(@(u)(Sim1PointMass(u,17)),zeros(2,8))
ans =
17    17    17    17    17    17    17    17
17    17    17    17    17    17    17    17
```

Next we simulate from de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV  $X$  of Model 14 via its inverse DF

$$F^{[-1]} : [0, 1] \rightarrow [k] := \{1, 2, \dots, k\},$$

given by:

$$F^{[-1]}(u; \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 0 \leq u < \theta_1 \\ 2 & \text{if } \theta_1 \leq u < \theta_1 + \theta_2 \\ 3 & \text{if } \theta_1 + \theta_2 \leq u < \theta_1 + \theta_2 + \theta_3 \\ \vdots & \\ k & \text{if } \theta_1 + \theta_2 + \dots + \theta_{k-1} \leq u < 1 \end{cases} \quad (4.5)$$

When  $k = 2$  in the de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2$ ) model, we have an RV that is similar to the Bernoulli( $p = \theta_1$ ) RV. The DF  $F$  and its inverse  $F^{[-1]}$  for a specific  $\theta_1 = 0.3$  are depicted in Figure 4.10.

First we simulate from an equi-probable special case of the de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV, with  $\theta_1 = \theta_2 = \dots = \theta_k = 1/k$ .

**Simulation 142** (de Moivre( $1/k, 1/k, \dots, 1/k$ )) The equi-probable *de Moivre*( $1/k, 1/k, \dots, 1/k$ ) RV  $X$  with a discrete uniform distribution over  $[k] = \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$  can be efficiently sampled using the ceiling function. Recall that  $\lceil y \rceil$  is the smallest integer larger than or equal to  $y$ , eg.  $\lceil 13.1 \rceil = 14$ . Algorithm 4 produces samples from the *de Moivre*( $1/k, 1/k, \dots, 1/k$ ) RV  $X$ .

The M-file implementing Algorithm 4 is:

## Chapter 7

# Inference for Statistical Experiments

## 7.1 Introduction

We formalize the notion of a statistical experiment. Let us first motivate the need for a statistical experiment. Recall that statistical inference or learning is the process of using observations or data to infer the distribution that generated it. A generic question is:

Given realizations from  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \sim$  some unknown DF  $F$ , how do we infer  $F$ ?

However, to make this question tractable or even sensible it is best to restrict ourselves to a particular class or family of DFs that may be assumed to contain the unknown DF  $F$ .

**Definition 100 (Experiment)** A statistical experiment  $\mathcal{E}$  is a set of probability distributions (DFs, PDFs or PMFs)  $\mathbb{P} := \{P_\theta : \theta \in \Theta\}$  associated with a RV  $X$  and indexed by the set  $\Theta$ . We refer to  $\Theta$  as the parameter space or the index set and  $d : \Theta \rightarrow \mathbb{P}$  that associates to each  $\theta \in \Theta$  a probability  $P_\theta \in \mathbb{P}$  as the index map:

$$\Theta \ni \theta \mapsto P_\theta \in \mathbb{P}.$$

## 7.2 Some Common Experiments

Next, let's formally consider some experiments we have already encountered.

**Experiment 23 (The Fundamental Experiment)** The ‘uniformly pick a number in the interval  $[0, 1]$ ’ experiment is the following singleton family of DFs :

$$\mathbb{P} = \{F(x) = x\mathbb{1}_{[0,1]}(x)\}$$

where, the only distribution  $F(x)$  in the family  $\mathbb{P}$  is a re-expression of (3.26) using the indicator function  $\mathbb{1}_{[0,1]}(x)$ . The parameter space of the fundamental experiment is a singleton whose DF is its own inverse, ie.  $F(x) = F^{[-1]}(x)$ . Recall from Exercise 2.1 that this is equivalent to infinitely many independent and identical Bernoulli(1/2) trials, i.e., independently tossing a fair coin infinitely many times.

Table 6.4: Symbol Table: Probability and Statistics

```

>>> k=7; % number of faces of the fair die
>>> n=5; % number of trials
>>> u=rand(1,n); % draw n samples from uniform(0,1)
>>> x=and(u>.7857); % initializes the fundamental sampler
>>> urand(1,n); % draw n samples from uniform(0,1)
>>> x=and(u>.7857); % draws n samples from uniform(0,1)
>>> % inverse transform uniform(0,1) to samples
>>> u=invser(u); % inverse transform uniform(0,1) to samples
>>> % from uniform(0,1) to samples from uniform(1/7,1/7,1/7,1/7,1/7,1/7,1/7)
>>> outcomes=modemerge(u); % save the outcomes in an array
>>> disp(outcomes);

```

Let us use the function `SimdemotivereEqui` to draw five samples from a fair seven-faced cylindrical die.

```

function x = SimdMdlrtvrgEqn(u,k);
%return samples from Metropolis(1/k,1/k,...,1/k) RV X
%call Symtra: x = SimdMdlrtvrgEqn(u,k);
%Input : u = array of uniform random numbers e.g. rand
%Output : x = samples from X
%k = number of quasi-probability outcomes of X
%x = number of quasi-probability outcomes of X
%y = floor(k * ( )); if outcomees are in {0,1,...,k-1}
x = ceil(k * ( )); %ceil(y) is the smallest integer larger than y

```

---

- 3. `return`:  $x \rightarrow [ku]$
- 2. `output`: a sample from  $X$
- 2.  $u \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1)$

---

**Algorithm 4** Inversion Sampeler for de Moivre( $1/k, 1/k, \dots, 1/k$ ) RV  $X$

*Input:*  $1, k$  in de Moivre( $1/k, 1/k, \dots, 1/k$ ) RV  $X$

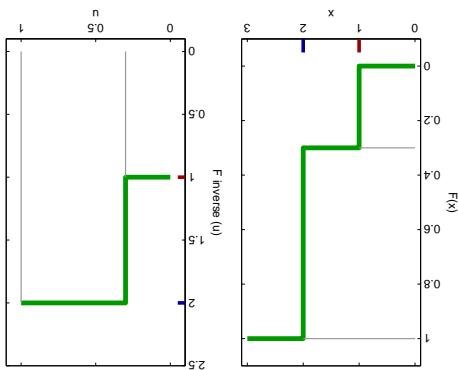


Figure 4.10: The DF  $F(x; 0.3, 0.7)$  of the de Molivré(0.3, 0.7) RV and its inverse  $F_{[-1]}(u; 0.3, 0.7)$ .

**Simulation 143** (de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ )) We can generate samples from a de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV  $X$  when  $(\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k)$  are specifiable as an input vector via the following algorithm.

---

**Algorithm 5** Inversion Sampler for de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV  $X$ 


---

```

1: input:
    1. parameter vector  $(\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k)$  of de Moivre( $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV  $X$ .
    2.  $u \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1)$ 

2: output: a sample from  $X$ 
3: initialise:  $F \leftarrow \theta_1$ ,  $i \leftarrow 1$ 
4: while  $u > F$  do
    5:    $i \leftarrow i + 1$ 
    6:    $F \leftarrow F + \theta_i$ 
7: end while
8: return:  $x \leftarrow i$ 
```

---

The M-file implementing Algorithm 5 is:

```
function x = SimdeMoivreOnce(u,thetas)
% Returns a sample from the de Moivre(thetas=(theta_1,...,theta_k)) RV X
% Call Syntax: x = SimdeMoivreOnce(u,thetas);
%               deMoivreEqui(u,thetas);
% Input      : u = a uniform random number eg. rand
%               thetas = an array of probabilities thetas=[theta_1 ... theta_k]
% Output     : x = sample from X
x=1; % initial index is 1
cum_theta=thetas(x);
while u > cum_theta;
    x=x+1;
    cum_theta = cum_theta + thetas(x);
end
```

---

Let us use the function `deMoivreEqui` to draw five samples from a fair seven-faced dice.

```
>> k=7; % number of faces of the fair dice
>> n=5; % number of trials
>> rand('twister',78657); % initialise the fundamental sampler
>> Us=rand(1,n); % draw n samples from Uniform(0,1)
>> disp(Us);
    0.8330    0.6819    0.6468    0.6674    0.2577
>> % inverse transform samples from Uniform(0,1) to samples
>> % from de Moivre(1/7,1/7,1/7,1/7,1/7,1/7,1/7)
>> f=[1/7 1/7 1/7 1/7 1/7 1/7 1/7];
>> disp(f);
    0.1429    0.1429    0.1429    0.1429    0.1429    0.1429
>> % use funarray to apply function-handled SimdeMoivreOnce to
>> % each element of array Us and save it in array outcomes2
>> outcomes2=arrayfun(@(u)(SimdeMoivreOnce(u,f)),Us);
>> disp(outcomes2);
    6    5    5    5    2
>> disp(SimdeMoivreEqui(u,k)); % same result using the previous algorithm
    6    5    5    5    2
```

---

Clearly, Algorithm 5 may be used to sample from any de Moivre( $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_k$ ) RV  $X$ . We demonstrate this by producing five samples from a randomly generated PMF `f2`.

| Model                           | PDF or PMF   | Mean                          | Variance                           |
|---------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Bernoulli( $\theta$ )           | $\theta^x(1-\theta)^{1-x}\mathbf{1}_{\{0,1\}}(x)$                          | $\theta$                      | $\theta(1-\theta)$                 |
| Binomial( $n, \theta$ )         | $\binom{n}{\theta}\theta^x(1-\theta)^{n-x}\mathbf{1}_{\{0,1,\dots,n\}}(x)$ | $n\theta$                     | $n\theta(1-\theta)$                |
| Geometric( $\theta$ )           | $\theta(1-\theta)^{x-1}\mathbf{1}_{\mathbb{Z}_+}(x)$                       | $\frac{1}{\theta} - 1$        | $\frac{1-\theta}{\theta^2}$        |
| Poisson( $\lambda$ )            | $\frac{\lambda^x e^{-\lambda}}{x!}\mathbf{1}_{\mathbb{Z}_+}(x)$            | $\lambda$                     | $\lambda$                          |
| Uniform( $\theta_1, \theta_2$ ) | $\mathbf{1}_{[\theta_1,\theta_2]}(x)/( \theta_2 - \theta_1)$               | $\frac{\theta_1+\theta_2}{2}$ | $\frac{(\theta_2-\theta_1)^2}{12}$ |
| Exponential( $\lambda$ )        | $\lambda e^{-\lambda x}$   | $\lambda^{-1}$                | $\lambda^{-2}$                     |
| Normal( $\mu, \sigma^2$ )       | $\frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}}e^{-(x-\mu)^2/(2\sigma^2)}$                    | $\mu$                         | $\sigma^2$                         |

Table 6.2: Random Variables with PDF and PMF (using indicator function), Mean and Variance

| Symbol   | Meaning   |
|--|---|
| $A = \{\star, \circ, \bullet\}$                                    | $A$ is a set containing the elements $\star, \circ$ and $\bullet$   |
| $\circ \in A$  | $\circ$ belongs to $A$ or $\circ$ is an element of $A$  |
| $A \ni \circ$  | $\circ$ belongs to $A$ or $\circ$ is an element of $A$  |
| $\circ \notin A$   | $\circ$ does not belong to $A$  |
| $\#A$  | Size of the set $A$ , for e.g. $\#\{\star, \circ, \bullet, \circ\} = 4$                                   |
| $\mathbb{N}$   | The set of natural numbers $\{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$   |
| $\mathbb{Z}$   | The set of integers $\{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$  |
| $\mathbb{Z}_+$   | The set of non-negative integers $\{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$  |
| $\emptyset$  | Empty set or the collection of nothing or {}  |
| $A \subset B$  | $A$ is a subset of $B$ or $A$ is contained by $B$ , e.g. $A = \{\circ\}, B = \{\bullet\}$                 |
| $A \supset B$  | $A$ is a superset of $B$ or $A$ contains $B$ e.g. $A = \{\circ, \star, \bullet\}, B = \{\circ, \bullet\}$ |
| $A = B$  | $A$ equals $B$ , i.e. $A \subset B$ and $B \subset A$   |
| $Q \implies R$   | Statement $Q$ implies statement $R$ or If $Q$ then $R$  |
| $Q \iff R$   | $Q \implies R$ and $R \implies Q$   |
| $\{x : x \text{ satisfies property } R\}$                          | The set of all $x$ such that $x$ satisfies property $R$   |
| $A \cup B$   | $A$ union $B$ , i.e. $\{x : x \in A \text{ or } x \in B\}$  |
| $A \cap B$   | $A$ intersection $B$ , i.e. $\{x : x \in A \text{ and } x \in B\}$  |
| $A \setminus B$  | $A$ minus $B$ , i.e. $\{x : x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B\}$  |
| $A := B$   | $A$ is equal to $B$ by definition   |
| $A :=: B$  | $B$ is equal to $A$ by definition   |
| $A^c$  | $A$ complement, i.e. $\{x : x \in U, \text{ the universal set, but } x \notin A\}$                        |
| $A_1 \times A_2 \times \dots \times A_m$                           | The $m$ -product set $\{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m) : a_1 \in A_1, a_2 \in A_2, \dots, a_m \in A_m\}$          |
| $A^m$  | The $m$ -product set $\{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m) : a_1 \in A, a_2 \in A, \dots, a_m \in A\}$                |
| $f : x \mapsto y$  | A function $f$ from domain $\mathbb{X}$ to range $\mathbb{Y}$   |
| $f^{[-1]}(y)$  | Inverse image of $y$  |
| $f^{[-1]}(y) := f^{[-1]}(y) \in \mathbb{Y} = X \subset \mathbb{X}$ | Inverse of $f$  |
| $a < b$ or $a \leq b$  | $a$ is less than $b$ or $a$ is less than or equal to $b$  |
| $a > b$ or $a \geq b$  | $a$ is greater than $b$ or $a$ is greater than or equal to $b$  |
| $\mathbb{Q}$   | Rational numbers  |
| $(x, y)$   | the open interval $(x, y)$ , i.e. $\{r : x < r < y\}$   |
| $[x, y]$   | the closed interval $[x, y]$ , i.e. $\{r : x \leq r \leq y\}$   |
| $(x, y]$   | the half-open interval $(x, y]$ , i.e. $\{r : x < r \leq y\}$   |
| $[x, y)$   | the half-open interval $[x, y)$ , i.e. $\{r : x \leq r < y\}$   |
| $\mathbb{R} := (-\infty, \infty)$                                  | Real numbers, i.e. $\{r : -\infty < r < \infty\}$   |
| $\mathbb{R}_+ := [0, \infty)$                                      | Real numbers, i.e. $\{r : 0 \leq r < \infty\}$  |
| $\mathbb{R}_{>0} := (0, \infty)$                                   | Real numbers, i.e. $\{r : 0 < r < \infty\}$   |

Table 6.3: Symbol Table: Sets and Numbers

```

ans = 0 0 1 0 2 1 0 0 0 0 0 0
>> floor(log (rand(1,10) ) / log (1 - 0.5)) % theta=0.5, 10 samples
ans = 0
>> floor(log (u) / log (1 - theta))
>> % simulate from a geometric(theta) RV
>> theta=0.5; u=rand(); % choose some theta and uniform(0,1) variate

```

We implement the sampler to generate samples from Geometric( $\theta$ ) RV with  $\theta = 0.5$ , for instance:

$$(1-\theta)^x - (1-\theta)^{x+1} = (1-\theta)^x (1-\theta) = \theta (1-\theta)^x =: f(x;\theta), \quad X \sim \text{Geometric}(\theta).$$

The inequalities are reversed since the base being exponentiated is  $1-\theta \leq 1$ . The uniform event  $(1-\theta)^x \geq U < (1-\theta)^{x+1}$  happens with the desired probability:

$$\begin{aligned} (1-\theta)^x \geq U < (1-\theta)^{x+1} &\iff (1-\theta)^x \geq U < (1-\theta)^{x+1} \\ &\iff x \leq \log_{1-\theta}(U) > x + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$[\log(U)/\log(1-\theta)] = x \iff x \leq \log(U)/\log(1-\theta) < x + 1$$

To verify that the above procedure is valid, note that:

$$x \rightarrow [\log(u)/\log(1-\theta)], \quad \text{where, } u \sim \text{Uniform}(0,1).$$

the following simple algorithm:

**Simulation 144 (Geometric( $\theta$ ))** We can simulate a sample  $x$  from a Geometric( $\theta$ ) RV  $X$  using

is denoted by  $O(1)$ .

which exploits the fact that all values of  $\theta_i$  are equal, we generated samples in constant time, which samples from de Moivre( $1/k, 1/k, \dots, 1/k$ ) RV using Algorithm 3. Using the simpler Algorithm 4, indicates that the average-case efficiency is linear in  $k$ . This linear dependence on  $k$  is denoted by  $O(k)$ . In other words, as the number of faces  $k$  increases, one has to work linearly harder to get

$$\sum_{i=1}^k i \cdot \frac{1}{k} = \frac{1}{k} \sum_{i=1}^k i = \frac{k(k+1)}{2} = \frac{k}{k+1},$$

For the de Moivre( $1/k, 1/k, \dots, 1/k$ ) RV, the right-hand side of the above expression is:

$$1\theta_1 + 2\theta_2 + 3\theta_3 + \dots + k\theta_k = \sum_{i=1}^k i\theta_i$$

until success is:

Note that the principal work here is the sequential search, in which the mean number of comparisons

```

F(x): Distribution function (DF)
f(x): Probability density function (PDF)

•  $f(x) \geq 0$ 
•  $0 \leq F(x) \leq 1$ 
•  $F(x) = P(X \leq x)$  is a probability
•  $F'(x) = f(x)$  for every  $x$  where  $f(x)$  is continuous
• Areas underneath  $f(x)$  measure probabilities.
•  $F(x)$ : Distribution function (DF)
    >> disp(arrayfun(@(u) SimdeMoivre(u,2), rand(5,5))) \% the samples from f2 are
    1.0000
    0.1718 0.0188 0.1515 0.1311 0.1760 0.1121 ...
    0.0073 0.0123 0.0377 0.0723
    >> disp(sum(f2)); \% the weights sum to 1
    >> disp(f2); \% display the weights of our 10-faced die
    >> f2=f2/sum(f2); \% normalize to make a probability mass function
    >> disp(funsum(f2)); \% create an arbitrary array
    >> rand('twister',1777); \% initializes the fundamental sampler
    >> rand(1,10); \% creates an arbitrary array

```

| Symbol | Meaning  | $\mathbb{I}_A(x)$ | $\mathbb{H}_d := (-\infty, \infty)^d$ |
|--------|--|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
|        | Indicator or set membership function that returns 1 if $x \in A$ and 0 otherwise | Real Space        | d-dimensional Real Space              |

| $x$    | $E(X)$                    | Expectation Population Mean or First Mo-         |
|--------|---------------------------|--|
| $g(x)$ | $g(x)$                    | Some Common Expectations also known as           |
|        | $E(X)$                    | Expectation Population Variance of $X$           |
|        | $V(X) := E((X - E(X))^2)$ | $= E(X^2) - (E(X))^2$                            |
|        | $e^{ax}$                  | $\phi X(t) := E(e^{atX})$                        |
|        | $x^k$                     | $E(X^k) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^k p_X(x) dx$ |
|        |                           | $k\text{-th Moment of } X$                       |

Expectation of a function  $g(X)$  of a random variable  $X$  is defined as:

$$E(g(X)) = \begin{cases} \sum_x g(x)f(x) & \text{if } X \text{ is a discrete RV} \\ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x)f(x) dx & \text{if } X \text{ is a continuous RV} \end{cases}$$

|   |
|---|
| • $P(a > X = b) = F(a) - F(b)$                            |
| • $P(x) = \int_x^{\infty} f(a) da$                        |
| • $P'(x) = f(x)$ for every $x$ where $f(x)$ is continuous |
| • $F(x) \leq 1$   |
| • $F(x) = P(X \leq x)$ is a probability                   |
| • Areas underneath $f(x)$ measure probabilities.          |
| • $f(x)$ : Probability density function (PDF)             |
| • $F(x)$ : Distribution function (DF)                     |

**Labwork 145 (PMF versus relative frequency histogram of simulated Geometric( $\theta$ ) RV)**  
 It is a good idea to make a relative frequency histogram of a simulation algorithm and compare that to the PDF of the discrete RV we are simulating from. We use the following script to create Figure 3.7:

```
PlotPdfSimGeometric.m
theta=0.5;
SampleSize=1000;
% simulate 1000 samples from Geometric(theta) RV
Samples=floor(log(rand(1,SampleSize))/ log (1-theta));
Xs = 0:10; % get some values for x
RelFreqs=hist(Samples,Xs)/SampleSize; % relative frequencies of Samples
stem(Xs,theta*(1-theta). ^ Xs),'*')% PDF of Geometric(theta) over Xs
hold on;
plot(Xs,RelFreqs,'o')% relative frequency histogram
RelFreqs100=hist(Samples(1:100),Xs)/100; % Relative Frequencies of first 100 samples
plot(Xs,RelFreqs100,'x')
legend('PDF of Geometric(0.5)', 'Relative freq. hist. (1000 samples)', ...
'Relative freq. hist. (100 samples)')
```

Let us simulate from the Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) RV of Model 5.

**Labwork 146 (Binomial coefficient)** The MATLAB function `BinomialCoefficient` can be used to compute:

$$\binom{n}{x} = \frac{n!}{x!(n-x)!} = \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)\dots(n-x+1)}{x(x-1)(x-2)\cdots(2)(1)} = \frac{\prod_{i=(n-x+1)}^n i}{\prod_{i=2}^x i},$$

with the following M-file:

```
BinomialCoefficient.m
function BC = BinomialCoefficient(n,x)
% returns the binomial coefficient of n choose x
% i.e. the combination of n objects taken x at a time
% x and n are scalar integers and 0 <= x <= n
NminusX = n-x;
NumeratorPostCancel = prod(n:-1:(max([NminusX,x])+1));
DenominatorPostCancel = prod(2:min([NminusX, x]));
BC = NumeratorPostCancel/DenominatorPostCancel;
```

and call `BinomialCoefficient` in the function `BinomialPdf` to compute the PDF  $f(x; n, \theta)$  of the Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) RV  $X$  as follows:

```
BinomialPdf.m
function fx = BinomialPdf(x,n,theta)
% Binomial probability mass function. Needs BinomialCoefficient(n,x)
% f = BinomialPdf(x,n,theta)
% f is the prob mass function for the Binomial(x;n,theta) RV
% and x can be array of samples.
% Values of x are integers in [0,n] and theta is a number in [0,1]
fx = zeros(size(x));
fx = arrayfun(@(xi)(BinomialCoefficient(n,xi)),x);
fx = fx .* (theta .^ x) .* (1-theta) .^ (n-x);
```

For example, we can compute the desired PDF for an array of samples  $x$  from Binomial(8, 0.5) RV  $X$ , as follows:

## CONDITIONAL PROBABILITY SUMMARY

$P(A|B)$  means the probability that  $A$  occurs given that  $B$  has occurred.

$$P(A|B) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)} = \frac{P(A)P(B|A)}{P(B)} \quad \text{if } P(B) \neq 0$$

$$P(B|A) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(A)} = \frac{P(B)P(A|B)}{P(A)} \quad \text{if } P(A) \neq 0$$

Conditional probabilities obey the 4 axioms of probability.

## DISCRETE RANDOM VARIABLE SUMMARY

Probability mass function

$$f(x) = P(X = x_i)$$

Distribution function

$$F(x) = \sum_{x_i \leq x} f(x_i)$$

| Random Variable         | Possible Values            | Probabilities   | Modeled situations   |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|---|--|
| Discrete uniform        | $\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k\}$ | $P(X = x_i) = \frac{1}{k}$                            | Situations with $k$ equally likely values. Parameter: $k$ .  |
| Bernoulli( $\theta$ )   | $\{0, 1\}$                 | $P(X = 0) = 1 - \theta$<br>$P(X = 1) = \theta$        | Situations with only 2 outcomes, coded 1 for success and 0 for failure.<br>Parameter:<br>$\theta = P(\text{success}) \in (0, 1)$ .   |
| Geometric( $\theta$ )   | $\{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$       | $P(X = x) = (1 - \theta)^{x-1}\theta$                 | Situations where you count the number of trials until the first success in a sequence of independent trials with a constant probability of success.<br>Parameter:<br>$\theta = P(\text{success}) \in (0, 1)$ .                       |
| Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) | $\{0, 1, 2, \dots, n\}$    | $P(X = x) = \binom{n}{x} \theta^x (1 - \theta)^{n-x}$ | Situations where you count the number of success in $n$ trials where each trial is independent and there is a constant probability of success.<br>Parameters: $n \in \{1, 2, \dots\}$ ;<br>$\theta = P(\text{success}) \in (0, 1)$ . |
| Poisson( $\lambda$ )    | $\{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$       | $P(X = x) = \frac{\lambda^x e^{-\lambda}}{x!}$        | Situations where you count the number of events in a continuum where the events occur one at a time and are independent of one another.<br>Parameter: $\lambda = \text{rate} \in (0, \infty)$ .                                      |

## Summary of Probability Theory I

and then add up them up as follows:

```
>>> x=0:1:8
>>> BimomialPDF(x,8,0.5)
ans =
0.0039 0.0312 0.1094 0.2188 0.2734 0.2188 0.1094 0.0312 0.0039
```

CHAPTER 4. SIMULATION

```

summing property of MATLAB's sum function when applied to a two-dimensional array:
it is straightforward to produce more than one sample from  $X$  by exploiting the column-wise

x = 2
x1s = 1 1 0 0 0
x2s = 1 1 0 0 0
x = x1s + x2s % sum up the x1s to get a sample from Bernoulli(n=5,theta=0.5). RV X
>>> x1s = floor(rand(1,n)+theta) % produce n IID samples from Bernoulli(theta=0.5) RVs x1,x2,...,xn
>>> x2s = floor(rand(1,n)+theta) % produce n IID samples from Bernoulli(theta=0.5) RVs x1,x2,...,xn
>>> theta=0.5; % give some desired theta value, say 0.5
>>> n=5; % give some desired sample size, say 5
>>> x = x1s + x2s % sum up the x1s to get a sample from Bernoulli(n=5,theta=0.5), the same as above
>>> x
ans =
    1     1     0     0     0

```

```

        function x = SimLBInhomogeneous(n,theta)
        % Simulate sample from Binomial(n,theta) via Geometric(theta) RVs
        % Initialize (SUm = 0),
        SUm=0; k=0; while (SUm < n,
            for i=1:k+1;
                % number of Bernoulli successes
                YSum = SUm + trialSuccess; % total number of trials
                trialSuccess = floor((log(ranad)/log(1-theta)) + 1);
                Geometric(theta)+1
            end
            SUm = YSum;
        end
        return x
    
```

**Simulation 148** (**Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) RV  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X$** ) The number of trials  $X$  is related to the IID Geometric( $\theta$ ) RV  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X$  as soon as  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (Y_k + 1) < n$  and Step 3: setting  $x \leftarrow k - 1$ . We implement the above algorithm via the following M-file:

```

summing property of MATLAB's sum function when applied to a two-dimensional array:
it is straightforward to produce more than one sample from  $X$  by exploiting the column-wise

x = 2
x1s = 1 1 0 0 0
x2s = 1 1 0 0 0
x = x1s + x2s % sum up the x1s to get a sample from Bernoulli(n=5,theta=0.5). RV X
>>> x1s = floor(rand(1,n)+theta) % produce n IID samples from Bernoulli(theta=0.5) RVs x1,x2,...,xn
>>> x2s = floor(rand(1,n)+theta) % produce n IID samples from Bernoulli(theta=0.5) RVs x1,x2,...,xn
>>> theta=0.5; % give some desired theta value, say 0.5
>>> n=5; % give some desired n for Bernoulli(theta),theta)
>>> x = x1s + x2s % sum up the x1s to get a sample from Bernoulli(n=5,theta=0.5) RV X, say n=5

```

```

        function x = SimLBInhomogeneous(n,theta)
        % Simulate sample from Binomial(n,theta) via Geometric(theta) RVs
        % Initialize (SUm = 0),
        SUm=0; k=0; while (SUm < n,
            Geometric(theta)+1;
            SUm=SUm+trialSuccess;
            k=k+1; % number of Bernoulli successes
        end
        return x
    
```

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>Axioms:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If <math>A \subseteq \Omega</math> then <math>0 \leq P(A) \leq 1</math> and <math>P(\Omega) = 1</math>.</li> <li>2. If <math>A, B</math> are disjoint events, then <math>P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B)</math>.</li> <li>3. If <math>A_1, A_2, \dots</math> are disjoint then <math>P(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots) = P(A_1) + P(A_2) + \dots</math></li> </ul> | <p>[This is true only when <math>A</math> and <math>B</math> are disjoint.]</p>          |
| <p><b>Rules:</b></p>  | $P(A \cap B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cup B) \quad [\text{always true}]$ $P(A^c) = 1 - P(A)$ |
|   |  |

| EXPERIMENT SUMMARY |  |
|--------------------|--|
| Experiment         | an activity producing distinct outcomes.                   |
| Outcome            | set of all outcomes of the experiment.                     |
| Event              | an individual outcome in $\Omega$ , called a simple event. |
| Sample Space       | a subset of $\Omega$ is an event.                          |
| Trial              | one performance of an experiment resulting in 1 outcome.   |

| SET SUMMARY                |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$ | a set containing the elements, $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n$ .   |
| $a \in A$                  | $a$ is an element of the set $A$ .  |
| $A \subseteq B$            | the set $A$ is a subset of $B$ .  |
| $A \cup B$                 | "union", meaning the set of all elements which are in $A$ or $B$ ,  |
| $A \cap B$                 | "intersection", meaning the set of all elements which are in both $A$ and $B$ .                               |
| $A \cup B$                 | or both.  |
| $A \cap B$                 | "intersection", meaning the set of all elements which are in $A$ and $B$ ,                                    |
| $\emptyset$ or $\{\}$      | empty set.  |
| $\{ \}$ or $\emptyset$     | universal set.  |
| $A^c$                      | the complement of $A$ , meaning the set of all elements in $U$ ,<br>the universal set, which are not in $A$ . |

Here is a call to simulate 12 samples from  $\text{Binomial}(n = 10, \theta = 0.5)$  RV:

```
>> theta=0.5; % declare theta
>> n=10; % say n=10
>> SampleSize=12;% say you want to simulate 12 samples
>> rand('twister',10001) % seed the fundamental sampler
>> Samples=arrayfun(@(T)Sim1BinomByGeoms(n,T),theta*ones(1,SampleSize))
Samples = 7 5 8 8 4 1 4 8 2 4 6 5
```

Figure 3.8 depicts a comparison of the PDF of  $\text{Binomial}(n = 10, \theta = 0.5)$  RV and a relative frequency histogram based on 100,000 simulations from it.

Let us simulate from the  $\text{Poisson}(\lambda)$  RV of Model 6 as shown in Figure 3.18.

**Simulation 149** ( $\text{Poisson}(\lambda)$  from IID  $\text{Exponential}(\lambda)$  RVs) By this principle, we can simulate from the  $\text{Poisson}(\lambda)$   $X$  by Step 1: generating IID  $\text{Exponential}(\lambda)$  RVs  $Y_1, Y_2, \dots$ , Step 2: stopping as soon as  $\sum_{i=1}^k Y_i \geq 1$  and Step 3: setting  $x \leftarrow k - 1$ .

We implement the above algorithm via the following M-file:

```
function x = Sim1Poisson(lambda)
% Simulate one sample from Poisson(lambda) via Exponentials
YSum=0; k=0; % initialise
while (YSum < 1),
    YSum = YSum + -(1/lambda) * log(rand);
    k=k+1;
end
x=k-1; % return x
```

Here is a call to simulate 10 samples from  $\text{Poisson}(\lambda = 10.0)$  and  $\text{Poisson}(\lambda = 0.1)$  RVs:

```
>> arrayfun(@(lambda)Sim1Poisson(lambda),10.0*ones(1,10)) % lambda=10.0
ans = 14 7 10 13 11 3 6 5 8 5
>> arrayfun(@(lambda)Sim1Poisson(lambda),0.1*ones(1,10)) % lambda=0.1
ans = 2 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
```

Figure 3.18 depicts a comparison of the PDF of  $\text{Poisson}(\lambda = 10)$  RV and a relative frequency histogram based on 1000 simulations from it.

Simulating from a  $\text{Poisson}(\lambda)$  RV is also a special case of simulating from the following more general RV.

**Model 20** ( $GD(\theta_0, \theta_1, \dots)$ ) We say  $X$  is a General Discrete( $\theta_0, \theta_1, \dots$ ) or  $GD(\theta_0, \theta_1, \dots)$  RV over the countable discrete state space  $\mathbb{Z}_+ := \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$  with parameters  $(\theta_0, \theta_1, \dots)$  if the PMF of  $X$  is defined as follows:

$$f(X = x; \theta_0, \theta_1, \dots) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } x \notin \{0, 1, 2, \dots\} \\ \theta_0, & \text{if } x = 0 \\ \theta_1, & \text{if } x = 1 \\ \vdots \end{cases}$$

## 6.6 Standard normal distribution function table

For any given value  $z$ , its cumulative probability  $\Phi(z)$ .

| $z$  | $\Phi(z)$ |
|------|-----------|------|-----------|------|-----------|------|-----------|------|-----------|
| 0.01 | 0.5040    | 0.51 | 0.6950    | 1.01 | 0.8438    | 1.51 | 0.9345    | 2.01 | 0.9778    |
| 0.02 | 0.5080    | 0.52 | 0.6985    | 1.02 | 0.8461    | 1.52 | 0.9357    | 2.02 | 0.9783    |
| 0.03 | 0.5120    | 0.53 | 0.7019    | 1.03 | 0.8485    | 1.53 | 0.9370    | 2.03 | 0.9788    |
| 0.04 | 0.5160    | 0.54 | 0.7054    | 1.04 | 0.8508    | 1.54 | 0.9382    | 2.04 | 0.9793    |
| 0.05 | 0.5199    | 0.55 | 0.7088    | 1.05 | 0.8531    | 1.55 | 0.9394    | 2.05 | 0.9798    |
| 0.06 | 0.5239    | 0.56 | 0.7123    | 1.06 | 0.8554    | 1.56 | 0.9406    | 2.06 | 0.9803    |
| 0.07 | 0.5279    | 0.57 | 0.7157    | 1.07 | 0.8577    | 1.57 | 0.9418    | 2.07 | 0.9808    |
| 0.08 | 0.5319    | 0.58 | 0.7190    | 1.08 | 0.8599    | 1.58 | 0.9429    | 2.08 | 0.9812    |
| 0.09 | 0.5359    | 0.59 | 0.7224    | 1.09 | 0.8621    | 1.59 | 0.9441    | 2.09 | 0.9817    |
| 0.10 | 0.5398    | 0.60 | 0.7257    | 1.10 | 0.8643    | 1.60 | 0.9452    | 2.10 | 0.9821    |
| 0.11 | 0.5438    | 0.61 | 0.7291    | 1.11 | 0.8665    | 1.61 | 0.9463    | 2.11 | 0.9826    |
| 0.12 | 0.5478    | 0.62 | 0.7324    | 1.12 | 0.8686    | 1.62 | 0.9474    | 2.12 | 0.9830    |
| 0.13 | 0.5517    | 0.63 | 0.7357    | 1.13 | 0.8708    | 1.63 | 0.9484    | 2.13 | 0.9834    |
| 0.14 | 0.5557    | 0.64 | 0.7389    | 1.14 | 0.8729    | 1.64 | 0.9495    | 2.14 | 0.9838    |
| 0.15 | 0.5596    | 0.65 | 0.7422    | 1.15 | 0.8749    | 1.65 | 0.9505    | 2.15 | 0.9842    |
| 0.16 | 0.5636    | 0.66 | 0.7454    | 1.16 | 0.8770    | 1.66 | 0.9515    | 2.16 | 0.9846    |
| 0.17 | 0.5675    | 0.67 | 0.7486    | 1.17 | 0.8790    | 1.67 | 0.9525    | 2.17 | 0.9850    |
| 0.18 | 0.5714    | 0.68 | 0.7517    | 1.18 | 0.8810    | 1.68 | 0.9535    | 2.18 | 0.9854    |
| 0.19 | 0.5753    | 0.69 | 0.7549    | 1.19 | 0.8830    | 1.69 | 0.9545    | 2.19 | 0.9857    |
| 0.20 | 0.5793    | 0.70 | 0.7580    | 1.20 | 0.8849    | 1.70 | 0.9554    | 2.20 | 0.9861    |
| 0.21 | 0.5832    | 0.71 | 0.7611    | 1.21 | 0.8869    | 1.71 | 0.9564    | 2.21 | 0.9864    |
| 0.22 | 0.5871    | 0.72 | 0.7642    | 1.22 | 0.8888    | 1.72 | 0.9573    | 2.22 | 0.9868    |
| 0.23 | 0.5910    | 0.73 | 0.7673    | 1.23 | 0.8907    | 1.73 | 0.9582    | 2.23 | 0.9871    |
| 0.24 | 0.5948    | 0.74 | 0.7704    | 1.24 | 0.8925    | 1.74 | 0.9591    | 2.24 | 0.9875    |
| 0.25 | 0.5987    | 0.75 | 0.7734    | 1.25 | 0.8944    | 1.75 | 0.9599    | 2.25 | 0.9878    |
| 0.26 | 0.6026    | 0.76 | 0.7764    | 1.26 | 0.8962    | 1.76 | 0.9608    | 2.26 | 0.9881    |
| 0.27 | 0.6064    | 0.77 | 0.7794    | 1.27 | 0.8980    | 1.77 | 0.9616    | 2.27 | 0.9884    |
| 0.28 | 0.6103    | 0.78 | 0.7823    | 1.28 | 0.8997    | 1.78 | 0.9625    | 2.28 | 0.9887    |
| 0.29 | 0.6141    | 0.79 | 0.7852    | 1.29 | 0.9015    | 1.79 | 0.9633    | 2.29 | 0.9890    |
| 0.30 | 0.6179    | 0.80 | 0.7881    | 1.30 | 0.9032    | 1.80 | 0.9641    | 2.30 | 0.9893    |
| 0.31 | 0.6217    | 0.81 | 0.7910    | 1.31 | 0.9049    | 1.81 | 0.9649    | 2.31 | 0.9896    |
| 0.32 | 0.6255    | 0.82 | 0.7939    | 1.32 | 0.9066    | 1.82 | 0.9656    | 2.32 | 0.9898    |
| 0.33 | 0.6293    | 0.83 | 0.7967    | 1.33 | 0.9082    | 1.83 | 0.9664    | 2.33 | 0.9901    |
| 0.34 | 0.6331    | 0.84 | 0.7995    | 1.34 | 0.9099    | 1.84 | 0.9671    | 2.34 | 0.9904    |
| 0.35 | 0.6368    | 0.85 | 0.8023    | 1.35 | 0.9115    | 1.85 | 0.9678    | 2.35 | 0.9906    |
| 0.36 | 0.6406    | 0.86 | 0.8051    | 1.36 | 0.9131    | 1.86 | 0.9686    | 2.36 | 0.9909    |
| 0.37 | 0.6443    | 0.87 | 0.8078    | 1.37 | 0.9147    | 1.87 | 0.9693    | 2.37 | 0.9911    |
| 0.38 | 0.6480    | 0.88 | 0.8106    | 1.38 | 0.9162    | 1.88 | 0.9699    | 2.38 | 0.9913    |
| 0.39 | 0.6517    | 0.89 | 0.8133    | 1.39 | 0.9177    | 1.89 | 0.9706    | 2.39 | 0.9916    |
| 0.40 | 0.6554    | 0.90 | 0.8159    | 1.40 | 0.9192    | 1.90 | 0.9713    | 2.40 | 0.9918    |
| 0.41 | 0.6591    | 0.91 | 0.8186    | 1.41 | 0.9207    | 1.91 | 0.9719    | 2.41 | 0.9920    |
| 0.42 | 0.6628    | 0.92 | 0.8212    | 1.42 | 0.9222    | 1.92 | 0.9726    | 2.42 | 0.9922    |
| 0.43 | 0.6664    | 0.93 | 0.8238    | 1.43 | 0.9236    | 1.93 | 0.9732    | 2.43 | 0.9925    |
| 0.44 | 0.6700    | 0.94 | 0.8264    | 1.44 | 0.9251    | 1.94 | 0.9738    | 2.44 | 0.9927    |
| 0.45 | 0.6736    | 0.95 | 0.8289    | 1.45 | 0.9265    | 1.95 | 0.9744    | 2.45 | 0.9929    |
| 0.46 | 0.6772    | 0.96 | 0.8315    | 1.46 | 0.9279    | 1.96 | 0.9750    | 2.46 | 0.9931    |
| 0.47 | 0.6808    | 0.97 | 0.8340    | 1.47 | 0.9292    | 1.97 | 0.9756    | 2.47 | 0.9932    |
| 0.48 | 0.6844    | 0.98 | 0.8365    | 1.48 | 0.9306    | 1.98 | 0.9761    | 2.48 | 0.9934    |
| 0.49 | 0.6879    | 0.99 | 0.8389    | 1.49 | 0.9319    | 1.99 | 0.9767    | 2.49 | 0.9936    |
| 0.50 | 0.6915    | 1.00 | 0.8413    | 1.50 | 0.9332    | 2.00 | 0.9772    | 2.50 | 0.9938    |

Algorithm 6 allows us to simulate from any member of the class of non-negative discrete RVs as specified by the probabilities  $(\theta_0, \theta_1, \dots)$ . When an RV  $X$  takes values in another countable set  $\mathbb{X} \neq \mathbb{Z}^+$ , then we can still use the above algorithm provided we have a one-to-one and onto mapping  $\pi: \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  that allows us to think of  $(0, 1, 2, \dots)$  as indices of an array  $D$  giving

1: *input*: A *geotagged* *multiresolution* *dataset* for  $CD(\phi_0, \phi_1, \dots, \phi_N)$

1.  $\theta_0$  and  $\{C(i) = \theta_i / \theta_{i-1}\}$  for any  $i \in \{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ .

1.  $u_0$  and  $\{u_i\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$  for all  $i \in \{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$
2. output: a sample from  $X$
3. initialize:  $p \rightarrow \theta_0$ ,  $b \rightarrow \theta_0$ ,  $i \rightarrow 0$
4. while  $i < d$  do
  - $i \rightarrow i + 1$ ,  $d \rightarrow p(C(i), b \rightarrow b + d$

**Simulation 150** (Binomial( $n, \theta$ )) To simulate from a Binomial( $n, \theta$ ) RV  $X$ , we can use Algorithm

shorter, while the appropriate of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  ( $\alpha + \beta$ ), we can also simulate how the stochasticity( $\sigma$ ) and Poisson( $\lambda$ ) RVs.

**ANSWER 151** This is a challenging exercise for the student who is learning the other two easy. So those who are novice to MATLAB may skip this Labwork.

1. Implement Algorithm 6 via a function named `MyGenrndiscInvSampler` in MATLAB. Hand in the implementation.
2. Show that your code works for drawing samples from a  $\text{Binomial}(n, p)$  RV by doing the following:

3. Show that your code works for drawing samples from a  $\text{Geometric}(p)$  RV by doing the following:  
 $C(i)$  for the  $\text{Binomial}(n, p)$  RV is given above].

(a) Seed the fundamental sampler by your Student ID.

that the random surfer will land on that page by clicking on a link. If the stationary distribution random surfer on the world wide web is a very successful model for ranking pages.

**Example 191** (*Random surf on the word wide web*) Consider the huge graph with vertices as websites and hyper-links as undirected edges. Then Model 21 gives a random walk on this graph. However if a page has no links to other pages, it becomes a sink and therefore terminates the random walk. Let us modify this random walk into a *random surf* to avoid getting stuck. If the random surf arrives at a sink page, she picks another page at random and continues surfing at random again. Google's PageRank formula uses a random surfer model who gets bored after several clicks and switches to a random page. The PageRank value of a page reflects the chance that the random surfer will land on that page by clicking on a link. The stationary distribution of the random surfer will be given by

**Exercise 190** Show that there is no reversible distribution for the Markov chain in Example 189.

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad P = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad D = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

depicted below with adjacency matrix  $A$  is a Markov chain on  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$  with transition matrix  $P$ :

**Example 189** (Directed Triangulated Quadrangle). The random walk on the directed graph

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \exists & \in \langle \ell a, a_i, \text{if } \frac{(\ell a) \otimes a}{1}, 0 \rangle \\ & \text{otherwise,} \end{aligned}} = (\ell a, a) P$$

**Model 22 (Random Walk on a Directed Graph)** A random walk on a directed graph  $G = (V, E)$  is a Markov chain with state space  $V = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  and transition matrix given by:

**Exercise 188** Find the stationary distribution of the Markov chain in Exercise 180.

$$\pi(0)D(0,1) = \frac{4}{5} \times \frac{3}{5} = \frac{12}{25} < \frac{6}{5} = \frac{4}{\pi} \times \pi(1)D(1,0).$$

We will show that  $(X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$  is not a reversible Markov chain. Since  $(X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$  is irreducible (apart from the singularity at  $x_0$ ), it is sufficient to show that  $(X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$  is not a stationary distribution. To do this, we will use the fact that  $(X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$  is a Markov chain. Since  $(X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$  is irreducible, it has a unique stationary distribution, which we denote by  $\pi = (\pi_x)_{x \in S}$ . We will show that  $\pi$  is not a stationary distribution for  $(X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$ .

Draw the transition diagram for this Markov chain that corresponds to a drunkard who flips a biased coin to make his next move at each corner. The stationary distribution is  $\pi = (1/4, 1/4, 1/4, 1/4)$ .

$$d = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1/3 & 1/3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2/3 & 0 & 1/3 & 1/3 \\ 0 & 1/3 & 0 & 2/3 & 0 & 1/3 \\ 1/3 & 0 & 0 & 2/3 & 1/3 & 0 \\ 1/3 & 0 & 2/3 & 0 & 0 & 1/3 \\ 0 & 2/3 & 1/3 & 0 & 0 & 1/3 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Example 187** (Drummonds biased walk around the block) Consider the Markov chain  $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$  on  $\mathbb{X} = \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$  with initial distribution  $\mathbb{I}_{\{3\}}(x)$  and transition matrix

195

- (b) Set the variable `Mytheta=rand`.
- (c) Draw 100 samples from the Geometric(`Mytheta`) RV and report the sample mean. [Note: the inputs  $\theta_0$  and  $C(i)$  for the Geometric( $\theta$ ) RV should be derived and the workings shown].

### 4.3.3 von Neumann Rejection Sampler (RS)

Rejection sampling [John von Neumann, 1947, in *Stanislaw Ulam 1909-1984*, a special issue of Los Alamos Science, Los Alamos National Lab., 1987, p. 135-136] is a Monte Carlo method to draw independent samples from a target RV  $X$  with probability density  $f(x)$ , where  $x \in \mathbb{X} \subset \mathbb{R}^k$ . Typically, the target density  $f$  is only known up to a constant and therefore the (normalised) density  $f$  itself may be unknown and it is difficult to generate samples directly from  $X$ .

Suppose we have another density or mass function  $g$  for which the following are true:

- (a) we can generate random variables from  $g$ ;
- (b) the support of  $g$  contains the support of  $f$ , i.e.  $\mathbb{Y} \supset \mathbb{X}$ ;
- (c) a constant  $a > 1$  exists, such that:

$$f(x) \leq ag(x). \quad (4.6)$$

for any  $x \in \mathbb{X}$ , the support of  $X$ . Then  $x$  can be generated from Algorithm 7.

---

**Algorithm 7** Rejection Sampler (RS) of von Neumann

1: *input:*

- (1) a target density  $f(x)$ ,
- (2) a proposal density  $g(x)$  satisfying (a), (b) and (c) above.

2: *output:* a sample  $x$  from RV  $X$  with density  $f$

3: **repeat**

4:   Generate  $y \sim g$  and  $u \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1)$

5: **until**  $u \leq \frac{f(y)}{ag(y)}$

6: **return:**  $x \leftarrow y$

---

**Proposition 60 (Fundamental Theorem of Simulation)** The von Neumann rejection sampler of Algorithm 7 produces a sample  $x$  from the random variable  $X$  with density  $f(x)$ .

**Proof:** We shall prove the result for the continuous case. For any real number  $t$ :

$$\begin{aligned} F(t) &= P(X \leq t) = P\left(Y \leq t \mid U \leq \frac{f(Y)}{ag(Y)}\right) = \frac{P\left(Y \leq t, U \leq \frac{f(Y)}{ag(Y)}\right)}{P\left(U \leq \frac{f(Y)}{ag(Y)}\right)} \\ &= \frac{\int_{-\infty}^t \left( \int_0^{f(y)/ag(y)} 1 du \right) g(y) dy}{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left( \int_0^{f(y)/ag(y)} 1 du \right) g(y) dy} = \frac{\int_{-\infty}^t \left( \frac{f(y)}{ag(y)} \right) g(y) dy}{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left( \frac{f(y)}{ag(y)} \right) g(y) dy} \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^t f(y) dy \end{aligned}$$

**Labwork 152 (Rejection Sampler Demo)** Let us understand the rejection sampler by calling the interactive visual cognitive tool:

**Proposition 99** The random walk on an undirected graph  $\mathbb{G} = (\mathbb{V}, \mathbb{E})$ , with vertex set  $\mathbb{V} := \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  and degree sum  $d = \sum_{i=1}^k \deg(v_i)$  is a reversible Markov chain with the reversible distribution  $\pi$  given by:

$$\pi = \left( \frac{\deg(v_1)}{d}, \frac{\deg(v_2)}{d}, \dots, \frac{\deg(v_k)}{d} \right).$$

**Proof:** First note that  $\pi$  is a probability distribution provided that  $d > 0$ . To show that  $\pi$  is reversible we need to verify Equation 6.12 for each  $(v_i, v_j) \in \mathbb{V}^2$ . Fix a pair of states  $(v_i, v_j) \in \mathbb{V}^2$ , then

$$\pi(v_i)P(v_i, v_j) = \begin{cases} \frac{\deg(v_i)}{d} \frac{1}{\deg(v_j)} = \frac{1}{d} = \frac{\deg(v_j)}{d} \frac{1}{\deg(v_i)} = \pi(v_j)P(v_j, v_i) & \text{if } (v_i, v_j) \in \mathbb{E} \\ 0 = \pi(v_j)P(v_j, v_i) & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

By Proposition 97  $\pi$  is also the stationary distribution.

**Exercise 184** Prove Proposition 99 by directly showing that  $\pi P = \pi$ , i.e., for each  $v_i \in \mathbb{V}$ ,  $\sum_{j=1}^k \pi(v_i)P(v_i, v_j) = \pi(v_i)$ .

**Example 185 (Random Walk on a regular graph)** A graph  $\mathbb{G} = (\mathbb{V}, \mathbb{E})$  is called regular if every vertex in  $\mathbb{V} = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  has the same degree  $\delta$ , i.e.,  $\deg(v_i) = \delta$  for every  $v_i \in \mathbb{V}$ . Consider the random walk on a regular graph with symmetric transition matrix

$$Q(v_i, v_j) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\delta} & \text{if } (v_i, v_j) \in \mathbb{E} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

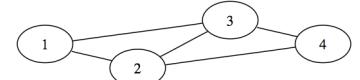
By Proposition 99, the stationary distribution of the random walk on  $\mathbb{G}$  is the uniform distribution on  $\mathbb{V}$  given by

$$\pi = \left( \frac{\delta}{\delta \#\mathbb{V}}, \dots, \frac{\delta}{\delta \#\mathbb{V}} \right) = \left( \frac{1}{\#\mathbb{V}}, \dots, \frac{1}{\#\mathbb{V}} \right).$$

**Example 186 (Triangulated Quadrangle)** The random walk on the undirected graph

$$\mathbb{G} = (\{1, 2, 3, 4\}, \{(1, 2), (3, 1), (2, 3), (2, 4), (4, 3)\})$$

depicted below with adjacency matrix  $A$  is a Markov chain on  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$  with transition matrix  $P$ :

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad P = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & \frac{1}{3} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$


By Proposition 99, the stationary distribution of the random walk on  $\mathbb{G}$  is

$$\pi = \left( \frac{\deg(v_1)}{d}, \frac{\deg(v_2)}{d}, \frac{\deg(v_3)}{d}, \frac{\deg(v_4)}{d} \right) = \left( \frac{2}{10}, \frac{3}{10}, \frac{3}{10}, \frac{2}{10} \right).$$

Let us implement a reflection sampler as a function in the M-file `RejectionNormalPlace.m`. By running the function in `LaplaceCDF.m`,

$$\left( \frac{\zeta}{1} - \frac{\zeta}{\zeta f} - |\beta| \right) dx \partial = \frac{\left( \frac{\zeta}{1} \right) dx \partial \frac{\zeta}{\zeta}}{1} \left( \frac{\zeta}{\zeta f} - |\beta| \right) dx \partial \frac{\zeta}{\zeta} \wedge = \frac{v(\beta)\beta}{1(\beta)f} = \frac{(\beta)\delta v}{(\beta)f}$$

Hence, we can use the rejection method with:

$$\left( \frac{2}{\exp\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)} - \frac{x}{2} \right) = a \approx 1.3155.$$

and therefore:

$$f(x) = g(x) \text{ and } g(x) = \frac{1}{2} \exp\left(-\frac{x^2}{2}\right)$$

$(-\infty, \infty)$ . Next:

**Simulation 153 (Rejection Sampling Normal(0, 1) with Laplace(1) proposals**) Suppose we wish to generate from  $X \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ . Consider using the rejection sampler with proposals from  $Y \sim \text{Laplace}(1)$  (using the inverse of Simultation 137). The support of both RVs is

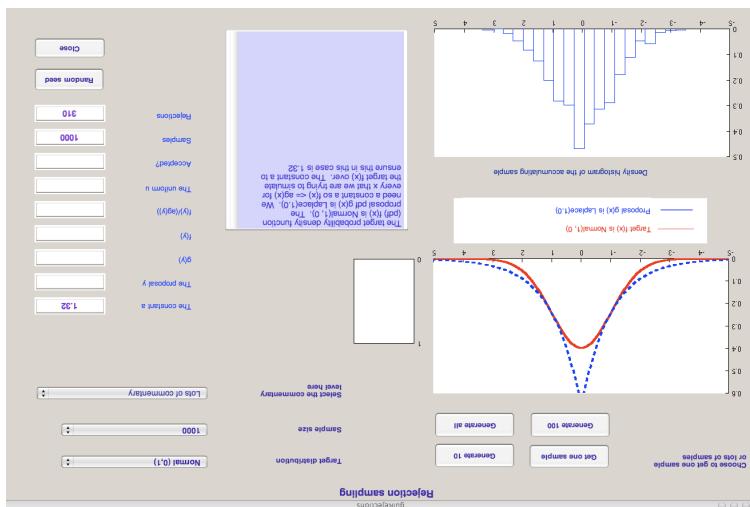


Figure 4.11: Visual Cognitive Tool GUI: Rejection Sampling from  $X \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$  with PDF  $f$ . Based on proposals from  $Y \sim \text{Laplace}(1)$  with PDF  $g$ .

The **ML-HC** **graffiti detection** module will bring a graphical user interface (GUI) as shown in Figure 4.11.

>> GUI REJECTIONS

Thus the adjacency matrix of an undirected graph is symmetric. In a directed graph, each vertex has **in-edges** that come into it and **out-edges** that go out of it. The number of in-edges and out-edges of  $v_i$  is denoted by  $\deg(v_i)$  and  $\text{deg}(v_i)$  respectively. Note that a transition diagram of a Markov chain is a weighted directed graph and is represented by the transition probability matrix.

**Model 21 (Random Walk on an Undirected Graph)** A random walk on an undirected graph  $G = (V, E)$  is a Markov chain with state space  $V = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  and the following transition rules: if the chain is at vertex  $v_i$  at time  $t$ , then it moves uniformly at random to one of the neighbors of  $v_i$  at time  $t + 1$ . If  $\deg(v_i)$  is the degree of  $v_i$ , then the transition probabilities of this Markov chain is

$$P(a_i, a_f) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise,} \\ \frac{1}{\deg(v_i)} & \text{if } (a_i, a_f) \in E \end{cases}$$

$$\mathbb{E} \left[ \langle f_a, a \rangle \mid \langle f_a, a \rangle \in \mathbb{A} \right] = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{otherwise} \\ 1 & \text{if } \langle f_a, a \rangle \in \mathbb{A} \end{cases} = (\langle f_a, a \rangle) A$$

**Definition 98 (Graph)** A **Graph**  $G = (V, E)$  consists of a vertex set  $V = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  together with an edge set  $E = \{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_l\}$ . Each edge connects two of the vertices in  $V$ . An edge  $e_h$  connecting vertices  $v_i$  and  $v_j$  is denoted by  $(v_i, v_j)$ . Two vertices are **neighbours** if they share an edge. The **neighbourhood** of a vertex  $v_i$  denoted by  $\text{nhbd}(v_i) = \{v_j : (v_i, v_j) \in E\}$  is the set of neighbouring vertices of  $v_i$ . The number of neighbours of a vertex  $v_i$  in an undirected graph is called its **degree** and is denoted by  $\deg(v_i)$ . Note that  $\deg(v_i) = \#\text{nhbd}(v_i)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \cdot & \underset{\mathbb{X} \ni x}{\mathcal{D}}(x, y) = (\mathcal{D}(y, x))^T, \text{ since } \mathcal{D} \text{ is a stochastic matrix} \\ & LHS = \underset{\mathbb{X} \ni x}{\mathbb{E}} P(y, x) = \mathbb{E}(y) I = \mathbb{E}(y), \text{ by reversibility} \\ & RHS = \underset{\mathbb{X} \ni x}{\mathcal{D}}(x, y) \underset{\mathbb{X} \ni x}{\mathcal{D}}(x, y) = \underset{\mathbb{X} \ni x}{\mathcal{D}}(x, y)^T \underset{\mathbb{X} \ni x}{\mathcal{D}}(x, y) = \underset{\mathbb{X} \ni x}{\mathcal{D}}(x, x) = I \end{aligned}$$

**Tool:** Suppose  $\pi$  is a reversible distribution for  $(Y_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$ , then  $\pi$  is a probability distribution on  $\mathbb{X}$  and  $\pi(x)P(x, y) = \pi(y)P(y, x)$  for each  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{X}^2$ . We need to show that for any  $y \in \mathbb{X}$  we have

**Proposition 97** (A reversible  $\pi$  is a stationary  $\pi$ ) Let  $(X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$  be a Markov chain on  $\mathbb{X} = \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$  with transition matrix  $P$ . If  $\pi$  is a reversible distribution for  $(X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$ , then  $\pi$  is a stationary distribution for  $(X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$ .

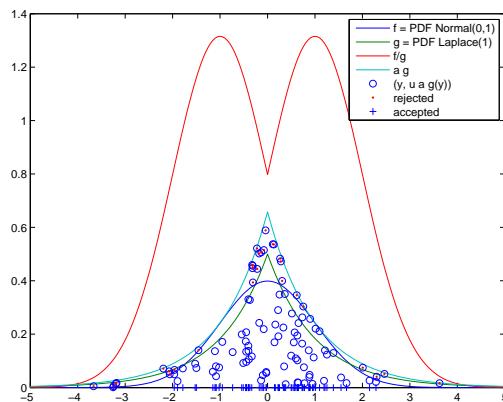
In words,  $\pi(x)P(x, y) = \pi(y)P(y, x)$  says that if you start the chain at the reversible distribution  $\pi$ , i.e.,  $\pi_0 = \pi$ , then the probability of going from  $x$  to  $y$  is the same as that of going from  $y$  to  $x$ .

```
function x = RejectionNormalLaplace()
Accept = 0; % a binary variable to indicate whether a proposed point is accepted
while ~Accept % ~ is the logical NOT operation
    y = LaplaceInvCDF(rand(),1); % sample Laplace(1) RV
    Bound = exp( abs(y) - (y*y+1)/2 );
    u = rand();
    if u <= Bound
        x = y;
        Accept = 1;
    end % if
end % while
```

We may obtain a large number of samples and plot them as a histogram using the following commands:

```
>> % use funarray to convert 1000 zeros into samples from the Normal(0,1)
>> y=arrayfun(@(x)(RejectionNormalLaplace()),zeros(1,1000));
>> hist(y,20) % histogram with 20 bins
```

Figure 4.12: Rejection Sampling from  $X \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$  with PDF  $f$  based on 100 proposals from  $Y \sim \text{Laplace}(1)$  with PDF  $g$ .



**Classwork 154 (A note on the proposal's tail in rejection sampling)** The condition  $f(x) \leq ag(x)$  is equivalent to  $f(x)/g(x) \leq a$ , which says that  $f(x)/g(x)$  must be bounded; therefore,  $g$  must have higher tails than  $f$ . The rejection method cannot be used to generate from a Cauchy distribution using a normal distribution, because the latter has lower tails than the former.

The next result tells us how many iterations of the algorithm are needed, on average, to get a sample value from a RV with PDF  $f$ .

**Proposition 61 (Acceptance Probability of RS)** The expected number of iterations of the rejection algorithm to get a sample  $x$  is the constant  $a$ .

**Proposition 94 (Markov chain convergence theorem)** Let  $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}_+}$  be an irreducible aperiodic Markov chain with state space  $\mathbb{X} = \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$ , transition matrix  $P = (P(x, y))_{(x,y) \in \mathbb{X}^2}$  and initial distribution  $\mu_0$ . Then for any distribution  $\pi$  which is stationary for the transition matrix  $P$ , we have

$$\mu_t \xrightarrow{\text{TV}} \pi . \quad (6.11)$$

**Proof:** TBD

**Proposition 95 (Uniqueness of stationary distribution)** Any irreducible aperiodic Markov chain has a unique stationary distribution.

**Proof:** TBD

**Exercise 181** Consider the Markov chain on  $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$  with the following transition matrix:

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 1 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{3}{4} & 0 \\ 4 & 0 & 0 & \frac{3}{4} & \frac{1}{4} & 0 \\ 5 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{3}{4} \\ 6 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \end{pmatrix} .$$

Show that this chain is reducible and it has three stationary distributions:

$$(1/2, 1/2, 0, 0, 0, 0), \quad (0, 0, 1/2, 1/2, 0, 0), \quad (0, 0, 0, 0, 1/2, 1/2) .$$

**Exercise 182** If there are two stationary distributions  $\pi$  and  $\pi'$  then show that there is an infinite family of stationary distributions  $\{\pi_p : p \in [0, 1]\}$ , called the convex combinations of  $\pi$  and  $\pi'$ .

**Exercise 183** Show that for a drunkard's walk chain started at state 0 around a polygonal block with  $k$  corners labelled  $\{0, 1, 2, \dots, k-1\}$ , the state probability vector at time step  $t$

$$\mu_t \xrightarrow{\text{TV}} \pi$$

if and only if  $k$  is odd. Explain what happens to  $\mu_t$  when  $k$  is even.

## 6.5 Reversibility

We introduce another specific property called reversibility. This property will assist in conjuring Markov chains with a desired stationary distribution.

**Definition 96 (Reversible)** A probability distribution  $\pi$  on  $\mathbb{X} = \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$  is said to be a **reversible distribution** for a Markov chain  $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}}$  on  $\mathbb{X}$  with transition matrix  $P$  if for every pair of states  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{X}^2$ :

$$\pi(x)P(x, y) = \pi(y)P(y, x) . \quad (6.12)$$

A Markov chain that has a reversible distribution is said to be a reversible Markov chain.

**Labwork 155 (Gaussian Sampling with rand)** We can use MATLAB function `randn` that implements the Ziggurat method to draw samples from RV  $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$  as follows:

The **Ziggurat Method** [G. Marsaglia and W. W. Tsang, SIAM Journal of Scientific and Statistical Programming, volume 5, 1984] is a rejection sampler that can efficiently draw samples from the  $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$  RV. The MATLAB function `randn` uses this method to produce samples from  $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ .

Now, the expected number of iterations to get an  $x$  is no longer  $a$  but rather the integral ratio:

```

1: input: a proposal density  $g(x)$  satisfying (a), (b) and (c) above.
2: output: a sample  $x$  from RV  $X$  with density  $f$ 
3: repeat
4:   Generate  $y \sim g$  and  $u \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1)$ 
5:   until  $u < \frac{f(y)}{g(y)}$ 
6:   return:  $x \rightarrow y$ 

```

(2) a proposal density  $g(x)$  satisfying (a), (b) and (c) above.

(1) shape of a target density  $f(x) = \int f(x) dx$ ,

**Algorithm 8** Rejection Sampler (RS) of von Neumann – target shape

for any  $x \in \mathbb{X}$ , the support of  $X$ . Then  $x$  can be generated from Algorithm 8.

$$(4.7) \quad f(x) \leq ag(x),$$

(c) a constant  $a > 0$  exists, such that:

(b) the support of  $g$  contains the support of  $f$ , i.e.  $\mathbb{Y} \subseteq \mathbb{X}$ :

(a) we can generate random variables from  $g$ :

we know only  $f(x)$  and/or  $g(x)$  in closed-form. Suppose the following are satisfied:

$$\frac{\int f(x) dx}{\int g(x) dx} = \frac{\int f(x) dp}{\int g(x) dp} \quad \text{and } g(x) = \int g(y) dy = \int g(y) dp,$$

In other words, if we use:

The rejection method can still be used only if the un-normalised form of  $f$  or  $g$  (or both) is known.

The closer  $ag(x)$  is to  $f(x)$ , especially in the tails, the closer  $a$  will be to 1, and hence the more efficient the rejection method will be.

And the number of proposals before acceptance is the Geometric( $1/a$ ) RV with expectation  $\frac{1}{a} = a$ .

$$P(\text{accept } y) = P\left(u < \frac{ag(y)}{f(y)}\right) = \int_{-\infty}^0 \int_{-\infty}^y \frac{ag(y)}{f(y)} dp dy = \int_0^\infty \int_0^y \frac{ag(y)}{f(y)} du dp = \int_0^\infty \int_0^y \frac{ag(y)}{f(y)} du dy = \int_0^\infty \frac{ag(y)}{f(y)} dy = \frac{1}{a}.$$

**Proof:** For the continuous case:

In words, Proposition 94 says that if you run the chain for a sufficient long enough time  $t$ , then, regardless of the initial distribution  $\pi_0$ , the distribution at time  $t$  will be close to the stationary distribution  $\pi$ . This is referred to as the Markov chain **approaching equilibrium or stationarity**

difference in probabilities that the two distributions assign to any one event  $A \in \sigma(\mathbb{X}) = 2^\mathbb{X}$ .

This interpretation means that the total variation distance between  $\pi_1$  and  $\pi_2$  is the maximal difference that it  $dTV(\pi_1, \pi_2) = 0$  then  $\pi_1 = \pi_2$ .

$$dTV(\pi_1, \pi_2) = \max_{A \in \sigma(\mathbb{X})} |\pi_1(A) - \pi_2(A)|.$$

Observe that if  $dTV(\pi_1, \pi_2) = 0$  then  $\pi_1 = \pi_2$ . The constant  $1/2$  in Equation 6.10 ensures that the range of  $dTV$  is in  $[0, 1]$ . If  $dTV(\pi_1, \pi_2) = 1$  then  $\pi_1$  and  $\pi_2$  have disjoint supports, i.e., we can partition  $\mathbb{X}$  into  $\mathbb{X}_1$  and  $\mathbb{X}_2$ , i.e.,  $\mathbb{X} = \mathbb{X}_1 \cup \mathbb{X}_2$  and  $\mathbb{X}_1 \cap \mathbb{X}_2 = \emptyset$ , such that  $\sum_{x \in \mathbb{X}_1} \pi_1(x) = 1$  and  $\sum_{x \in \mathbb{X}_2} \pi_2(x) = 1$ . The total variation distance gets its name from the following natural interpretation:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} dTV(\pi_n, \pi) = 0.$$

If  $\pi_1, \pi_2, \dots$  and  $\pi$  are probability distributions on  $\mathbb{X}$ , then we say that  $\pi_n$  converges in total variation to  $\pi$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  and write  $\pi_n \xrightarrow{TV} \pi$ , i.e.,

$$dTV(\pi_1, \pi_2) := \frac{1}{2} \sum_{x \in \mathbb{X}} |\pi_1(x) - \pi_2(x)|, \quad dTV : P(\mathbb{X}) \times P(\mathbb{X}) \rightarrow [0, 1]. \quad (6.10)$$

**Definition 93 (Total variation distance)** If  $\pi_1 := (\pi_1(x))_{x \in \mathbb{X}}$  and  $\pi_2 := (\pi_2(x))_{x \in \mathbb{X}}$  are elements of  $P(\mathbb{X})$ , the set of all probability distributions on  $\mathbb{X} = \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$ , then we define the total variation distance between  $\pi_1$  and  $\pi_2$  as

**Proof:** TBD

**Proposition 92 (Existence of stationary distribution)** For any irreducible and aperiodic Markov chain there exists at least one stationary distribution.

$$\tau(x, y) > \infty.$$

and the mean hitting time is finite, i.e.,

$$P(T(x, y) > \infty) = 1,$$

**Proposition 91 (Hitting times of irreducible aperiodic Markov chains)** If  $(X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$  is an irreducible aperiodic Markov chain with state space  $\mathbb{X} = \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$ , transition matrix  $P = (P(x, y))_{(x, y) \in \mathbb{X}^2}$  then for any pair of states  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{X}^2$ ,

be the expected time taken to reach  $y$  after having started at  $x$ . Note that  $\tau(x, x)$  is the mean return time to state  $x$ .

$$\tau(x, y) := E(T(x, y)),$$

and let  $T(x, y) = \min\{t \geq 0 \mid X_t = y\}$  if the Markov chain never visits  $y$  after having started from  $x$ . Let

```
>> randn('state',67678); % initialise the seed at 67678 and method as Ziggurat -- TYPE help randn
>> randn % produce 1 sample from Normal(0,1) RV
ans =
    1.5587
>> randn(2,8) % produce an 2 X 8 array of samples from Normal(0,1) RV
ans =
    1.2558    0.7834    0.6612    0.3247    0.1407    1.0562    0.8034    1.2970
   -0.5317    0.0417   -0.3454    0.6182   -1.4162    0.4796   -1.5015    0.3718
```

If we want to produce samples from  $X \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  with some user-specified  $\mu$  and  $\sigma$ , then we can use the following relationship between  $X$  and  $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ :

$$X \leftarrow \mu + \sigma Z, \quad Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1).$$

Suppose we want samples from  $X \sim \text{Normal}(\mu = \pi, \sigma^2 = 2)$ , then we can do the following:

```
>> randn('state',679); % initialise the seed at 679 and method as Ziggurat -- TYPE help randn
>> mu=pi % set the desired mean parameter mu
mu =
    3.1416
>> sigma=sqrt(2) % set the desired standard deviation parameter sigma
sigma =
    1.4142
>> mu + sigma * randn(2,8) % produces a 2 X 8 array of samples from Normal(3.1416, 1.4.42)
ans =
    1.3955    1.7107    3.9572    3.2618    6.1652    2.6971    2.4940    4.5928
    0.8442    4.7617    3.5397    5.0282    1.6139    5.0977    2.0477    2.3286
```

**Labwork 156 (Sampling from truncated normal distributions)** [Christian P. Robert, Simulation of truncated normal variables, Statistics and Computing (1995) 5, 121-125] Let  $N_+(\mu, \tau, \sigma^2)$  denote the left-truncated normal distribution with truncation point  $\tau$  and density given by

$$f(x|\mu, \tau, \sigma^2) = \frac{\exp(-(x-\mu)^2/2\sigma^2)}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma[1 - \Phi((\tau-\mu)/\sigma)]} \mathbb{1}_{x \geq \tau}.$$

When  $\tau < \mu$ , the rejection sampler can readily be used to simulate from  $N_+(\mu, \tau, \sigma^2)$  by simulating from  $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  until a number larger than  $\tau$  is obtained. When  $\tau > \mu$ , however, this can be inefficient and increasingly so as  $\tau$  gets further out into the right tail. In this case, a more efficient approach is to use the rejection sampler with the following translated exponential distribution as the proposal distribution:

$$g(y|\lambda, \tau) = \lambda \exp(-\lambda(y-\tau)) \mathbb{1}_{y \geq \tau}.$$

1. Show that for simulating from  $N_+(\mu = 0, \tau, \sigma^2 = 1)$  when  $\tau \geq 0$ , the best choice of  $\lambda$  that maximizes the expected acceptance probability for the rejection sampler is given by

$$\lambda = \frac{\tau + \sqrt{\tau^2 + 4}}{2}$$

2. Find the maximum expected acceptance probabilities for the following truncation points,  $\tau = 0, 0.5, 1, 1.5, 2, 2.5$  and  $3$ . What can you conclude about efficiency as  $\tau$  gets further out into the right tail?
3. Describe how samples from  $N_+(\mu, \tau, \sigma^2)$  can be obtained by simulating from  $N_+(\mu = 0, \tau, \sigma^2 = 1)$  and using location-scale transformation.

**Proof:** TBD

**Exercise 179 (King's random walk on a chessboard)** Consider the squares in the chessboard as the state space  $\mathbb{X} = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, 7\}^2$  with a randomly walking black king, i.e., for each move from current state  $(u, v) \in \mathbb{X}$  the king chooses one of his  $k(u, v)$  possible moves uniformly at random. Is the Markov chain corresponding to the randomly walking black king on the chessboard irreducible and/or aperiodic?

**Exercise 180 (King's random walk on a chesstorus)** We can obtain a chesstorus from a pliable chessboard by identifying the eastern edge with the western edge (roll the chessboard into a cylinder) and then identifying the northern edge with the southern edge (gluing the top and bottom end of the cylinder together by turning into a doughnut or torus). Consider the squares in the chesstorus as the state space  $\mathbb{X} = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, 7\}^2$  with a randomly walking black king, i.e., for each move from current state  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{X}$  the king chooses one of his 8 possible moves uniformly at random according to the scheme:  $X_t \leftarrow X_{t-1} + W_t$ , where  $W_t$  is independent and identically distributed as follows:

$$P(W_t = w) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{8} & \text{if } w \in \{(1, 1), (1, 0), (1, -1), (0, -1), (-1, -1), (-1, 0), (-1, 1), (0, 1)\}, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Is the Markov chain corresponding to the randomly walking black king on the chesstorus irreducible and/or aperiodic? Write a MATLAB script to simulate a sequence of  $n$  states visited by the king if he started from  $(0, 0)$  on the chesstorus.

## 6.4 Stationarity

We are interested in statements about a Markov chain that has been running for a long time. For any nontrivial Markov chain  $(X_0, X_1, \dots)$  the value of  $X_t$  will keep fluctuating in the state space  $\mathbb{X}$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  and we cannot hope for convergence to a fixed point state  $x^* \in \mathbb{X}$  or to a  $k$ -cycle of states  $\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k\} \subset \mathbb{X}$ . However, we can look one level up into the space of probability distributions over  $\mathbb{X}$  that give the probability of the Markov chain visiting each state  $x \in \mathbb{X}$  at time  $t$ , and hope that the distribution of  $X_t$  over  $\mathbb{X}$  settles down as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . The Markov chain convergence theorem indeed states that the distribution of  $X_t$  over  $\mathbb{X}$  settles down as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , provided the Markov chain is irreducible and aperiodic.

**Definition 89 (Stationary distribution)** Let  $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}_+}$  be a Markov chain with state space  $\mathbb{X} = \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$  and transition matrix  $P = (P(x, y))_{(x,y) \in \mathbb{X}^2}$ . A row vector

$$\pi = (\pi(s_1), \pi(s_2), \dots, \pi(s_k)) \in \mathbb{R}^{1 \times k}$$

is said to be a **stationary distribution** for the Markov chain, if it satisfies the conditions of being:

1. a probability distribution:  $\pi(x) \geq 0$  for each  $x \in \mathbb{X}$  and  $\sum_{x \in \mathbb{X}} \pi(x) = 1$ , and
2. a fixed point:  $\pi P = \pi$ , i.e.,  $\sum_{x \in \mathbb{X}} \pi(x)P(x, y) = \pi(y)$  for each  $y \in \mathbb{X}$ .

**Definition 90 (Hitting times)** If a Markov chain  $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}_+}$  with state space  $\mathbb{X} = \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$  and transition matrix  $P = (P(x, y))_{(x,y) \in \mathbb{X}^2}$  starts at state  $x$ , then we can define the **hitting time**

$$T(x, y) = \min\{t \geq 1 : X_t = y\}.$$

**Proposition 88** If the Markov chain  $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$ , with transition matrix  $P$  on state space  $\mathbb{X}$  is irreducible and aperiodic then there is an integer  $\tau$  such that  $P^\tau(x, y) > 0$  for all  $t \geq \tau$  and all

**Proof:** TBD

**Proposition 87** If the Markov chain  $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$ , with transition matrix  $P$  on state space  $\mathbb{X}$  is irreducible and aperiodic then there is an integer  $\tau$  such that  $P^\tau(x, x) > 0$  for all  $t \geq \tau$  and all

**Proof:** See Proofs of Lemma 1.1, Lemma 1.2 and Theorem 1.1 in Appendix of Pierre Bremaud, *Markov Chains, Gibbs Fields, Monte Carlo Simulation, and Queues*, Springer, 1999.

Then there exists a positive integer  $n < \infty$  such that  $n \in A$  for all  $n \geq \tau$ .

2.  $A$  is closed under addition, meaning that if  $(a, a) \in A$  then  $a + a \in A$ .

1.  $A$  is a monoid, meaning that  $\gcd(A) = 1$  and

**Proposition 86** Let  $A = \{a_1, a_2, \dots\} \subset \mathbb{N}$  that satisfies the following two conditions:

odd and has period 2 when  $k$  is even.

**Exercise 178** Show that the Markov chain corresponding to a drumcard's walk around a polygonal block with  $k$  corners is irreducible for any integer  $k > 1$ . Show that it is aperiodic only when  $k$  is even.

$$\gcd(\mathbb{L}(0)) = \gcd(\mathbb{L}(1)) = \gcd(\mathbb{L}(2)) = \gcd(\mathbb{L}(3)) = \gcd(\{2, 4, 6, \dots\}) = 2 \neq 1$$

We have already seen example of irreducible Markov chains that were either periodic or aperiodic. For instance, Freddy's Markov chain with  $(p, q) \in \{0, 1\}^2$  is aperiodic since the period of either of its two states is given by  $\gcd(\{1, 2, 3, \dots\}) = 1$ . However, the Markov chain model for a drumcard's walk around a polygonal block over the state space  $\{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$  is periodic because you can only return to the startng state in an even number of time steps and

is said to be aperiodic if all of its states are aperiodic, i.e.,  $\gcd(\mathbb{L}(x)) = 1$  for every  $x \in \mathbb{X}$ . If a chain is not aperiodic, we call it **periodic**.

Devise an algorithm to transform samples from Uniform(0, 1) RV to those from  $X$ . Present your answer as pseudo-code.

$$f_X(x) = (a(1+x^2))^{-1}$$

**Ex. 4.1** — Suppose the continuous RV  $X$  has PDF:

#### 4.4 Exercises in Simulation

5. Write a MATLAB function that provides samples from a truncated normal distribution. The function should have the following inputs: number of samples required, left or right truncation,  $\mu$ ,  $\sigma^2$  and  $\tau$ .

4. A related distribution, denoted by  $N^-(\mu, \tau, \sigma^2)$ , is the right-truncated normal distribution simulating from an appropriate left-truncated normal distribution.

**Proposition 84** If the Markov chain  $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$ , with transition matrix  $P$  on state space  $\mathbb{X}$  is irreducible then  $\gcd(\mathbb{L}(x)) = \gcd(\mathbb{L}(y))$  for any  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{X}^2$ .

**Definition 83 (Return times and period)** Let  $\mathbb{L}(x) := \{t \in \mathbb{N} : P^t(x, x) > 0\}$  be the set of possible return times to the starting state  $x$ . The period of state  $x$  is defined to be  $\gcd(\mathbb{L}(x))$ , the greatest common divisor of  $\mathbb{L}(x)$ . When the period of a state  $x$  is 1, i.e.,  $\gcd(\mathbb{L}(x)) = 1$ , then the state  $x$  is said to be an **aperiodic state**.

```

>> mu1 = mu0 * Phot % distribution for tomorrow since today is hot
mu1 =
    0.9500    0.0500
>> mu2 = mu1 * Pcold % distribution for day after tomorrow since tomorrow is supposed to be cold
mu2 =
    0.6400    0.3600
>> mu2 = mu0 * Phot * Pcold % we can also get the distribution for day after tomorrow directly
mu2 =
    0.6400    0.3600

```

## Chapter 5

# Limit Laws of Statistics

### 5.1 Convergence of Random Variables

This important topic is concerned with the limiting behavior of sequences of RVs. We want to understand what it means for a sequence of random variables  $\{X_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} := X_1, X_2, \dots$  to converge to another random variable  $X$ , when all RVs are defined on the same probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ .

$$\{X_i\}_{i=1}^n := X_1, X_2, X_3, \dots, X_{n-1}, X_n \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

From a statistical or decision-making viewpoint, as you will see in Inference Theory I course,  $n \rightarrow \infty$  is associated with the amount of data or information  $\rightarrow \infty$ . More abstractly, we are interested in what happens to the limiting RV  $X := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} X_n$  when given the DFs  $F_n(x)$  for each  $X_n$ .

We need different notions of convergence to characterize such a behavior: two simplest behaviors are that the sequence eventually takes a constant value  $\theta$ , i.e.  $X_n$  approaches  $X \sim \text{Point Mass}(\theta)$  RV, or that values in the sequence continue to change but can be described by an unchanging probability distribution, i.e.,  $X_n$  approaches  $X \sim F(x)$ . See [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convergence\\_of\\_random\\_variables](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convergence_of_random_variables).

Let us first refresh ourselves with notions of convergence, limits and continuity in the real line (Sec. 1.8.1) before proceeding further.

Can the sequences of  $\{\text{Point Mass}(\theta_i = 17)\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$  and  $\{\text{Point Mass}(\theta_i = 1/i)\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$  RVs be the same as the two sequences of real numbers  $\{x_i\}_{i=1}^{\infty} = 17, 17, 17, \dots$  and  $\{x_i\}_{i=1}^{\infty} = \frac{1}{1}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \dots$  we saw in Examples 12 and 13?

Yes why not – just move to space of distributions over the reals! See Figure 5.1.

**Classwork 157 (Convergence of  $X_i \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1/i)$ )** Suppose you are given an independent sequence of RVs  $\{X_i\}_{i=1}^n$ , where  $X_i \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1/i)$ . How would you talk about the convergence of  $X_n \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1/n)$  as  $n$  approaches  $\infty$ ? Take a look at Figure 5.2 for insight. The probability mass of  $X_n$  increasingly concentrates about 0 as  $n$  approaches  $\infty$  and the variance  $1/n$  approaches 0, as depicted in Figure 5.2. Based on this observation, can we expect  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} X_n = X$ , where the limiting RV  $X \sim \text{Point Mass}(0)$ ?

The answer is **no**. This is because  $P(X_n = X) = 0$  for any  $n$ , since  $X \sim \text{Point Mass}(0)$  is a discrete RV with exactly one outcome 0 and  $X_n \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1/n)$  is a continuous RV for every  $n$ , however large. In other words, a continuous RV, such as  $X_n$ , has 0 probability of realizing any single real number in its support, such as 0.

**Exercise 176** For the Markov chain in Example 175 compute the probability that the day after tomorrow is wet if today is dry and hot but tomorrow is supposed to be cold.

### 6.3 Irreducibility and Aperiodicity

The utility of our mathematical constructions with Markov chains depends on a delicate balance between generality and specificity. We introduce two specific conditions called irreducibility and aperiodicity that make Markov chains more useful to model real-word phenomena.

**Definition 81 (Communication between states)** Let  $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}_+}$  be a homogeneous Markov chain with transition matrix  $P$  on state space  $\mathbb{X} := \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$ . We say that a state  $s_i$  **communicates** with a state  $s_j$  and write  $s_i \rightarrow s_j$  or  $s_j \leftarrow s_i$  if there exists an  $\eta(s_i, s_j) \in \mathbb{N}$  such that:

$$P(X_{t+\eta(s_i, s_j)} = s_j | X_t = s_i) = P^{\eta(s_i, s_j)}(s_i, s_j) > 0.$$

In words,  $s_i$  communicates with  $s_j$  if you can eventually reach  $s_j$  from  $s_i$ . If  $P^{\eta}(s_i, s_j) = 0$  for every  $\eta \in \mathbb{N}$  then we say that  $s_i$  **does not communicate** with  $s_j$  and write  $s_i \not\rightarrow s_j$  or  $s_j \not\leftarrow s_i$ .

We say that two states  $s_i$  and  $s_j$  **intercommunicate** and write  $s_i \leftrightarrow s_j$  if  $s_i \rightarrow s_j$  and  $s_j \rightarrow s_i$ . In words, two states intercommunicate if you can eventually reach one from another and vice versa. When  $s_i$  and  $s_j$  do not intercommunicate we write  $s_i \not\leftrightarrow s_j$ .

**Definition 82 (Irreducible)** A homogeneous Markov chain  $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}_+}$  with transition matrix  $P$  on state space  $\mathbb{X} := \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$  is said to be **irreducible** if  $s_i \leftrightarrow s_j$  for each  $(s_i, s_j) \in \mathbb{X}^2$ . Otherwise the chain is said to be **reducible**.

We have already seen examples of reducible and irreducible Markov chains. For example, Flippant Freddy's family of Markov chains with the  $(p, q)$ -parametric family of transition matrices,  $\{P_{(p,q)} : (p, q) \in [0, 1]^2\}$ , where each  $P_{(p,q)}$  is given by Equation 6.3. If  $(p, q) \in (0, 1)^2$ , then the corresponding Markov chain is irreducible because we can go from rollopia to flippopia or vice versa in just one step with a positive probability. Thus, the Markov chains with transition matrices in  $\{P_{(p,q)} : (p, q) \in (0, 1)^2\}$  are irreducible. But if  $p$  or  $q$  take probability values at the boundary of  $[0, 1]$ , i.e.,  $p \in \{0, 1\}$  or  $q \in \{0, 1\}$  then we have to be more careful because we may never get from at least one state to the other and the corresponding Markov chains may be reducible. For instance, if  $p = 0$  or  $q = 0$  then we will be stuck in either rollopia or flippopia, respectively. However, if  $p = 1$  and  $q \neq 0$  or  $q = 1$  and  $p \neq 0$  then we can get from each state to the other. Therefore, only the transition matrices in  $\{P_{(p,q)} : p \in \{0\} \text{ or } q \in \{0\}\}$  are reducible.

The simplest way to verify whether a Markov chain is irreducible is by looking at its transition diagram (without the positive edge probabilities) and checking that from each state there is a sequence of arrows leading to any other state.

**Exercise 177** Revisit all the Markov chains we have considered up to now and determine whether they are reducible or irreducible by checking that from each state there is a sequence of arrows leading to any other state in their transition graphs.

of RVs  $\{X_i\}_{i=1}^n$ , where  $X_i \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1/i)$  with  $\text{DF } F_i$ , and let  $X \sim \text{Point Mass}(0)$  with  $\text{DF } F$ .

**Example 158 (Convergence in distribution)** Suppose you are given an independent sequence of RVs  $\{X_i\}_{i=1}^n$ , where  $X_i \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1/i)$  with  $\text{DF } F_i$ , and let  $X \sim \text{Point Mass}(0)$  with  $\text{DF } F$ .

Let us revisit the problem of convergence in Definition 19 of a DF, armed with our new notions of convergence.

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(\omega : X_n(\omega) \leq t) = P(\omega : X(\omega) \leq t), \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

The above limit, by (3.2) in our Definition 19 of a DF, can be equivalently expressed as follows:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F_n(t) = F(t) \quad [\text{in the sense of Definition 4}].$$

if for any real number  $t$  at which  $F$  is continuous,

$$X_n \rightsquigarrow X$$

$X$ . The we say that  $X_n$  converges to  $X$  in distribution, and write:

a sequence of RVs and let  $X$  be another RV. Let  $F_n$  denote the DF of  $X_n$  and  $F$  denote the DF of  $X$ . Then we say that  $X_n$  converges to  $X$  in distribution, and write:

2. Central Limit Theorem,
1. Law of Large Numbers,

Thus, we need more sophisticated notions of convergence for sequences of RVs. Two such notions are formalized next as they are minimal prerequisites for a clear understanding of two basic propositions in Statistics:

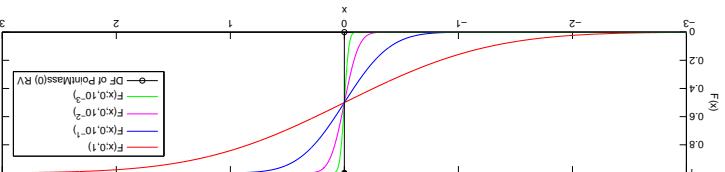


Figure 5.2: Distribution function plots of several Normal( $\mu, \sigma^2$ ) RVs for  $\sigma^2 = 1, \frac{1}{10}, \frac{1}{100}$ .

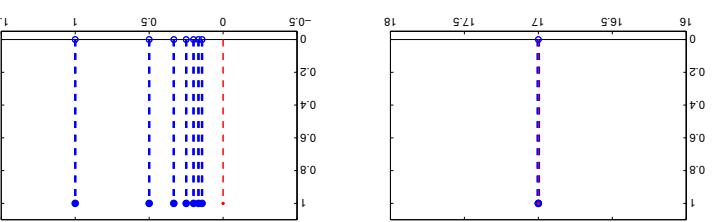


Figure 5.1: Sequence of  $\{\text{Point Mass}(1/t)\}_{t=1}^\infty$  RVs (left panel) and  $\{\text{Point Mass}(1/i)\}_{i=1}^\infty$  RVs (only the first seven are shown on right panel) and their limiting RVs in red.

**Definition 159 (Inhomogeneous finite Markov chain)** Let  $P_1, P_2, \dots$  be a sequence of  $k \times k$

```

m0 = 1   0
>> m0 = [1 0] today is dry
0.4500  0.5500
0.6500  0.3500
Pcold = 0.65 0.35, 0.45 0.55 % Transition Probability Matrix for cold day
>> Phot = [0.95 0.05, 0.75 0.25] % Transition Probability Matrix for hot day
>> Pcold = [0.65 0.35, 0.45 0.55] % Transition Probability Matrix for cold day
We can use (6.9) to obtain the answer as 0.36:
tomorrow will be wet? We can use (6.9) to obtain the answer as 0.36:
dry and hot tomorrow is supposed to be cold then what is the probability that the day after
We use the transition matrix for today to obtain the state probabilities for tomorrow. If today is
We say that a day is hot if its maximum temperature is more than 20°C. Otherwise it is cold.
matrices for hot and cold days:

```

$$P_{\text{hot}} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.75 & 0.25 \\ 0.95 & 0.05 \end{pmatrix}, \quad P_{\text{cold}} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.45 & 0.55 \\ 0.65 & 0.35 \end{pmatrix}.$$

into account in our weather model for dry and wet days in Christchurch, let us have two transition matrices for the dry-wet chain of Example 170 with state space  $\{d, w\}$ . In order to take some seasonality into account in our weather model for dry and wet days in Christchurch, let us have two transition

**Example 175 (a more sophisticated dry-wet chain)** Let us make a more sophisticated ver-

**Exercise 174** Prove Proposition 80 using induction as done for Proposition 78.

**Proof:** Left as Exercise 174.

$$u_t = u_0 P_1 P_2 \cdots P_t. \quad (6.9)$$

where  $u_t(s_i) = P(X_t = s_i)$ , satisfies:

$$u_t = (u_t(s_1), u_t(s_2), \dots, u_t(s_k)),$$

we have for any  $t \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  that the distribution at time  $t$  given by:

$$(P_1, P_2, \dots), \quad P_t = (P_t(s_i, s_j))_{(s_i, s_j) \in \mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{X}}, \quad t \in \{1, 2, \dots\}$$

where  $u_0(s_i) = P(X_0 = s_i)$ , and transition matrices

$$u_0 = (u_0(s_1), u_0(s_2), \dots, u_0(s_k)),$$

initial distribution

$$P(X^{t+1} = y | H^{t-1} \cup \{X^t = x\}) = P(X^{t+1} = y | X^t = x) := P^{t+1}(x, y). \quad (6.8)$$

the following **Markov Property** is satisfied:

For a finite inhomogeneous Markov chain  $(X^t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$  with state space  $\mathbb{X} = \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$ , and all probable historical events  $H^{t-1} := \bigcup_{n=0}^{t-1} \{X^n = x_n\}$  with  $P(H^{t-1} \cup \{X^t = x\}) < 0$ ,

Markov chain with transition matrices  $P_1, P_2, \dots$ , if for all pairs of states  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{X}$ , all integers  $t \geq 1$ , and all probable historical events  $H^{t-1} := \bigcup_{n=0}^{t-1} \{X^n = x_n\}$  with  $P(H^{t-1} \cup \{X^t = x\}) < 0$ ,

Markov chain with transition matrices  $P_1, P_2, \dots, P_t, P_{t+1}, \dots, P_k$  is called an inhomogeneous

$(X^t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}^+} := (X^0, X^1, \dots)$  with finite state space  $\mathbb{X} := \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$  is called a stochastic sequence

We can formalize our observation in Classwork 157 that  $X_n$  is concentrating about 0 as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  by the statement:

$X_n$  is converging in distribution to  $X$ , ie,  $X_n \rightsquigarrow X$ .

**Proof:** To check that the above statement is true we need to verify that the definition of convergence in distribution is satisfied for our sequence of RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  and the limiting RV  $X$ . Thus, we need to verify that for any continuity point  $t$  of the Point Mass(0) DF  $F$ ,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F_n(t) = F(t)$ . First note that

$$X_n \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1/n) \implies Z := \sqrt{n}X_n \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1),$$

and thus

$$F_n(t) = P(X_n < t) = P(\sqrt{n}X_n < \sqrt{nt}) = P(Z < \sqrt{nt}).$$

The only discontinuous point of  $F$  is 0 where  $F$  jump from 0 to 1.

When  $t < 0$ ,  $F(t)$ , being the constant 0 function over the interval  $(-\infty, 0)$ , is continuous at  $t$ . Since  $\sqrt{nt} \rightarrow -\infty$ , as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F_n(t) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(Z < \sqrt{nt}) = 0 = F(t).$$

And, when  $t > 0$ ,  $F(t)$ , being the constant 1 function over the interval  $(0, \infty)$ , is again continuous at  $t$ . Since  $\sqrt{nt} \rightarrow \infty$ , as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F_n(t) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(Z < \sqrt{nt}) = 1 = F(t).$$

Thus, we have proved that  $X_n \rightsquigarrow X$  by verifying that for any  $t$  at which the Point Mass(0) DF  $F$  is continuous, we also have the desired equality:  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F_n(t) = F(t)$ .

However, note that

$$F_n(0) = \frac{1}{2} \neq F(0) = 1,$$

and so convergence fails at 0, i.e.  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F_n(t) \neq F(t)$  at  $t = 0$ . But,  $t = 0$  is not a continuity point of  $F$  and the definition of convergence in distribution only requires the convergence to hold at continuity points of  $F$ .

Convergence in distribution does not in general imply that the sequence of corresponding probability density functions will also converge. Consider for example RV  $X_n$  with density  $\mathbb{1}_{(0,1)}(x)(1 - \cos(2\pi nx))$ . These RVs converge in distribution to  $X \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1)$ , but their densities (PDFs) do not converge at all as evident in Figure 5.3.

**Proposition 63 (Scheffé's Theorem)** According to **Scheffé's Theorem** convergence of the probability density function (for a continuous RV) or probability mass function (for a discrete RV) implies convergence in distribution.

**Proof:** We will state this without a Proof here as Proof of the Theorem requires measure theory in generality<sup>1</sup>. However, you should be able to see why convergence of PMFs  $f_n(x)$  for discrete RVs  $X_n$ , to  $f(x)$ , the PMF of another discrete RV  $X$ , implies convergence in their corresponding DFs, i.e.,  $F_n(x) \rightarrow F(x)$  for each  $x$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

<sup>1</sup>See [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scheff%C3%A9%27s\\_lemma](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scheff%C3%A9%27s_lemma).

Suppose you sell \$100 of lemonade at a road-side stand on a hot day but only \$50 on a cold day. Then we can compute your expected sales tomorrow if today is dry as follows:

```
>> P=[0.75 0.25; 0.5 0.5] % Transition Probability Matrix
P =
    0.7500    0.2500
    0.5000    0.5000
>> f = [100; 50] % sales of lemonade in dollars on a dry and wet day
f =
    100
    50
>> P*f % expected sales tomorrow
ans =
    87.5000
    75.0000
>> mu0 = [1 0] % today is dry
mu0 =
    1     0
>> mu0*P*f % expected sales tomorrow if today is dry
ans =    87.5000
```

**Exercise 171 (Freddy discovers a gold coin)** Flippant Freddy of Example 169 found a gold coin at the bottom of the pond. Since this discovery he jumps around differently in the enchanted pond. He can be found now in one of three states: flipopia, rollopia and hydropia (when he dives into the pond). His state space is  $\mathbb{X} = \{r, f, h\}$  now and his transition mechanism is as follows: If he rolls an odd number with his fair die in rollopia he will jump to flipopia but if he rolls an even number then he will stay in rollopia only if the outcome is 2 otherwise he will dive into hydropia. If the fair gold coin toss at the bottom of hydropia is Heads then Freddy will swim to flipopia otherwise he will remain in hydropia. Finally, if he is in flipopia he will remain there if the silver coin lands Heads otherwise he will jump to rollopia.

Make a Markov chain model of the new jumping mechanism adopted by Freddy. Draw the transition diagram, produce the transition matrix  $P$  and compute using MATLAB the probability that Freddy will be in hydropia after one, two, three, four and five jumps given that he starts in hydropia.

**Exercise 172** Let  $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}_+}$  be a Markov chain with state space  $\{a, b, c\}$ , initial distribution  $\mu_0 = (1/3, 1/3, 1/3)$  and transition matrix

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ c & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

For each  $t$ , define  $Y_t = \mathbb{1}_{\{b,c\}}(X_t)$ . Show that  $(Y_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}_+}$  is not a Markov chain.

**Exercise 173** Let  $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}_+}$  be a (homogeneous) Markov chain on  $\mathbb{X} = \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$  with transition matrix  $P$  and initial distribution  $\mu_0$ . For a given  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ , let  $(Y_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}_+}$  be a stochastic sequence with  $Y_t = X_{mt}$ . Show that  $(Y_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}_+}$  is a Markov chain with transition matrix  $P^m$ . This establishes that Markov chains that are sampled at regular time steps are also Markov chains.

Until now our Markov chains have been **homogeneous** in time according to Definition 77, i.e., the transition matrix  $P$  does not change with time. We define inhomogeneous Markov chains that allow their transition matrices to possibly change with time. Such Markov chains are more realistic as models in some situations and more flexible as algorithms in the sequel.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \underbrace{\left( \frac{n}{n} \right) \left( \frac{n-1}{n} \right) \cdots \left( \frac{n-x+1}{n} \right) \left( \frac{n-x}{n} \right) \cdots \left( \frac{n-2}{n} \right) \left( \frac{n}{n-1} \right)}_{\text{Binomial}(n, \theta)} = \\
 & \quad \left( \frac{n}{n} \right) \left( \frac{n-1}{n} \right) \cdots \left( \frac{n-x+1}{n} \right) \left( \frac{n-x}{n} \right) \cdots \left( \frac{n-2}{n} \right) \left( \frac{n}{n-1} \right) = \\
 & \quad P(X=x) = \binom{n}{x} \left( \frac{\theta}{n} \right)^x \left( 1 - \frac{\theta}{n} \right)^{n-x}
 \end{aligned}$$

0. We need to show that  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(X_n = x) = P(Y = x) = e^{-\lambda} \lambda^x / x!$  for any  $x \in \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$ . Let  $X_n \sim \text{Binomial}(n, \theta = \lambda/n)$  and  $Y \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda)$  and let  $\lambda = n\theta$  remain constant as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\theta \rightarrow 0$ .

is much simpler to work with than the combinatorially laden  $\text{Binomial}(n, \theta = \lambda/n)$  RV. We sketch the details of this next.

However, for some real parameter  $\lambda > 0$ , the  $\text{Binomial}(n, \lambda/n)$  RV with probability of the number of successes in  $n$  trials, with per-trial success probability  $\lambda/n$ , approaches the Poisson distribution with expectation  $\lambda$ , as  $n$  approaches  $\infty$  (actually, it converges in distribution). The  $\text{Poisson}(\lambda)$  RV with expectation  $\lambda$ , as  $n$  approaches  $\infty$  (actually, it converges in distribution).

**Example 159** ( $\text{Binomial}(n, \lambda/n) \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda)$ ) In several situations, as we saw already, it becomes cumbersome to model the events using the  $\text{Binomial}(n, \theta)$  RV, especially when the parameter  $\theta \ll 1/n$  and the events become rare.

**Example 170 (Dry-Wet Christchurch Weather)** Consider a toy weather model for dry or wet days in Christchurch using a Markov chain with state space  $\{d, w\}$ . Let the transition diagram in Figure 6.3 give the transition matrix  $P$  for our dry-wet Markov chain. Using (6.7) we can find the probabilities of being dry on the day after tomorrow is 0.625 given that it is wet today as follows:

```

ans = 0.6250 0.3750
>>> mu0 = 0 % It is wet today gives the initial distribution
mu0 = 1
>>> mu0 * P^2 % the distribution in 2 days from today
ans = 0.5000 0.2500
>>> p=[0.75 0.25; 0.5 0.5] % Transition Probability Matrix
p =
    0.7500 0.2500
    0.5000 0.5000
    
```

that the probability of being dry on the day after tomorrow is 0.625 given that it is wet today as follows:

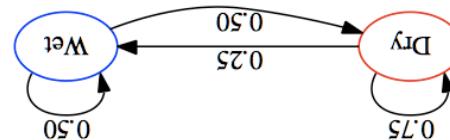
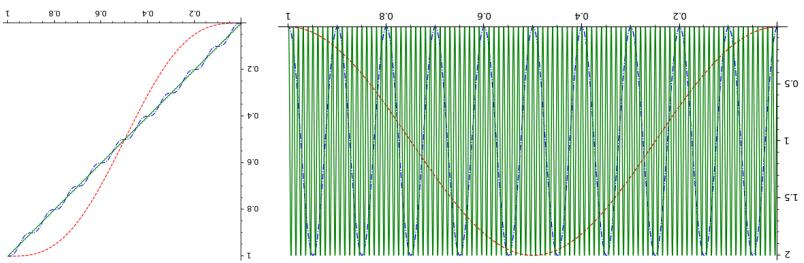


Figure 6.3: Transition Diagram of Dry and Wet Days in Christchurch.

Since  $F(x) = P(X \leq x)$ , convergence in distribution means that the probability for  $X_n$  to be in a given range is approximately equal to the probability that the value of the limiting RV  $X$  is in that range, provided  $n$  is sufficiently large.

Figure 5.3: PDF  $f_{X_n}(x) := \mathbb{I}_{(0,1)}(x)(1 - \cos(2\pi nx))$  of the RV  $X_n$  [the left sub-figure] and its DF  $F_n(x) := \int_x^\infty \mathbb{I}_{(0,1)}(y)(1 - \cos(2\pi ny)) dy$  [the right sub-figure] of the RV  $X_n$  [the right sub-figure].



along with our new notations means that:

0 elsewhere. We simply write  $P_x$  for  $P_{1^{(x)}}$  or  $E_x$  for  $E_{1^{(x)}}$ . Thus, Proposition 78 we represent it by  $e_x$ , the  $1 \times k$  orthonormal basis row vector with a 1 in the  $x$ -th entry and a single initial state  $x$  given by:

$$\mathbb{I}^{\{x\}}(y) := \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } y \neq x \\ 1 & \text{if } y = x \end{cases}$$

Thus, multiplying a row vector  $\mu_0$  by  $P_t$  on the right takes you from current distribution over the state space to the distribution in  $t$  steps of the chain.

Since we will be interested in Markov chains on  $\mathbb{X} = \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$  with the same transition matrix  $P$  but different initial distributions, we introduce  $P_u$  and  $E_u$  for probabilities and expectations given that the initial distribution is  $u$ , respectively. When the initial distribution is concentrated at a single initial state  $x$  given by:

$$P^x(X_t = y) = (e_x P^t)(y) = P^t(x, y).$$

In words, the probability of going to  $y$  from  $x$  in  $t$  steps is given by the  $(x, y)$ -th entry of  $P^t$ , the  $t$ -step transition matrix. We refer to the  $x$ -th row and the  $x$ -th column of  $P$  by  $P(x, \cdot)$  and  $E(x, \cdot)$ , respectively.

Let the function  $f(x) : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be represented by the column vector  $f := (f(s_1), f(s_2), \dots, f(s_k))$  in  $\mathbb{R}^k$ . Then the  $x$ -th entry of  $P^t f$  is:

$$P^t f(x) = \sum_y P^t(x, y) f(y) = \sum_y f(y) P^t(x, y) = E^x(f(X_t)).$$

Thus is the expected value of  $f$  under the distribution of states in  $t$  steps given that we start at state  $x$ . Thus multiplying a column vector  $f$  by  $P^t$  from the left takes you from a function on the state space to its expected value in  $t$  steps of the chain.

This is the expected value of  $f$  under the distribution of states in  $t$  steps given that we start at state  $x$ .

Example 171 (Dry-Wet Christchurch Weather) Consider a toy weather model for dry or wet days in Christchurch using a Markov chain with state space  $\{d, w\}$ . Let the transition diagram in Figure 6.3 give the transition matrix  $P$  for our dry-wet Markov chain. Using (6.7) we can find the probabilities of being dry on the day after tomorrow is 0.625 given that it is wet today as follows:

that the probability of being dry on the day after tomorrow is 0.625 given that it is wet today as follows:

**Figure 6.3: Transition Diagram of Dry and Wet Days in Christchurch.**

As  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , the expression below the first overbrace  $\rightarrow 1$ , while that below the second overbrace, being independent of  $n$  remains the same. By the elementary examples of limits 17 and 18, as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , the expression over the first underbrace approaches  $e^{-\lambda}$  while that over the second underbrace approaches 1. Finally, we get the desired limit:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(X = x) = \frac{e^{-\lambda} \lambda^x}{x!}.$$

The second notion of convergence of RVs is convergence in probability.

**Definition 64 (Convergence in Probability)** Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  be a sequence of RVs and let  $X$  be another RV. Let  $F_n$  denote the DF of  $X_n$  and  $F$  denote the DF of  $X$ . Then we say that  $X_n$  converges to  $X$  in probability, and write:

$$X_n \xrightarrow{P} X$$

if for every real number  $\epsilon > 0$ ,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(|X_n - X| > \epsilon) = 0 \quad [\text{in the sense of Definition 4}].$$

Once again, the above limit, by (3.1) in our Definition 18 of a RV, can be equivalently expressed as follows:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(\{\omega : |X_n(\omega) - X(\omega)| > \epsilon\}) = 0, \quad \text{ie,} \quad P(\{\omega : |X_n(\omega) - X(\omega)| > \epsilon\}) \rightarrow 0, \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

For the same sequence of RVs in Classwork 157 and Example 158 we are tempted to ask whether  $X_n \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1/n)$  converges in probability to  $X \sim \text{Point Mass}(0)$ , i.e. whether  $X_n \xrightarrow{P} X$ . We need some elementary inequalities in Probability to help us answer this question. We visit these inequalities next.

**Proposition 65 (Markov's Inequality)** Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$  be a probability triple and let  $X = X(\omega)$  be a non-negative RV. Then,

$$P(X \geq \epsilon) \leq \frac{E(X)}{\epsilon}, \quad \text{for any } \epsilon > 0. \quad (5.2)$$

**Proof:**

$$\begin{aligned} X &= X \mathbf{1}_{\{y:y \geq \epsilon\}}(x) + X \mathbf{1}_{\{y:y < \epsilon\}}(x) \\ &\geq X \mathbf{1}_{\{y:y \geq \epsilon\}}(x) \\ &\geq \epsilon \mathbf{1}_{\{y:y \geq \epsilon\}}(x) \end{aligned} \quad (5.3)$$

Finally, taking expectations on both sides of the above inequality and then using the fact that the expectation of an indicator function of an event is simply the probability of that event (3.46), we get the desired result:

$$E(X) \geq \epsilon E(\mathbf{1}_{\{y:y \geq \epsilon\}}(x)) = \epsilon P(X \geq \epsilon).$$

Let us look at some immediate consequences of Markov's inequality.

Now let us generalise the lessons learned from Example 169.

**Proposition 78** For a finite Markov chain  $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}_+}$  with state space  $\mathbb{X} = \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_k\}$ , initial distribution

$$\mu_0 := (\mu_0(s_1), \mu_0(s_2), \dots, \mu_0(s_k)),$$

where  $\mu_0(s_i) = P(X_0 = s_i)$ , and transition matrix

$$P := (P(s_i, s_j))_{(s_i, s_j) \in \mathbb{X}^2},$$

we have for any  $t \in \mathbb{Z}_+$  that the distribution at time  $t$  given by:

$$\mu_t := (\mu_t(s_1), \mu_t(s_2), \dots, \mu_t(s_k)),$$

where  $\mu_t(s_i) = P(X_t = s_i)$ , satisfies:

$$\mu_t = \mu_0 P^t. \quad (6.7)$$

**Proof:** We will prove this by induction on  $\mathbb{Z}_+ := \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ . First consider the case when  $t = 0$ . Since  $P^0$  is the identity matrix  $I$ , we get the desired equality:

$$\mu_0 P^0 = \mu_0 I = \mu_0.$$

Next consider the case when  $t = 1$ . We get for each  $j \in \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$ , that

$$\begin{aligned} \mu_1(s_j) &= P(X_1 = s_j) = \sum_{i=1}^k P(X_1 = s_j, X_0 = s_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^k P(X_1 = s_j | X_0 = s_i) P(X_0 = s_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^k P(s_i, s_j) \mu_0(s_i) \\ &= (\mu_0 P)(s_j), \quad \text{the } j\text{-th entry of the row vector } (\mu_0 P). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $\mu_1 = \mu_0 P$ . Now, we will fix  $m$  and suppose that (6.7) holds for  $t = m$  and prove that (6.7) also holds for  $t = m + 1$ . For each  $j \in \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} \mu_{m+1}(s_j) &= P(X_{m+1} = s_j) = \sum_{i=1}^k P(X_{m+1} = s_j, X_m = s_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^k P(X_{m+1} = s_j | X_m = s_i) P(X_m = s_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^k P(s_i, s_j) \mu_m(s_i) \\ &= (\mu_m P)(s_j), \quad \text{the } j\text{-th entry of the row vector } (\mu_m P). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $\mu_{m+1} = \mu_m P$ . But  $\mu_m = \mu_0 P^m$  by the induction hypothesis, and therefore:

$$\mu_{m+1} = \mu_m P = \mu_0 P^m P = \mu_0 P^{m+1}.$$

Thus by the principle of mathematical induction we have proved the proposition.

Other motions of convergence are termed sure convergence or pointwise convergence, such as convergence in mean. But the above three types of convergence are elementary.

This means that the values of  $X^n$  approach the value of  $X$ , in the sense that events for which  $X^n$  does not converge to  $X$  have probability 0.

$$\text{P} = \left( \{ (\omega)X = (\omega)^u X \lim_{\infty \leftarrow u} : \mathcal{U} \ni \omega \} \right) \text{D} \quad \iff \quad \text{I} = \left( \{ X = {}^u X \lim_{\infty \leftarrow u} \right)$$

means that

$$X \xleftarrow[s \cdot v]{} {}^u X$$

**Definition 67** (Convergence Almost Surely (or with Probability 1)) To say that the sequence of RVs  $\{X_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  converges almost surely (or with probability 1 or strongly) towards another RV  $X$  on the same probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ , as denoted by

**Convention:** When  $X$  has a Point Mass( $\theta$ ) distribution and  $X_n \xrightarrow{P} X$ , we simply write  $X_n \xrightarrow{P} \theta$ .  
Hence, we have shown that for any  $\epsilon < 0$ ,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(|X_n - X| < \epsilon) = 0$  and therefore by Definition 64,  $X_n \xrightarrow{P} X$  or  $X_n \xrightarrow{P} \theta$ .

$$\leq \frac{\epsilon^2}{\mathbb{E}(X_n^2)} \quad [\text{by Markov's Inequality (5.2)}]$$

Let  $e$  be any real number greater than 0, then

To find out if  $X_n \xrightarrow{P} X$ , we need to show that for any  $\epsilon < 0$ ,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(|X_n - X| < \epsilon) = 0$ .

**Example 160** (Convergence in probability) Does the sequence of RVs  $\{X_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ , where  $X_n \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1/n)$ , converge in probability to  $X \sim \text{Point Mass}(0)$ , i.e. does  $X_n \xrightarrow{P} X$ ?

which will mirror the quality we have critique the consequences for the society of RVs in Classwork 157 and Example 158.

Markov's inequality.

$$(9\cdot\mathfrak{E}) \quad \frac{\zeta^3}{(v)_A} = \frac{\zeta^3}{((v)_A - v)_A} > (\zeta^3 - \zeta((X)\mathbb{E} - X))_A = (\zeta^3 - |(X)\mathbb{E} - X|)_A$$

$$(g \cdot g) = \frac{e^g}{(e^g)^{g^{-1}}} \geq (e^g)^{-1} X(g) = (e^g < |X|) D$$

$$(5.4) \quad \frac{\epsilon}{P(|X|)} \leq (\epsilon < |X|)$$

<sup>1</sup> Proposition 66 (Chebychev's inequality) for any RV  $X$  and any  $\epsilon > 0$ ,

207

In Figure 6.2 we see that  $P(X_i = r)$  approaches  $\pi(r) = \frac{a}{a+b}$  for the three cases of  $p$  and  $q$ :

that gives the solution:

fixed point condition:

It is evident from Figure 6.2 that as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\mu_t$  approaches a distribution, say  $\pi$ , that depends on  $p$  and  $q$  in  $P$ . Such a limit distribution is called the **stationary distribution** and must satisfy the

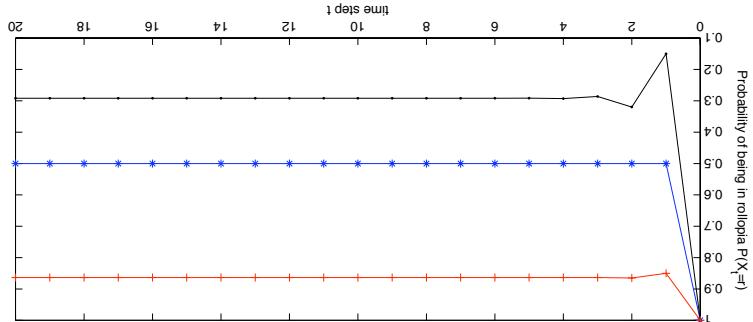


Figure 6.2: The probability of being back in roulette in three steps after having started three under transformation matrix  $P$  with (i)  $d = b = 0.5$  (blue line with asterisks), (ii)  $p = 0.85, d = 0.35$  (black line with dots) and (iii)  $p = 0.15, d = 0.95$  (red line with pluses).

Now, let us continue and look at the probability of being in region  $d$  after having started there for three values of  $p$  and  $d$  according to the following script:

### 5.1.1 Properties of Convergence of RVs<sup>\*\*</sup>

We will merely state some properties (without proofs that are hyper-linked for the curious student as they are advanced for this course) and relations between the three notions of convergence with some examples to better appreciate the subtleties among them. You will study the proofs of these statements in Probability Theory II. Just remember that subtle implication relations exist between the three notions.

- Convergence almost surely implies convergence in probability<sup>2</sup>

$$X_n \xrightarrow{a.s.} X \implies X_n \xrightarrow{P} X .$$

- By the Borel-Cantelli Lemma<sup>3</sup>, convergence in probability does not imply almost sure convergence in the discrete case<sup>4</sup>

- Convergence in probability implies convergence in distribution<sup>5</sup>

$$X_n \xrightarrow{P} X \implies X_n \rightsquigarrow X .$$

- Convergence in distribution to a constant  $\theta$  implies convergence in probability to  $\theta$ :<sup>6</sup>

$$X_n \rightsquigarrow \text{Point Mass}(\theta) \implies X_n \xrightarrow{P} \text{Point Mass}(\theta) .$$

- In general, convergence in distribution does not imply convergence in probability.

## 5.2 Law of Large Numbers

**Proposition 68 (Law of Large Numbers (LLN):**  $\bar{X}_n \xrightarrow{P} E(X_1)$ ) If we are given a sequence of independent and identically distributed RVs,  $X_1, X_2, \dots \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} X_1$  and if  $E(X_1)$  exists, as per (3.45), i.e.,  $E(\text{abs}(X_1)) < \infty$ , and the variance is finite, i.e.,  $V(X_1) < \infty$ , then the sample mean  $\bar{X}_n$  converges in probability to the expectation of any one of the IID RVs, say  $E(X_1)$  by convention. More formally, we write:

If  $X_1, X_2, \dots \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} X_1$  and if  $E(X_1)$  exists, then  $\bar{X}_n \xrightarrow{P} E(X_1)$ .

**Proof:** Because  $V(X_1) < \infty$ , we have:

$$\begin{aligned} P(|\bar{X}_n - E(\bar{X}_n)| \geq \epsilon) &= \frac{V(\bar{X}_n)}{\epsilon^2} && [\text{by applying Chebychev's inequality (5.6) to the RV } \bar{X}_n] \\ &= \frac{\frac{1}{n} V(X_1)}{\epsilon^2} && [\text{by the IID assumption of } X_1, X_2, \dots \text{ we can apply (3.77)}] \end{aligned}$$

<sup>2</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proofs\\_of\\_convergence\\_of\\_random\\_variables#Convergence\\_almost\\_surely\\_implies\\_convergence\\_in\\_probability](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proofs_of_convergence_of_random_variables#Convergence_almost_surely_implies_convergence_in_probability)

<sup>3</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/BorelCantelli\\_lemma](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/BorelCantelli_lemma)

<sup>4</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proofs\\_of\\_convergence\\_of\\_random\\_variables#Convergence\\_in\\_probability\\_does\\_not\\_imply\\_almost\\_sure\\_convergence\\_in\\_the\\_discrete\\_case](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proofs_of_convergence_of_random_variables#Convergence_in_probability_does_not_imply_almost_sure_convergence_in_the_discrete_case)

<sup>5</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proofs\\_of\\_convergence\\_of\\_random\\_variables#Convergence\\_in\\_probability\\_implies\\_convergence\\_in\\_distribution](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proofs_of_convergence_of_random_variables#Convergence_in_probability_implies_convergence_in_distribution)

<sup>6</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proofs\\_of\\_convergence\\_of\\_random\\_variables#Convergence\\_in\\_distribution\\_to\\_a\\_constant\\_implies\\_convergence\\_in\\_probability](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proofs_of_convergence_of_random_variables#Convergence_in_distribution_to_a_constant_implies_convergence_in_probability)

Definition of conditional probability and the Markov property, we see that,

$$\begin{aligned} P(X_2 = f | X_0 = r) &= P(X_2 = f, X_1 = f | X_0 = r) + P(X_2 = f, X_1 = r | X_0 = r) \\ &= \frac{P(X_2 = f, X_1 = f, X_0 = r)}{P(X_0 = r)} + \frac{P(X_2 = f, X_1 = r, X_0 = r)}{P(X_0 = r)} \\ &= P(X_2 = f | X_1 = f, X_0 = r) \frac{P(X_1 = f, X_0 = r)}{P(X_0 = r)} \\ &\quad + P(X_2 = f | X_1 = r, X_0 = r) \frac{P(X_1 = r, X_0 = r)}{P(X_0 = r)} \\ &= P(X_2 = f | X_1 = f, X_0 = r) P(X_1 = f | X_0 = r) \\ &\quad + P(X_2 = f | X_1 = r, X_0 = r) P(X_1 = r | X_0 = r) \\ &= P(X_2 = f | X_1 = f) P(X_1 = f | X_0 = r) \\ &\quad + P(X_2 = f | X_1 = r) P(X_1 = r | X_0 = r) \\ &= P(f, f) P(r, f) + P(r, r) P(r, r) \\ &= (1-q)p + p(1-p) \end{aligned} \tag{6.5}$$

Similarly,

$$P(X_2 = r | X_0 = r) = P(f, r) P(r, f) + P(r, r) P(r, r) = qp + (1-p)(1-p) \tag{6.6}$$

Instead of elaborate computations of the probabilities of being in a given state after Freddy's  $t$ -th restless moment, we can store the state probabilities at time  $t$  in a row vector:

$$\mu_t := (P(X_t = r | X_0 = r), P(X_t = f | X_0 = r)) ,$$

Now, we can conveniently represent Freddy starting in rollovia by the **initial distribution**  $\mu_0 = (1, 0)$  and obtain the 1-step **state probability vector** in (6.4) from  $\mu_1 = \mu_0 P$  and the 2-step state probabilities in (6.5) and (6.6) by  $\mu_2 = \mu_1 P = \mu_0 P P = \mu_0 P^2$ . In general, multiplying  $\mu_t$ , the state probability vector at time  $t$ , by the transition matrix  $P$  on the right updates the state probabilities by another step:

$$\mu_t = \mu_{t-1} P \quad \text{for all } t \geq 1 .$$

And for any initial distribution  $\mu_0$ ,

$$\mu_t = \mu_0 P^t \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0 .$$

This can be easily implemented in MATLAB as follows:

```
>> p=0.85; q=0.35; P = [1-p p; q 1-q] % assume an unfair coin and an unfair die
P =
    0.1500    0.8500
    0.3500    0.6500
>> mu0 = [1, 0] % initial state vector since Freddy started in rollovia
mu0 =
    1         0
>> mu0*P^0 % initial state distribution at t=0 is just mu0
ans =
    1         0
>> mu0*P^1 % state distribution at t=1
ans =
    0.1500    0.8500
>> mu0*P^2 % state distribution at t=2
ans =
    0.3200    0.6800
>> mu0*P^3 % state distribution at t=3
ans =
    0.2860    0.7140
```

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/L%23%A9vy%27s\\_continuity\\_theorem](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/L%23%A9vy%27s_continuity_theorem)

$$\mathbb{E}(e^{n\bar{X}_n}) = \left(1 + \frac{1}{t} \mathbb{E}(X_1) + o\left(\frac{1}{t}\right)\right)^n \rightarrow e^{\mathbb{E}(X_1)} \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

and

$$\varphi_{X_1}(t/n) = 1 + \frac{1}{t} \mathbb{E}(X_1) + o\left(\frac{1}{t}\right)$$

Hence,

$$\varphi_X(t) = 1 + t\mathbb{E}(X) + o(t).$$

Third, we can expand any CF whose expectation exists as a Taylor series with a remainder term that is  $o(t)$  as follows:

every  $\epsilon > 0$ , there exists an  $x_\epsilon$  such that for all  $x < x_\epsilon$   $|f(x)| < \epsilon |g(x)|$ . For example,  $\log(x)$  is  $o(x)$ , small  $o$  of  $g(x)$  if  $f$  is dominated by  $g$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ , i.e.,  $\frac{|f(x)|}{|g(x)|} \rightarrow 0$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ . More formally, for  $x^\epsilon$  is  $o(x)$  and  $x_m$  is  $o(x^{m+1})$  for  $m \geq 1$ .

Let us recall Landau's "small  $o$ " notation for the relation between two functions. We say,  $f(x)$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \prod_u^k \varphi_{X^u}(t/u) &= \prod_u^k \varphi_{X^u}(t/u) = (\varphi_{X^1}(t/u))^k \\ &= \mathbb{E}(e^{n\bar{X}_n}) = \mathbb{E}(e^{n\sum_{u=1}^k X^u}) = \mathbb{E}(e^{n\bar{X}_n}) \end{aligned}$$

Second, the CF of  $\bar{X}_n$  is

$$\mathbb{E}(e^{n\mathbb{E}(X_1)}) = e^{n\mathbb{E}(X_1)},$$

First, the CF of Point Mass ( $\mathbb{E}(X_1)$ ) is

the CF of the limiting RV, as this implies, by Lévy's Continuity Theorem on CFs, the convergence

Proof: Our proof now is based on the convergence of characteristic functions (CFs) pointwise to the CF of the limiting RV, as this implies, by Lévy's Continuity Theorem on CFs, the convergence of characteristic functions (CFs) pointwise to

If  $X_1, X_2, \dots, \bar{X}_n$  and if  $\mathbb{E}(X_1)$  exists, then  $\bar{X}_n \rightsquigarrow$  Point Mass ( $\mathbb{E}(X_1)$ ) as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

expectation of any one of the IID RVs, say Point Mass ( $\mathbb{E}(X_1)$ ) by convention. More formally, we

are given a sequence of independent and identically distributed (IID) RVs,  $X_1, X_2, \dots, \bar{X}_n$  and it  $\mathbb{E}(X_1)$  exists, i.e.,  $\mathbb{E}(|\text{abs}(X)|) < \infty$ , then the sample mean  $\bar{X}_n$  converges in distribution to the

claim made by the law of large numbers (LLN), namely that  $\bar{X}_n \xrightarrow{P} \mathbb{E}(X_1)$ .

or equivalently,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(|\bar{X}_n - \mathbb{E}(X_1)| \geq \epsilon) = 0$ . And the last statement is the definition of the

Proposition 69 (Weak Law of Large Numbers (LLN)):  $\bar{X}_n \rightsquigarrow$  Point Mass ( $\mathbb{E}(X_1)$ ) if we

claim made by the law of large numbers (LLN), namely that  $\bar{X}_n \xrightarrow{P} \mathbb{E}(X_1)$ .

Because of this dependence on the previous state, the stochastic sequence,  $(X_0, X_1, \dots)$ , are not

independent. We introduce the most important concepts using a simple example.

Thus, for a Markov chain  $(X_n)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$ , the distribution of  $X_{t+1}$  given  $X_0, \dots, X_t$  depends on  $X_t$  alone.

What happens when he is restless for the second time? By considering the two possibilities for  $X_1$ ,

$$P(X_1 = f | X_0 = r) = p, \quad P(X_1 = r | X_0 = r) = 1 - p. \quad (6.4)$$

Suppose we first see Freddy in roulette, i.e.,  $X_0 = r$ . When he gets restless for the first time we know from the first row of  $P$  that he will leave to flippopia with probability  $p$  and stay with probability  $1 - p$ , i.e.,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & & & \\ & \left( \begin{array}{cc} f & p(f,r) \\ p(r,f) & r \end{array} \right) & & & \\ & f & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \end{array} = \begin{array}{ccccc} & & & & \\ & \left( \begin{array}{cc} f & p(f,r) \\ p(r,f) & r \end{array} \right) & & & \\ & f & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \end{array} = P$$

Then Freddy's sequence of jumps  $(X_0, X_1, \dots)$  is a Markov chain on  $\mathbb{X}$  with transition matrix:

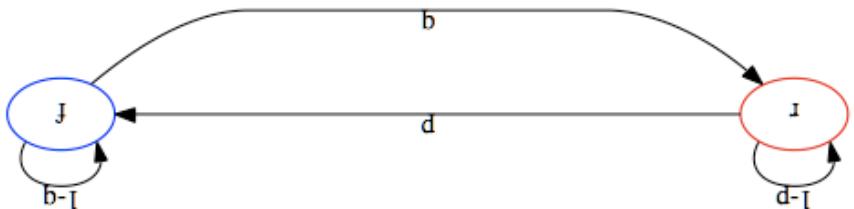


Figure 6.1: Transition Diagram of Philip's Jumps.

Let the state space  $\mathbb{X} = \{r, f\}$ , and let  $(X_0, X_1, \dots)$  be the sequence ofily pads occupied by Freddy's jumps by the following **transition diagram**:

Let the coin and if it landed Heads he would leave the coin behind and jump to rollipia, otherwise flip the coin to flippopia, otherwise he would stay put. When Freddy got restless he would roll the die and if the die landed odd he would leave the die behind and jump to rollipia. When Freddy got restless in rollipia he would roll the die and if the die landed odd he would leave the die behind and jump next. Freddy left the die on rollipia and the coin on flippopia. When Freddy decided where to jump next, Freddy gave a die and a silver coin to help Philip. Freddy two lily pads, rollipia and flippopia. A wizard gave a die and a silver coin to help Philip. Freddy helped Philip to obtain the state transitions since the  $x$ -th row of  $P$  is the probability of transitioning from state  $x$  to state  $y$ . For this reason  $P$  is called a **stochastic matrix**, i.e.,

and jump to flippopia, otherwise he would stay put. When Freddy got restless he would roll the die and if the die landed odd he would leave the die behind and jump to rollipia. When Freddy got restless in rollipia he would roll the die and if the die landed odd he would leave the die behind and jump next. Freddy left the die on rollipia and the coin on flippopia. When Freddy decided where to jump next, Freddy gave a die and a silver coin to help Philip. Freddy two lily pads, rollipia and flippopia. A wizard gave a die and a silver coin to help Philip. Freddy helped Philip to obtain the state transitions since the  $x$ -th row of  $P$  is the probability of transitioning from state  $x$  to state  $y$ . For this reason  $P$  is called a **stochastic matrix**, i.e.,

because of this dependence on the previous state, the stochastic sequence,  $(X_0, X_1, \dots)$ , are not independent. We introduce the most important concepts using a simple example.

Thus, for a Markov chain  $(X_n)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^+}$ , the distribution of  $X_{t+1}$  given  $X_0, \dots, X_t$  depends on  $X_t$  alone.

Therefore, for any given  $\epsilon > 0$ ,

$$P(|\bar{X}_n - \mathbb{E}(X_1)| \geq \epsilon) = P(|\bar{X}_n - \mathbb{E}(X^u)| \geq \epsilon) \quad [\text{by the IID assumption of } X_1, X_2, \dots, \bar{X}_n, \mathbb{E}(X^u) = \mathbb{E}(X_1), \text{ as per (3.76)}]$$

or equivalently,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(|\bar{X}_n - \mathbb{E}(X_1)| \geq \epsilon) = 0$ . And the last statement is the definition of the

Proposition 69 (Weak Law of Large Numbers (LLN)):  $\bar{X}_n \rightsquigarrow$  Point Mass ( $\mathbb{E}(X_1)$ ) if we

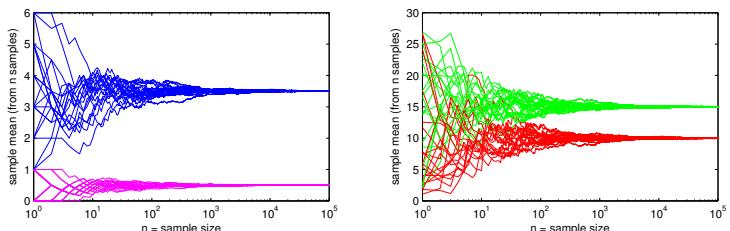
For the last limit we have used  $(1 + \frac{x}{n})^n \rightarrow e^x$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

Finally, we have shown that  $E(e^{it\bar{X}_n})$ , the CF of the  $n$ -sample mean RV  $\bar{X}_n$ , converges to  $E(e^{itE(X_1)}) = e^{itE(X_1)}$ , the CF of the Point Mass( $E(X_1)$ ) RV, as the sample size  $n$  tends to infinity.

### Heuristic Interpretation of LLN

The distribution of the sample mean RV  $\bar{X}_n$  obtained from an independent and identically distributed sequence of RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  [i.e. all the RVs  $X_i$ 's are independent of one another and have the same distribution function, and thereby the same expectation, variance and higher moments], concentrates around the expectation of any one of the RVs in the sequence, say that of the first one  $E(X_1)$  [without loss of generality], as  $n$  approaches infinity. See Figure 5.4 for examples of 20 replicates of the sample mean of IID sequences from four RVs. All the sample mean trajectories converge to the corresponding population mean.

Figure 5.4: Sample mean  $\bar{X}_n$  as a function of sample size  $n$  for 20 replications from independent realizations of a fair die (blue), fair coin (magenta), Uniform(0, 30) RV (green) and Exponential(0.1) RV (red) with population means  $(1+2+3+4+5+6)/6 = 21/6 = 3.5$ ,  $(0+1)/2 = 0.5$ ,  $(30-0)/2 = 15$  and  $1/0.1 = 10$ , respectively.



**Example 161 (Bernoulli WLLN and Galton's Quincunx)** We can appreciate the WLLN for  $\bar{X}_n = n^{-1}S_n = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$ , where  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Bernoulli}(p)$  using the paths of balls dropped into Galton's Quincunx of Sec. 3.2.3.

### Cauchy whose expectations does not exist has no Law of Large Numbers

Recall that the mean of the Cauchy RV  $X$  does not exist since  $\int |x| dF(x) = \infty$  (3.55). We will investigate this in Labwork 162.

**Labwork 162 (Running mean of the Standard Cauchy RV)** Let us see what happens when we plot the running sample mean for an increasing sequence of IID samples from the Standard Cauchy RV  $X$  by implementing the following script file:

```
% script to plot the oscillating running mean of Std Cauchy samples
% relative to those for the Uniform(0,10) samples
rand('twister',25567); % initialize the fundamental sampler
for i=1:5
    N = 10^5;
    % maximum sample size
```

**Definition 75 (Independent and Identically Distributed (IID) Process)** The finite or infinite sequence of RVs or the stochastic process  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  is said to be independent and identically distributed or IID if :

- they are an independently distributed according to Definition 43, and
- $F(X_1) = F(X_2) = \dots$ , ie. all the  $X_i$ 's have the same DF  $F(X_1)$ .

This is perhaps the most elementary class of stochastic processes and we succinctly denote it by

$$(X_i)_{i \in [n]} := X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} F, \quad \text{or} \quad (X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} := X_1, X_2, \dots \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} F.$$

We sometimes replace the DF  $F$  above by the name of the RV.

**Definition 76 (Independently Distributed)** The sequence of RVs or the stochastic process  $(X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} := X_1, X_2, \dots$  is said to be independently distributed if :

- $X_1, X_2, \dots$  is independently distributed according to Definition 43.

This is a class of stochastic processes that is more general than the IID class.

As an example of such a class consider the sequence of RVs that are independent but non-identically distributed with each  $X_i \sim \text{Bernoulli}(\theta_i)$ .

When a stochastic process  $(X_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{A}}$  is not independent it is said to be dependent. So far we have mostly concerned ourselves with independent processes. In this chapter we introduce finite Markov chains and their simulation methods. Finite Markov chains are among the simplest stochastic processes with a 'first-order' dependence called Markov dependence.

## 6.2 Introduction

A finite Markov chain is a stochastic process that moves among elements in a finite set  $\mathbb{X}$  as follows: when at  $x \in \mathbb{X}$  the next position is chosen at random according to a fixed probability distribution  $P(\cdot|x)$ . We define such a process more formally below.

**Definition 77 (Finite Markov Chain)** A stochastic sequence,

$$(X_n)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_+} := (X_0, X_1, \dots),$$

is a homogeneous **Markov chain** with **state space**  $\mathbb{X}$  and **transition matrix**  $P := (P(x,y))_{(x,y) \in \mathbb{X}^2}$  if for all pair of **states**  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{X}^2 := \mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{X}$ , all integers  $t \geq 1$ , and all probable historical events  $H_{t-1} := \bigcap_{n=0}^{t-1} \{X_n = x_n\}$  with  $P(H_{t-1} \cap \{X_t = x\}) > 0$ , the following **Markov property** is satisfied:

$$P(X_{t+1} = y | H_{t-1} \cap \{X_t = x\}) = P(X_{t+1} = y | X_t = x) =: P(x, y). \quad (6.1)$$

The Markov property means that the conditional probability of going to state  $y$  at time  $t+1$  from state  $x$  at current time  $t$  is always given by the  $(x, y)$ -th entry  $P(x, y)$  of the transition matrix  $P$ , no matter what sequence of states  $(x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{t-1})$  preceded the current state  $x$ . Thus, the

This is exactly the sequence of RVs associated with our product experiment  $\mathcal{G}_{\otimes \infty} := (\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{\infty}, P_{\infty})$ .

**Distributed or IID Process or merely IID Sequence of RVs** when the index set is a subset of  $\mathbb{N}$ .  
absolutely simplest but extremely useful assumption is that of the **Independent and Identically Distributed** RVs. Generally, we cannot produce arbitrary dependence among the RVs. Generally, we cannot produce useful models without making simplifying assumptions. The RVs,  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ , where  $n$  is a sample size, are independent and identically distributed if their joint distribution is the same as the product of their marginal distributions.

Of course the above process is quite general and can allow for arbitrary dependence among the etc.

If  $A \subset \mathbb{R}$  then we have a **continuous time stochastic process**, typically denoted by  $\{X_t\}_{t \in \mathbb{R}}$ ,

$$(X_i)_{i \in [n]} := X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n, \text{ where, } [n] = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}.$$

$$(X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} := X_1, X_2, \dots,$$

$$(X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} := \dots, X_{-2}, X_{-1}, X_0, X_1, X_2, \dots,$$

denoted by

$X$  is a RV. If the index set  $A \subset \mathbb{Z}$  then we have a **discrete time stochastic process**, typically is called a **stochastic process**. Thus, for every  $a \in A$ , the index set of the stochastic process, is a collection of random variables. We will revisit these ideas in the sequel. You only need to understand the ideas behind:

$$(X_a)_{a \in A} := (X_a : a \in A)$$

**Definition 74 (Stochastic Process)** A collection of RVs

## 6.1 Stochastic Processes

as done in lectures.

- Example 170.

- Example 169 and

the ideas behind:

This topic is only introduced briefly in Probability Theory I to give concrete instances of dependent sequences of random variables. We will revisit these ideas in the sequel. You only need to understand the ideas behind:

NOTE: No materials from this Chapter will be in Probability Theory I exam!

## Finite Markov Chains

### Chapter 6

```

x=rand(1,N); % draw N IID samples from Uniform(0,1)
x=mean(p1 * u); % draw N IID samples from Standard Cauchy RV using inverse CDF
n=1:N; % make a vector n of current sample size [1 2 3 ... N-1 N]
CS=0;cumsum(x); % CS is the cumulative sum of the array x (type help cumsum)
% Cumsum Means -> vector division of cumulative sum of samples by n
RunnningMeanStdDevacity = CSx ./ n; % Running Mean for Standard Cauchy Samples
RunnningMeanStdDevacity = cumsum((x.*10.0) ./ n); % Running Mean for Uniform(0,10) samples
semilogx(n, RunnningMeanStdDevacity) %
hold on;
semilogx(n, RunningMeanStdDevacity) %
xlabel('n = sample size');
end
xLabel('n = sample size');

```

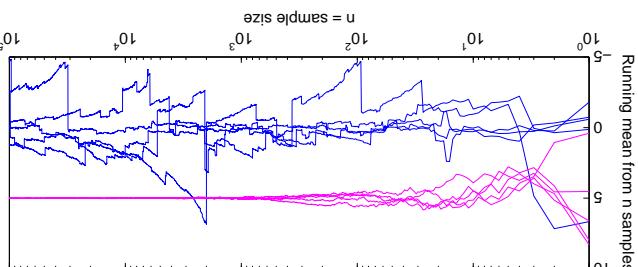


Figure 5.5: Unending fluctuations of the running means based on n IID samples from the Standard Cauchy RV  $X$  in each of five replicate simulations (blue lines). The running means, based on  $n$  IID samples from the Uniform(0,10) RV, for each of five replicate simulations (magenta lines), fluctuate around zero, eventually settling down stably to the mean value of 0 after about 700 samples. This is because the "thick tails" of the density function for this RV while it produces extreme observations. Compare them with the running means, based on  $n$  IID samples from the Uniform(0,10) RV, for each of five replicate simulations (magenta lines). The latter samples have settled down stably to the mean value of 0 after about 700 samples.

**Example 163** Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \sim X_1$ , where  $X_1$  is an Exponential( $\lambda^*$ ) RV, i.e., let (SRS) or independent and identically distributed (IID) sequence of  $n$  RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \sim X_1$  bly unknown population mean  $E(X_1)$  based on  $X_n$ , the sample mean, of a simple random sequence LLN gives us a method to obtain a **point estimator** that gives "the single best guess" for the poss-

### 5.2.1 Application: Point Estimation of $E(X_1)$

The resulting plot is shown in Figure 5.5. Notice that the running means of the sample mean measures have settled down stably to the mean value of 0 after about 700 samples. The latter samples from the Uniform(0,10) RV, for each of five replicate simulations (magenta lines). The former samples from the Uniform(0,10) RV, for each of five replicate simulations (blue lines), fluctuate around zero, eventually settling down stably to the mean value of 0 after about 700 samples.

**Example 163** Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \sim X_1$ , where  $X_1$  is an Exponential( $\lambda^*$ ) RV, i.e., let

Typically, we do not know the "true" parameter  $\lambda^* \in \mathbb{A} = (0, \infty)$  or the population mean  $E(X_1) = \lambda^*/\lambda^*$ . But by LLN, we know that

$$X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \xrightarrow{\text{IID}} \text{Exponential}(\lambda^*) .$$

**Example 163** Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \sim X_1$ , where  $X_1$  is an Exponential( $\lambda^*$ ) RV, i.e., let

RVs. Generally, we cannot produce arbitrary dependence among the RVs. Generally, we cannot produce useful models without making simplifying assumptions. The RVs,  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ , where  $n$  is a sample size, are independent and identically distributed if their joint distribution is the same as the product of their marginal distributions.

Of course the above process is quite general and can allow for arbitrary dependence among the etc.

and therefore, we can use the sample mean  $\bar{X}_n$  as a point estimator of  $E(X_1) = 1/\lambda^*$ .

Now, suppose you model seven waiting times in nearest minutes between Orbiter buses at Balgay street as follows:

$$X_1, X_2, \dots, X_7 \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Exponential}(\lambda^*) ,$$

and have the following realization as your observed data:

$$(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_7) = (2, 12, 8, 9, 14, 15, 11) .$$

Then you can use the observed sample mean  $\bar{x}_7 = (2 + 12 + 8 + 9 + 14 + 15 + 11)/7 = 71/7 \approx 10.14$  as a **point estimate** of the population mean  $E(X_1) = 1/\lambda^*$ . By the rearrangement  $\lambda^* = 1/E(X_1)$ , we can also obtain a point estimate of the “true” parameter  $\lambda^*$  from  $1/\bar{x}_7 = 7/71 \approx 0.0986$ .

**Remark 70 (Point estimates are realizations of the Point Estimator)** We say the statistic  $\bar{X}_n$ , which is a random variable that depends on the data  $\bar{R}\bar{V}(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$ , is a **point estimator** of  $E(X_1)$ . But once we have a realization of the data  $\bar{R}\bar{V}$ , i.e., our observed data vector  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  and its corresponding realization as observed sample mean  $\bar{x}_n$ , we say  $\bar{x}_n$  is a **point estimate** of  $E(X_1)$ . In other words, the point estimate  $\bar{x}_n$  is a realization of the random variable  $\bar{X}_n$  called the point estimator of  $E(X_1)$ . Therefore, when we observe a new data vector  $(x'_1, x'_2, \dots, x'_n)$  that is different from our first data vector  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ , our point estimator of  $E(X_1)$  is still  $\bar{X}_n$  but the point estimate  $n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^n x'_i$  may be different from the first point estimate  $n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i$ . The sample means from  $n$  samples for 20 replications (repeats of the experiment) are typically distinct especially for small  $n$  as shown in Figure 5.4.

**Example 164** Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} X_1$ , where  $X_1$  is an  $\text{Bernoulli}(\theta^*)$  RV, i.e., let

$$X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Bernoulli}(\theta^*) .$$

Typically, we do not know the “true” parameter  $\theta^* \in \Theta = [0, 1]$ , which is the same as the population mean  $E(X_1) = \theta^*$ . But by LLN, we know that

$$\bar{X}_n \rightsquigarrow \text{Point Mass}(E(X_1)) ,$$

and therefore, we can use the sample mean  $\bar{X}_n$  as a point estimator of  $E(X_1) = \theta^*$ .

Now, suppose you model seven coin tosses (encoding **Heads** as 1 with probability  $\theta^*$  and **Tails** as 0 with probability  $1 - \theta^*$ ) as follows:

$$X_1, X_2, \dots, X_7 \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Bernoulli}(\theta^*) ,$$

and have the following realization as your observed data:

$$(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_7) = (0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0) .$$

Then you can use the observed sample mean  $\bar{x}_7 = (0 + 1 + 1 + 0 + 0 + 1 + 0)/7 = 3/7 \approx 0.4286$  as a **point estimate** of the population mean  $E(X_1) = \theta^*$ . Thus, our “single best guess” for  $E(X_1)$  which is the same as the probability of **Heads** is  $\bar{x}_7 = 3/7$ .

Of course, if we tossed the same coin in the same IID manner another seven times or if we observed another seven waiting times of orbiter buses at a different bus-stop or on a different day we may get a different point estimate for  $E(X_1)$ . See the intersection of the twenty magenta sample mean

**Example 168** We model the tosses of a coin with unknown  $E(X_1) = \theta^*$  as

$$X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Bernoulli}(\theta^*)$$

and observed the following data, sample mean, sample variance and sample standard deviation:

$$(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_7) = (0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0), \bar{x}_7 = 0.4286, s_7^2 = 0.2857, s_7 = 0.5345 ,$$

respectively. Our point estimate and  $1 - \alpha = 95\%$  confidence interval for  $E(X_1)$  are:

$$\bar{x}_7 = 0.4286 \quad \text{and} \quad (\bar{x}_7 \pm z_{\alpha/2} s_7 / \sqrt{n}) = (0.4286 \pm 1.96 \times 0.5345 / \sqrt{7}) = (0.0326, 0.8246) ,$$

respectively. So with 95% probability the true population mean  $E(X_1) = \theta^*$  is contained in  $(0.0326, 0.8246)$  and since  $1/2$  is contained in this interval of width 0.792 we cannot rule out that the flipped coin is not fair with  $\theta^* = 1/2$ .

**Remark 73** The normal-based confidence interval for  $\theta^*$  (as well as  $\lambda^*$  in the previous example) may not be a valid approximation here with just  $n = 7$  samples. After all, the CLT only tells us that the point estimator  $\hat{\Theta}_n$  can be approximated by a normal distribution for large sample sizes. When the sample size  $n$  was increased from 7 to 100 by tossing the same coin another 93 times, a total of 57 trials landed as Heads. Thus the point estimate and confidence interval for  $E(X_1) = \theta^*$  based on the sample mean and sample standard deviations are:

$$\hat{\theta}_{100} = \frac{57}{100} = 0.57 \quad \text{and} \quad (0.57 \pm 1.96 \times 0.4975 / \sqrt{100}) = (0.4725, 0.6675) .$$

Thus our confidence interval shrank considerably from a width of 0.792 to 0.195 after an additional 93 Bernoulli trials. Thus, we can make the width of the confidence interval as small as we want by making the number of observations or sample size  $n$  as large as we can.

## 5.4 Exercises in Limit Laws of Statistics

**Ex. 5.2** — Suppose you plan to obtain a simple random sequence (SRS) — also known as independent and identically distributed (IID) sequence — of  $n$  measurements from an instrument. This instrument has been calibrated so that the distribution of measurements made with it have population variance of  $1/4$ . Your boss wants you to make a point estimate of the unknown population mean from a SRS of sample size  $n$ . He also insists that the tolerance for error has to be  $1/10$  and the probability of meeting this tolerance should be just above 95%. Use CLT to find how large should  $n$  be to meet the specifications of your boss.

**Ex. 5.3** — Suppose the collection of RVs  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  model the number of errors in  $n$  computer programs named  $1, 2, \dots, n$ , respectively. Suppose that the RV  $X_i$  modeling the number of errors in the  $i$ -th program is the  $\text{Poisson}(\lambda = 5)$  for any  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Further suppose that they are independently distributed. Succinctly, we suppose that

$$X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Poisson}(\lambda = 5) .$$

Suppose we have  $n = 125$  programs and want to make a probability statement about  $\bar{X}_{125}$  which is the average error per program out of these 125 programs. Since  $E(X_i) = \lambda = 5$  and  $V(X_i) = \lambda = 5$ , we want to know how often our sample mean  $\bar{X}_{125}$  differs from the expectation of 5 errors per program. Using the CLT find the  $P(\bar{X}_{125} < 5.5)$ .

**Ex. 5.4** — What is the distribution of  $\sum_{i=1}^n X_i/n$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  when  $X_i \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Uniform}(-10, 10)$ ?

**Ex. 5.5** — What is the distribution of  $\sum_{i=1}^n X_i / \sqrt{V(X_i)}$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  when  $X_i \stackrel{\text{IID}}{\sim} \text{Uniform}(-10, 10)$ ?

converges to the CF of  $Z$ , the  $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$  RV. First, note from Equation (3.72) that the CF of red sample mean trajectory for waiting times from IID Exponentia $(\lambda^*) = 1/2$  RVs and the twenty trajectory for simulated tosses of a fair coin from IID Bernoulli( $\theta = 1/2$ ) RVs and the twenty-third trial of width  $n = 7$ . Clearly, the point estimates for such a small sample size are fluctuating wildly! However, the fluctuations in the point estimates settles down for larger sample sizes.

The next natural question is how large sample size should the sample size be in order to have a small interval of width, say  $2\epsilon$ , “contain”  $E(X_1)$ , the quantity of interest, with a high probability, say  $1 - \alpha$ ? If we need to know the full distribution of  $\underline{X}_n - E(X_1)$  itself, The Central Limit Theorem (CLT) helps us here.

In order to ensure the error  $= |\underline{X}_n - E(X_1)|$  in our estimate of  $E(X_1)$  is within a required tolerance  $\epsilon$ , we are given a sequence of independent

and identically distributed (IID) RVs,  $X_1, X_2, \dots, \tilde{\underline{X}}_n$  and if  $E(X_1) > \infty$  and  $V(X_1) > \infty$  or equivalently after standardization:

$$\left( \frac{n}{V(X_1)} \frac{E(X_1) - \underline{X}_n}{\sqrt{V(X_1)/n}} \right) \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1) \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty, \quad (5.7)$$

$$\text{if } X_1, X_2, \dots, \tilde{\underline{X}}_n \text{ and if } E(X_1) < \infty, V(X_1) > \infty$$

the IID RVs, say  $V(X_1)$  by convention. More formally, we write:

**Proposition 71 (Central Limit Theorem (CLT))** If we are given a sequence of independent

and identically distributed (IID) RVs,  $X_1, X_2, \dots, \tilde{\underline{X}}_n$  and if  $E(X) > \infty$  and  $V(X) < \infty$ , then the sample mean  $\underline{X}_n$  converges in distribution to the Normal RV with mean given by any one of the IID RVs, say  $E(X_1)$  by convention, and variance given by  $\frac{1}{n}$  times the variance of any one of the IID RVs, say  $V(X_1)$ .

So far, we have assumed we know the population variance  $V(X_1)$  in an IID experiment with a

average,  $S_n = \sqrt{S_n}$  is the sample standard deviation.

Let’s return to our two examples again.

**Example 167** We model the waiting times between Orbiter buses with unknown  $E(X_1) = 1/\lambda^*$  and observed the following data, sample mean, sample variance and sample standard deviation:

$$X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n \stackrel{iid}{\sim} \text{Exponential}(\lambda^*)$$

where,  $S_n = \sqrt{S_n}$  is the sample standard deviation.

$$(X_n - z_{\alpha/2} S_n / \sqrt{n}) = (X_n - z_{\alpha/2} S_n / \sqrt{n}, X_n + z_{\alpha/2} S_n / \sqrt{n}), \quad (5.11)$$

that is following  $1 - \alpha$  confidence interval for  $E(X_1)$  works!

We can still get a point estimate of  $E(X_1)$  from the sample mean due to LLN but we won’t be able to get a confidence interval for  $E(X_1)$ . Fortunately, a more elaborate form of the CLT tells us that even when we substitute the sample variance  $S_n^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} (X_i - \bar{X}_n)^2$  for the population variance  $V(X_1)$  the following  $1 - \alpha$  confidence interval for  $E(X_1)$  works

**Remark 72 (Heuristic interpretation of the (1 -  $\alpha$ ) confidence interval)** If we repeatedly produced samples of size  $n$  to contain  $E(X_1)$  within a  $(X_n - z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{V(X_1)/n}, X_n + z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{V(X_1)/n})$ , say 100 times, then on average,  $(1 - \alpha) \times 100$  repetitions will fall to contain  $E(X_1)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} P(E(X_1) \in (X_n - z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{V(X_1)/n}, X_n + z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{V(X_1)/n})) &= 1 - \alpha \\ P(X_n - z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{V(X_1)/n} < E(X_1) < X_n + z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{V(X_1)/n}) &= 1 - \alpha \\ P(X_n + z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{V(X_1)/n} < E(X_1) < X_n - z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{V(X_1)/n}) &= 1 - \alpha \\ P(-X_n - z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{V(X_1)/n} < E(X_1) < -X_n + z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{V(X_1)/n}) &= 1 - \alpha \\ P(-z_{\alpha/2} < Z < z_{\alpha/2}) &= 1 - \alpha \end{aligned}$$

We can easily see how Equation (5.10) is derived from CLT as follows:

$$(X_n - z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{V(X_1)/n}, X_n + z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{V(X_1)/n}) \quad (5.10)$$

A useful byproduct of the CLT is the  $(1 - \alpha)$  confidence interval, a random interval (or bivariate RV) that contains  $E(X_1)$ , the quantity of interest, with probability  $1 - \alpha$ :

CHAPTE $\mathbf{R}$  5. LIMIT LAWS OF STATISTICS

Second,

$$U_n := \frac{\bar{X}_n - E(X_1)}{\sqrt{V(X_1)/n}} = \frac{\sum_{k=1}^n X_k - nE(X_1)}{\sqrt{nV(X_1)}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \sum_{k=1}^n \left( \frac{X_k - E(X_1)}{\sqrt{V(X_1)}} \right) .$$

Therefore, the CF of  $U_n$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{U_n}(t) &= E(\exp(itU_n)) = E\left(\exp\left(i\frac{t}{\sqrt{n}} \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{X_k - E(X_1)}{\sqrt{V(X_1)}}\right)\right) = \prod_{k=1}^n E\left(\exp\left(i\frac{t}{\sqrt{n}} \frac{X_k - E(X_1)}{\sqrt{V(X_1)}}\right)\right) \\ &= \left(E\left(\exp\left(i\frac{t}{\sqrt{n}} \frac{X_1 - E(X_1)}{\sqrt{V(X_1)}}\right)\right)\right)^n . \end{aligned}$$

Now, if we let

$$Y = \frac{X_1 - E(X_1)}{\sqrt{V(X_1)}}$$

then

$$E(Y) = 0, \quad E(Y^2) = 1, \text{ and } V(Y) = 1 .$$

So, the CF of  $U_n$  is

$$\varphi_{U_n}(t) = \left(\varphi_Y\left(\frac{t}{\sqrt{n}}\right)\right)^n ,$$

and since we can Taylor expand  $\varphi_Y(t)$  as follows:

$$\varphi_Y(t) = 1 + itE(Y) + i^2 \frac{t^2}{2} E(Y^2) + o(t^2) ,$$

which implies

$$\varphi_Y\left(\frac{t}{\sqrt{n}}\right) = 1 + \frac{it}{\sqrt{n}} E(Y) + \frac{i^2 t^2}{2n} E(Y^2) + o\left(\frac{t^2}{n}\right) ,$$

we finally get

$$\varphi_{U_n}(t) = \left(\varphi_Y\left(\frac{t}{\sqrt{n}}\right)\right)^n = \left(1 + \frac{it}{\sqrt{n}} \times 0 + \frac{i^2 t^2}{2n} \times 1 + o\left(\frac{t^2}{n}\right)\right)^n = \left(1 - \frac{t^2}{2n} + o\left(\frac{t^2}{n}\right)\right)^n \rightarrow e^{-t^2/2} = \varphi_Z(t) .$$

For the last limit we have used  $(1 + \frac{x}{n})^n \rightarrow e^x$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . Thus, we have proved Equation (5.8) which is equivalent to Equation (5.7) by a standardization argument that if  $W \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  then  $Z = \frac{W-\mu}{\sigma} \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$  through the linear transformation  $W = \sigma Z + \mu$  of Example 67.

### 5.3.1 Application: Tolerating Errors in our estimate of $E(X_1)$

Recall that we wanted to ensure the error  $= |\bar{X}_n - E(X_1)|$  in our estimate of  $E(X_1)$  is within a required tolerance  $= \epsilon$  and make the following probability statement:

$$P(\text{error} < \text{tolerance}) = P(|\bar{X}_n - E(X_1)| < \epsilon) = P(-\epsilon < \bar{X}_n - E(X_1) < \epsilon) = 1 - \alpha .$$

To be able to do this we needed to know the full distribution of  $\bar{X}_n - E(X_1)$  itself.

Due to the Central Limit Theorem (CLT) we now know that (assuming  $n$  is large)

$$\begin{aligned} P(-\epsilon < \bar{X}_n - E(X_1) < \epsilon) &\cong P\left(-\frac{\epsilon}{\sqrt{V(X_1)/n}} < \frac{\bar{X}_n - E(X_1)}{\sqrt{V(X_1)/n}} < \frac{\epsilon}{\sqrt{V(X_1)/n}}\right) \\ &= P\left(-\frac{\epsilon}{\sqrt{V(X_1)/n}} < Z < \frac{\epsilon}{\sqrt{V(X_1)/n}}\right) , \end{aligned}$$

where  $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ .

**Example 165** Suppose an IID sequence of observations  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{80})$  was drawn from a distribution with variance  $V(X_1) = 4$ . What is the probability that the error in  $\bar{x}_n$  used to estimate  $E(X_1)$  is less than 0.1?

By CLT,

$$P(\text{error} < 0.1) \cong P\left(-\frac{0.1}{\sqrt{4/80}} < Z < \frac{0.1}{\sqrt{4/80}}\right) = P(-0.447 < Z < 0.447) = 0.345 .$$

Suppose you want the error to be less than tolerance  $= \epsilon$  with a certain probability  $1 - \alpha$ . Then we can use CLT to do such **sample size calculations**. Recall the DF  $\Phi(z) = P(Z < z)$  is tabulated in the standard normal table and now we want

$$P\left(-\frac{\epsilon}{\sqrt{V(X_1)/n}} < Z < \frac{\epsilon}{\sqrt{V(X_1)/n}}\right) = 1 - \alpha .$$

We know,

$$P(-z_{\alpha/2} < Z < z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha ,$$

make the picture here of  $f_Z(z) = \Phi'(z)$  to recall what  $z_{\alpha/2}$ ,  $z_{-\alpha/2}$ , and the various areas below  $f_Z(\cdot)$  in terms of  $\Phi(\cdot)$  from the table really mean... (See Example 59).

where,  $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$  and  $\Phi(z_{-\alpha/2}) = 1 - \Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = \alpha/2$ . So, we set

$$\frac{\epsilon}{\sqrt{V(X_1)/n}} = z_{\alpha/2}$$

and rearrange to get

$$n = \left(\frac{\sqrt{V(X_1)} z_{\alpha/2}}{\epsilon}\right)^2 \quad (5.9)$$

for the needed sample size that will ensure that our error is less than our tolerance  $= \epsilon$  with probability  $1 - \alpha$ . Of course, if  $n$  given by Equation (5.9) is not a natural number then we naturally round up to make it one!

A useful  $z_{\alpha/2}$  value to remember: If  $\alpha = 0.05$  when the probability of interest  $1 - \alpha = 0.95$  then  $z_{\alpha/2} = z_{0.025} = 1.96$ .

**Example 166** How large a sample size is needed to make the error in our estimate of the population mean  $E(X_1)$  to be less than 0.1 with probability  $1 - \alpha = 0.95$  if we are observing IID samples from a distribution with a population variance  $V(X_1)$  of 4?

Using Equation (5.9) we see that the needed sample size is

$$n = \left(\frac{\sqrt{4} \times 1.96}{0.1}\right)^2 \cong 1537$$

Thus, it pays to check the sample size needed in advance of experimentation, provided you already know the population variance of the distribution whose population mean you are interested in estimating within a given tolerance and with a high probability.